



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

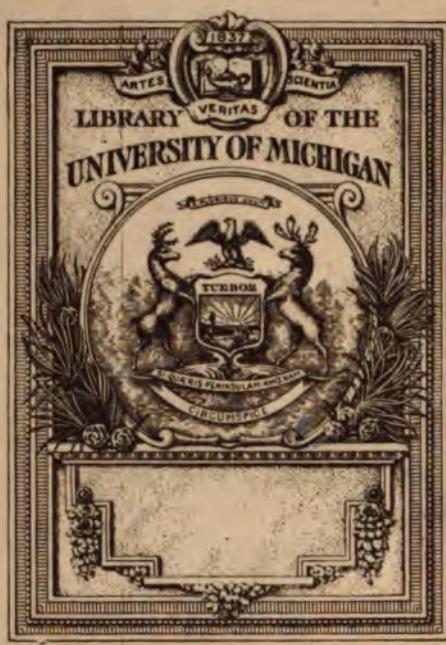
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

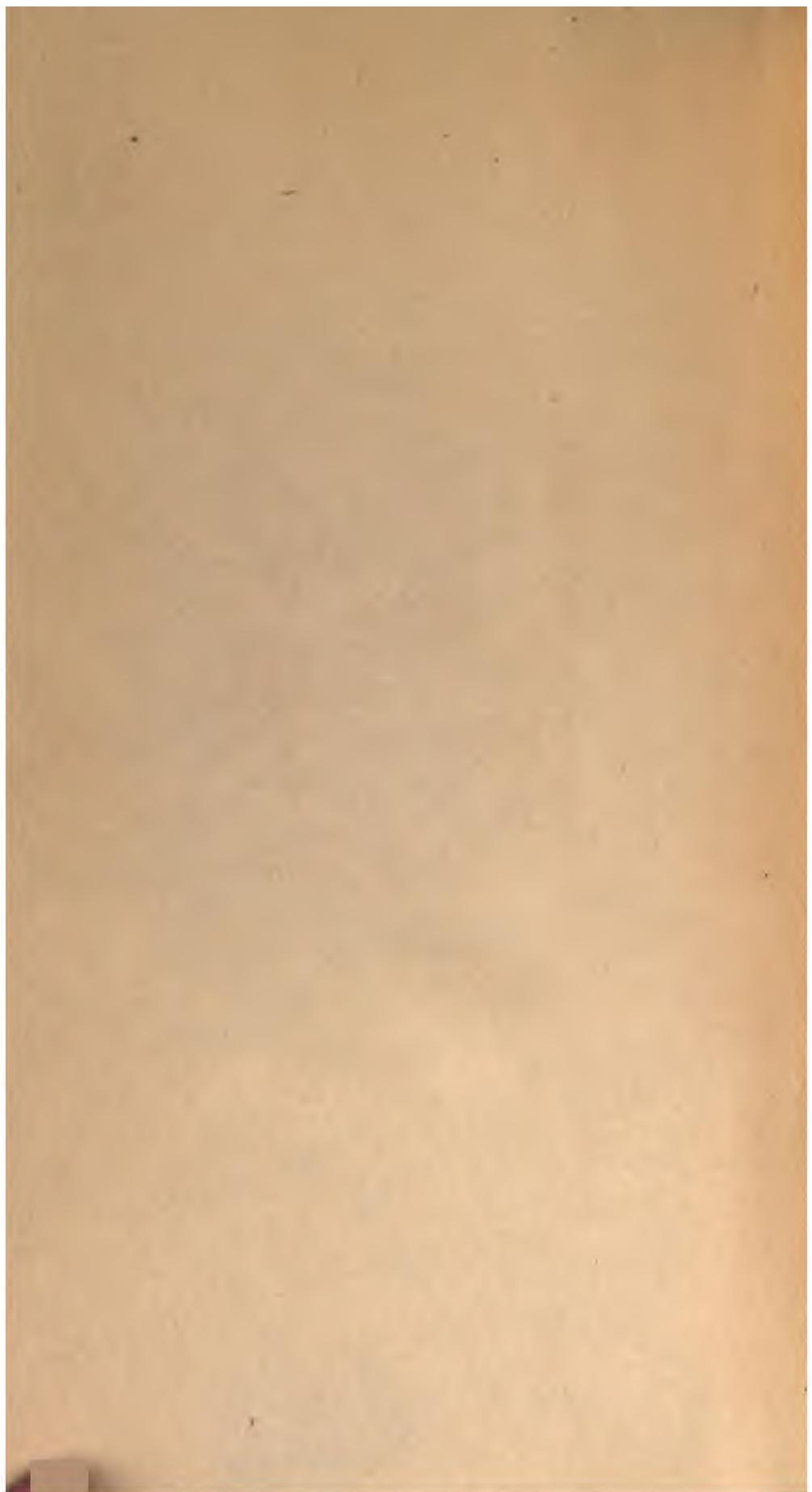
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

**B**

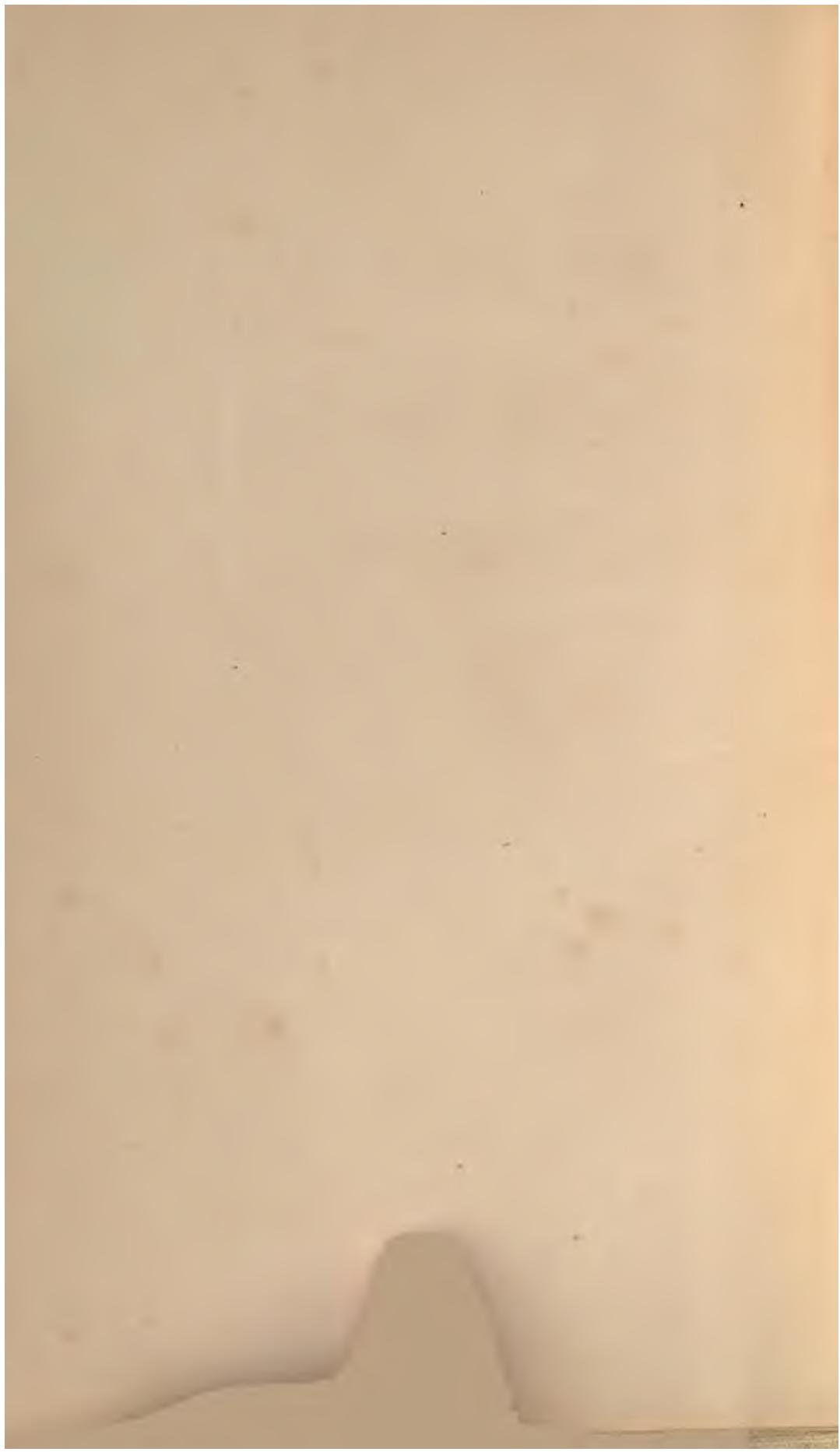
1,183,771



DA  
20  
E 59  
nr. 8  
v. 4



DA  
20  
E 59  
nr. 8  
v. 4



**ROGERI DE WENDOVER**  
**FLORES HISTORIARUM.**

**M. VAN DE WEYER.**

**Member's Copy.**

**ROGERI DE WENDOVER**

**CHRONICA,**

**SIVE**

**FLORES HISTORIARUM,**

**NUNC PRIMUM EDIDIT**

**HENRICUS O. COXE, M.A.**

**VOL. IV.**



**LONDINI:**  
**SUMPTIBUS SOCIETATIS.**  
**M.DCCC.XLI.**

100

LONDON :  
PRINTED BY S. & J. BENTLEY, WILSON, AND FLEY,  
Bangor House, Shoe Lane.

## P R E F A C E.

---

It is much to be lamented, that of the personal history of the early chroniclers of England so little remains to which any credit is to be attached; and the case of the historian, of whom we are now to speak, will be found to form no exception to the general rule. We are, indeed, left in a state of more than usual darkness respecting him, for in the chronicle which bears his name the use of the first person rarely occurs. In the works of Beda and Malmsbury, many facts respecting their birth and education are directly given, and much information may often be deduced from a comparison of circumstances incidentally mentioned, and thus each writer becomes to a certain extent his own biographer. But in the case of Roger de Wendover we are not able to derive assistance from such sources.

In the manuscript copy of his chronicle which formerly existed in the Cottonian Library, and was burned in the disastrous fire at Ashburnham House in 1731, he was denominated Roger Wendovre de Wendovre; whence it may reasonably be supposed that he was a native of the place of that name in Buckinghamshire. Of his birth or education nothing is known, nor of the time when he entered the monastery of S. Alban's, but it is probable that he embraced the monastic life at an early period, as few ecclesiastics ac-

quired any eminence who became such when more advanced in age. In this monastery he was afterwards precentor, whence he was promoted to fill the office of prior of Belvoir, a cell to the rich and powerful abbey to which he belonged.

Translation  
to Belvoir  
priory.

The precise time of Wendover's translation to Belvoir is not known, although it is likely that it took place during the reign of John, since we are informed that he was deposed from his dignity shortly after the accession of Henry the third; the occasion of which deposition is thus stated by Matthew Paris. That historian relates, that upon the death of king John, when England was in a great measure relieved from the troubles by which she had been oppressed, and the danger from attack both at home and abroad had subsided, William de Trumpington, the twenty-second abbot of S. Alban's, determined to visit in person the priory of Tynemouth, and the other cells belonging to his abbey which lay in his route northward. On his journey the priors of Hatfield and Wymundham met with censure from their superior, who, on his arrival at Belvoir, found again an occasion to exercise his authority. Complaints were there made to him that the prior, Roger de Wendover, had wasted the property of the house by reckless profusion, following, as it is said, in the steps of his predecessor, Ralph the Simple; Wendover was accordingly censured, and he promised to amend his conduct. But neither had our author, any more than the other priors, much opportunity allowed him for improvement; since it appears that William de Trumpington, on his return to S. Alban's, recalled all three from their respective priories. These events would seem to have happened about the year <sup>1</sup>1219,

---

<sup>1</sup> Not. Wats, pref.

after which no further notice of this historian occurs, until his death, recorded by Matthew Paris as taking place on the 6th of May 1237. Nor is it a little remarkable that Paris, who, in the case of the priors of Hatfield and Wy-mundham, severely criticises the conduct of the one, and enters into some particulars of the history of the other, should, in the case of the prior of Belvoir, be content with mentioning the bare fact as above stated.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Wats, in his preface to the edition of Matthew Paris, 1640, has observed that his name, Roger Wendover de Wendover, argues him to have been of a noble family, because that he derived his ‘agnomen’ from the land or town belonging to his family of hereditary right. Whether the ‘de’ in this case is decisive in warranting such a conclusion, is not perhaps very easy to determine. Undoubtedly in the time of Wendover it was a prefix to many a noble name; but that it was borne also by those who could lay no just claim to nobility of birth appears equally certain. The following notices of persons bearing the same name, at the same, or no far removed distance of time, with our historian, may not be altogether uninteresting. In the ‘Fines sive Pedes Finium,’ etc.<sup>a</sup> we have a notice of a final agreement made between Gunilda de Wendover and Gilbert de Seibroc respecting half a hide of land in the village of Chedendon, or Cheddington, Buckinghamshire, dated in the fourth year of the reign of king John. In 1230,

was Richard de Wendover rector of Asfordby in Leicestershire.<sup>b</sup> In 1232 we find a Richard de Wendover rector of Yardley Hastings in Northamptonshire;<sup>c</sup> whether the same with the preceding, we have no means of ascertaining. In 1235 we learn that Richard de Wendover, rector of Bromley in Kent, was elected by the monks of Canterbury to the vacant see, but that, refused consecration by archbishop Edmund Riche, afterwards canonized, he appealed to Rome; that the pope, Gregory the ninth, confirmed the monks’ election;<sup>d</sup> and that on S. Cuthbert’s day (March 20), 1238, he was by pontifical mandate consecrated archbishop of Canterbury. In the reign of Edward the first we learn from the Hundred Rolls<sup>e</sup> that the priory of S. Catherine’s in Lincoln held five hides of land in Thoft, value twenty-five shillings per annum, the gift of William de Wendover. In 1301, Geoffrey de Wendover was sub-prior of S. Saviour’s church, Southwark. In 1361,<sup>f</sup> Peter Wendover is recorded as holding

<sup>a</sup> Edit. 1835, tom. i. p. 219.

<sup>b</sup> Vol. i. p. 361.

<sup>c</sup> Nichola, Hist. iii. p. 17.

<sup>d</sup> Manning and Bray, Hist. Sur-

<sup>e</sup> Bridges, Hist. i. p. 398.

rey, i. p. 566.

<sup>f</sup> Gregory’s bull in Angl. Sacr. i. p. 801.

His character as an historian.

It is only left us to consider Wendover in his character as an historian, as it may be gathered from his work and elsewhere. A manuscript chartulary of S. Alban's abbey, written at the close of the fifteenth century, describes him as the man to whom the historians of England owe nearly all which they have. In this chartulary, however, the scribe has committed an error in stating that Wendover's history extended only so far as to the reign of Henry the second; we shall presently see that the third king of that name is evidently intended. Bale speaks of him as a man from his earliest years most eager in his pursuit of knowledge. Pits, from Stowe, writes that he was a diligent searcher into those things which were going on around him, and that he carefully and honestly registered all the most remarkable events of his time, which either he had himself seen, or had received from trustworthy authority. Selden, in his notes upon the *Historiae Novorum* of Eadmer,<sup>1</sup> observes, that all the former part of the history of Matthew Paris, that namely from the Conquest to the nineteenth year of Henry the third, is due to Wendover.

a part of the manor of Springfield in Essex.<sup>a</sup> In 1384 was buried 'in the middle of the cloister and nearly opposite to the door of the chapter-house'<sup>b</sup> in S. Alban's abbey the body of Bartholomew Wendover, rector of Shankton in Leicestershire, 'a great benefactor to the repairs

and improvements of the cloister'; and in 1386 Alicia de Wendover is found amongst the benefactors to the same abbey,<sup>c</sup> having presented as an offering to the high altar a golden cup and paten, with a plate silver gilt.

<sup>1</sup> Edit. 1623, p. 169.

<sup>a</sup> Morant, ii. p. 9.

<sup>b</sup> Newcome, Hist. of S. Alban's, p. 313.

<sup>c</sup> Clutterbuck, Hertf. i. App. p. 39. In the same volume also may be found the name of John Wyn-

dover, a pensioner of S. Alban's abbey, to the amount of seven pounds, granted in the reign of Mary, upon the dissolution of the religious houses in the county of Hertford.

The **Chronicles**, or, as they are very properly entitled, **Flores Historiarum**, of this author, comprise an abridged history of the world from the Creation to the year of our Saviour's Incarnation 1235, or the nineteenth year of Henry the third, as correctly stated by Selden. The principal division of the work is into two parts or books, the first extending from the Creation to the birth of the Saviour, the second from the Nativity to the end of the period just mentioned. Of these books the first is subdivided into five parts or ages, containing the history of the world from Adam to Noah; from the Deluge to the birth of Abraham; from Abraham to the death of Saul; from the accession of David to the burning of the Temple and the destruction of Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar; and, lastly, from the Babylonish captivity to the birth of Christ. This book was abridged by Matthew of Westminster, who adopted the title and half the preface as his own: it occupies the first forty pages of the edition of that author published in 1601. The whole of this, in conformity with the plan of publication proposed by the English Historical Society, it has been thought advisable to omit in the present edition; it contains merely an abridged history of the Old Testament, of the Jews, of the Persians under Cyrus and his successors, and Egypt under the Ptolemies, compiled from Petrus Comestor, Josephus, Methodius, Jerome, and other well known authorities. The principal notices respecting Britain, both from the romance of Geoffrey of Monmouth, are to be found in the narrative of its occupation by Brutus, and in the history of king Leir; the latter of which, as the foundation of one of the most interesting perhaps of the plays of Shakspere, is here subjoined:

*'De Lero, rege Britonum, jocundaria relatio.'*

History of  
King Leir.

'Circa hos etiam dies rex Britonum Leir, cum esset senio confectus et filium non haberet, tres filias, quas habuit, nobilibus disposuit copulare maritis ; sed, ut sciret quæ illarum potiore regni parte dignior haberetur, sciscitabatur ab eis, quæ ipsum magis diligeret. Cui, cum due respon-dissent, quod plus patrem quam seipsas dilig-erent, tertia, quæ natu minor erat, sororum adul-a-tionem intelligens, ait, 'Ego te semper ut patrem dilexi, et, si a me plus extorquere desideras, dico tibi, quoniam quantum habes tantum vales, et ego te tantum diligo.' Quo audito, rex cum in-dignatione respondit, 'Quoniam in tantum senec-tutem meam sprevisti, quanto te plus caeteris sororibus tuis diligebam, in tantum te diligere dedignabor, quæ nunquam in regno meo cum so-roribus tuis partem habebis. Et, his dictis, præ-fatas duas puellas ducibus Cornubiæ et Albaniæ cum divisa Britannia maritavit, ita quidem ut post mortem ejus totius insulæ dominio frueren-tur. Tandem cum hujus facti fama ad Aganip-pum, regem Francorum, pervenisset, misit nuntios ad regem præfatum, rogans ut filiam suam junio-rem, nomine Cordeillam, transmitteret, legitimo sibi matrimonio copulandam. Sed rex in prædic-tam adhuc perseverans ira, misit filiam suam con-tinuo absque terra, auro et argento, atque sine omni substantia maritandam ; quam rex Fran-corum gratulanter suscipiens, in societatem tori illam admisit et ob nimiam ejus pulchritudinem ut reginam honoravit. Sed non multo post tempore duces prædicti insurrexerunt in regem Leir et abstulerunt ei regnum et regiam dignita-tem. Rex igitur, ignarus quid ageret, delibe-ravit adire filias suas, quibus regnum divisorat,

ut saltem sibi et quadraginta militibus suis necessaria ministrarent; quæ, cum indignatione verbum ex ipsius ore rapientes, dixerunt eum senem esse, delirum et mendicum, ac tanta familia indignum, sed si voluerit cum uno tantum milite poterit demorari. At rex, gloriam pristinæ dignitatis ad memoriam reducens, ait intra se cum fletu, ‘O Cordeilla, quam vera sunt quæ mihi dixisti, quantum habes tantum vales, et ego te tantum diligo. Dum habui, valui; modo non habeo et ideo non valeo. Unde constat, quod filiæ meæ primogenitæ non me sed meas divitias et munera dilexerunt.’ Et hæc sæpius rex mente revolvens disposuit probare filiam suam Cordeillam, cujus benignitatem demeruerat; et mare cum festinatione ingressus, felici cursu in partibus applicuit transmarinis. Veniens itaque Cariam, ubi filia sua morabatur, misit ad eam nuntium suum, qui ipsum ad tantam productum inopiam indicaret. Quo audito, Cordeilla, de patris commota miseria, quæsivit cum lachrymis quot in familia milites haberet. Indicante autem nuntio, quod cum solo milite et uno armigero advenisset, præcepit illico ut patrem suum ad aliam perduceret civitatem, dans nuntio aurum et argentum non modicum, et regalibus indutum ornamenti honoraret. Jussit etiam, ut pater quadraginta milites cum nobili apparatu retineret, et sic regi Francorum se advenisse nuntiaret. Veniens Leir rex in forma prædicta ad regem indicavit ei et filiæ suæ, quo ordine a Britannia fuerat per generos suos expulsus, et ad ipsos ob hoc se venisse testatur, ut eorum auxilio regnum recuperaret amissum. At illi regem honorifice suscipientes miserunt legatos in omnes Galliæ fines, ut universi milites et servientes, qui arma movere possent, cum ipsis

History of  
King Leir.

History of  
King Leir.

procederent ad Britanniam subjugandam. Omnibus igitur cum equis et armis congregatis, transfretavit in Britanniam rex Leir, dicens secum filiam suam Cordeillam cum congregata multitudo bellatorum, et, conserto cum hostibus prælio, victoria potitus est omnibus interemptis. Deinde, cum quosque suæ potestati submisisset, tertio post anno mortuus est Leir. Cordeilla vero filia ejus regni gubernacula suscipiens, patrem suum apud Leircestriam sepelivit, et per quinquennium pacifice regnavit. His etiam diebus conditæ sunt civitates Kaerkeint, id est Cantuaria, et Kaergueint, id est Wintonia, atque oppidum montis Paladour, quod nunc Septonia nuncupatur.'

Early portion  
of the chrono-  
nicle.

The narrative of the events of the first four hundred and forty-six years of the second book has also been rejected from the present edition; with very few, if any, exceptions, there is nothing contained in it having reference to the history of England upon which any reliance can with safety be placed. This part of the chronicle is made up chiefly of the accounts of the lives and deaths of our Lord and his apostles, in which are found the well known letters of Abgarus and Pilate, the history of the Jewish and Roman kings, the Herods and Cæsars, including the destruction of Jerusalem by Titus, the persecutions of the first Christians, with a particular account of the heresies that first disturbed the infant Church; to which are added miracles said to have attended the martyrdom of different holy men, with a list of popes, emperors, and occasional notices of other individuals, eminent for piety or learning in the time in which they lived. The notices relating to the history

of our own country are meagre in the extreme. The history of England indeed at this period is to be sought rather in that of the Roman empire, in the works of Cæsar, Tacitus, Dion Cassius, Suetonius, and others, whom Wendover, we regret to say, has rejected for the fables of Geoffrey of Monmouth, whom he has made his almost sole authority. The names of Caractacus and Boadicea are nowhere found in the chronicle, whilst that of Arviragus, the creation probably of Geoffrey or of Walter of Oxford, occupies a conspicuous place. In the death of Severus, the histories of Dion and of Herodian remain unconsulted, whilst the account given by Geoffrey is followed with inconceivable blindness. The only portions of this part of the history which the Editor feels himself at liberty to print are the extracts following ; the one containing an account of the passion of England's first martyr, which, although a compilation from other well known lives,<sup>1</sup> differs from that by Beda, and is told by our historian in his own way ; the second extract, because it connects the history of Britain after the departure of the Romans with the point at which the present text has been commenced.

*'De persecutions Diocletiani et Maximiani.'*

'Anno gratiæ CCCIV., qui est annus imperii A.D. 304.  
Diocletiani decimus nonus, orta est persecutio Life of  
Christianorum, post Neronem decima, qua fere S. Alban.  
deleta est Christianitas, per orbem universum ;  
nam Diocletianus in oriente, Maximianus Hercu-  
leus in occidente, vastari ecclesias et Christianos  
interfici præceperunt. Proponitur etiam edic-  
tum, ut cunctæ per orbem terrarum ecclesiæ ad

---

<sup>1</sup> Act. SS. Jun. iv. 146.

A.D. 304.  
Life of  
S. Alban.

ut illa indutus hostium cuneos penetraret illæsus. Ipse vero magistri sui <sup>1</sup> caracallam sibi retinuit, certissime sciens, quod non æquis oculis eam saevientes aspicerent inimici. Igitur Amphibalus, Albani precibus acquiescens ante lucis exortum fugam arripuit, per viam tendens quæ de civitate vergit ad aquilonem; Albanus vero eum conducebat, quamdiu ambobus visum est expedire. Cumque discederent ab invicem, et ultimum sibi valefacerent, quis eorum lachrymas, sine lachrymis, ad memoriam possit revocare? Itaque in Walliam Amphibalus, ad martyrium festinat Albanus habitu magistri vestitus, ut vel hoc modo gentilium animos in se solum facilius provocaret. At ubi dies exortus est, equites animis efferatis in ædes Albani irruunt, et universa perlustrantes ipsum tandem in tugurio periunt in habitu peregrino, nudis pedibus ante crucem Domini, quam sibi magister suus reliquerat, precibus incumbentem. Mox illum satis inhumane rapientes, vinculis ad præsentiam judicis pertraxerunt, qui tunc cum universa civitate aris assistebat, ut diis suis hostias immolarent. Albanus vero, ut se servum crucis ostenderet, signum Dominicum in manibus jugiter præferebat. Quem judex vultu trucissimo perstringens, ut diis offerret libamina, imperavit. Cui beatus Albanus, ‘Diis vestris falsis nullo modo sacrifico, qui nec sibi nec aliis aliquando profuerunt.’ Tunc, ex præcepto judicis, Albanus apprehensus extenditur ad flagella, sed inter verbera verba Dei jugiter resonabant; cumque lictorum manus fatigarentur, et res effectum non haberet, sub custodia judicis mensibus sex et eo

---

<sup>1</sup> *Caracallam.*] Upon the use and meaning of this word, the reader may consult archbishop Ussher's *Britan. Eccl. Antiq.* 1687, p. 78.

amplius detineri jubetur. Sed mox injuriam martyris elementa testantur; a tempore namque comprehensionis illius usque in diem quo carcere fuerat absolvendus, terram ros aut pluvia non infudit, sed in dies singulos tota regio sub sole ardentissimo torrebatur; non agri, non arbores, quicquam fructuum protulerunt, elemento contra impios dimicante. Judex autem et cives Verolamii, plagam hujusmodi non ferentes, Alzano crimen imponunt, congregatisque in unum omnibus, ipsum sibi præsentari fecerunt; et dum staret in medio multitudinis, omnes unanimi consensu in sanctum Dei mortis tulere sententiam. Ipse interim crucem Domini, quam manu tenebat, frequenter deosculans et adorans, causam suam Domino commendabat. Albanus igitur de judicio ad supplicium trahebatur; cumque iter agentes ad flumen rapidissimum pervernerunt, oratione ad Deum emissâ, inter undas viam populo patefecit. Tunc <sup>1</sup>miles ille, qui trahebat Albanum, viso miraculo, ensem projicit, fatetur errorem, et a sancto veniam deprecatur. His ita gestis, inimici veritatis hominem arripunt, dentes excutiunt, et omnia illius ossa immisericorditer confringunt, et, si nihil in corpore remansit illæsum, fides tamen, quæ fervebat in pectore, laedi non potuit.

*'Albanus fontem orando produxit.'*

Tandem cacumen montis ascendentes inventerunt illic turbam hominum sine numero, qui sub sole ardenti siti æstuantes extremum spiritum jam trahebant; quorum miseriis Albanus condolens, in montis cacumine fontem orando

<sup>1</sup> Miles.] His name was Heraclius, or Araclius, according to Capgrave and the writer of the acts of SS. Albinus and Amphibulus; Ussher, p. 89.

A.D. 304.  
Life of  
S. Alban.

A.D. 304.  
Life of  
S. Alban.

produxit. Exstinxerunt sitim homines infideles, sed adhuc tamen humanum sanguinem sitiebant. Quid plura? ex omni populo carnifex unus eligitur, qui scelus præ omnibus perpetraret; qui mox summis viribus ensem librans in cervicem, uno ictu caput martyris amputavit, sed, oculis ferientis simul cum capite martyris in terram carentibus, ipse totus efficitur tenebrosus. Crux vero, quam vir sanctus jugiter in manibus ferre consueverat, felici jam cruento respersa, super herbam decidit, eamque Christianus quidam occulte rapuit et ignorantibus paganis abscondit. Quo facto, miles ille, quem paulo ante semivivum pagani reliquerant, annisu, quo potuit, montem manibus reptando concendit. Tunc judex viri vulneribus insultans ait, 'Obsecra nunc Albanum, ut ossa tua dignetur in statum pristinum reformare.' 'Ego,' inquit, 'credo, quod beatus Albanus, suis sanctis meritis, mihi poterit integrum reddere sanitatem et ad clementiam perducere Salvatoris.' Tunc caput martyris reverenter assumens, illudque corpori devotus apponens, desperatum corporis robur recuperare coepit, et sanus effectus Albani meritum Christique potentiam, omni populo audiente, non destitit prædicare. Deinde terram aperiens, humo corpus Albani operit, et tumulum desuper ipse componit. Quo viso, miles ille ab hostibus crucis apprehendi jubetur, et, nimis horrendo suppicio sanctum illius corpus diserpentes, ad ultimum caput gladio amputarunt; sicque miles ille, in fide Christi perseverans, una cum beatissimo Albano corona martyrii meruit sublimari. Nocte igitur insecura, visa est columna lucis e tumulo beati martyris cælos penetrare, per quem descendentes angeli et ascendentess noctem totam in Dei laudibus deducebant. Inter cætera vero

quæ canebant, vox ista frequentius est audita, A.D. 304.  
'Albanus vir egregius martyr exstat gloriosus.' Life of S. Alban.

Cumque ad hoc spectaculum subito fieret concursus paganorum, unus ex omnibus in hanc vocem prorupit, 'Hæc miranda, quæ videmus, Christum Dei filium, liquido constat, operari. Eamus et inquiramus virum Dei, qui, sicut nos-tis, Albanum prædicando convertit ad Christum.' Cumque omnibus ista sententia placuisset, ad mille homines versus Walliam iter arripiunt, et viram Dei Amphibalum ibidem invenerunt, re-gionis illius hominibus verbum vitæ prædicantem. Cui adventus sui causam exponentes, crucem, quam suo quondam Albano commendaverat, cruore respersam obtulerunt. At ille Deo gratias agens novis auditoribus fecit de religione sermonem; qui mox illi consentientes, signaculum, quod in Christo est, ab ejus sacris manibus alacriter suscepserunt. Et cum dies aliquot præterissent, fama facti Verolamii perve-nit. Cives vero, nimio furore commoti, totis viribus cum ingenti strepitu iter ineunt, ac si essent ad prælia processuri. Audientes autem celebre nomen Amphibali, post dies aliquot ad eum, fama ducente, pervenient, et in circuitu ejus quos quærebant, verbis illius inveniunt intendentes. At gentiles, diabolica inventi furia, in sanctos Dei gladiis sævientibus irruunt, atque corporibus eorum minutim dilaceratis, beatas cælo animas cum gaudio intulerunt; sicque pat-ter a filio, fratres a fratribus, cives a civibus, trucidantur. Ex hoc sacro collegio unus om-nino superfuit, qui, in via corporis infirmitate de-tentus, adesse non potuit. Sanctus Amphibalus, vallatus corporibus occisorum, beatas animas Domino commendabat, in quem cruenti carnifices omnem iracundiam suam refundentes, et brachia

A.D. 304.  
Life of  
S. Alban.

loris dirissimis constringentes, ante equos suos versus civitatem Verolamium nudis incedere pedibus compulerunt; sed quo magis Albano suo appropinquavit, eo amplius asperitas viarum et laboris injuria mitigatur, et, dum iter agitur, hominem languidum, videntibus cunctis, vinctus Amphibalus a vinculis infirmitatis absolvit. Denique, cum sua jam possent moenia cernere civitatis, paululum in hoc loco deserto scuta reclinant et hastas telluri defigunt. Cæteris quiescentibus, solus Amphibalus requiem non habebat, sed suis persecutoribus verbum prædicens docuit, quod verbum Dei non potuit alligari. Nuntiatur interim in civitate quod cives in patriam remeassent, et quod magistrum Albani secum reduxissent; dictum est etiam quod omnes, pro quibus iter tam laboriosum assumpserant, in extremis finibus gladio perierunt. Judex autem, cum talia cognovisset, coram omni populo dixit, ‘Egrediamur universi et inimico nostro occurramus, ut qui dignoscitur offendisse, ab omnibus sibi vindictam sentiat irrogari.’ Tunc alter alterum, ut velocius eat, hortatur, et in suum sese excitant inimicum. Tendentes ergo per viam, quæ de civitate vergit ad aquilonem, urbem fere vacuam reliquerunt; et venientes ad virum Dei, invenerunt eum vinculis irretitum, quem mox atrocious arripientes expoliaverunt, visceraque ejus patefacta palo in terram refixo circumligantes, sanctum Dei in circuitu pali ambulare fecerunt. Vir Dei Amphibalus inter tales et tot angustias constitutus, cum nulla daret doloris indicia, inimici crucis aciores effecti eum quasi ad signum statuunt, cultellisque et lanceolis, quod reliquum erat corporis confodiunt et confringunt. Tunc plurimi, beati martyris constamtiam intuentes et magis admirantes, Christianæ

se fidei subdiderunt, excelsa voce Deum depre- A.D. 304.  
cantes, ut meritis beati martyris et intercessione Life of  
S. Alban.  
æternæ vitae participes fieri mererentur. Quo cognito, spiculatores mille viros morti tradiderunt, beato Amphibalo intuente, eorumque animas Domino commendante. His ita gestis, fervent impii in necem innocentis, et, ut beatum spiritum ejiciant, saxorum grandine graviter conquassant. Ille vero, in oratione persistens, nec in partem alteram vel ad horam declinavit; sed, cum tandem invictum spiritum cælo esset redditurus, duo angeli cælesti fulgore radiantes de supernis ad eum veniebant, qui, beati viri animam nimio candore fulgentem secum assumentes, in cælum cum hymnis et laudibus detulerunt. Vox quoque de cælo ad eum facta est, audientibus cunctis, in hunc modum, 'Amen dico tibi, quia hodie cum discipulo eris in paradiiso.' Tunc quidam fidelis in Christo, beati martyris corpus clam auferens, sub terra diligenter occuluit, quandoque, ut confidimus, di vino munere in lucem proferendum. Eodem tempore in Britannia passi sunt Aaron et Julius, cum aliis pluribus viris et foeminis, qui ad egregias Hierusalem portas absque cunctamine per martyrium convolarunt.'

\* \* \* \* \*

*'Ut Britanni ab omnibus devicti regem sibi de minori  
Britannia postulantes acceperunt.'*

*'Anno gratiæ ccccxxxv. Withelinus, Londo- A.D. 435.  
niensis archiepiscopus, scientia et virtutibus in- The Britons  
signis habetur. Hic, cum calamitatem Britanniae seek a king  
abjectionemque Romanorum intellexisset, from Bri-  
fretavit in minorem Britanniam, quæ olim Armo- taney.  
rica sive Lecania dicebatur, ut auxilium a suis  
confratribus postularet. Regnabat tunc in illa*

A.D. 435.

Aldroenus rex a Conano quartus, cui Maximianus tyrannus regnum illud dederat; qui, viso tantæ reverentiæ viro, illum cum honore suscepit. At archiepiscopus, adventus sui causam exponnens, in fletum prorupit et dixit, ‘Satis tuæ nobilitati patet, rex, qualiter Maximianus, qui hoc regnum vobis contulit, insulam nostram suis militibus spoliaverit, qualiterque eam a viris et foeminis nobilibus vacuan reliquerit, et quam miseriam nos vestri concives passi fuerimus, dum modo omnibus nationibus præda sumus et rapina. Non solum ab hoste deprimimur sed potius fame morimur, maxime cum omni genere pabuli, excepto artis venatoriaæ solatio, careamus. Ab omni igitur alia spe repulsi, gratiam vestram adivimus, rex, implorantes ut præsidium adhibeas personaliter accedens, et regnum tibi debitum, expulsis barbaris, ad libitum disponas, populum regas, et patriam, quæ olim regna longe posita sibi subjecerat, ad pristinum statum reducas.’ Cumque hæc et alia archiepiscopus diu allegasset, rex in hunc modum respondit, ‘Olim tempus erat, quo non negarem insulam Britanniæ recipere, sed, quoniam infortunia accesserunt, vilior mihi facta est et meis principibus odiosa. Veruntamen, eo quod avi et atavi mei insulam illam tenuerunt, trado vobis Constantimum fratrem meum, et duo millia militum cum eo; qui, si Deus permiserit, patriam ab hostium irruptione liberabit, atque diademate ibidem insignitus cum gloria et honore regnum possidebit.’ Vix finem dicendi fecit rex, cum archiepiscopus, vocato Constantino, viro in militia approbato, ei in hæc verba arrisit, ‘Christus vincit, Christus regnat, Christus imperat; adsit igitur Christus regi Britanniæ, qui est defensio nostra, ut insulam misserrimam ad pristinam libertatem reducat.’ Quid

plura ? Paratis in littore navibus, eligitur ex A.D. 435. diversis regni partibus supradictus militum numerus ; qui mare ingressi in Totonesii portu prospere applicuerunt. Nec mora, confluxerunt undique Britones dispersi de latibulis et speluncis, et cum hostibus congressi victoram per industriam novi regis et beati viri meritum sunt adepti. Deinde facta in Cicestria concione, ererunt Constantimum in regem, eique conjugem dederunt ex nobili Romanorum prosapia ortam, quæ industria beati Withelini, Londoniensis archiepiscopi, fuerat educata ; ex qua tres filios inclytos, Constantem scilicet, Aurelium Ambrosianum atque Uterpendragon, processu temporis generavit. Constantem vero primogenitum suum Deo sacrificavit, tradens eum in ecclesia sancti Amphibali infra Wintoniam, ubi monachalem ordinem suscepit ; Aurelium Ambrosianum atque Uterpendragon archiepiscopo Londinensi ad nuntiandum commisit.

\* \* \* \* \*

*'Rex Britonum Constantinus interfectus est, cui  
successit filius ejus Constans in regno.'*

*'Anno gratiæ ccccxlv. Constantinus, Britan-*

A.D. 445.  
Death of  
Constantine  
and succe-  
sion of  
Constans.

*norum rex, quodam die dum venatum iret, a Picto quodam, qui in ejus obsequio fuerat, in virgulto densissimo cum cultro interfectus est ; quo defuncto, surrexit dissensio inter proceres quis eorum sublimaretur in regno ; filii quoque regis defuncti, Aurelius Ambrosianus atque Uterpendragon, missi fuerant in minorem Britanniam ad educandum, qui, si præsentes fuissent, propter ætatem puerilem regnare non possent. Porro Vortigernus, consul Gewiseorum, qui omni nisu in regnum aspirabat, perrexit Wintoniam et Constantem monachum, Constantini filium, de claus-*

A.D. 445.

tro extractum duxit Londonias, et eum, vix an-  
nuente populo, eo quod monachus esset, in regem  
erexit. Withelinus enim, Londoniensis archiepi-  
scopus, tunc defunctus fuerat, nec fuit alter, qui  
illum in regem sublimare præsumpsisset; sed ipse  
Vortigernus vices episcopi gerens, [coronam] ca-  
piti suo propriis manibus impressit. Sublima-  
tus igitur rex, omnia regni negotia Vortigerno  
disponenda commisit. At Vortigernus, astutus  
et sapiens, castella et munitiones regni suis sa-  
tellitibus tradens, quo modo regem traderet cal-  
lide cogitabat. Cepit itaque thesauros regis in  
custodiam, et numerum militum ac servientium  
diebus singulis augmentavit. Deinde regem ad-  
iens, consilium dedit ei, ut centum Pictos, quos  
ad omnem perditionem et dolum promptos nove-  
rat et paratos, in obsequio suo retineret, ut cor-  
pus suum diebus ac noctibus ab incursione hos-  
tium tuerentur. Porro, annuente rege, supradic-  
tus Pictorum numerus cum privata regis familia  
est admissus; at Vortigernus eos ita stipendiis  
ditabat militaribus et epulis delicatissimis refi-  
ciebat, quod adorantes illum per plateas dignum  
imperio indicabant. Cum igitur gratiam omni-  
um se habere cognovisset Vortigernus, inebriavit  
eos quodam die, dicens cum lachrymis, se a Bri-  
tannia recessurum, cum non haberet de proprio  
numero [unde] quinquaginta militibus stipendia  
provideret; deinde, quasi tristis, recedens ad  
hospitium suum, ipsos in aula potantes reliquit;  
quo audito, murmurabant Picti ad invicem, di-  
centes, ‘Utquid monachum istum non interfici-  
mus, ut Vortigernus solio regni potiatur?’ Sur-  
gentes itaque inebriati, impetum fecerunt in  
regem; illoque perempto, Vortigerno caput re-  
gium detulerunt. Quod cum intellexisset Vor-  
tigernus, quasi contristatus, in fletum prorupit,

ut proditionem factam sub lachrymarum vela- A.D. 445.  
mine palliaret. At Vortigernus, civibus Lon-  
doniensibus, ut hæc acciderant, convocatis, Pic-  
tos illos jussit decollari, ut propriam fraudem  
ab hoc scelere redderet excusatam. Tandem,  
cum neminem sibi parem in regno conspexisset,  
imposuit capiti suo coronam Britanniæ, et su-  
pergressus est principes universos. Sublima-  
tus ergo, coepit in eo crescere omnium lues sce-  
lerum, crudelitas præcipue et odium veritatis,  
contemptus Dei, amor mendacii, ebrietas, ani-  
mositas, litigium, contentio, perditio, livor anxius  
et luxus, cum cæteris flagitiis, adeo quidem quod  
nec unum ex omnibus sibi creditur defuisse, et,  
quod maxime honestati contrarium est, nobiles  
deprimens et infimos extollens, Deo et homini-  
bus efficitur odiosus.

*' Ut sanctus Germanus in Britanniam veniens  
Pelagianam hæresim delevit.*

*' Anno gratiæ cccc XLVI. hæresis Pelagiana, per A.D. 446.  
Agricolam Pelagii discipulum illata, fidem Bri- Arrival in  
tonum feða peste maculavit. Verum Britanni, England of  
cum neque suscipere dogma perversum, gratiam S. Germanus.  
Christi blasphemando, ulla tenus vellent, neque  
versutiam nefariæ persuasionis refutare verbis  
certando sufficerent, inveniunt salubre consi-  
lium, ut a Gallicanis episcopis auxilium belli spi-  
ritualis inquirant. Quamobrem collecta ibidem  
magna synodo, quærebatur in commune qui illuc  
in succursum fidei mitti deberent, atque omnium  
judicio eligebantur apostolici sacerdotes, Germa-  
nus Autisiodorensis et Lupus Trecasinæ civitatis  
episcopi, qui ad confirmandam fidem Britannias  
venirent; qui, cum prompta devotione preces et  
jussa sanctæ ecclesiæ suscepissent, intrant ocea-  
num, et, licet cum labore, tandem decursis in*

A.D. 446. brevi pelagi spatiis, optati littoris quiete potiuntur. <sup>1</sup>Collecta itaque apud Verolamium synodo, immensa multitudo etiam cum conjugibus et liberis illuc excitata convenerat. Aderat populus, exspectatur futurus et judex, adstabant partes dispari conditione consimiles, inde divina fides, hinc humana præsumptio, inde superbia, hinc Christus, inde Pelagius auctor pravitatis. Primo in loco beatissimi sacerdotes copiam disputandi adversariis præbuerunt, qui sola nuditate verborum diu inaniter et aures occupant et tempora. Deinde antistites venerandi torrentes eloquii sui, cum apostolicis et evangelicis imbris, perfuderunt. Miscebatur sermo proprius cum divino, et assertiones modestissimas lecti- num testimonia sequebantur. Convincitur vanitas, perfidia confutatur, ita ut ad singulas verborum objectiones errasse se, dum nequit respondere, fatetur. Populus arbiter vix manus continent, judicium cum clamore testatur. Post hunc diem ita ex animis omnium suasio iniqua deleta est, ut sacerdotum doctrinam sitientibus desideriis sectarentur. Compressa itaque perversitate damnable, ejusque auctoribus confutatis, atque animis omnium fidei puritate compositis, sacerdotes beatum Albanum martyrem, auctori Deo per ipsum gratias acturi, petierunt; ubi Germanus, omnium apostolorum diversorumque martyrum secum reliquias habens, facta oratione, jussit revelli sepulchrum, pretiosa ibidem munera conditurus, arbitrans opportunum, ut membra sanctorum ex diversis regionibus collecta, quos pares meritis receperat cælum, sepulchri quoque unius teneret hospitium. Quibus depositis honorifice ac soci-

---

<sup>1</sup> Collecta itaque . . . synodo.] Concerning this synod see Wilkins, Concil. tom. i. p. 1, note.

ingdon have been carefully examined and freely used. In this respect, indeed, it is to be regretted that he has been so much of the compiler. It would have been more interesting and more instructive for us in the present day, had he exercised his own judgment more, and been less indiscriminate in his selections, had he registered only those accounts which in his own time were esteemed the most trustworthy, instead of, as his object seems to have been, recording actions indifferently as he found them written, without sufficiently caring to distinguish between truth and fiction. These remarks will of course apply principally to the earlier portions of his history. In the relation however of those things which happened in his own day, which he himself may have witnessed, or had opportunity of gathering from his contemporaries, our author's character as an historian appears in most favourable colours. There is a plain straightforward simplicity in what he says, coupled with a fearless exposure of injustice and crime, that must gain for him the credit of impartiality from his readers; whilst, at the same time, there is a kindness of feeling evident throughout that does him credit. In his history of the life of John there is no indulgence in unnecessary abuse, no speaking of him as 'factus de rege tyrannus, immo de homine in bestiale pro-rumpens feritatem,' no 'vulpina calliditas,'—phrases supplied by the pen of the historian who succeeded him and enlarged his work; but a plain, straightforward narrative of facts, and manly rebuke where it appeared necessary. Neither as regards the style of the two historians can I agree with the editor of Matthew Paris in considering him either as 'comptior' or

'Latinior' than our chronicler. On the contrary, we might safely affirm, that, where Paris deviates from the text of Wendover, his alterations are for the most part to a more bald and inelegant reading.

Whilst on the subject of comparison between these two writers, it will perhaps be expected that some notice should be taken of the remarks lately put forth in an Introduction to the Chronicle of William de Rishanger, tending, as they do, to rob Wendover of the claims which he assuredly has to the gratitude of every lover of English history. In that Introduction it is stated<sup>1</sup> 'That the probability is, that, after the account of the reign of Henry the second, little or nothing of the work of Matthew Paris can be ascribed to Wendover,' and the above conjecture is based upon the following grounds, in the first place, namely, that in a 'large volume of S. Alban's monastery, MS. Cotton, Claud. E. iv., it is directly stated that Wendover's history was continued by him to the time of Henry the second,<sup>2</sup> after which time flourished Matthew Paris, who necessarily enlarged the chronicle of the Roger before named:' in the next, that in the only manuscript of Wendover now extant, Douce MS. 207, 'there is a marginal note, stating that at the year 1190 a new chronicler continued the work.' To the former of these statements great weight would be due, either were the manuscript in question itself of respectable antiquity, or if the assertion it contains were borne out at all by collateral testimony; but it has neither of these requisites. The manuscript was written certainly two hun-

Objections  
answered.

<sup>1</sup> P. xvii.

<sup>2</sup> 'Plane et perlucide ab initio nes digessit chronica sua usque ad tempora regis Henrici a conmudi per annorum distinctio- questu secundi'; p. xvii.

dred, if not two hundred and fifty years after Wendover's death, and therefore is not to be preferred in evidence to those MSS. of Matthew Paris and Wendover, of a much earlier period, which distinctly state, the one as quoted by Wats in the Variæ Lectiones, that in the year 1234 ‘Dominus Rogerus de Wendovre, prior aliquando de Beluvair, huc usque chronica sua hæc digessit. Incipit frater Matthæus Parisiensis;’ the others, that in 1235 ‘Huc usque scripsit chronica Rogerus de Wendovre.’ There can scarcely be a reasonable doubt, that, in the S. Alban's MS. the word ‘secundi,’ by an error of the scribe, has been written for ‘tertii,’ and for these reasons; Had the writer thought that Wendover's history extended only to the reign of Henry the second, (he does not at all imply that it reached to the end of it, ‘usque ad tempora’ being his phrase,) he surely would not have expressed himself in such terms as the following with respect to the chronicle, ‘cui pene debent totius regni cronographi quicquid habent.’ In point of fact, he would have been stating an untruth; for historians, taking the mean of Henry the second's reign, would only have been indebted to Wendover for the history of about fifty years, from the point, that is, where Malmsbury had ceased; no, nor even that, for why are the chronicles of Henry of Huntingdon, of Eadmer, of William of Newburgh, of Simeon of Durham, and others, to be set aside? In the next place, the phrase ‘ex post’ would never have been used to signify so great an interval as fifty years, namely, from 1170 to 1220, when ‘Matthæus Parisiensis claruit.’

But the internal evidence to be deduced from the work itself is sufficient to prove, that to the

year 1235 it has been written by another hand than that of Matthew Paris. The numerous interpolations, the different circumstances related connected with the same story,—those, for instance, amongst many others, in the account of the visit of the archbishop of Armenia to England in 1228, and the diametrically opposite statements of the one and the other in reference to the plunder of S. Alban's in 1217,<sup>2</sup> all concur to shew that Matthew Paris was not the writer of the chronicle in question; and if so, to whom, if not to Wendover, are we to look for the authorship?

But to the second reason for his conclusion adduced by the editor of Rishanger. He says that in the Douce MS. ‘there is a marginal note stating, that at the year 1190 a new chronicler continued the work. On this point the editor has been strangely misinformed; although, even if there were such a note extant, we should be very careful how we received the testimony of a much later hand. The marginal note in question, however, is to be found at the commencement of the year 1189, and is as follows, ‘Huc usque in libro cronicarum Johannis abbatis.’ It is written in very faint ink, or rather, as it appears, with a kind of lead pencil, a writing with which all who consult MSS. of the middle ages are well acquainted, and has been by a still later hand transcribed on the opposite margin thus, ‘Usque hoc cronica Johannis abbatis et hic finis.’ But how are we to conclude that all before this time was the work of abbot John, and all since that year by another chronicler? Nothing is more common with writers of chronicles

<sup>1</sup> Edit. Wats, p. 351.

<sup>2</sup> Edit. Wats, p. 294.

than to notice where other historians ceased their labours. Wendover informs his readers in his text the years in which Marianus Scotus and Sigebert of Gemblours ended their histories; but such statements, we know, cannot imply that all before those respective years was by their hand. And so in the present instance, if the writer of the Introduction will turn to Pits, edit. 1619, p. 255, he will there read that John of Hagustaldt, or Hexham, continued his chronicle to the first year of the reign of king Richard the first, namely, 1189, a date which exactly tallies with the marginal note. This is not offered as the solution of the difficulty, although it would appear to be a very simple and natural one.

There is still a rather curious circumstance connected with this point that is deserving our consideration, tending, as it does, to shew that the earlier as well as the later portions of the chronicle were written by the same hand. It has been before observed that Wendover in the first book of his chronicle has copied verbatim many paragraphs from the *Historia Scholastica* of Petrus Comestor; and it is well known that that writer died in 1178, and that the *Historia* was written between 1169 and 1175. Doubtless, then, copies of that work may have been sent into England before 1189; but it appears from Newcome<sup>1</sup> that in the time of John of Studham, the twenty-first abbot, who died in the year 1214, by the industry of Raymond the prior a copy of that book was obtained for the library of the abbey; and it is mentioned in such a manner as would lead us to suppose that no other copy had existed there before.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hist. S. Alban's*, p. 103.

The fallacy in the remaining argument of the editor, conclusive though he calls it, is almost too palpable to need exposure. It is drawn from an assertion of Paris himself, at the end of the account of John's embassy to the emperor of Morocco in 1213, where he says, 'audiente Matthæo, qui et hæc scripsit et narravit.' It is certainly clear from this that Paris did write the paragraph in question, and probably the account which precedes it; but, until a MS. of Wendover be discovered that contains either, it cannot be allowed, of course, to have any weight.

It would not have been thought necessary to say so much upon this point, had not the statements above referred to been adopted by the Duc de Luynes, and introduced in his preface to the translation of Matthew Paris, lately published. As this is likely to be, and deservedly so from the very able manner in which it has been executed, a standard work upon the Continent, it has been thought due to Wendover to set his claims in their true light.

Of the present edition, the first of this writer that has ever issued from the press, a few words will suffice. The text is taken from the only manuscript of Wendover believed now to be extant, the property of the late Mr. Douce, and bequeathed by him, with the rest of his MSS. and printed books, to the Bodleian library. It is a folio volume on vellum, written in two columns, almost at the close probably of the thirteenth century. It is unfortunately imperfect in two places: in one from the year 879 to 894, where the history has been continued in the text from an excellent MS. of Matthew of Westminster, who fortunately at this point is an exact copyist of Wendover, collated with the edition

of 1601 ; and again the MS. is mutilated in the narrative of the events of the years 1191 and 1192, where the text has been supplied from what remains of the Wendover MS. destroyed at the fire of Ashburnham House, now retained in the various readings of Wats' edition of Matthew Paris.<sup>1</sup>

Throughout the three last volumes the reader will find these variations carefully preserved, that the present may form as complete an edition of the work as it is at this day possible to furnish.<sup>2</sup> Of the history of the MS. there exists no positive information, further than that it was purchased by Mr. Douce at the sale of books belonging to the late Sir John Sebright, in the catalogue of which it is described as the *Flores Historiarum* of Matthew of Westminster.

The editor of Rishanger indeed thinks that ‘there can scarcely be any reasonable doubt that the MS. in question is the same with one which, in the year 1585, belonged to one Doctor Matthew Carew,’ and gives the following reason for his opinion, namely, that the transcriber of an extract from this MS., now in the Sloane collection, MS. 1301, ‘in copying the two lines of poetry which occur at the end of the chronicle, not understanding the word ‘tenuit’ as written in the manuscript, has made a kind of fac-simile of the MS. contraction ; and this corresponds with that in the Douce manuscript.’ But it is inconceivable whence the editor can have derived his information, since, in the lines alluded to, with which our history concludes, no such word as ‘tenuit’ is to be found !

<sup>1</sup> In edit. Wats, p. 163, l. 22; | an Appendix, containing the various  
169, l. 21.

<sup>2</sup> The editor hopes at a future period to be enabled to publish | Matthew Paris, inserted in the chronicle of Wendover.

A MS. of Wendover, commencing with the Nativity, is spoken of in a note prefixed to a copy of Matthew of Westminster, in the Bodleian library [MS. Laud, 572], as having belonged to Sir Christopher Heidon, knight, of Norfolk, but we have no means of ascertaining whether that MS. is at present in existence or not. Nichols, indeed, in his history of Leicestershire, has made the MSS. of Wendover and Paris identical.

In the notes to the present edition the editor has been anxious to say only so much as appeared to be useful for the general purpose of illustration, or to amend the chronology, which, often confused, owing to the different periods at which the year was commenced by different authors, or from inaccuracy, arising from the scanty means of information at the time, later researches, and greater opportunities for arriving at the truth, have enabled him to correct.

It only remains for him to add his best thanks to Mr. Bentley for the attention and expedition with which the work has been passed through the press, as also to Mr. Fehon for the great care with which the index has been compiled.

Oxford,  
16 Nov. 1842.



# ROGERI DE WENDOVER

LIBER, QUI DICITUR,

FLORES HISTORIARUM.

---

*De coronatione regis Angliae Henrici tertii et rebus  
ejus tempore gestis.*



EFUNCTO Johanne, Anglorum A.D. 1216.  
rege, convenerunt apud <sup>Coronation of</sup> 'Glover- Henry III.  
niam in vigilia apostolorum Si-  
monis et Judæ, in præsentia  
Walonis apostolicæ sedis legati,  
Petrus Wintoniensis et Silves-  
ter Wigorniensis, episcopi, Ra-  
nulphus comes Cestrensis, Willelmus Mares-  
challus, comes Penbroc, Willelmus comes de  
Ferrariis, Johannes Mareschallus, Philippus de  
Albeneio, cum abbatibus, prioribus et turba  
multa nimis, ut Henricum, Johannis regis filium  
primogenitum, in regem Angliae coronarent.  
In crastino autem, paratis omnibus ad corona-

---

NOTES AND VARIOUS READINGS.

<sup>1</sup> *Gloversiam.*] Hemingford of the barons. He afterwards has left an account of the mode of Henry's election, recording a curious blunder in laying the scene of the coronation speech of the earl of Pembroke in London.

A.D. 1216.

tionem necessariis, legatus supradictus, associatis sibi episcopis et comitibus memoratis, duxerunt ad ecclesiam conventualem cum processione solemni regem coronandum, ubi ante majus altare constitutus juravit coram clero et populo, appositis sibi sacrosanctis evangelii et plurimorum <sup>1</sup>sanctorum reliquiis, quod honorem, pacem ac reverentiam portabit Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ et ejus ordinatis omnibus diebus vitæ suæ; juravit etiam, quod in populo sibi commisso rectam justitiam tenebit, quodque leges malas et iniquas consuetudines, si quæ sint in regno, delebit, et bonas observabit et ab omnibus faciet observari. Deinde fecit homagium sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ et Innocentio papæ de regno Angliæ et Hiberniæ, et juravit quod mille marcas, quas pater ejus Romanæ contulerat ecclesiæ, fideliter persolveret quamdiu prædicta regna teneret; et, his ita gestis, <sup>2</sup>Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, coronam posuit super caput et unxit eum in regem cum orationibus et cantuum modulationibus, quæ in coronatione regum solent decantari. Tandem, expletis missarum solemniis, duxerunt regem cum processione solemni episcopi et comites saepedicti regalibus indutum ad mensam, ubi omnes in ordine suo considentes epulabantur in lætitia et exultatione. In crastino autem rex cepit homagia et fidelitates ab omnibus episcopis, comitibus et baronibus, aliisque omnibus,

<sup>1</sup> *Sanctorum reliquiis.*] Paris adds, ‘ Dictante juramentum Jocelino Bathoniensi;’ in the Waverley Annals he is also spoken of as being present.

<sup>2</sup> *Petrus.*] Henry’s own account of the coronation is given in his letters to the justiciary of

Ireland, still preserved in the Close Rolls, *Fœd.* i. p. 146. Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, was then at Rome, on the subject of his suspension. In the letters just mentioned, Henry says, that he was crowned by the cardinal and bishops then present.

qui aderant, et omnes ei fidelissimum <sup>1</sup> obsequium A.D. 1216. promiserunt. Coronatus est autem Henricus tertius anno ætatis suæ decimo, in die apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, scilicet vicesimo octavo die mensis Octobris. Rex autem post coronationem suam remansit in custodia Willelmi comitis Penbroc, magni videlicet Mareschalli, qui protinus misit literas ad omnes vicecomites de regno Angliæ et castellanos, præcipiens singulis, ut regi nuper coronato essent intendentes, promittens omnibus possessiones pariter ac donaria multa, ita ut dicto regi fideliter adhærent; sicque nobiles universi et castellani, qui patri ejus servierant, ei multo fidelius quam regi Johanni adhæserunt, quia patris iniquitas, ut cunctis videbatur, filio non debuit imputari; unde omnes sese ad defensionem præparantes castella sua peroptime munire coeperunt. Animabat præterea eos, qui partem regis fovebant, quamplurimum, quod singulis diebus Dominicis ac festivis Lodowicum cum et complicibus ejus et fautoribus excommunicari videbant.

*Qualiter Lodowicus, audita morte regis Johannis,  
a Dovera recesserit.*

Cumque Lodowicus ac barones, qui apud Doverense castrum obsidionem agebant, de morte regis Johannis veridicos nuntios accepissent, invasit omnes lætitia magna, ut qui se confidebant regnum Angliæ subjugasse. <sup>2</sup> At Lodowicus,

Louis, his  
attempt  
upon Dover  
castle.

<sup>1</sup> *Obsequium.*] ‘Fidelitate et homagio omnium illorum nobis exhibitis;’ *ibid.* p. 145.

<sup>2</sup> *At Lodowicus.*] The Cotton MS. of Mat. Paris has a different account of the attempt of Louis to bring over Hubert de

Burgh, by which it appears that he sent the earl of Salisbury and a brother of Hubert, whom Louis had before taken prisoners, to use their influence with him. The result, however, was the same; see Var. Lect. Wats, ad p. 288.

A.D. 1216. Huberto de Burgo, Doverensis castri constabulario, ad suum colloquium vocato, dixit ei, 'Rex Johannes dominus tuus mortuus est, nec valet tibi castrum hoc contra me diutius tenere, cum non habeas defensorem; redde ergo castellum mihi et ad fidelitatem meam veni, et ego magnis honoribus te ditabo atque inter consiliarios meos magnus eris.' Cui Hubertus taliter fertur respondisse, 'Si dominus meus mortuus est, habet filios et filias, qui ei succedere debent; sed et de castello reddendo cum militibus sociis meis habere volo colloquium;' sicque in castrum reversus indicavit sociis verba Lodowici, qui in hoc pariter consenserunt inclusi, ut castellum Lodowico negaretur, ne illud turpiter reddendo notam proditionis incurrent. Quod cum Lodowico et baronibus nuntiatum fuisse, decreverunt minora per Angliam castella subjugare, ut, levioribus subactis, confugerent ad majora; denique, obsidione soluta, ad urbem Londoniarum sunt reversi. Sed continuo post recessum eorum milites, qui erant in [defensione] castri memorati, exeuntes combusserunt domos et ædificia, quæ ante castrum Lodowicus construxerat, et sic per provinciam hostiliter discurrentes castrum suum omnibus rebus necessariis optime munierunt.

*De obsidione et captione castelli de Hertford.*

Hertford  
castle  
besieged  
and taken.

His ita gestis, Lodowicus in crastino sancti Martini cum exercitu copioso ad municipium de Hertford perveniens illud obsidione vallavit, erectisque in gyrum machinis castelli muros subvertere nitebatur; sed Walterus de Godardville, miles de familia Falcasii, vir strenuus, cum suis commilitonibus defensioni vacans multam ex Galligenis stragem fecit. Tandem,

cum a <sup>1</sup>festo sancti Martini usque ad festum beati Nicolai laborioso nimis sumptu ibidem sedissent, reddiderunt Lodowico municipium, salvis inclusis rebus suis cum equis et armis. Reddito itaque municipio, petiit illud Robertus filius-Walteri, dicens custodiam illius ad eum antiquo jure spectare; at Lodowicus, cum super hoc a Francigenis consilium quæsivisset, responsum est ei, quod Angli non erant digni tales habere custodias, qui proprii domini proditores fuerunt. Tunc Lodowicus dicto Roberto respondit, ut patienter sustineret donec, regno subjugato, singulis redderet jura sua. Eodem tempore, in <sup>2</sup>die beatæ Catharinæ virginis et martyris, exivit de carcere nobilis vir Willelmus de Albeneio, facto prius fine pro redemptione sua sex millium marcarum; qui, facto homagio regi Henrico, tradidit ei idem rex castellum de Lafort ad custodiendum, quod ille strenuissime custodivit.

*De captione castelli de Berchamstede.*

Subjugato, ut dictum est, municipio de Hertfort, Lodowicus in die sancti Nicolai apud Berchamstede castellum se conferens illud cuneis militaribus circumcinxit. Barones vero Angliæ, qui, jubente Lodowico, a parte castri aquilonari sub foresta tentoria sua statuerant, et circa illa ordinanda ministri et servientes essent solliciti, exierunt de castello milites et servientes cum impetu, et, sarcinas baronum et bigas invadentes, vexillum Willelmi de Mandevilla rapuerunt et secum revertentes in castellum detulerunt, poenitentia ducti, quod adversariis maja non potuerunt inferre detrimenta. Eodem

<sup>1</sup> Festo.] From the 12th of November to the 6th of December. | <sup>2</sup> Die beatæ Catharinæ,] the 25th of November.

Berkham-  
stead castle  
besieged,

A.D. 1216. quoque die, baronibus ad mensam sedentibus, exierunt denuo milites et servientes prædicti de castello, et in confusionem baronum vexillum, quod paulo ante rapuerunt, præferentes cogitabant dictos barones occupare inermes; sed, aliis præmunitis, compulsi sunt ad castellum redire. Cumque dies crastinus illuxisset, jussit Lodowicus petrarias et alias belli machinas circa castri ambitum erigere, quibus undique collocatis damnosos lapides emittere non cessabant; quibus Walerannus, genere Teuthonicus, miles in opere martio probatus, cum suis commilitonibus viriliter resistentes multorum animas ex Galligenis excommunicatis ad tartara direxerunt; sed denique post diutinam ob-sidionem, ex præcepto regis, dictus Walerannus et complices ejus Lodowico castellum, salvis sibi equis et armis, reddiderunt <sup>1</sup>decimo tertio kalendas Januarii. In crastino autem, impositis suis in castello, Lodowicus venit ad sanctum Albanum, in die videlicet beati Thomæ apostoli, exigens ab abbe ut faceret sibi homagium; cui cum abbas respondisset, se nolle ei homagium facere, nisi prius absolveretur ab homagio quod fecerat regi Anglorum, Lodowicus vehementer indignatus juravit, se igne ipsam abbatiam cum villa tota crematurum, nisi face-ret quod petebat. Tandem abbas prædictus, post comminationes terrificas, interveniente Saero comite Wintoniensi, finem fecit pro se et villa tota, dans Lodowico pro induciis usque ad pu-rificationem beatæ Mariæ quater viginti marcas argenti; quo facto, Lodowicus ad urbem Londo-niarum reversus est.

<sup>1</sup> *Decimo tertio kalendas Januarii,*] or the 20th. The Waverley Annals have S. Lucy's day, or the 18th.

*Incidentia de terra promissionis.*

Eodem<sup>1</sup> anno, exspirante treuga inter fideles A.D. 1214.  
 terræ promissionis et Saracenos, in primo Progress of  
 passagio generale post concilium Lateranense,  
 congregatus est exercitus Domini copiosus in  
 Achon, cum<sup>2</sup> tribus regibus, Hierusalem scilicet,  
 Hungariæ et Cypri. Adfuerunt etiam duces  
 Austriæ<sup>3</sup> et Moraviae, cum militia magna regni  
 Teuthonici et comitibus multis virisque genero-  
 sis. Adfuerunt etiam archiepiscopi Nichossien-  
 sis, <sup>4</sup>Jovensis, Argiensis, Hungariæ, Baiocensis,  
 Bavergensis, Cicenensis, Monasteriensis et Tra-  
 jectensis, et cum eis vir nobilis et potens Wal-  
 terus de Avenis. Deinde patriarcha Hierosoly-  
 mitanus, cum magna humilitate cleri et populi  
 tollens reverenter vivificæ crucis signum, feria  
 sexta post festum Omnia sanctorum profectus  
 est ab Achon in castra Domini, quæ proces-  
 serant ad<sup>5</sup> Recordanam. Hoc autem Domi-  
 nicæ crucis lignum post terram sanctam per-  
 ditam reservatum fuit ad hæc tempora et a fide-  
 libus occultatum; imminentे enim conflictu Sa-  
 racenorū tempore Salaadini cum Christianis,  
 sicut a senioribus accepimus, crux secta fuit,  
 cuius pars ad prælium delata et ibidem perdita,  
 pars tunc reservata exstitit, quæ nunc exhibe-  
 tur. Cum tali quoque vexillo aciebus instruc-

<sup>1</sup> *Eodem.*] The account following is taken from that by Jacobus de Vitriaco, who was an eye-witness; compare *Gesta Dei per Francos*, 1129, and *Hist. Scriptt.* tom. ii. p. 435.

<sup>2</sup> *Tribus regibus.*] John, king of Jerusalem, Andrew of Hungary, [who, having washed himself in the river Jordan, would

stay no longer, but straightway returned home; *Holy Warre*, p. 152,] and Hugh of Cyprus.

<sup>3</sup> *Austria et Moravia.*] Leopold and Otho.

<sup>4</sup> *Jovensis;*] probably for Juvensis or Juvaviensis, the see of Salzburg.

<sup>5</sup> *Recordanam.*] So in *Jac. de Vitriaco*; M. Paris reads ‘ad fluvium Jordanem’.

A.D. 1216.  
Progress of  
the crus-  
aders.

tis, processerunt fideles per planum Fabæ usque ad fontem Tubanniae, eo die multum laborantes ; et, præmissis explorantibus, videntes ab adversariis concitari pulverem, incerti fuerunt utrum contra nos, an fugiendo, properarent. Sequenti die per montes Gelboe, quos habuerunt ad dextram et paludem ad sinistram, profecti sunt Bethsanam, ubi adversarius noster castrametus est ; sed, metuens adventum tam copiosi Dei viventis exercitus et tam ordinate procedentis, tentoria tollens et fugiens terram militibus Christi vastandam reliquit, unde in vigilia sancti Martini Jordanem transeuntes corpora sua laverunt in eo fideles, et pacifice quieverunt ibidem per biduum victualium copiam reperientes. Deinde super littus maris Galileæ tres fecerunt mansiones, peragrantes loca in quibus Salvator noster mirabilia operari dignatus est, corporali præsentia cum hominibus conversatus. Aspexerunt Bethsaidam, civitatem Andreæ et Petri, tunc ad modicum casale redactum ; viderunt etiam loca ubi Christus discipulos vocavit, supra mare siccis pedibus ambulavit, in deserto turbas pavit, montem oraturus ascendit, et ubi post resurrectionem cum discipulis manducavit ; et sic per Capharnaum Achon reversi sunt, infirmos suos reportantes. Deinde aliam equitationem aggressi fideles prædicti perrexerunt ad montem Thabor, ubi primo aquarum inopiam, et postmodum per defossionem copiam, repererunt ; desperabant autem capitanei exercitus de ascensu montis, donec dictum est eis, castrum fore comprehensibile, a puerō Saraceno. Consilium ergo inierunt, et Dominica prima Adventus, cum legeretur evangelium ‘ Ite in castellum quod contra vos est,’ patriarcha præcessit cum signo crucis, episcopis

et clero orantibus et psallentibus, [dum] exercitus A.D. 1216.  
 clivum montis subiret; et licet mons praeruptus Progress of  
 esset undique, et velut impossibilis in ascensu  
 et extra semitam tortam, omnes tamen viriliter  
 ascenderunt. Johannes vero, rex Hierusalem,  
 cum militia Christi, castellanum ab equo stra-  
 vit et admiraldum unum, qui primo impetu in-  
 trepidi extra portas ad montem defendendum  
 hostibus occurserunt, in stuporem eos conver-  
 tentes et fugam. Sed rex quantum meruit as-  
 cendendo, tantum demeruit descendendo; nam  
 Templarii multi et Hospitalarii et seculares,  
 quando infideles vires receperant, vulnerati  
 sunt, sed pauci mortui. In hoc autem et in  
 primo, de quo diximus, equitatu multitudinem  
 maximam virorum, mulierum ac parvolorum  
 apud Achon Christiani reduxerunt, ubi episco-  
 pus Achonensis parvulos, quoscumque vel prece  
 vel pretio obtinere potuit, baptizavit; foeminae  
 vero inter sanctimoniales distribuit et literis  
 applicare fecit. In tertio autem equitatu, cui  
 patriarcha cum clero et signo crucis non inter-  
 fuit, multa incommoda, tum per latrunculos, tum  
 ex hyemis incommodo, perpessi sunt fideles,  
 praesertim in vigilia nativitatis Dominicæ, per  
 viam, in qua illa nocte sacra tempestatem  
 ventis commotam et pluviis invenerunt; in fini-  
 bus etiam Tyri et Sidonis juxta Sarepta multa  
 perpessi fuerunt incommoda, tam aeris intem-  
 perie, quam molestia corporali.

*Qualiter barones Angliae propriam miseriam ad  
 mentem reduxerunt.*

Anno Domini MCCXVII. juvenis rex Henricus A.D. 1217.  
 fuit ad Natale apud Bristollum, praesente Wa-  
 lone legato et Willelmo Mareschallo, rectore  
 ejusdem regis et regni. Erat autem ea tempes-  
 The barons  
 incline to  
 return to  
 their allegi-  
 ance.



A.D. 1217. tate inter optimates Angliæ fluctuatio maxima cui se regi committerent, juveni videlicet Henrico, an domino Lodowico; habebant enim ex Francigenis talem tantumque contemptum, quod multi eorum consolationem non admiserunt. Auxit præterea hujus perturbationis procellam, quod Lodowicus, spreto juramento, terras, possessiones et castella eorundem optimatum, quæ eorum auxilio subegerat, illis murmurantibus, in suam redegerat potestatem, ponens in eis milites et alienigenas nationes. Cæterum, turpe sibi videbatur ad regem, quem abjecerant, redire, ne viderentur canes ad vomitum revertentes; sicque hinc inde perplexi quassatum nequiverrunt calatum reparare. Eodem tempore, decimo tertio kalendas Februarii, exierunt de castello, quod Monsorel appellatur, milites et servientes, ut prædis instarent et rapinis; quod cum per exploratores milites de Nottingham cognovissent, venerunt eis obviam, et, facto congressu, ceperunt ex obstantibus decem milites et viginti quatuor servientes, et sic, tribus ex hostibus interfectis, cum læta Victoria remearunt.

*Qualiter Falcarius villam sancti Albani spoliavit.*

S. Alban's  
wasted by  
Falcarius do.  
Brenta.

Per idem tempus, undecimo kalendas Februarii,<sup>1</sup> Falcarius, prædo pessimus, multitudine gravi congregata de præsidiis castrorum de Oxonia, Norhantona et Bedefordia, simul et Windleshores, militum et ruptariorum, venit ad villam sancti Albani in crepusculo vespertino, nocte scilicet <sup>2</sup>sancti Vincentii, atque, inopinato impetu facto, villam totam spoliavit, homines et infantes cepit ac vinculis eos arctis-

<sup>1</sup> *Falcarius.*] Paris has much concerning this individual and his wife, Margaret Rivers, noticed by Wendover below, un- der the year 1224; ed. 1640, p. 321, seq.

<sup>2</sup> *Sancti Vincentii,*] the 22nd of January.

simis mancipavit ; ad ostium quoque ecclesiæ A.D. 1217. beati Albani servientem quendam de curia interfecit, ad ecclesiam fugere cupientem ; et sic, opere nefario a ministris diaboli consummato, abbatii Willelmo significavit, ut sub omni festinatione mitteret ei centum libras argenti, alioquin ipse injecto igne villam totam cum ipso monasterio et suis ædificiis illico concremaret. Abbas vero post multas contradictiones, aliud non habens remedium, pecuniam postulatam concessit. Quibus ita gestis, dictus Falca-sius cum suis prædonibus excommunicatis, et spoliis nimis damnosis turpiterque vinctis captivis et abductis, ad castellum de Bedeford citius convolavit ; deinde cum omni multitudine prædicta ad forestam de Walbergia properans cepit ibi Rogerum de Collevilla, et plus quam sexaginta cum eo clericos et laicos de provincia illa, qui prædæ causa <sup>1</sup>ibidem latebant.

*De treugis statutis inter regem Angliae et Lodowicum.*

Circa eosdem dies nuntii Lodowici, qui pro eo steterunt in curia Romana, eidem Lodowico significaverunt, quod, nisi exiret ab Anglia, sententia excommunicationis, quam Walo legatus in eum tulerat, in die Cœnæ confirmaretur a papa. Hac itaque de causa statutæ sunt treugæ<sup>2</sup> inter Lodowicum et regem Henricum usque ad mensem de Pascha, ita scilicet, ut omnia remaneant in eo statu, quo fuerunt in die quo juratae fuerunt treugæ, in castellis et rebus aliis, usque ad terminum constitutum.

<sup>1</sup> *Ibidem latebant.*] Paris adds a story of a vision, by which he was moved to go to S. Alban's and beg for absolution, which was granted him, on the supposition that he would make some

restitution of what he had plundered from the abbey ; but this, as it appears, was no part of his intention.

<sup>2</sup> *Treuga.*] Rymer, i. p. 147.

A.D. 1217. Transfretavit<sup>1</sup> igitur Lodowicus tempore Quadragesimali, eo pacto, quod nunquam deinceps gratiam baronum Angliae habuerit sicut prius ; nam continuo venerunt ad fidelitatem regis Henrici comes Willelmus Saresbiriensis, comes Willelmus Arundel, comes Willelmus Warennae, et alii multi, dicto regi deinceps adhaerentes ; sed et magnus Mareschallus, Willelmum filium suum primogenitum ad regis fidelitatem revocans, partem Lodowici non mediocriter mutilavit.

*Incidentia de terra promissionis.*

Progress of  
the crus-  
ders.

Eodem<sup>2</sup> tempore exercitus, qui erat in Achon, quadrisarie divisus est ; reges enim Hungariæ et Cypri Tripolim profecti sunt, ubi rex Cypri adolescens diem clausit extremum. Rex vero Hungariæ, brevi tempore ibidem commoratus, cum magno terræ sanctæ dispendio recessit ; peregrinos enim et galeias, equos et jumenta, cum armis secum traxit, multum ne recederet a patriarcha rogatus, qui tandem cum sua secula excommunicatus recessit. Alia pars<sup>3</sup> pigrorum et timidorum, et eorum qui divitiis affluebant, in Achone remansit. Rex vero Hierusalem et dux Austriæ, cum Hospitalariis sancti Johannis et episcopis multis et aliis fidelibus, castrum in Cæsarea Palestinæ in brevi viriliter firmaverunt, licet frequenter hostium nuntiaretur adventus ; ibi in basilica principis apostolorum festum Purificationis patriarcha cum sex episcopis solemniter celebravit. Templarii quoque, cum domino Waltero de Avenis

<sup>1</sup> *Transfretavit.*] According to unless Philip consented to recall  
Walter of Coventry, the occasion his son.  
of Louis' absence was the threat of the pope's legates at the coun-  
cil of Melun, that they would put all France under an interdict

<sup>2</sup> *Eodem tempore.*] Jac. de Vitriac. p. 1130.

<sup>3</sup> *Pigrorum.*] 'Peregrinorum,' *ibid.*

A.D. 1217. minis in eo suspensam, brachiis elevatis et extensis, cum infixione clavorum in manibus et pedibus et capite inclinato; et hæc media fuit inter alias, in quibus corporis humani effigies non apparebat: alia quoque vice et alio loco, in villa scilicet Frisiæ, quæ Fuserhuse appellatur, crux apparuit juxta solem cærulei coloris, et hanc plures quam priorem viderunt: tertia apparuit in villa Doctham, in qua beatus Bonifacius martyrio exstitit coronatus; ubi in festo ejusdem martyris, cum multa hominum millia convenissent, visa est crux magna et alba, ac si trabes ex adverso trabis artificialiter constructa fuisset; movebatur autem paulatim ab aquilone ad orientem, et hanc multa hominum millia conspexerunt.

*De obsidione castri de Munsorel.*

Siege of  
Munsorel.

Per idem tempus, post Paschalem solemnitatem, procurante Willelmo Mareschallo, regis rectore et regni Angliæ, convenerunt ad obsidendum castrum de Munsorel Ranulphus comes Cestriæ, Willelmus comes Albemarliæ, Willelmus comes de Ferrariis, Robertus de Veteri-ponte, Briennus de Insula, W. de Cantelupo, Philippus Marci, Robertus de Gaugí, Falcarius cum castellanis suis, et alii multi ex præsidiis castrorum, qui, collocatis machinis in locis congruis, dictum castellum acriter invaserunt. Erat summus in castello Henricus de Braibroc, et decem milites cum eo, viri strenuissimi, cum servientibus multis, qui hostibus assilientibus lapides pro lapidibus, tela pro telis, viriliter remiserunt; inclusi quoque, cum per multos dies castrum defendissent, ne forte longa obsidione deficere cogerentur, miserunt ad Saerum, comitem Wintoniensem, qui tunc Londoniis erat,

*De miraculo Dominicæ crucis.*

A.D. 1217.  
Miraclo.

In crastino autem versus villam de Dunestaplia castra moventes, ecclesiam beati Amphibali, in villa de Redburnia sitam, usque ad femoralia monachos spoliabant; sanctorum insuper reliquias super sanctum altare rapientes funestis eas manibus polluerunt. Inter quos etiam quidam ex eis crucem argenteam et deauratam, in qua portio quædam Dominicæ crucis continebatur, tollens in sinu suo funesto sociis ignorantibus abscondit, sed, antequam ab ædibus oratorii recessisset, a dæmonio arreptus corruit in terram dentibus stridens et ore spumans, surgensque festinanter a dæmonio agitatus in socios ensem vibrare disposuit; at illi ejus miseriæ condolentes, ligatis manibus illius, causam penitus ignorantes, ad ecclesiam de Flamstede perduxerunt in suprema furia constitutum. Intrantes autem ecclesiam prædones, ut eam spoliarent, obviavit presbyter indutus vestibus albis, ut malitiam comprimeret impiorum; veruntamen aliquantulum de socio, quem furiosum ducebant, perterriti manus cohibuerunt a rapina, ubi, vidente presbytero et multis aliis, crux prædicta cecidit in terram, de sinu exsiliens furiosi; quam reverenter ac stupens presbyter arripiens, et a terra in editum elevans, quid hoc esset a prædonibus requisivit. Tandem in se reversi cognoverunt per virtutem animadversionis divinæ, quod a monachis, quos in proxima villa spoliaverant, crucem furtim sustulisset; in summa igitur angustia prædones constituti timuerunt valde, ne etiam ipsos spiritus nequam invaderet et, sicut socium suum fecerat, cruciaret. Tunc prædones nequissimi crucem illam cum tremore presbytero tradiderunt, adjuran-

A.D. 1217. venientes barones insultus fecerunt acerrimos in castellum, <sup>1</sup> quibus resistentes inclusi lapides et tela mortifera pro lapidibus et jaculis pro viribus remiserunt.

*Quomodo rex Angliae congregavit exercitum, ut dissolvet obsidionem castri Lincolniae.*

Preparations to relieve Lincoln. Cum hæc ibidem agerentur, Willelmus Mareschallus, regis custos et regni, de consilio Walonis legati et Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, et aliorum, quorum consilio regni gerebantur negotia, fecit convocare omnes castellanos ad regem spectantes et milites, qui erant in præsidii castrorum in partibus diversis, præcipiens ut feria secunda in hebdomada Pentecostes apud Newerc ad edictum regis convenient, et pariter cum [ipsis] obsidionem castri Lincolnensis dissolvere labarent. At illi, quibus ardens inerat desiderium bellum conserere cum Francigenis excommunicatis et etiam pro patria pugnare, venerunt gaudenter ad diem præfixum et locum ; cum quibus utique et ipse legatus cum aliis regni prælatis cum equis et viris bellicosis apparuit, ut regi inobedientes et domino papæ rebelles precibus insequerentur et armis ; habuerunt enim justam, ut sibi videbatur, causam, cum præcipue innocens esset et quasi a peccato alienus, quem adversarii ejus exhaeredare per superbiam laborabant. Cumque omnes in unum fuissent congregati, recensiti sunt in exercitu milites quadringenti, balistarii ferme ducenti quinquaginta ; servientes quoque et equites tot et tales adfuerunt innumeri, quod vices militum possent pro necessitate supplere. Principes autem exercitus fuerunt Willelmus Mareschallus et Wil-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Quibus resistentes inclusi.*] was defended by a noble lady Holinshead states that the castle named Nichola [de Camville.]

A.D. 1217. Deo et sede apostolica plenam suorum veniam peccatorum, de quibus veraciter confessi fuerunt, indulxit et in retributione justorum salutis æternæ præmia repromisit. Deinde, collata omnibus absolutione et Dei benedictione, ad arma convolarunt universi, equosque cum festinatione ascendentibus castra moverunt ovantes; venientes itaque ad villam de Stowe, quæ octo milliariis a Lincolnia distat, ibidem intrepidi pernoctarunt. Mane autem facto, bellis septem eleganter ordinatis densis agminibus, processerunt in hostes, nihil adeo metuentes quam fugam eorum, antequam ad civitatem venirent; balistarii quoque eorum exercitum semper præibant uno fere milliario; sarcinae bigarum et summariorum cum victualibus et rebus necessariis exercitum tantundem sequebantur a tergo; vexillis undique micantibus et scutis, quæ terorem non minimum videntibus incusserunt.

*Qualiter barones ab urbe Lincolnia exountes regis exercitum aestimaverint.*

reconnol-  
tered by the  
barons.

Barones vero, qui erant in civitate, et Frangigenæ tantam conceperunt securitatem in causa sua obtinendi, ut referentibus sibi nuntiis de adventu adversariorum sannas redderent et cachiinos, non cessantes ex mangonellis lapides damnosos projicere, ut castelli muros dissolverent. Sane Robertus filius-Walteri et S. comes Wintoniensis, cum audissent hostes appropinquare ad civitatem, exierunt ab urbe, ut progressum eorum inspicerent et bellatorum numerum aestimarent; qui, cum diligenter hostium adventantium circumstantia conspexissent, redierunt in urbem ad socios, dicentes, ‘ Ordinate procedunt contra nos bellatores isti, sed nos tamen multo plures sumus quam illi; unde con-

A.D. 1217.  
Battle of  
Lincoln.

etiam, quod, si vellent, potuerunt ingressum habere per posterulam, quæ propter adventum eorum fuerat jam aperta; at illi per eam noluerunt omnes intrare, sed miserunt Falcasium cum agmine toto cui præerat, et cum balistariis omnibus, qui portam civitatis saltem unam exercitui aperirent. Deinde omnis multitudo ad portam se aquilonarem conferens illam confringere vacavit; nec propter hæc barones cessabant de petrariis ad castellum lapides emittere ponderosos. Sed Falcasius interim castrum cum agmine, cui præerat, ac balistariis omnibus ingressus statuit eos subito supra muros domorum et in propugnaculis castri, qui illico tela mortifera in dextrarios baronum dirigentes equos cum sessoribus suis prostraverunt in terram, ita quod quasi in ictu oculi peditum maximam, militum ac magnatum, multitudinem effecerunt. Videns autem Falcasius ex nobilioribus adversariorum suorum plurimos in terram prostratos, prorupit de castro cum suis audacter in medium hostium; sed ab irruentibus in eum legionibus captus est et abductus, donec per probitatem balistariorum ac militum suorum liberatus est. Interea moles totius exercitus regis, januis civitatis licet cum difficultate contractis, villam ingrediens audacter prorupit in hostes. Tunc videres igitur ex ictibus gladiorum igneas prosilire scintillas et ad modum tonitrui horribilis fulminare contra capita galatea; sed tandem per balistariorum, quorum probitate equi, in quibus sedebat barones, telis confossi sunt et ad instar porcorum jugulati, pars baronum fuit penitus infirmata, nempe, quando equi in terram corruerunt interfecti, sessores eorum capiebantur, cum non esset qui eos libaret. Tandem cum regis militia, baronibus pe-

A.D. 1217.  
Prisoners  
taken at  
Lincoln.

Capti sunt etiam barones,<sup>1</sup> Robertus filius-Walteri, Richardus de Muntfichet, Willelmus de Mubrai, Willelmus de Bello-campo, Willelmus Maudut, Oliverius de Haencurt, Rogerus de Creisi, Willelmus de Colevilla, Willelmus de Ros, Robertus de Roppele, Radulphus Chainedut, et alii multi, quos longum esset enumerare. Capti sunt etiam milites trecenti, præter servientes, equites et pedites, qui facile sub numero non cadebant. Comes Perticensis in pomerio hospitalis extra villam sepultus est. Reginaldus etiam cognomento Crocus, miles de familia Falcasii, vir strenuus, ibi interfectus est et apud abbatiam de Crocstune honorifice sepultus. Interfectus est præterea in illo conflictu serviens quidam ex parte baronum, omnibus ignotus, qui extra civitatem in quadrivio quasi excommunicatus sepultus est. Isti tres tantummodo ex omnibus in tanti discrimine belli occisi referuntur.

*De spoliis civitatis et rapinis.*

Plunder of  
the city.

His ita gestis, invenerunt regii bellatores in plateis civitatis bigas baronum et Francorum, cum summaris et sarcinis vasis argenteis et varia supellectili simul et utensilibus onustas, quæ omnia in usus eorum sine contradictione cesserunt. Spoliata itaque civitate universa usque ad ultimum quadrantem, ecclesias omnes totius urbis consequenter spoliantes, arcas universas cum armariis securibus ac malleis confrerunt, rapientes in eis aurum et argentum, pannos omnis coloris ac muliebria ornamenta, annulos aureos, cum scyphis et lapidibus pre-

<sup>1</sup> *Robertus filius-Walteri.*] In the Close Rolls may be seen writs to the sheriffs ordering the restitution of lands to Fitzwalter, Montfichet, Beauchamp, Chenduit and others, who returned to their allegiance to the king.

A.D. 1217. cibum sumeret, ad regem reversus retulit coram legato omnia quæ acciderant; qui gratias Deo cum lachrymis agentes fletum citius converterunt in risum. Mane autem facto, venerunt nuntii ad regem, qui dixerunt, milites de Munsorel castrum reliquisse et aufugisse; unde rex vicecomiti de Notingham dedit in mandatis, ut, personaliter accedens ad castellum, illud subverteret ac penitus complanaret.

*De fuga baronum et Francorum a Lincolnia.*

Flight of the French.

Interfecto, ut dictum est, comite Perticensi, inierunt fugam omnes, tam equites quam pedites, versus urbem Londoniarum, quorum primus erat Mareschallus Franciæ cum castellano de Arras et Galligenis universis; veruntamen multi ex illis, et præcipue pedites fere omnes, interfecti fuerunt, antequam ad Lodowicum pervenissent, exierunt enim eis obviam homines villarum, per quas fugam fecerunt, cum gladiis et fustibus, et multos plagis impositis peremerrunt. Milites quoque circiter ducenti ad urbem Londoniarum venientes Lodowico sese præsentaverunt, luctuosa ei damna nuntiantes; quibus ipse subsannando respondens ait, quod per eorum fugam socii eorum capti fuerunt, quia, si ipsi in prælio remansissent, et se forte et socios suos a captione et periculo liberassent. Credendum est itaque confusionem hanc Lodo-wico ac baronibus Angliæ justo Dei accidisse judicio, qui, jam fere per biennium in sententia excommunicationis inveterati, nisi per divinam plecterentur severitatem, dicerent homines in cordibus suis ‘Non est Deus,’ et sic non inveniatur qui faceret bonum, nec etiam usque ad virum.

*De morte Innocentii pape.*

Eodem anno papa Innocentius, postquam se- A.D. 1217.  
disset annis octodecim, mensibus quinque et Death of  
Innocent III.  
diebus quatuor, decimo septimo kalendas Au-  
gusti humanæ naturæ debitum solvit ; cui suc-  
cedens Honorius, qui <sup>1</sup>Cincius antea dicebatur,  
sedit in cathedra Romana annis decem, mensi-  
bus septem et diebus novendecim.

*Ut Lodowicus ad patrem suum propter milites  
miserit.*

Eodem tempore Lodowicus de infortunio, quod state of  
sibi apud Lincolniam acciderat, prolapsus in Louis'  
desperationem, ne propositum suum ad effectum affairs in  
perduceret, exquisito usus consilio nuntios suos England.  
ad patrem suum et uxorem suam dominam Blan-  
cam destinavit, proponens eis damna irrepara-  
bilia, quæ sibi apud Lincolniam et baronibus  
Angliæ contigerant, quæ magis a Deo quam  
hominibus sibi doluit irrogata ; rex namque  
Anglorum adeo jam invaluit, quod in manu  
armata omnes provincias circa urbem Londoni-  
arum perlustrans exitum civitatis prædictæ sibi  
et suis complicibus jam præclusit. ‘Deficiunt  
præterea,’ ait, ‘nobis et nostris in urbe omnia  
victualium genera, quæ etiam si abundarent in  
civitate, non habemus unde illa emamus ; quo-  
circa vobis significo, quod nec habeo facultatem  
resistendi, nec ab Anglia recedendi, nisi mihi  
provideatis potenter in subsidio militari.’ Cum-  
que ad patrem de filio et ad uxorem de marito  
talia pervenissent, doluerunt valde illum in tali  
articulo esse constitutum ; et quoniam rex timuit  
filio excommunicato opem ferre, velut qui mul-

<sup>1</sup> Cincius.] Cencio Savelli, afterwards Honorius III. ; he died in March 1227.

A.D. 1217.

toties de consensu filii fuerat acriter increpatus a papa, summam negotii imposuit uxori Lodowici, quæ non segniter rem sibi impositam exsequens milites trecentos strenuos et in rebus militaribus bene paratos in subsidium viri sui cum multa armatorum manu transmittit. Sed hæc omnia regem Anglorum latere non poterant, qui jam viribus resumptis cum ingenti exercitu australia maris littora occupaverat et urbem Londoniarum nunc decreverat obsidione vallare ; assignavit ergo rex, de consilio magni Mareschalli, Philippum de Albeneio et Johannem Mareschallum simul cum quinque portubus et aliis armatis multis, qui semitas maris solerter speculantes Francorum explorarent et præpedirent adventum.

Sea-fight in  
the channel.

Igitur in die sancti apostoli Bartholomæi classis Francorum Eustachio Monacho, viro flagitosissimo et <sup>1</sup>piratæ nequissimo, commissa est, ut eam sub salvo ad urbem Londoniarum conduceret et integrum Lodowico præsentaret. Ingressi itaque mare milites supradicti habuerunt a tergo flatum turgidum, qui eos versus Angliam vehementer urgebat, sed insidias sibi fuisse paratas funditus ignorabant. Cum itaque rapido volatu multam maris viam emensi fuisserint, piratæ regis Anglorum ex obliquo venientes recensitæ sunt in parte adversa naves quater viginti, quapropter timuerunt bellum conserere navale cum navibus paucis, quæ inter galeias et naves alias numerum quadragenarium non excesserunt ; sed tandem de casu, qui apud Lincolniam acciderat, in quo pauci de multis triumpharunt, animati audacter a tergo irruerunt in hostes ; quod cum Francigenæ cognosc-

<sup>1</sup> *Piratæ.]* ‘Pietate’ in MS.

A.D. 1217. thus, ait, ' Nunquam de cætero falsis tuis promissionibus quenquam in hoc seculo seduces, proditor nequissime ; ' et sic educto gladio caput ejus amputavit. Spolia itaque navium in auro, argento, pannis sericis et armis collegerunt regales ministri ; atque, prisonibus sub salvo deputatis, significavit regi Philippus de Albeneio quæ gesta fuerant, qui pro victoria sibi cælitus concessa Dominum glorificavit, qui in rebus humanis semper est et ubique mirabilis. Hujus autem rei eventus cum ad Lodowici notitiam pervenisset, multo fortius doluit quam de infortunio sibi apud Lincolniam irrogato.

*De pace et concordia facta inter Henricum regem  
Angliae et Lodowicum.*

London  
designed by  
the earl of  
Pembroke.

Mareschallus igitur, regis et regni rector, congregavit exercitum grandem militum pariter et clientum, atque in fortitudine gravi ad urbem Londoniarum se conferens obsedit eam per gyrum, id est, per terram simul et aquam, omnemque inclusis victualium genus subtrahens ad ditionem eos compellere satagebat ; at Lodowicus in arcto positus significavit legato pariter ac Mareschallo, quod ipse voluit consilio eorum in omnibus obedire, ita tamen quod, salvo honore suo et sine suorum scandalo, pacem congruam providerent. At illi, in quibus totum pendebat negotium, et qui Lodowici liberacionem supra modum desiderabant, quandam pacis formam in scripto redactam ei remiserunt ; cui si consentire vellet, ipsi providerent et ad hoc sese obligarent, quod liberum sibi ac suis omnibus imprisiis ab Anglia facerent habere recessum ; sin autem, ipsi subversionem ipsius et scandalum omnibus modis procurarent. Hanc autem pacis formam cum Lodowicus et ejus

consiliarii inspexissent, placuit valde quod licuit A.D. 1217. eis ab Anglia recedere, ubi sibi inutile videbatur diutius commorari; mandavit itaque Lodowicus legato et magno Mareschallo, ut diem certum providerent et locum, ubi hæc prætaxata possint celeriter ad effectum perduci. Partibus autem in hoc consentientibus, convenerunt ad colloquium prope villam de Stanes, juxta flumen Thamisiæ, ad pacem reformandam, rex Henricus cum legato et magno Mareschallo et aliis multis ex una parte, Lodowicus cum comitibus ac baronibus et aliis imprisiis suis ex altera; ubi, divina cooperante gratia, in subscriptam pacis formam communiter consenserunt tertio idus Septembri.

*De forma pacis, et de gravi punitione eorum qui excommunicati erant pro rege.*

Juravit<sup>1</sup> in primis Lodowicus et omnes excommunicati et imprisi ejus cum eo, tactis sacro-sanctis evangeliis, quod starent judicio sanctæ ecclesiæ et quod de cætero fideles erunt domino papæ et ecclesiæ Romanæ. Juravit etiam, quod incontinenti recederet cum omnibus suis de regno Angliæ, nunquam in vita sua malo animo reversurus; et quod pro posse suo patrem suum Philippum induceret, ut Henrico, Anglorum regi, redderet omnia jura sua in partibus transmarinis. Juravit insuper, quod omnia castra cum terris omnibus, quas ipse et sui per werram occupaverant in regno Angliæ, regi et suis redde-ret incontinenti. Rex autem Anglorum, tactis sacrosanctis evangeliis, juravit cum legato et Mareschallo, quod redderent baronibus Angliæ et aliis omnibus de regno omnia jura et hæ-

Form of  
peace  
concluded  
with Louis.

<sup>1</sup> *Juravit.*] See the articles in Rymer, i. p. 148.

A.D. 1217. **reditates suas, cum omnibus libertatibus ante petitis, pro quibus discordia fuit exorta inter Johannem, regem Angliæ, et barones. Prisones omnes, qui ante hanc pacem provisam se redemerant, et sua redēptionis jam factæ pecuniæ partem suis creditoribus solverant, quod solutum est non reddatur eis ; sed, si quid superfluerit ad solvendum, debitori penitus relaxetur.** Prisones universi, qui apud Lincolniam capti erant vel in prælio navali apud Doveram, sive in parte regis, vel in parte Lodowici, ubicumque statim sine omni difficultate et sine omni redēptione et censu <sup>1</sup> liberarentur. Et, his ita gestis, absolutus est <sup>2</sup> Lodowicus cum omnibus sectatoribus suis, servata ecclesiæ forma, ac deinde singuli ruentes in pacis osculum tristem lætiātiam sub fraudis prætextu plurimi palliabant ; quo facto, Lodowicus Londonias reversus est, ubi præ nimia a civibus paupertate quinque millia libras sterlingorum mutuo accipiens sub conductu magni Mareschalli ad mare cum festinatione pervenit et cum opprobrio sempiterno ad<sup>3</sup> Gallias transfretavit. Ab hoc quoque absolutionis et pacis beneficio excepti fuerunt episcoli, abbates, priores, canonici seculares et clerici multi, qui Lodowico ac baronibus consilium præstiterant et favorem, et maxime magister Simon de Langetuna, cum magistro Ger-  
vasio de Hobregge, qui in tanta obstinatione

<sup>1</sup> *Liberarentur.]* In the Chron. of Mailros it is stated that Henry paid Louis ten thousand marks to meet the expenses he had incurred ; p. 195. In the Close Rolls are several entries of writs ordering the payment of monies to discharge a debt of six thousand marks due to Louis ; pp. 360, 369.

<sup>2</sup> *Lodowicus.]* He walked ungirded and barefoot from his own tent to that of the cardinal ; Chron. Mailros. p. 195.

<sup>3</sup> *Ad Gallias transfretavit.]* See letters of safe conduct in behalf of Louis and his followers, in Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex, and Hertford, in Rymer, i. p. 148.

A.D. 1217.

naves magno studio fabricatas ingressi sunt, ut vota suæ peregrinationis exsolverent Crucifixo, qui sulcantes æquora velis patentibus, major pars eorum cum magna bellatorum virtute applicuit Lissebonam, ubi inter eos exorta dissensio in obsidione cujusdam castri fortissimi, quod Alchacia nuncupatur, quibusdam procedere cupientibus, aliis ibidem volentibus hyemare; sicque classe divisa, pars apud <sup>1</sup>Cajetam et Tornetum hyemavit, et pars altera duos habens capitaneos, Willelmum scilicet Holandiæ ducem et comitem de Weiz Georgium, Alchaciam ob-sedit, qui cum adhuc in obsidione essent, congregata est contra eos Saracenorum maxima multitudo, contra quam fideles viriliter decer-tantes virtute divina infideles vicerunt. Rex unus paganorum occisus est, et multi trucidati atque in captivitatem adducti; castellum vero tandem per Teuthonicos captum est et a Christianis possessum.

*De obsidione castelli de Newark et Roberto de Gaugi.*

A.D. 1218.  
Siege of  
Newark.

Anno gratiæ MCCXVIII. rex Henricus ad na-tale Domini fuit apud Norhantonam, Falcasio regiæ festivitatî necessaria omnia ministrante. Erant autem his diebus multi in Anglia, qui-bus tempore belli præteriti dulcissimum fuerat de rapinis vixisse, unde nunc post pacem de-nuntiatam et omnibus concessam non potuerunt manus a præda cohibere; horum autem prin-cipales fuerunt incentores, Willelmus comes Al-bemarliæ, Falcarius cum suis castellanis, Ro-bertus de Veteri-ponte, Brienus de Insula, Hugo de Baillul, Philippus Marci et Robertus de Gaugi, cum aliis multis, qui castella quorun-

<sup>1</sup> *Cajetam et Tornetum.*] ‘Gae-|aco, p.1131; probably for Gaetta tam et Cornetum,’ Jac. de Vitri. | and Sorrento.

dam episcoporum ac magnatum cum terris et <sup>A.D. 1218.</sup> possessionibus, contra regis prohibitionem et illorum voluntatem, detinere præsumpserunt eisdem ; inter quos Robertus de Gaugi, post multas regis admonitiones, castellum de Newerc cum villa tota et pertinentiis, quæ ad jus Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi, spectabant, ei reddere contradixit. Ex qua re magnus Mareschallus in indignationem versus, jubente rege, exercitum grandem congregavit, atque, eodem rege<sup>1</sup> comite, ad castellum prædictum hostiliiter accessit ; et, cum tandem appropinquassent ad castellum, præmiserunt armatos, ut inclusis exitum præcluderent, ne, sicut fieri solet, exentes villam injectis ignibus concremarent. Quos cum Robertus ejusque committones venire cognovissent, exierunt cum impetu de castello, sed ab irruentibus in eos militibus regis compulsi sunt denuo in castellum redire, ubi Willelmus<sup>2</sup> de Diva, miles de familia Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi, dum eos castellum ingredientes insequeretur, interfectus est et plures alii vulnerati ; ex quo facto rex et Mareschallus perturbati jusserunt machinas collocari in gyrum castelli, ut muros petrariarum continua verberatione dissolvere laborarent. Duravit autem obsidio octo fere diebus, in quibus amici prædicti Roberti cum episcopo Lincolniensi de pace tractantes in hoc, rege annuente, pariter

<sup>1</sup> *Rege comite.*] The following rather curious writ to the mayor of Lincoln, issued at the time that the king was before Newark, is in the Close Rolls, p. 365.

<sup>2</sup> *Precipimus tibi, quod sicut te ipsum et omnia tua diligis, statim visis litteris istis, venire facias usque Newerc mille cordas de Kanne ad petrarias et mango-*

*nello trahendos et ducentos pikosios, et custum quod ad hoc posueritis computabitur tibi ad scaccarium.'*

*Willelmus de Diva.*] The writ, ordering the restitution of his property upon returning to his fealty, is dated Oxford, 23rd July 1217.

A.D. 1218. consenserunt, ut episcopus memoratus daret Roberto de Gaugi pro victualibus, quæ erant in castello, centum libras sterlingorum; et sic, obsidione soluta, unusquisque ad propria remeavit.

*De motions facta a peregrinis terra sanctæ ab Achon usque ad Damietam.*

March of the  
crusaders on  
Damietta.

Eodem anno confirmatum fuit consilium domini papæ Innocentii, sicut provisum fuerat in concilio Lateranensi, de introducenda Christi militia in terram Ægypti; mense enim Maio, præparatis cogenibus, galeis et aliis navibus onerariis multis, profecti sunt de Achon, Iohannes rex Hierusalem, patriarcha, cum episcopis Nichossiensi, Achonensi, <sup>1</sup>Bethlemitano, duce Austriæ, magistris Templi et Hospitalis sancti Johannis et sanctæ Mariæ Teuthonicarum, ac Christianorum multitudine copiosa. Borea itaque aliquantulum turgescente, exercitus Domini prosperis velis die tertio ad portum applicuit Damietæ. Applicantes autem quidam de exercitu terram ceperunt hostilem sine sanguinis effusione; sed, paucis sibi occurribus Saracenis equitibus, Friso quidam, fixo in terram genu dextro, et manu sinistra circumducens ancile, dextra lanceam vibrat et ferrum. Intuitus eum quidam Saracenus existimavit eum ludere, sed subito Saracenus a Frisone percussus, aliis fugientibus, cum equo eques prostratus est in terram; et sic absque omni impedimento castrametati sunt fideles inter littus maris et ripam Nili fluminis, et ibi tentoria fixerunt. Hoc etiam miraculum fecit Deus fidelibus suis, quod in primo adventu eorum aqua fluminis ma-

<sup>1</sup> Bethlemitano.] ‘Gyrmideno;’ Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1132.

ri conjuncti dulcis hauriebatur, quæ postmodum A.D. 1248.  
salsa fuit usque ad Casale, quod sursum per mi-  
liare a Damietta distat. Itaque post adventum  
Christianorum apud Damietam facta est eclipsis  
lunæ fere generalis, quam in defectum Sar-  
acenorum interpretati sunt Christiani, qui sibi  
incremento et decremento ejus magnam attri-  
buunt conjecturam.

*De obsidione turris Damietæ in Nilo flumine sitæ.*

His<sup>1</sup> ita gestis, viderunt fideles Christi turrim quandam altam, et ex structura lapidum fortem nimis et pulcherrimam, non longe ab urbe Damietæ in medio Nili fluminis sitam, a qua catena quædam ferrea et enormiter grossa ex transverso flumine protendebatur usque ad urbem super aliam ripam Nili fluminis constitutam. Hæc autem turris omnium judicio ante obsidionem Damietæ fuerat subjuganda, sed Frisones more solito impatientes, Nilo transito, jumenta Saracenorum tulerunt, et volentes in ulteriori ripa castrametari stabant pugnantes contra paganos, qui eis de civitate obviam processerunt; sed a patriarcha per obedientiam revocati fuerunt, quia inutile videbatur principibus Christianis, quod turris relinqueretur post tergum eorum paganis repleta. Principes interea militiae Crucifixi de captione turris nimis solliciti viderunt eam capi non posse fame, propter civitatis vicinitatem; neque suffossione, propter aquæ circumfluentis importunitatem; neque insultu petrariarum aut trebuculorum ictibus, quia, cum id multis esset diebus attentatum, parum vel nihil profecerunt. Sane in hoc tandem omnes pariter consenserunt fideles, ut, navibus

Siege of the  
tower near  
Damietta.

<sup>1</sup> *His ita gestis.]* Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1132.

A.D. 1218.

simul et cogenibus conjunctis, in malorum summitatibus scalas præpararent et in eis balistarios statuerunt et armatos, unde suum propositum perducerent ad effectum. Igitur dux Austriæ et Hospitale sancti Johannis super duos cogones duas scalas fabricarunt, quæ circa festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ contra turrim fuerunt erectæ, illam viriliter defendantibus Saracenis. Hospitaliorum scala, proh dolor! confracta suos prius præcipitavit in flumen bellatores; secunda vero scala, ducis videlicet Austriæ, simili modo cum malo cecidit et milites strenuos et alios armatos in Nilum demersit, sed horum omnium animas Christus in cælum levavit victrii martyrio coronatas. Lætati sunt Ægyptii vehementer, fidelibus subsannantes et in opprobrium eorum buccinis perstrepentes, et e contrario mœror et luctus Christianos invasit. Tunc Frisones et Teutonici, quorum dux fuit comes Adulphus de Monte, vir nobilis et potens, navem quandam cum propugnaculis munierunt et in summitate mali castellulo ordinato. Ipsa vero navis a belatoribus civitatis, turris et pontis, igne Græco impetebatur et jaculis vehementer, quæ tandem igne correpta, cum timerent Christiani ne penitus consumeretur, defensores ejus ignem viriliter extinxerunt, ac deinceps damna plurima per balistarios, qui intus erant, Saracenis fecerunt; sed et aliæ fidelium naves propugnaculis munitæ, hujus assultus tempore quæ anchoris turri adhærebant fixæ, multa sustinuerunt rerum et hominum detrimenta.

*Dè captione turris prædictæ et mira Christianorum probitate.*

The tower taken.

Tandem, Domino demonstrante et architectibus, eo donante, providentibus, Teutonicorum

sumptibus et Frisonum et labore eorundem duos A.D. 1218.  
Tower near  
Damietta  
taken. cogones conjunxerunt fideles trabibus fortissime, ac funibus cohaerentes et socia compagnatione vacillandi periculum prohibentes quatuor malos et totidem antennas erexerunt; et in illis in summitate castellulum firmum, asseribus et opere reticulato contextum, contra machinarum insidias collocantes coriis operuerunt illud per circuitum architectores, et desuper tectum erat contra ignem Graecum. Sub castellulo autem fabricaverunt scalam fortissimis funibus suspensam et triginta cubitis ultra proram protensam, opere maximo brevi tempore consummato. Invitati sunt ad illud videndum principes militiae Christi, ut siquid decesset, quod sumptibus aut humano indigeret ingenio, suppleretur; et accepto responso, quod antea tale opus ligneum nunquam fuerat fabricatum, properandum esse censuerunt fideles, ut hoc ingenium adhiberetur ad turrim, quia crebris ictibus machinarum pons pro magna parte destructus fuerat, qui de civitate hostes fidei ducebat ad turrim. Sexta itaque feria ante festum sancti Bartholomæi apostoli nudis pedibus cum processione solemni devotissime processerunt ad crucem sanctam fideles, clero cum psalmis et litaniiis praecedente, auxilium humiliter implorantes divinum, ut res omni careret invidia et jactantia vana de omni gente, quæ tunc in exercitu erat. Plures ad hujus negotii exsecutionem invitaverunt maiores, licet gens Frisonum et Teutonicorum ad naves implendas sufficeret et regendas. Die tandem beati Bartholomæi, quæ tunc feria sexta erat, cum Nilus vehementer excrevisset et aquarum impetus negotium plurimum impedisset, cum multa licet difficultate et periculo instrumentum trahebatur ad turrim; navis autem, hujus ma-

A.D. 1218.  
Tower near  
Damietta  
taken.

chinæ socia, velificando processit; patriarcha et clerus nudis pedibus ambulabant per littora, Domino supplicantes. Cum vero ad turrim pervenit fuisse, duplex illa compositio ad latus occidentale converti non poterat, sed ascendendo directe ad plagam aquilonarem applicabatur; funibus tandem et anchoris fixa manebat, licet vis aquarum inundantium illam repellere moliretur. Quod cum cognovissent Saraceni, machinas sex erexerunt super turres civitatis ad instrumentum illud concutendum, sed una cæteris perniciosior post paucos ictus confracta quievit; nec tamen cessaverunt, sed sine intermissione emittere coeperunt crebros lapides et damnosos. Nec in minori periculo prior navis, hujus machinæ socia, ad pedem turris substitut collocata; nam ignis Græcus, de turri eminus projectus, fulminis instar veniens pavorem non minimum fidelibus incussit, sed per liquorem acetosum ac sabulum et extinctoria cætera laborantibus est subventum. Tunc, facto insultu acerrimo ab his qui instrumentum regebant supradictum, jacebat patriarcha ante lignum crucis prostratus in terram, stansque clerus nudis pedibus clamavit in cælum. Inimici crucis et turris defensores extensis lanceis anteriorem scalæ partem asperserunt oleo, ac deinde ignem Græcum adhibentes scalam accenderunt; sed fideles Christi, qui intus erant, ad ignis suffocationem accurrentes suo pondere caput scalæ depresserunt, ita ut pons tornatilis fronti turris appositus inclinaretur deorsum. Signifer ducis Austræ de scala corruit, et pagani vexillum ducis cum irrisione tulerunt; se vicisse existimantes, vociferati sunt clamore nimio, aerem verberando. Christiani vero, hoc viso, ad supplicationem se prosternunt, complosisque manibus Dominum invocare non

cessant. Ad hanc autem populi Christiani devotionem et manuum in cælum elevationem levavit scalam divina pietas, ignemque accensum fidelium lachrymæ extinxerunt; et sic fideles Crucifixi, viribus resumptis, cum defensoribus turris lanceis, gladiis, clavis, sagittis, aliisque bellicis instrumentis viriliter pugnaverunt. Juvenis quidam Leodiensis dioecesis, in militia expertus, turrim prius ascendit; Friso quidam juvenculus, turrim ascendens, flagellum tenebat ferreum quo granum excuti solet, sed ad pugnandum paratum, unde fortiter trans murum ad dextram percutiens hostes fidei et ad lævam, quendam Saracenum, croceum Soldani ferentem signum, stravit et vexillum tulit; ac deinde alii post alios ascendentes hostes resistentes senserunt durissimos et crudeles. Paganis tandem superatis, post fletum et gemitum, gaudium successit fidelibus et triumphus; nam multi Saracenorum, turris angustiam perferre non valentes, per fenestras præcipites evadere cupiebant, quorum multi submersi perierunt, flumen eibere non valentes; ad centum quoque ex eis vivi capti sunt et ad redemptionem reservati. Tunc Saraceni, qui in interioribus sese receperant turribus, igne supposito, superficiem turris combusserunt, unde Christiani victores calorem sustinere non valentes regressi sunt super scalam; ac deinde pontem, qui in inferiori parte operis præparatus fuerat, demiserunt Christi milites usque ad pedem turris, aquis profundis et undique circumfluentibus angustum, sed malleis ferreis januam turris aggressi sunt fideles, defendantibus eam intrinsecus Saracenis. Stabat utrumque opus immobile turri adhærens, sed asseres scalæ pro parte discussi fuerunt. Ambitus tamen operis machinarum ictibus multis per-

A.D. 1218.  
Tower near  
Damietta  
taken.

A.D. 1218.  
Siege of  
Damietta.

foratus in locis, <sup>1</sup>ab hora nona sextæ feriæ usque ad horam decimam sequentis sabbati immobile perseverat. Tandem Saracenis in defensione turris omnino deficientibus, colloquium de pace petebant, ac sese sub pactione vitæ duci Austriae reddiderunt. Capta itaque turri, munierunt eam fideles victualibus et armatis, sperantes de cætero ut civitatem similiter subjugarent.

*De morte Saphadin, et destructione murorum  
Hierusalem.*

Death of  
Saphadin.

Post<sup>2</sup> captam itaque turrim in Nilo flumine sitam, <sup>3</sup>Saphadinus, dierum malorum inveteratus, fratreliumque suorum exhaeredator ac regni Asie usurpator nequissimus, dolore cordis, ut asseritur, tactus intrinsecus mortuus est et sepultus in inferno; cui successit filius ejus Coradinus, vir crudelis et sævus, qui, ob ultionem obsidionis Damietæ, Hierusalem famosissimam civitatem foris et intus destruens, muros ejus et turres omnes, præter templum Domini et turrim David, in acervos rededit. De sepulchro quoque Domini gloriose destruendo consilium habuerunt Saraceni, quod per literas comminati sunt, quas civibus Damietæ ad eorum solarium transmiserunt. Veruntamen propter tanti loci reverentiam nemo eorum manum apponere præsumpsit; nam in Alchorano, libro legis eorum, scriptum habetur, Jesum Christum Dominum nostrum de Maria virgine fuisse conceptum et natum, quem sine peccato vixisse inter homines, prophetamque et plusquam prophetam esse pro-

<sup>1</sup> Ab hora nona.] In Jac. de Vitriaco this is a new paragraph:

'Ab hora nona, feria sexta, usque ad horam decimam sequentis sabbati duravit hoc periculum;' p. 1184.

<sup>2</sup> Post captam.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1185.

<sup>3</sup> Saphadinus,] or Seif-eddin, the sword of religion, the name by which Malek-Adel is known in the histories of the Crusades; Michaud, iii. p. 446.

fitentur; cæcos enim illuminasse, leprosos mun- A.D. 1218.  
dasse, et mortuos suscitasse, astruunt; verbum Siege of  
quoque ac spiritum Dei vivi ad cælos ascendisse Damietta.  
non discredunt. Unde, quando tempore treuga-  
rum sapientes eorum Hierusalem ascendebant  
et postulabant sibi <sup>1</sup>codices evangeliorum exhi-  
beri, deosculabantur eos ac mirabantur propter  
legis munditiam, quam Christus docuit, et præ-  
cipue propter evangeliū Lucæ ‘Missus est Ga-  
briel,’ quod saepius retractant et repetunt literati  
eorum. Lex autem illorum, quam, diabolo dic-  
tante, ministerio Sergii monachi apostatæ et  
hæretici, Mahometus Arabice scriptam Saracenis  
dedit ac docuit, a gladio cœpit, per gladium  
tenetur, et in gladio terminatur. Iste Mahome-  
tus illiteratus fuit, sicut ipse in Alchorano suo  
testatur; qui, quæ prænominatus hæreticus dic-  
tavit, ipse prædicavit, et, quia potens erat et  
Arabum princeps, per comminationes suas legem  
statuit observari. Luxuriosus autem fuit et bel-  
licosus, et ideo de immunditia ac vanitate legem  
dedit, quam carnaliter viventes in partem volup-  
tatis observant; et sicut legem Christi veritas et  
munditia muniunt, ita errorem ipsorum timor mun-  
danus et humanus voluptasque carnalis extollunt.

*De adventu Pelagii legati apud Damietam et  
aliorum peregrinorum.*

Subjugata igitur, ut dictum est, turri Damietæ, <sup>Arrival of</sup>  
venerunt ad passagium sanctæ crucis, quod tunc Pelagius.  
instabat, de diversis mundi partibus peregrini  
multi; inter quos venerunt Pelagius, Albanen-  
sis episcopus et apostolicæ sedis legatus, cum  
magistro Roberto de <sup>2</sup>Curcun et Romanis multis.

---

<sup>1</sup> Codices evangeliorum.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1137. ‘Cortheon’ in Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1184: his name appears to have been ‘Courçon.’

<sup>2</sup> Curcun.] ‘Turrum’ in MS.; ‘Courçon’.

A.D. 1218. Venerunt et episcopi multi cum comite Nivenensi, qui, imminente periculo, cum Christianorum confusione recessit. Venit etiam tunc temporis vir illustris comes Cestrensis Ranulphus de regno Angliæ, cum comitibus <sup>1</sup>Saero Wintoniensi et Willelmo Arundelensi, et baronibus Roberto filio-Walteri, Johanne constabulario Cestrensi, Willelmo de Harecurt cum sequela multa, et Oliverio filio regis Angliæ. Venerunt etiam comites de Marchia et Barri cum filio suo, Willelmus de Carnoto, Iterius de Tocce, et Hervæus de Ursone, cum aliis multis.

*De duabus invasionibus factis a Saracenis contra Christianos apud Damiettam.*

*Siege of Damietta.*

Saraceni<sup>2</sup> postmodum in festo <sup>3</sup>sanceti Dionysii cum galeis et viris armatis ex improviso venientes, et principia castrorum ubi Romani tentoria fixerant invadentes, modica manu Christianorum repulsi sunt, ad galeias suas celeriter recurrentes; sed gladios insequentium ac fluminis voraginem effugere nequiverunt, submersi sunt enim in Nilum ad viros mille quingentos, sicut fideles didicerunt postea a paganis. In festo iterum beati Demetrii summo diluculo castella Templariorum invaserunt hostes, sed modicum fidelibus damnum intulerunt; quia per expeditos eorum equites fugati sunt ad pontem, quem procul construxerant, ubi interempti sunt a fidelibus ad numerum quingentorum.

<sup>1</sup> Saero Wintoniensi.] He died soon after his arrival, and was buried at Acre. On his deathbed he directed his friends to convey his heart to Geroldon abbey. Annal. Waverl. p. 185.

<sup>2</sup> Saraceni.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186,

whose account agrees almost verbatim with that of the former.

<sup>3</sup> Sancti Dionysii.] Wendover, or his scribe for him, has here reversed the order of the respective days of these saints; placing the events which occurred on Demetrius' day, the 8th, on that of Dionysius, the 9th of October.

*De inundatione Nili fluminis, unde Christiani nimis  
damnificati fuerunt.*

His<sup>1</sup> ita gestis, in vigilia beati Andree apóstoli, nocte media, intumuerunt fluctus maris, crescentes et excusum facientes terribilem usque ad castra fidelium, quos ab alia parte fluvius inundans occupavit incautos. Natabant tentoria, perierunt cibaria; pisces fluviales et marinii, quasi nihil metuentes, fidelium se cubiculis ingerebant, quos manibus capientes illis tamen carere deliciis maluissent; et nisi salubri consilio antea provisum fuisset de fossato, quod tamen ad alios usus factum fuerat, mare conjunctum flumini homines cum jumentis, naves cum victualibus et armis, detraxisset ad hostes. Nec tamen hoc periculum evaserunt quatuor con-gones, super quos fabricata fuerant propugnacula ad turrim capiendam, quae uno impetu cum quinta navi, quae inter eas hærebat, ad oppositam ripam vi ventorum præcipitatæ ante oculos eorum igne Græco sunt combustæ. Pepercit siquidem Deus operibus Frisonum et Teutonicorum, quibus turris capta fuerat; sed naves oneratæ, quæ in portu maris stabant, ruptis repente funibus, perierunt.

*De quadam peste, quæ multos in exercitu Christianos  
affixit.*

Invasit<sup>2</sup> ea tempestate multos de exercitu pestis quædam, contra quam physici nullum ex arte sua poterant remedium invenire; dolor enim occupavit repente pedes et crura, in quibus apparuit caro corrupta et nigra, gingivas et den-

<sup>1</sup> His ita gestis.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186.

<sup>2</sup> Invasit.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186.

A.D. 1218.  
Siege of  
Damietta.

A.D. 1218. tes, nigredo obdurata potentiam abstulit masti-  
candi, sicque longo doloris tractu affliti multi  
ad Dominum migraverunt; quidam vero usque  
ad tempus vernale laborantes caloris beneficio  
mortis periculum evaserunt. Eodem anno, pro-  
curante Walone apostolicæ sedis legato, Richar-  
dus de Marisco clericus, de familia et <sup>1</sup>moribus  
regis Johannis, factus est episcopus Dunelmen-  
sis, qui nono kalendas Augusti munus consecra-  
tionis suscepit.

*Willemus Mareschallus diem clausit extremum.*

A.D. 1219.  
Death of the  
earl of  
Pembroke.

Anno Dominicæ incarnationis MCCXIX. rex  
Henricus quarto regni sui anno fuit ad natale  
Domini apud Wintoniam, cui Petrus, ejusdem  
civitatis episcopus, omnia necessaria ministravit.  
Quo etiam tempore Willemus Mareschallus, re-  
gis rector et regni, <sup>2</sup>diem clausit extremum; post  
cujus mortem memoratus rex in custodia Petri,  
Wintoniensis episcopi, remansit.

Siege of  
Damietta.

*De obsidione urbis Damietæ et Christianorum  
afflictions.*

Eodem <sup>3</sup> tempore Pelagius, apostolicæ sedis  
legatus, <sup>4</sup>ardens habensque desiderium civitatem  
Damietam obsidendi, Christianos post turrim

<sup>1</sup> *Moribus.*] His character is given in the Waverley Annals, where he is spoken of as being ‘astutissimus,’ and as one ‘nul- lius egestatis misertus vel qui mi- serias condescendit,’ p. 183. He died suddenly at Peterborough on the 1st of May 1226, leaving debts to the amount of 40,000 marks.

<sup>2</sup> *Diem clausit extremum.*] He was buried in the Temple church in London; his epitaph is thus given by Paris:

‘Sum quem Saturnum sibi sen- sit Hibernia, Solem Anglia, Mercurium Norman- nia, Gallia Martem.’

<sup>3</sup> *Eodem tempore.*] Jac. de Vi- triaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186.

<sup>4</sup> *Ardens.*] There was a prophecy that a Spaniard should win Jerusalem, ‘which,’ says Fuller, ‘accounts for the zeal of the legate in this crusade.’ H. Warre, p. 150.

captam hortabatur ad Nili fluminis transitum. A.D. 1219.  
Siege of  
Damietta. Illi autem, cum magno periculo per flumen sursum cum navibus ascendentis inter civitatem et turrim captam, machinis civitatis et igne Græco sunt non mediocriter impediti ; unde accidit, ut una navis Templariorum, vi torrentis impulsa, prope ripam civitatis capta fuisse, quæ cum præcipitaretur ad hostes cum barbotis et uncis ferreis ipsam diutius impugnarent, ignem Græcum super eam projicientes de turribus civitatis ; et cum prævalere, propter defensorum audaciam, non valerent, certatim navem ascendentis increduli præcipites in eam ad Templarios descenderunt, ubi cum diutius pugnaretur, navis tandem perforata, sive ab hostibus, sive a fidelibus, ut potius creditur, profundum fluminis [petuit], submergens Ægyptios et Christianos, ita ut vix mali summitas appareret ; et sicut Sampson plures stravit moriens quam vivens, sic et isti martyres Christi plures secum in aquæ voraginem traxerunt, quam gladiis perdere potuerunt. Deinde pontem reparantes pagani aperturam adeo reliquerunt angustam, ut naves fidelium sine periculo fluminis ascendere non valerent, sed Frisones et Teutonici, zelo justæ indignationis accincti, cum majori navi, cuius ministerio turris capta fuerat, pontem viriliter invaserunt ; auxilium nullum habentes nisi de cælo, pauciores quam decem viri de gente prædicta contra omnem fortitudinem Babylonis pontem ascendentis, spectante Christianorum multitudine et hanc audaciam plurimum admirante, fregerunt eundem, et sic cum quatuor navibus, super quas erat pons fundatus, reversi sunt cum triumpho, liberam viam et apertam Christianis sursum velificare volentibus relinquentes. Et, his ita gestis, Saraceni periculum,

A.D. 1219.  
Siege of  
Damietta.

quod illis imminebat, attendentes ripam fluminis fidelibus oppositam fossatis et argillosa materia cum propugnaculis ligneis et rebus aliis munierunt, machinas cum petrariis locantes ibidem, per locum illum transeundi spem omnimodam fidelibus auferentes. A Casali etiam, quod per miliare fere distabat a civitate, ubi nova hæc munitio terminabatur, per transversum fluminis navium fecerant subversiones, cum palis gurgiti latenter infixis ; sed <sup>1</sup>Christi milites, cogones cum castellulis ac propugnaculis, armatis muniti bellatoribus, cum galeis aliisque navibus subsequentibus, præscriptas submersiones, Christo duce, penitus evaserunt. Hostes vero fidei, omni metu dissimulato, tres ordines armatorum stationi navium Christianorum opposuerunt, unam peditum, super ripam fluminis, cum targiis eleganter ordinatam, secundam post tergum eorum, similem priori, tertiam equitum, longam et terribilem, ictibus lapidum et telorum plurimum vexantes fidelium stationem. Sed fidelis Deus, qui non patitur tentari suos super id quod possunt sustinere, respiciens ad castra servorum suorum, mœrorem fidelium et tristitiam in gaudium et exultationem convertit ; nam in nocte solemnitatis beatæ Agathæ martyris, cum ordinatus esset exercitus Christi, qui sequenti die fluvium erat transiturus, pluviae et venti magnam difficultatem Christicolis intulerunt, sed nocte eadem, Deo procurante, <sup>2</sup>tantus pavor Sol-

<sup>1</sup> *Christi milites.*] The words 'Christi milites' are here superfluous : in the narrative by Jac. de Vitriaco and Oliverus the passage is as follows ; having stated that it was owing to the zeal of Pelagius that the attack was made, it goes on, 'unde cogones propugnaculis et castellulis viris

etiam armatis muniti, cum galeis et aliis navibus, Christo duce, prædictas immersiones evaserunt,' p. 1186.

<sup>2</sup> *Tantus pavor.*] The account of the conspiracy in the camp amongst the emirs is given by Michaud from the Arab historian ; iii. p. 456, seq.

danum Babylonis et ejus exercitum invasit, ut A.D. 1219.  
Siege of  
Damieta. relictis tentoriis, ignorantibus etiam paganis, quos ad resistendum fidelibus ordinaverat, in sola fuga spem haberent; unde quidam apostata, qui multo tempore Christianorum legem transgressus sub Soldano militaverat, stans in ripa fluminis Gallica lingua clamare cœpit, ‘Quid moramini? quid trepidatis? Soldanus recessit;’ et, hoc dicto, se recipi in Christianorum naviculam postulavit, sique fidelibus fidem faciens illos ad transitum fluminis animabat; et summo diluculo, cum inchoatum esset missæ officium ‘Gaudemus omnes in Domino,’ per oratoria Christianorum nuntiata sunt hæc regi et legato. Itaque, fugientibus Saracenis, Christiani absque sanguinis effusione et omni impedimento flumen transierunt; sed adeo limosa et aquis profundioribus difficilis fuit ad applicandum terra hostilis, ut vix eam equi ascendere potuissent. Templarii autem, præduces in ascensu, prospero cursu ad civitatem festinaverunt, sternentes perfidos, qui audacter de portis egressi Christicollis venientibus occurserunt; sed, illis in civitatem redire compulsi, exercitus Christi tentoria Soldani occupavit ac spolia fugientium paganorum. Targas multas et galeias, cum barbotis et navibus aliis, quæ infra Casale usque ad civitatem inveniebantur, Christicolæ rapuerunt; unde perfidorum multitudo, relictis uxoriibus ac parvulis propter fidelium inopinatum transitum, de Damieta fugerunt. Deinde per gyrum obsessa est Damieta, exercitu exercitui per pontis compositionem continuato, utramque ripam fluminis contingentem.

*De primo impetu Saracenorū post obsidionem contra fideles.*

A.D. 1219.  
Siege of  
Damietta.

Civitate itaque obsidione vallata, hostes fidei, resumptis viribus, cum <sup>1</sup>Soldano et Alapinis ac multitudine copiosa, locum occupant, ad quem fideles transitum fecerant insperatum, et nisi per consilium divinum et auxilium prima castra, quæ erant inter mare et fluvium, retenta fuissent, et maxime per probitatem Teutonicorum, negotium Christi magnum periculum incurrisset; nam pleni anfractibus Saraceni ad tantam prorupti sunt temeritatem, ut, diluculo die sabbati ante Dominicam, qua cantatur 'Oculi mei semper ad Dominum,' fidelibus ignorantibus, cum multitudine gravi bellatorum usque ad fossatum suum sese precipitarent, sed peditum illorum et equitum fuerunt probitate repulsi; fecerant enim Christiani fossatum a tergo suo latum satis et altum ad cautelam, ut, si forte hostes fidei impetum facere vellent in eos, hujus fossati præsidio munirentur.

*De secundo impetu facto contra Christianos.*

In <sup>2</sup> die iterum Palmarum inimici crucis, collecto innumerabili exercitu ac nimis terribili, fossatum undique fidelium invaserunt, et præcipue pontem Templariorum et ducis Austriae, quem ipsi cum Teutonicis viriliter defendere studuerunt; sed illi cum electis militibus suis ab equis descendentes cum Christianis atrociter pugnaverunt. Ceciderunt hinc inde mortui ac vulnerati multi; sed tandem adeo prævaluuerunt increduli, quod pontem ascendentibus partem ejus combusserunt. Tunc dux Austriae præce-

---

<sup>1</sup> Soldano.] 'Coradino, filio Sa-phadini;' Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1137.

<sup>2</sup> In die.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1137; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1188.

pit suis, ut sese retrahentes hostibus darent A.D. 1219.  
ingressum, sed illi ingredi non audebant; mu-  
lieres quoque bellatoribus Christianis aquam,  
vinum, panem, ac lapides intrepide ministra-  
bant; sacerdotes vero orationi insistebant,  
Dominum benedicentes et sauciatorum vulnera  
alligantes. In ipso die sancto non est Chris-  
tianis spatium datum alias gestandi palmas  
quam balistas, arcus, lanceas, gladios, clypeos  
et sagittas; adeo enim instabant inimici eorum  
atrociter studio liberandæ civitatis, quod ab  
ortu solis usque ad horam diei decimam fideli-  
bus requiem non dederunt, sed tandem fatigati  
sese cum damno maximo <sup>Siege of</sup><sup>de</sup> loco certaminis re-  
traxerunt. In festo iterum Dominicæ ascensio-  
nis more solito per terram et aquam irruerunt  
perfidi in Christianos, ac multoties illos atten-  
tantes, prævalere non potuerunt, sed prope  
castra eos provocantes mutuo ad invicem damna  
pertulerunt.

*De tertio impetu crudeliter facto ab incredulis contra  
Christianos.*

Collegerunt<sup>2</sup> denique hostes fidei pridie kalen-  
darum Augsti omnem quam poterant habere  
copiam bellatorum, qui post diutinos assultus  
fossatum contra militiam Templi tandem transe-  
untes, ac violenter licias dirumpentes, pedites  
Christianorum in fugam verterunt, ita quidem  
ut universo exercitui periculum immineret. <sup>3</sup>Mi-  
lites, equites simul et pedites seculares ter co-

<sup>1</sup> *De loco certaminis retraxe-*  
*rent.]* At this time, as Jac. de  
Vitriaco records, the duke of  
Austria, who had been now a  
year and a half with the cru-  
saders, and a great multitude  
of foreigners, returned home,

<sup>1</sup> nobis in summo periculo relic-  
tis; p. 1188.

<sup>2</sup> *Collegerunt.]* Jac. de Vitriac.  
p. 1188; Oliver. Scholast. p.  
1189.

<sup>3</sup> *Milites.]* 'Milites de Fran-  
cia;' *ibid.*

A.D. 1219.  
Siege of  
Damietta.

nati sunt ipsos a fossato repellere, sed nihil profecerunt; clamor exortus est insultantium paganorum, aucta est timiditas Christianorum. Sed spiritus consilii et fortitudinis Templarios animavit, nam magister Templi cum mareschallo cæterisque fratribus, per exitum satis angustum impetu facto, viriliter incredulos convertit in fugam. Domus Teutonicorum et Frisones, comites et barones, atque ex diversis nationibus milites, videntes Templi militiam in periculo, per exitus sibi expositos illis in auxilium proruperunt; tunc pedites perfidorum, projectis clipeis, truncabantur ad centum, præter illos qui in fossato præcipites perierunt. Deinde, peditibus Christianis egressis, per modicum spatium sese subtraxerunt hostes; acies hinc inde substiterunt armatæ donec crepusculum vespertinum certamen diremit, Saraceni prius recesserunt. Occisorum corpora jacebant juxta fossatum multa, præter illos qui sauciati lethaliter ad castra sunt reducti. Pauci de fidelibus per virtutem Dei et Templariorum audaciam perempti fuerunt et captivi. Dum hæc agerentur ibidem, combusta sunt fere omnia instrumenta fidelium, quæ erecta erant contra civitatem, a defensoribus ejus, præter scalas, in magnum Christianorum detrimentum. Post has igitur factas a Soldano invasiones non est ausus congregi cum Christianis, sed non longe ab obsidione fixis tentoriis in insidiis manebat.

*De prælio campestri inter Christianos et Saracenos.*

Exercitus autem Christi, cum diutius usu petrariarum et trebuculorum aliarumque machinarum muros civitatis subvertere laborassent, nec quicquam profecissent, a prudentioribus populi perspicue deprehensum est et veraciter intellec-

tum, non nisi sola virtute divina Damietam fore A.D. 1210.  
capiendam, unde inter multos surrexit murmu- Siege of  
ratio in castris, communibus exigentibus pec- Damietta.  
catis et discordiae fomentis; nam quorundam  
fuit præsumptio, ut cum Soldano, qui non longe  
a castris Christianorum fixis tentoriis manebat  
in insidiis, campestre prælium consererent, ut,  
eo subjugato, cum ipso subjugarent et Damie-  
tam. E contrario consilium regis Hierusalem  
erat et multorum cum eo, ut obsidio tam diu  
ageretur incepta, quo usque vel virtute divina  
vel etiam fame inclusi deficerent; nam qui-  
cumque per posticum vel de muris civitatis præ-  
cipites evadabant, inflati et fame afficti, con-  
civium suorum evidenter angustiam indicabant.  
Sed illis tandem præalentibus, qui decreve-  
rant immutabiliter cum Soldano certamen inire,  
in die decollationis sancti Johannis Baptistæ  
ad castra Babyloniorum ita, licet discordes,  
confluebant, ut vix invenirentur viri, qui in ob-  
sidione urbis remanerent. Tandem inter mare  
et flumen, ubi dulcis aqua reperiri non poterat  
ad bibendum, proficiscentes invenerunt hostes  
fidei in tentoriis commorantes, sed ipsi, papi-  
lionibus sublati, fugam simulabant; et cum a  
fidelibus processum fuisset adeo, quod appare-  
ret adversarios nolle directa fronte configere,  
capitanei fidelis populi longum inierunt consi-  
lium, utrum procederent, an redirent. Discors  
inter eos fuit sententia, unde inter consilia  
sine consilio solutæ sunt acies, præter ordina-  
tionem illorum, quos disciplina ligavit et obedi-  
entia militaris; equites Cypri in dextro cornu  
constituti, Saracenis incursum a latere facienti-  
bus, timiditatem suam ostenderunt; Romani  
pedites primi fugerunt, et postea equites ex  
nationibus diversis, cum quibusdam Hospitala-

A.D. 1219.  
Siege of  
Damietta.

riis sancti Johannis; legatus et patriarcha, qui crucem portabat, multum, sed frustra, ut resisterent, supplicabant. Aestus solis vehe-mens erat, unde pedites armorum pondere pre-mebantur, calor auxit laborem viæ, et qui se-cum detulerant vinum biberunt illud purum, propter aquæ defectum, in angustia sitis, qui post primos fugientes anhelo cursu terga de-derant exstinctique sine vulneribus corruerunt. Rex vero Hierusalem, cum Templariis et domo Teutonicorum et hospitali sancti Johannis, de Houtlandia, de Wiche, de Salebregge, et Cestriæ comitibus, cumque Waltero Bertoldi, Reginaldo de Ponte, Francigenis, Pisanis, et militibus ex nationibus diversis, impetum sustinuerunt paganorum, et <sup>1</sup>pro muro fuerunt fugientibus, quoties illis suas facies ostendebant; rex vero Hierusalem igne Græco fere fuit combustus. Capti sunt autem in illo conflictu ex Christia-nis electus Belvacensis et frater ejus Andreas de <sup>2</sup>Nantes, vicecomes Belli-montis, Walterus, regis Francorum camerarius, ac filius ejus Jo-hannes de Arcis, Henricus de Ulmo. Templarii triginta tres capti sunt vel interfecti, cum ma-reschallo hospitalis sancti Johannis et fratribus quibusdam ejusdem domus; nec domus Teuto-nicorum absque damno evasit. Sunt præterea alii multi trucidati et in captivitatem abducti. Militia autem Templi, quæ in congressione solet esse prima, in regressu fuit ultima; unde, cum ad fossatum Christianorum novissima rediret, tam-diù fortis substitit quousque anteriores intra moenia fuissent ingressi. Tunc increduli reversi sunt ad abducendos captivos sacerdos et spolia col-

<sup>1</sup> Pro muro fuerunt fugientibus, | tenderunt, toties Saraceni fuge-  
quoties illis suas facies ostende- | runt; Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1139.  
bant.] ‘Quoties facies suas os- | <sup>2</sup> Nantes.] ‘Nantolio;’ ibid.

ligenda ; et, sicut a perfidis postmodum didi- A.D. 1210.  
 cerunt fideles, quingenta capita Christianorum Siege of  
 Soldano presentata fuerunt. Christianis vero Damietta.  
 hoc certissime constat, quod in præcipua militia  
 sua *damna* sibi luctuosa sustinuerunt increduli,  
 unde *Soldanus* unum de captivis suis ad Chris-  
 tianos mittens de treuga vel pace tractare coepit,  
 in quo tractatu reparaverunt fossatum suum ele-  
 ganter et alias machinas Christiani.

*Qualiter peregrini quidam a Damita non licentia-  
 recesserunt.*

Nautæ quidam eo tempore Christianitatis proditores, et cum eis Christiani multi, ante tempus consueti passagii exercitum Christi in summo periculo reliquerunt, qui recedentes Christicolis mœstitiam, Babyloniis audaciam, contulerunt; unde tractatum pacis intermitentes increduli, in <sup>1</sup>vigilia sanctorum Cosmæ et Damiani et proximo die sequenti, cum galeis et barbotis armatis per flumen et terram, cum mangonellis, targiis, et fruticibus pro implendo Christianorum fossato, <sup>2</sup>petierunt eos impetu consueto et barbarica feritate multosque fideles hoc subito impetu peremerunt; sed triumphator in Israel, omnipotens Deus, castris suis providit, misso per mare Savarico de Malo-leone cum galeis armatis et bellatoribus multis. Tunc Christiani, hoc viso, in illo necessitatis articulo clamaverunt in cælum, Deum laudantes et non trepidantes, sed in prælio hostibus viriliter resistentes incredulos recedere compulerunt Illius virtute qui salvat sperantes in se.

---

<sup>1</sup> Vigilia sanctorum Cosmæ et <sup>2</sup>Petierunt.] ‘Perierant’ in  
 Damiani,] 26th of September. MS.

*De mortalitate qua affligebantur inclusi urbis  
Damietæ.*

A.D. 1219.  
State of the  
besieged.

Nunc autem de his quæ in civitate gesta sunt aliquid referamus. <sup>1</sup>Damieta igitur obsidione longa, ferro, fame, et pestilentia graviter, et ultra quam credi vel scribi possit, afflita, in spe sola fidem habuit, quam civibus Soldanus promisit, ut pro eis, si necessitas instaret, cum Christianis componeret, ut mortem evadere potuissent; sed hoc tempore in urbe tanta fames invaluit, ut vitalis refectione deesset inclusis, durabilis enim non est annona Ægypti, propter molles glebas in quibus crescit, nisi superius circa partes Babyloniæ servetur per annum. Postremo autem portas suas obstruxerunt increduli, ne aliquis exiret qui calamitatem eorum fidelibus nuntiaret, quia dies afflictionis miseros posse derunt; illis etiam, qui foris in exercitu Soldani fideles obsederunt, copia pabuli decrescere cœpit, et ita quidem, quod coctanum unum duodecim bizantiis vendebatur. Inter cætera incommoda, quæ miseri sustinebant diebus ac noctibus, velut aurisia percussi oculis apertis nihil videbant. Nilus præterea, qui post festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ usque ad exaltationem sanctæ Crucis solet excrescere et Ægypti planitiem irrigare, hoc anno more solito non ascendit, sed magnam terræ partem siccam relinquens in terra illa nec seminari poterat nec arari; unde Soldanus famem timens, amore retinendæ Damietæ, cum Christianis pacifice componere cogitavit. Auxit autem propositum ejus ad compositionem miraculosa turris subjugatio, et Christianorum constantia præliandi, qui toties cum admodum paucis fidelibus omnem paganismi

<sup>1</sup> *Damieta.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1140; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1190.

fortitudinem audacter invadentes de prælio turpi- A.D. 1219.  
ter fugaverunt et multa ex eis millia peremerunt.

*Qualiter Soldanus regnum Hierusalem obtulit  
Christianis, ut a Damietta<sup>1</sup> recederent.*

Soldanus igitur, convocatis magnatibus suis et consiliariis fidelissimis, dum esset in mentis angaria constitutus, coram eis est locutus hunc in modum ; ‘Deus,’ inquit, ‘Christianorum magnus est, fidelis et potens in prælio, quod nos comprobavimus omnes, et maxime in hoc instanti articulo, in quo manifeste pugnat contra nos pro inimicis nostris, et procul dubio inanis erit actio nostra tota, quamdui fideles ipsum habebunt placabilem adjutorem. Ecce, imminet captio Damietæ, quæ clavis est totius Ægypti ; quæ si capta fuerit, in maximum nostrum et legis nostræ proveniet detrimentum, quia, cum multoties legatur a Christianis obsessa, nunquam tamen legitur subjugata. Unde nobis utile reor, ut reddamus Deo Christianorum ea quæ sua fuerunt omnia, ne simul cum suis auferat a nobis quæ nostra esse videntur ; sicque cum justus sit et aliena non concupiscat, si hanc pacem recusarint et æquitatem Christiani, maxime sibi tam honorabilem, provocabunt Deum suum in odium sui per concupiscentiam iniquam, et sic superborum aspernator ab eis recedet, habebuntque impugnatorem, quem habuerunt propitium adjutorem.’ Et licet hoc consilium multis displiceret, missis tamen nuntiis Christianis <sup>Proposals of</sup> <sup>peace by the</sup> <sup>sultan of</sup> <sup>Cairo.</sup> <sup>2</sup>obtulit veram crucem, quæ olim a Salaadino capta fuerat, cum captivis omnibus qui per regnum Babylonis et Damasci vivi poterant reperiri, cum sumptibus

<sup>1</sup> Recederent.] ‘Recederet’ in de Vitriaco, p. 1140; compare MS.

<sup>2</sup> Obtulit veram crucem.] Jac. 469.

A.D. 1219. necessariis ad reparandos muros Hierusalem et civitatem in statum pristinum reducendam. Obtulit insuper totaliter regnum Hierosolymitanum, præter Craccum et Montem-regalem, pro quibus retinendis tributum obtulit singulis annis, videlicet duodecim millia bizantios, quamdiu illa teneret; sunt autem duo castra haec in Arabia, septem firmissimas munitiones habentia, per quæ negotiatores paganorum et peregrini Mecham tendentes vel ab illa revertentes transire solent, et qui haec tenuerit Hierusalem cum vineis graviter et agris laedere valebit. Hanc compositionem esse acceptandam et utillem esse Christianitati rex Hierusalem, comes Cestrensis et omnes Francigene cum capitaneis Teutonicorum pertinaciter censuerunt; nec hoc mirandum est, cum multo minore pace, quæ prius oblata fuerat, contenti fuissent Christiani, nisi in sano consilio eis fuisse obviatum. Legatus<sup>1</sup> autem, concupiscentia retinendæ civitatis ductus, et per eum patriarcha cum clero universo, huic compositioni sese opponunt, asserentes constanter ante omnia Damietam fore capiendam; opinio diversa peperit discordiam, unde nuntii Soldani læti recesserunt. Cumque haec Soldano nuntiata fuissent, misit clam multitudinem magnam peditum per palustria ad Damietam, quorum ducenti quadraginta, Christianis dormientibus, Dominica nocte post festum Omnium sanctorum licias eorum intraverunt, sed per clamorem vigilum exercitus capti sunt vel interfici, quos ad centum vel plures numeraverunt ex captivis.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Legatus.*] ‘Hericin, no doubt, have no end, but be alwayes in he followed the instructions of doing, though never done.’ Holy his master, whose end in this Warre, p. 155.  
warre was that this warre should

*De captione miraculosa urbis Damiette.*

His ita gestis, cum populus Christianus civitatem Damiette acerrime invasisset, perspexit murorum propugnacula omni carere defensore, unde cum festinatione scalis ad murum applicatis civitatem certatim intraverunt fideles; sicque, Salvatore mundi procurante,<sup>1</sup> nonis Novembris capta est Damietta sine defensione, absque tumultu et violenta deprædatione, ut soli Filio Dei victoria ascribatur; et, cum caperetur civitas in oculis regis Babylonis, non fuit ausus more solito Christianos aggredi, sed confusus aufugiens propria castra combussit. Christo itaque duce, milites Christi Damietam ingressi plateas invenerunt stratas cadaveribus mortuorum, ex quibus eis occurrit <sup>2</sup>fœtor intolerabilis et miserabilis humanitatis aspectus. Mortui <sup>3</sup>nimios interfecerunt; vir et uxor, pater et filius, dominus et servus, mutuis fœtoribus perierunt. Nec solum plateæ civitatis mortuis erant plenæ, quia in ædificiis et cubiculis jacebant defuncti; juvenes et parvuli petierunt panem, sed non erat qui frangeret eis; infantes ad ubera matrum pendentes inter amplexus morientium oscitabant; divites delicati inter acervos tritici fame perierunt. Octoginta millia a tempore obsidionis perierunt in urbe, exceptis illis quos sanos vel languidos invenerunt fideles, qui ad tria millia et amplius numerantur; ex his autem trecenti nobiliores ad redemptionem captivorum suorum vivi reser-

<sup>1</sup> Nonis Novembris.] So Jac. de Vitriaco and Oliver. Scholast. M. Michaud (p. 476, note) has said that Oliver places the capture of the city on the 9th of November; but in the *Gesta Dei* the reading is rightly 'nonis Novembris,' or the 5th.

<sup>2</sup> Fœtor intolerabilis.] 'The sight was bad, and the scent was worse, for the dead killed the living; yea, God's sword had left their sword no work;' Holy Warre, p. 156.

<sup>3</sup> Nimios.] 'Vivos;' Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1142.

A.D. 1219. vautur a populo Christiano, præter baptizatos, qui crediderunt in Christum. <sup>1</sup>Hæc civitas primo a Græcis obsessa legitur, qui in ejus captione defecerunt; secundo obsessa fuit a Latinis sub Amalrico, rege Hierosolymorum, sed minime profecerunt; hac tertia vice tradidit eam servis suis Rex regum et Dominus dominantium, Jesus Christus Dominus noster, qui vivit et regnat in secula seculorum.

*De spoliis Damietæ impreiabilibus.*

Spolia taken  
in the city.

Invenerunt autem in civitate fideles aurum et argentum multum nimis, pannos sericos, vestes pretiosas, cum ornatu seculari et varia supellectili in abundantia magna valde. In commune juraverunt omnes, quod asportata de civitate spolia redderentur inter victores æqualiter dividenda; hoc etiam sub anathemate præceptum fuit a legato, sed concupiscentia oculorum multos fures fecit. Perceperunt autem ad utilitatem reipublicæ magnam partem divitarum Ægypti in auro et argento, perlis, pomis, ambre, filis aureis, philacteriis et pannis pretiosis, quæ distributa sunt per exercitum Domini cum annona in civitate reperta. Episcopus Achonensis parvulos omnes, qui in urbe reperti sunt vivi, baptizavit, solvens ex ea Deo primitias animarum. Legatus quoque de maxima mahomeria civitatis fecit ecclesiam in honorem beatæ virginis Mariæ et omnium apostolorum, ad gloriam et exaltationem fidei Trinitatis. Civitas autem Damietæ, præter naturalem loci situm, quo munitur, triplici muro cingitur, habens extrinsecus murum humilem ad custodiā fossati exterioris, secundum altiorem, ac tertium secundo eminentiorem. Mu-

---

<sup>1</sup> Hæc civitas.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1141.

rus medius viginti octo turres habet principales, A.D. 1219.  
binas vel ternas testudines continent, quæ om-  
nes integræ remanserunt præter unam, quæ cre-  
bris ictibus trebuculi Templariorum aliquantulum  
concussa fuit; voluit enim Deus integrum tra-  
dere eam servis suis, ut clavem et antemurale  
totius terræ Ægypti. Sita est autem civitas  
inter Ramesse et campum Taphneos in terra Ger-  
sen,<sup>1</sup> ut conjicere possunt Christiani, quæ pascu-  
alis est, quam filii Israel tempore famis petierunt  
a Pharaone, sicut legitur in veteri Testamento.

*De captione castri Taphneos.*

Capta<sup>2</sup> igitur Damietta, missi sunt explora- Capture of  
Tanks.  
tores ad virorum mille, in festo sancti Clemen-  
tis, in naviculis per parvum flumen, quod Taph-  
nis appellatur, ut de castellulis et villis victu-  
alia quærerent et situs locorum diligentius ex-  
plorarent. Cum autem appropinquassent ad  
castrum quoddam de nomine fluminis appella-  
tum, Saraceni qui in ejus præsidio erant, visis  
Christianis, existimabant exercitum totum ad-  
venire, unde portis obseratis fugerunt; Christi-  
ani vero Christum ibi solum capitaneum inven-  
ientes castrum alacriter intraverunt. Testati  
sunt fideles reversi, se nunquam in plano cas-  
tellum fortius inspexisse; habet enim turres  
septem fortissimas, et desuper testudines per  
gyrum; duplice fossato cingitur et utroque mu-  
rato, habens antemurale. Lacus se diffundunt  
in latum per circuitum, unde in hyeme aditus  
equitibus difficilis est, atque in æstate adeo  
impossibilis, ut nunquam per obsidionem a quo-  
libet caperetur. Lacus ille valde piscosus est,  
nam de piscariis ejus quatuor millia marcarum

<sup>1</sup> Gessen.] ‘Gressen’ in C.; | <sup>2</sup> Capta.] Jac. de Vitriaco, p.  
‘Gessen,’ Jac. de Vitriaco. | 1143.

A.D. 1219. Soldano annis singulis solvebantur. Avibus abundat et salinis. Casalia multa per gyrum serviebant ei, nam civitas ante castrum olim famosissima fuit ac major Damieta, sed postea ruinosa. Hæc est Taphnis, cuius campi in psalmo meminit propheta David, et Esaias, 'Stulti principes Taphneos,' et cætera. In hac autem urbe Jeremias dicitur lapidatus, ut habes in veteri Testamento. Distat autem Taphnis a Damieta itinere unius diei per mare versus terram promissionis, ut facile sit de Achon vel de Damieta per mare vel per terram præsidium ibidem ponere et victualia destinare. Damna plurima Christianis fecit in obsidione Damietæ, quando naves ad exercitum accedentes vel ab eo recedentes delatae fuerunt illuc, nam littus maris ante Taphnis arenosum est et sine portu, sinum autem habet latum, in quo naves devolutæ recedere non valent absque vento multum opportuno. Eodem tempore vir nobilis Ranulphus comes Cestrensis, postquam fere per biennium in servitio Dei militaverat, cum legati licentia et benedictione, et totius exercitus favore, repatriavit.

*Ut Lodowicus ad Tholoseam hostiliter accedens  
confusus redierit.*

Louis  
boulogne  
Toulouse.

Circa haec tempora Lodowicus, filius Philippi regis Francorum primogenitus, ad instantiam patris sui innumerabilem collegit exercitum, ut hæreticos<sup>1</sup> Albigenses impugnaret, veniensque cum<sup>2</sup> omni multitudine sua ad urbem Tholosa-

<sup>1</sup> *Hæreticos Albigenses.* ] verse by a contemporary poet, Amongst the hitherto inedited works upon the history of France, ending with the commencement of this expedition of Louis; II. M. Faure has published a history of the crusades against the Albigenses, written in Provençal 9323, seqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Cum omni multitudine.*] The dukes of Bretagne, Noyon, San-

nam, cujus habitatores ex diu dicebantur haere- A.D. 1212.  
tica pravitate foedati, <sup>1</sup> illam obsidione vallavit.  
Machinisque igitur per gyrum collocatis, insul-  
tus acerrimos crebrius iterabant; quod cum  
cives cognovissent, ad defensionem sese præpa-  
rabant machinasque contra machinas ergebant,  
ubi cum Francorum exercitus diu et inaniter  
laborasset, facta est in populo fames valida,  
quam etiam subsecuta est dira mortalitas tam  
hominum quam equorum. Simon quoque comes  
Montis-fortis, qui princeps militiae erat, ante  
portam civitatis, lapide de petraria emiso in  
capite percussus, toto contrito corpore, <sup>2</sup> subito  
exspiravit; frater quoque ejusdem Simonis in  
obsidione cuiusdam castri, quod non longe a  
Tholosa distat, ad cumulum doloris multorum,  
lapide similiter ictus diem clausit extremum.  
Igitur in exercitu Lodowici, ut prædictum est,  
ingruente fame cum hominum mortalitate et re-  
ram omnium damnosa nimis diminutione, idem  
Lodowicus cum reliquii populi sui confusus ad  
Galias remeavit.

*De secunda coronatione regis Henrici.*

Anno Domini MCCXX. rex Henricus fuit ad A.D. 1220.  
natale Domini apud Merlebergiam, adhuc sub <sup>Henry</sup> crowned.  
custodia Petri Wintoniensis episcopi constitu-  
tus; quo etiam anno coronatus est idem rex  
apud <sup>3</sup>Cantuariam in die sancto Pentecostes a  
Stephano ejusdem civitatis archiepiscopo, præ-

lis and Tournay; Brito, p. 113.

<sup>1</sup> *Illam obsidione vallavit.]* ‘Te-

pide oppugnaverunt eam;’ *ibid.*

<sup>2</sup> *Subito exspiravit.]* He died

the year before the arrival of

Louis, on the 26th of June; *ibid.*

p. 112: see also the metrical

history before mentioned, II.

8447, *seqq.* In the Close Rolls

is a grant of lands, before held

by him, to Stephen de Segrave,

which begins, ‘Audivimus, quod

comes Simon de Monte-forti in

fata concessit;’ it is dated the

28th July: p. 366.

<sup>3</sup> *Cantuariam.* ] Henry was

crowned at Westminster accord-

ing to all the chroniclers; which

is proved by various writs in the

Close Rolls.

A.D. 1220. sente clero et populo totius regni, decimo sexto kalendas Junii, anno regni sui quinto. Deinde in<sup>1</sup> festo sancti Barnabæ apostoli convenerunt ad colloquium apud Eboracum rex Anglorum Henricus et rex Scotorum Alexander, ubi inter eos<sup>2</sup> tractatum est de matrimonio contrahendo inter regem Scotiæ et sororem regis Angliæ, atque, ibi foedere confirmato, rex Scotorum ad propria remeavit.

*De canonizatione sancti Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi.*

Canoniza-  
tion of Hugh  
bishop of  
Lincoln.

Eodem anno sanctus Hugo, Lincolniensis episcopus, a papa Honorio canonizatus est et in catalogo sanctorum admissus, facta prius miraculorum ejus inquisitione a Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et abate de Fontibus Johanne, sicut in hoc sequenti domini papæ authentico continetur; <sup>3</sup> Honorius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, dilectis filiis universis Christi fidelibus præsentem paginam inspecturis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Divinæ dignatio pietatis sanctos et electos suos in cælestis regni felicitate locatos adhuc in terra miraculorum coruscatione clarificat, ut fidelium per hoc excitata devotio eorum suffragia digna veneratione depositant. Cum igitur sanctæ recordationis Hugonem, Lincolniensem episcopum, quem, sicut nobis plenarie constat, divini munera largitas, tam in vita quam etiam post vestem mortalitatis exutam, insignium miraculorum multitudine illustravit, sanctorum catalogo adscriptimus, universitatem vestram monemus et

<sup>1</sup> In festo sancti Barnabæ;] the 11th of June. ment made between the kings in Rymer, i. p. 160, seq.

<sup>2</sup> Tractatum est.] See the agree- <sup>3</sup> Honorius.] Rymer, tom. i. p. 165.

exhortamur in Domino, quatenus ejus apud A.D. 1220.  
Deum patrocinia devote imploretis ; ad hæc  
statuentes, ut die depositionis ipsius ejusdem  
festivitas annis singulis devote de cætero cele-  
bretur. Data Viterbii, decimo tertio kalendas  
Martii, pontificatus nostri anno quarto.'

*De captione castrorum de Sanneia et de Rokingham.*

Eodem anno rex Henricus, Willelmo comite Rockingham  
castle taken.  
de Albemarlia invito, cepit subito castella de  
Rokingham et de 'Sanneia' <sup>in vigilia aposto-</sup>  
lorum Petri et Pauli ; veniente autem præfato  
rege hostiliter ad castella prædicta, invenit illa  
penitus omni victualium genere destituta, ita  
quidem quod nec etiam tres panes invenirentur  
in eis.

*Translatio sancti Thomæ, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis.*

Eodem<sup>3</sup> tempore levatum est de lapide mar- Translation  
of Thomas  
Becket.  
moreo corpus beati Thomæ archiepiscopi et mar-  
tyris a Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo,  
præsente rege et omnibus fere episcopis totius  
regni, cum abbatibus, prioribus, comitibus, ba-  
ronibus, clero et populo multo, in crastino octa-  
varum apostolorum Petri et Pauli ; cuius cor-  
pus sanctissimum collocatum est honorifice in  
pheretro ex auro et lapidibus pretiosis mirabi-  
liter fabrefacto. Interfuerunt etiam huic trans-

<sup>1</sup> *Sanneia.*] In the writs oc-  
curring in the Close Rolls con-  
cerning the earl of Albemarle,  
this castle is called 'de Salvata.'  
Walter of Coventry has a more  
particular account of the affair in  
question ; see Tyrrell, ii. p. 841.

<sup>2</sup> *In vigilia . . . Petri et Pauli ;*]  
28th of June.

<sup>3</sup> *Eodem tempore.*] In the Wa-

verley Annals it is said, that ne-  
ver before in England had such a  
crowd been gathered at one spot.  
Notice, it appears, had been  
given by the archbishop nearly  
two years before of his intention,  
and the tidings had been carri-  
ed into different kingdoms and  
countries ; p. 185. See the pope's  
bulls on this occasion, Rymer, i.  
p. 158, seq.

A.D. 1220.

lationi archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores, et alii multi de regno Francorum aliarumque diversarum regionum, qui ob honorem et reverentiam beati martyris, ut tantæ adessent solemnitati, alacriter convenerunt; nam dignissimum omnibus videbatur, ut sanctum martyrem Christi generaliter honorarent et colerent, qui pro universalis ecclesia sanguinem suum fundere et ad finem usque non timuit fideliter decertare.

*De obsidione castri de Biham et perturbatione  
regni.*

A.D. 1221.  
Siege of  
Biham  
castle.

Anno Domini MCCXXI. rex Henricus ad natale Domini apud Oxoniam tenuit curiam suam, præsentibus comitibus et baronibus regni; ubi regiis obsequiis cum lætitia et pace transactis, singulis quod justum erat, secundum antiquam regni consuetudinem, distribuit affluenter. Willemus quoque de <sup>1</sup>Foret, volens pacem regni turbare, sequenti nocte non licentiatus recedens ad castellum de <sup>2</sup>Biham cum festinatione perrexit, ubi post dies paucos, collectis viris armatis, ad villam de Tenham hostiliter accedens illam spoliavit et bladum canonicorum de Bridlingtona ad castellum de Biham asportari fecit; villam etiam de Depinge cum aliis ejusdem provinciæ villis spoliavit, homines cepit et post gravissimum membrorum cruciatum ad redemptionem coegit. Habuit autem, ut dicebatur, hujus factionis incentores Falcasium, Philip-pum Marc, Petrum de Malo-leone, Engelardum de Athie, et alios multos, qui clam miserunt ei viros armatos, ut pacem regni turbaret. Inter hæc quoque homines regionis illius ad ecclesias convolantes bona sua in cœmeteria detulerunt.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Foret.*] ‘For’ in C.; William | marle above mentioned.  
de Fortibus, the earl of Albe- | <sup>2</sup> *Biham.*] in Lincolnshire.

Convenerunt interim magnates Angliæ ad regem A.D. 1221.  
 apud Westmonasterium, ut de negotiis regni tractarent; comes vero, qui cum cæteris vocatus fuerat, simulavit se illo ire, sed callidus viator propositum mutans ad castellum de Fotheringeia divertit. Erat tunc castellum in custodia Ranulfi comitis Cestrensis, a milibus fere ac servientibus destitutum; quod cum comes prædictus cognovisset, scalas ad murum adhibens armatis suis ingressum paravit, et sine mora, <sup>1</sup>subjugato castello, paucos quos invenerunt custodes vinculis constrinxerunt. Deinde, impositis in castello armatis, ad municipium de Biham celeriter convolavit; quo facto, cum armatis suis totam adjacentem provinciam spoliavit, castrumque suum de damnis aliorum munivit. Sed cum tandem ista præsumptio ad regem et ejus concilium pervenisset, exercitu magno celeriter convocato, feria quarta post purificationem beatæ Mariæ castellum de Biham cuneis militaribus circumcinxit, et, ne diutius protrahamus sermonem, locatis in gyrum castelli machinis, muros ejus et ædificia <sup>2</sup>diruerunt in brevi, ita quod defuit locus inclusis ubi sub salvo capita reclinarent, qui aliud refugium non habentes exierunt omnes de ruina castelli et sexto idus Februarii sese regi præsentarunt; at rex jussit eos vinculis mancipari donec consilium haberet, quid de illis sibi foret agendum. Venit interea comes de Albermarlia sub conductu Walteri, Eboracensis archiepiscopi, ad regem, et, <sup>3</sup>Walone legato impetrante, cum ipso pacificatus est, eo quod ei-

<sup>1</sup> *Subjugato castello.*] They found the castle empty, according to the Chron. Dunst. p. 103.

five days, and was then taken and burned to the ground; *ibid.*

<sup>2</sup> *Diruerunt.*] It held out for

<sup>3</sup> *Walone.*] Paris has ‘Pandulph,’ which is probably the right reading.

A.D. 1221. dem regi et patri suo in guerra sua servierat fideliter ac potenter; milites etiam omnes et servientes sine poena et redemptione relaxati sunt a rege, qui pessimum aliis dedit exemplum, ut contra eum hac fiducia in casu consimili rebellarent.

*De dissensione inter Richardum, Dunelmensem episcopum, et monachos exorta.*

Dissension between the bishop and the monks of Durham.

Sub his denique diebus exorta est magna inter Richardum de Marisco, episcopum Dunelmensem, et ejusdem ecclesiae monachos<sup>1</sup> dissensio pro quibusdam libertatibus antiquis et consuetudinibus, quas iidem monachi se gavisi sunt multis retro temporibus habuisse. Episcopus autem fraudulenter monachis significavit praedictis, ut venirent ad eum cum privilegiis suis et ecclesiae suae instrumentis, ut, siquid in eis esset corrigendum ad perfectam eorum libertatem, ipsius arbitrio suppleretur; prior vero et monachi, fraudem episcopi habentes suspectam, instrumenta sua ei nullatenus ostendere voluerunt. Episcopus itaque, cum munimentorum inspectionem habere non potuit, juravit quod omnia bona eorum in usus suos converteret, adjiciens quod, si aliquem ex monachis extra portas curiae suae inveniret, non aliam quam caput redemptionem acciperet; juravit etiam, audientibus multis, quod, eo vivente, pacem Dunelmensis ecclesia non haberet. Nec multo post, cum servientes episcopi monachum quendam ab ecclesia quadam violenter extraxissent, monacho conquerenti et super hoc coram episcopo querelam deponenti respondit episcopus, quod melius fecissent ministri si monachum oc-

<sup>1</sup> *Dissensio.*] ‘Eo quod esset cretus et prodigus dilapidator;’ substantiae ecclesiasticae indissimilares. Mat. West. p. 110.

cidissent ; sicque deinceps ita monachis præfatis idem episcopus injurious exstitit et infestus, ut, necessitate cogente, ad præsentiam domini papæ appellantes sese et sua omnia sub ejus protectione ponerent, ac deinde Romam clericos mittentes et monachos episcopum accusaverunt in multis, contra quam accusationem hoc sequens rescriptum impetraverunt a papa :

‘ Honорий епископ Сарсберијски и Елијски, и The pope orders an inquiry into the bishop's conduct. останујући, епископи, салутем, и остало. Ита ноби in odore bonæ opinionis fratrum et cooperatorum nostrorum convenit delectari, ut in pestilentibus витија non palpемус, cum non deceat pro reverentia ordinis sustinere peccantes, quorum culpa tot eos mortibus dignos facit, quot ad subjectos perditionis exempla transmittunt, qui sola quaë pravitatis exempla conspicunt imitantur. Hinc est quod, cum de venerabili fratre nostro Dunelmensi епископо сајпиус ноби insinuata fuissent quaë ab епископали honestate nimium dissonabant, tandem inculcatis funibus clamoris excitati, ut non pateremur cum perditione multorum quiescere amplius in suis enormitatibus епископум memoratum; de quo insinuatio clamosa processit, quod, postquam fuit ad officium pontificale promotus, reus sanguinis, simoniæ, adulterii, sacrilegii, rapinæ, perjurii ac dilapidationis multiplicis est effectus, non formidans clericos, orphanos ac viros religiosos opprimere, testamenta decedentium impedire, regia jura contra scientiam dilecti filii nostri Pandulphi, Norwicensis electi, munire, ac excommunicacione ligatus ingerere se divinis. Item etiam appellationibus non defert ad Romanam ecclesiam interpositis, statuta generalis concilii non observat, nunquam proponit populo verbum Dei, lingua et exemplo vitae pravum subditis præ-

A.D. 1221. bet exemplum. Coram multis juravit, quod pacem, ipso vivente, Dunelmensis ecclesia non habebit. Conquerente sibi quodam monacho Dunelmensi, se a servientibus suis ab ecclesia quadam fuisse extractum et usque ad sanguinis effusionem pulsatum, respondit ei, quod melius factum fuisset si servientes episcopi monachum peremissent. Ipse insuper apostolicam regulam, continentem qualis debeat esse episcopus, penitus calcavit in cunctis. Nos ergo, ne alienæ culpæ simus auctores, si clausis oculis tot et tanta prædicti episcopi transeamus errata, cum adeo ad nos clamor super his ascenderit ut dissimulationi amplius non sit locus, dignum duximus ex officii nostri debito descendere, ut hæc an ita sint, vel aliter, videamus. Quocirca fraternitati vestræ per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatenus, inquisita super his et cognita sollicite veritate, quæ inveneritis, vestris fideliter inclusa sigillis, ad nostram præsentiam remittatis, ut, auctore Deo, quod super hoc faciendum fuerit statuamus. Datum Viterbii, pontificatus nostri anno quarto.'

*Ut episcopus Dunelmensis contra monachos Romam patierit.*

Appeal made  
to Rome.

Cum autem literæ domini papæ ad notitiam executorum pervenissent, ex officio sibi injuncto vocaverunt episcopum Dunelmensem, cum abbatis, prioribus, archidiaconis, decanis, apud Dunelmum ad suum consistorium, et alias laicos et clericos illius provinciæ, quoscumque hujus rei esse consciros crediderunt. Illis autem omnibus die sibi et loco statuto coram executoribus comparentibus, recitatæ fuerunt literæ domini papæ, audientibus cunctis, aperte et distincte ad intelligendum; quibus perlectis et in-

tellectis, surrexerunt clerici Dunelmensis episcopi, quasdam recusationes frivolas et fallaces allegantes contra exsecutores prædictos, atque, ne procederent in inquisitione prædicta, præsentiam domini papæ appellarunt; et sic facta appellatione episcopus cum clericis suis recessit, diem statuens adversariis, qua contra eum in domini papæ præsentia comparerent. Interposita itaque appellatione, sæpedictus episcopus Romanam<sup>1</sup> adivit curiam, præmissis clericis suis, qui sibi supervenienti domini papæ gratiam præpararent; unde contigit, ut, antequam monachi Dunelmenses Romam venissent, clerici memorati actionem eorundem monachorum non mediocriter infirmaverant, unde post multas hinc inde coram papa altercationes tam episcopus quam monachi, <sup>A.D. 1221.</sup> <sup>2</sup>immoderatis profusis expensis, remissi sunt in Angliam ad exsecutores supradictos, ut coram eis quod justum fuerit sententialiter statuatur. Duravit autem hæc diu inter eos semel suborta contentio, donec mors episcopi litem, sicut ipse prædixerat, terminavit.

*De constructione novi castelli apud Montem-Gomericum.*

Eodem anno, circa nativitatem beatæ Mariæ,<sup>In Insurrection Wales.</sup> Loelinus,<sup>3</sup> rex Walliæ, cum exercitu copioso cas-

<sup>1</sup> *Romanam adivit curiam.*] In the Dunstable Chronicle it is said that the archbishop of Canterbury and the bishop of Durham went both to Rome; that, after they had gone, the bishops of Salisbury and Ely had their commission to inquire into the charges against the latter, and, having done so, they forwarded to Rome the result of their examinations; pp. 100, 109.

<sup>2</sup> *Immoderatis profusis expen-* sis.] In this journey he expended, according to Matthew of Westminster, more than thirty thousand marks; p. 110.

<sup>3</sup> *Loelinus.*] There are two letters from the king to Llewellyn, printed in Rymer, upon the Welch king's attacks upon the property of the earl of Pembroke, which give a concise history of the whole state of the case; they are dated the 5th of October 1220.

A.D. 1221. tellum, quod <sup>1</sup>Buet appellatur, obsedit; Reginaldus quoque de Brausia, cuius illud municipium erat, regis constanter imploravit auxilium, ut per eum, cum ipse ad hoc non sufficeret, obsidio solveretur. Rex autem, qui suis magnatibus deesse non debuit, cum exercitu magno illuc tendens, fugientibus ex more Wallensibus, obsidionem amovit. Tunc rex versus Montem-Gomericum tendens cum exercitu suo, quæque sibi obvia de rebus Wallensium, in armentis pecorum, cum spoliis damnosis multis, secum ad sustentationem suorum conducere præcepit. Deinde cum ad Montem-Gomericum pervenisset et loca illa vagando perlustrasset, deprehenderunt prudentiores exercitus locum idoneum ad castellum extruendum, cuius situs cunctis inexpugnabilis videbatur. Jussit itaque rex ad securitatem regionis illius, propter creberrimas Wallensium irruptiones, ibidem castellum firmari; et ita singuli, accepta licentia, <sup>2</sup>ad propria remearunt, concessis magnatibus de quolibet scuto duas marcas argenti.

*De statu terræ sanctæ post captionem Damietæ et Taphneos.*

Letter from  
the master  
of the  
Temple on  
the affairs of  
Palestine.

[Per idem tempus mandavit magister militum Templi literam quæ sequitur de statu terræ sanctæ;] <sup>3</sup> Fratri in Christo reverendo N., Dei gratia Elimensi episcopo, frater Petrus de Monteacuto, magister militum Templi, salutem. Quomodo autem in negotio Domini nostri Jesu Christi post captionem Damietæ et castri Taph-

<sup>1</sup> Buet.] Builth, or Llanfair, in Brecon.

<sup>2</sup> Ad propria remearunt. ] It appears from a charter printed in Rymer upon its extension,

that a truce was now concluded before the king and Pandulph, at Shrewsbury, between Llewellyn and the earl of Pembroke and Reginald de Breose; p. 166.

neos hactenus sit processum, paternitati vestræ A.D. 1221.  
literis præsentibus declaramus. Noveritis igitur  
quod in primo passagio post captionem prædic-  
tam apud Damietam tot peregrini applicuerunt,  
quod una cum residuo remanentis exercitus pos-  
sint sufficere ad munitionem Damietæ et defen-  
sionem castrorum. Dominus quidem legatus  
una cum clero, promotionem exercitus Jesu  
Christi præoptans, populum plures ac diligenter  
admonuit de faciendo equitatu super infi-  
deles, sed barones exercitus, tam transmarini  
quam cismarini, considerantes quod gentes ex-  
ercitus ad munitionem dictarum civitatum et  
castrorum, et ad progressum ulterius faciendum  
ad Christianitatis utilitatem, non possent suffi-  
cere, in hoc consentire noluerunt; Soldanus  
enim Babyloniae cum infinita perfidorum multi-  
tudine non longe a Damietta castrametatus super  
utrumque fluminis brachium pontes construxit  
ad impediendum Christianorum progressum, qui  
cum tanta multitudine ibidem exspectat arma-  
torum, quod maximum periculum de ulterius  
equitando fidelibus immineret. Veruntamen ci-  
vitatem prædictam et castra fossatis et littus  
undique munivimus, exspectantes a Domino  
consolari per subsidium nobis advenientium in  
succursum; sed Saraceni, nostrum perpenden-  
tes defectum, quamplures armaverunt galeias et  
mense Septembrio eas constituerunt per mare,  
quæ Christianis in subsidium terræ sanctæ ad-  
vantantibus damna immania intulerunt. Tan-  
tus enim in exercitu nostro erat defectus pecu-  
niæ, quod galeias nostras per aliquod tempus  
magnum tenere non potuimus. Comperientes  
igitur per prædictas Saracenorum galeias exer-  
citui Christiano maximum imminere dispendium,  
galeias nostras et galiones aliaque vasa incon-

A.D. 1221. tinenti armavimus ad prædictis galeiis resistendum. <sup>1</sup>Et sciatis, quod Coradinus, Soldanus Damasci, congregata Saracenorum multitudine infinita, comperiens civitates Achon et Tyri militia et populo sibi resistere valenti penitus destitutas, damna illis gravissima clam et palam frequenter infert; ante præterea castrum nostrum, quod Peregrinorum dicitur, sæpius veniens sua tentoria fixit, dispendia nobis multimoda inferendo; castrum quoque Cæsareæ Palestinae obsidens subjugavit, quamvis plures peregrini tunc apud Achon morarentur. Cæterum noveritis, quod Seraph, filius Saphadini, frater Soldanorum Babylonis et Damasci, contra Saracenos orientales in manu forti dimicans in potentibus sibi obstantibus multum prævaluit, licet non de omnibus, quia, Domino procurante, de facili non omnes poterit superare; nam, si guerram illam posset ad effectum perducere, terra Antiochiæ vel Tripolis, Achronensis sive Ægyptiaca, ad quamcumque illarum declinaret, maximo periculo subjaceret, et, si aliquod castorum nostrorum obsidione vallaret, nullatenus eum amovere possemus; veruntamen dicta dissensio gaudium nobis confert et solamen. Exspectavimus præterea jam diu imperatorem et nobiles alios, per quos speramus relevari, in quorum adventu opus multorum manibus inchoatum ad finem speramus perducere optatum; si vero de spe succursus hujus in proxima æstate, quod absit, frustraremur, utraque terra, Syriæ videlicet et Ægypti, tam illa quæ nuper est adquisita, quam illa quæ diu possessa est, in casu sunt dubio constitutæ. Nos itaque et aliæ gentes cismarinæ tot et tantis sumptibus

<sup>1</sup> Et sciatis.] Compare Bernard. Thesaur., Muratori, Rer. Ital. tom. vii. col. 841.

in exsequendis Jesu Christi negotiis adeo præ- A.D. 1221.  
gravamur, quod ad cónsuetas expensas non suffi-  
cimus, nisi divina clémentia et fidelium virorum  
subsilio nobis in proximo succurratur. Data  
Achon duodecimo kalendas <sup>1</sup>Octobris.'

*De peregrinatione Philippi de Albeneio ad terram  
sanctam.*

Anno Domini MCCXXII. rex Anglorum Henri- A.D. 1222.  
cus fuit ad natale apud Wintoniam, episcopo Philip  
civitatis Petro omnia sibi necessaria ministrante. d'Albiney  
Quo etiam tempore <sup>2</sup>Philippus de Albeneio, miles goes to the  
strenuus ac morum honestate commendabilis, re- Holy Land;  
gisque Anglorum magister et eruditior fidelissi-  
mus, iter Hierosolymitanum arripiens illuc cum  
prosperitate ac sine rerum diminutione pervenit,  
qui, protinus ut statum terræ didicisset, Ranul-  
pho comiti Cestriæ literas in hæc verba direxit;

*De ammissione Damietæ.*

'Reverendo domino et amico, R. comiti Ces- his letter to  
triæ et Lincolniae, suus ubique P. de Albeneio, the earl of  
salutem et veræ dilectionis affectum. Vestræ  
notifico excellentiæ, quod in die assumptionis  
virginis Marie extra portum Marsiliæ velificavi-  
mus et in die Lunæ ante nativitatem ejusdem  
virginis ante Damietam venimus, ibique in-  
venimus multas naves recedentes de villa; et  
tantum locutus fui cum quadam barca et tan-  
tum hominibus dedi, quod ad nos loqui venerunt  
et nobis rumores multum tristes narraverunt.  
Quod videlicet gens nostra de Damietta et mag-

<sup>1</sup>Octobris.] Paris inserts here the marriage of Alexander, king of Scotland, with Joan, Henry's eldest sister, as also the marriage of Hugh de Burgh with Margaret, the sister of the king of

Scotland : both weddings were celebrated at York.

<sup>2</sup>Philippus de Albeneio.] William d'Albiney had died there, according to Paris, in the previous year.

A.D. 1222.  
Letter of  
Philip  
d'Albany  
to the earl of  
Chester.

nates qui intus erant, rex scilicet Hierusalem et legatus, dux Balvariae, Templum et Hospitale, cum aliis multis, ita quod bene fuerunt mille milites cruce signati, et alii equites quinque milia, cum quadraginta millibus peditum, hii omnes fecerunt unam equitaturam erga terram Babylonis, contra voluntatem regis Hierusalem, ut dicitur, et iter arripuerunt ad festum sancti Petri ad vincula; et in illa equitatura per tres septimanas vel plus morati fuerunt, et fere in media via fuerunt Damietae et Babylonis. Tunc Soldanus Babyloniae et Coradinus frater ejus venerunt cum quanto exercitu habere potuerunt, et saepius gentes nostras appropinquando invaserunt et saepius de gentibus suis amiserunt; et, quando gentes nostrae ad Damietam redire voluerunt, flumen excrevit et per dies plurimos exivit, et gentes nostrae inter duo brachia fluminis erant; et fecerunt Saraceni de uno brachio ad aliud foveam quandam retro exercitum nostrum, flumenque tam magnum excrevit, quod gentes nostrae in aqua erant usque ad braccarios et cinctoria ad magnam miseriam et dolorem, itaque mortui et capti fuissent si Soldanus Babyloniae voluisset. Treugas sumpserunt gentes nostrae usque ad octo annos erga Soldanum tali pacto, quod gentes nostrae Damietam redderent et omnes esclavos quos tenebant in captivitate. Propter hanc pactionem tenendam rex Hierusalem, et legatus, et dux Balvariae, et alii divites in hostagio remanserunt; Soldanus vero pro jam dicta pactione ex parte sua viginti in hostagio tradidit. Quando vero hos rumores audivimus, magnum dolorem habuimus, sicut omnes Christiani habere debent; ideoque consilium habuimus, quia ad reddendam Damietam esse noluimus, ut versus Achon iter arripere-

mus, ubi in crastino beatæ virginis Mariæ nativitatis applicuimus; et in die proximo post redita fuit Damietta ad Soldanum, et ipse omnes esclavos suos, quos tenebat, deliberavit. Item vobis signiflico, quod dominus rex Hierusalem in partes vestras venturus est; ideo vobis precor, quod super promissa ei facta erga regem et alias magnates auxilium præbeatis, debitum enim ejus tam magnum est quod mirum est enarrare.  
Valete.'

*Item alia epistola de eodem.*

‘Frater P. de Monte-acuto, militum Templi magister humilis, dilecto fratri in Christo, A. Martel, locum præceptoris tenenti in Anglia, salutem. Etsi quandoque prospera, quæ nobis in negotio Jesu Christi succedebant, vobis significavimus, nunc sinistra, peccatis nostris exigentibus, in terra Ægypti nobis inficta, præsenti vobis scripto secundum rei seriem declaramus. Sane cum post captam Damiettam exercitus Christianus otio ibidem tempore longo vacaret, gens tam cismarina quam transmarina super hoc nobis convitia et redargutiones assiduas inferebat; veniens igitur dux Balvariae, locum tenens imperatoris, hominibus patefecit se ad hoc venisse, ut expugnaret inimicos fidei Christianæ. Habito igitur super hoc consilio domini legati, ducis Balvariae, magistrorum Templi et Hospitalis ac domus Teutonicorum, comitum, baronum et aliorum omnium, super progressu faciendo omnes unanimiter consenserunt. Illustris autem rex Hierosolymitanus vocatus venit cum baronibus suis et galeiis navibusque armatis apud Damiettam, inveniens exercitum Christianorum in tentoriis extra licias habitantem. Post festum vero apostolorum Petri et Pauli, dominus rex et le-

Letter from  
the master  
of the  
Temple on  
the affairs of  
the crusaders  
after the  
taking of  
Damietta.

A.D. 1222.  
Letter from  
the master  
of the  
Temple on  
the progress  
of the  
crusaders  
after the  
taking of  
Damietta.

gatus, totusque exercitus Christianus, tam per fluvium quam per terram ordinate procedentes invenerunt Soldanum, et cum eo inimicos crucis innumeros, sed tamen ante faciem ejus fugientes, sicque processum est sine damno donec perventum fuit ad tentoria Soldani, flumine tamen medio, quod nequivit exercitus pertransire; sed in ripa fluminis fixit tentoria, præparans pontes ad faciendum transitum ad Soldanum; itaque flumen Taphneos, a magno flumine Nili se derivans, a castris Soldani nos separavit. Cumque ibidem moram faceremus, recesserunt ab exercitu multi non licentiati, ita quod in decem millibus armatorum et amplius fuit exercitus diminutus. Soldanus interim per vallum antiquitus factum galeias et galiones, Nilo crescente, misit in flumen ad impediendum navigium nostrum, ne nobis victualibus destitutis a Damietta venirent alimenta, cum per terram, prohibentibus Saracenis, venire minime potuissent. Interclusa itaque via tam terræ quam fluminis ad necessaria nobis deferenda, habuit consilium exercitus de reditu faciendo; sed fratres Soldani, Seraph scilicet et Coradinus, Soldani Alapiæ et Damasci, atque Soldani alii, Camelæ videlicet et Haman et Coilanbar, cum regibus paganorum quamplurimis et multitudine paganorum, qui in ejus subsidiis advenerant, nobis redditum denegabant. Exercitus tamen noster, de nocte recedens per flumen et per terram, amisit victualia quæ ferebat in flumine et homines multis; quia, excrescente Nilo, Soldanus fecit aquam derivari per meatus occultos et canales rivulosque antiquitus constitutos ad impediendum regressum populi Christiani. Cum igitur in paludibus summarios, supellectilia, clitellas, currusque ac omnia fere necessaria exercitus Christi amisisset, nec ultra procedere vel reverti aut alicubi con-

fugere potuisset victualibus destitutus, nec pug- A.D. 1222.  
 nam facere cum Soldano propter lacum medium,  
 inter aquas inclusus sicut piscis reti includitur;  
 fecit invitus et in angaria positus pactum de  
 reddenda Damietta Soldano, et esclavis ejus qui  
 inveniri poterant in Tyro et Achon, pro vera  
 cruce et pro esclavis Christianis regnorum Baby-  
 loniae et Damasci. Nos igitur cum aliis nuntiis  
 de communi legatione totius exercitus Damie-  
 tam adivimus, populo civitatis pactiones nobis  
 injunctas omnibus ostendentes, quæ episcopo  
 Achonensi, cancellario, et Henrico comiti de  
 Malta, quos ibidem invenimus, plurimum dis-  
 plicebant; voluerunt enim civitatem defendere,  
 quod nos multum approbaremus si utiliter fieri  
 potuisset, mallemus quidem in carcere perpetuo  
 detrudi, quam civitas a nobis ad dedecus Chris-  
 tianitatis incredulis redderetur; sed, habita per  
 civitatem indagatione sagaci rerum et persona-  
 rum, nec pecuniam invenerunt nec gentem, qui-  
 bus civitatem defendere potuissent. Nos ita-  
 que huic pactioni adquiescentes sacramento et  
 obsidibus eam firmavimus, treugamque firmam  
 octo annorum statuimus. Soldanus igitur usque  
 ad compositionem factam fideliter tenuit quod  
 spopondit, exercitui nostro famelico per dies fere  
 quindecim panem conferens et <sup>1</sup>polentam. Vos  
 ergo nostris miseriis compatientes nobis in quan-  
 tum poteritis subveniatis. Valete.'

*De luctamine et dissidio Londoniensis urbis.*

Eodem anno in <sup>2</sup>die sancti Jacobi apostoli con- Riots in  
 venerunt ad luctamen apud hospitale Matildis London.  
 reginæ extra urbem Londoniarum cives urbis

---

<sup>1</sup> *Potentam.*] ‘Præbendam’ in MS. of July. Compare the account as given in the Chron. Dunst.

<sup>2</sup> *Die sancti Jacobi;*] the 25th p. 129, seq.

A.D. 1222.  
Riots in  
London.

prædictæ contra comprovinciales extra urbem positos, scirent ut quis eorum videretur viribus esse major. Illis autem diu decertantibus et hinc inde tumultuantibus, cives, aliis confusis, victoriam reportarunt. Inter alios quoque seneschallus abbatis Westmonasterii confusus recedens, quomodo se suosque complices vindicaret, anxius cogitabat. Tandem hunc vindictæ modum excogitans statuit arietem in <sup>1</sup>die sancti Petri ad vincula, denuntians per provinciam, ut omnes ad luctamen venirent apud Westmonasterium, et qui melior in luctamine inveniretur arietem pro mercede acciperet. Prædictus interea seneschallus congregavit viros robustos et in luctamine expeditos, ut sic saltem victoria potiretur; cives vero ex victoria iterata gaudere cupientes in manu valida convenerunt ad ludum, atque, hinc inde certamine inchoato, diu et fortiter se mutuo prosternebant. Seneschallus quoque sæpedictus cum suburbanis et comprovincialibus, qui potius vindictam quam ludum sitiebant, sine causa ad arma prosiliunt, atque cives, qui inermes advenierant, graviter et non sine sanguinis effusione pulsaverunt. At cives turpiter vulnerati fugam arripientes cum maxima confusione ingressi sunt civitatem; quibus ingressis, surrexit tumultus in populo, signoque communi pulsato, cives pariter convenerunt, et, re gesta cunctis per ordinem declarata, diversi diversam vindictæ sententiam protulerunt. Serlo tandem major civitatis, vir prudens et pacificus, consilium dedit, ut abbas Westmonasterii super illa conveniretur injuria, quam si vellet pro se suisque corrigere competenter, hoc sufficeret universis. Ad hæc <sup>2</sup>Con-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Die sancti Petri ad vincula;*] Arnulph. Paris relates that the August the 1st. execution of this Constantine was  
<sup>2</sup> *Constantinus,*] surnamed Fitz- one of the pleas urged by Louis

stantinus, vir quidam magnus in civitate, cum A.D. 1222.  
tumultu populi sententiam protulit, ut omnia  
aedificia abbatis Westmonasterii et domus senes-  
challi prædicti diruerentur et solo tenuis compla-  
narentur, et his dictis exivit edictum, ut quan-  
tocius Constantini sententia compleretur. Quid  
plura? Irrationabile vulgus cum aliis de civi-  
tate sine ordine procedentes civile bellum Con-  
stantino prævio commiserunt, atque, multis sub-  
versis ædibus, damnum non modicum abbatii in-  
tulerunt. Sed res gesta, quæ diu latere non po-  
tuit, cum ad aures Huberti de Burgo, Angliæ  
justiciarii, pervenisset, collectis copiis, ad turrem  
Londoniarum perrexit, ac nuntios mittens in  
civitatem præcepit, ut majores natu ad eum cum  
festinatione venirent; qui cum essent in ejus  
præsentia constituti, sciscitabatur ab eis, qui  
factæ seditionis principales erant auctores ac  
subversores regiæ civitatis, et qui pacem regis  
infringere præsumperant. Tunc Constantinus,  
qui constans fuit in seditione, constantior exstitit  
in responsione, asserens se illud factum warran-  
tizaturum, atque audientibus cunctis conqueri-  
tur se minus fecisse quam de jure fieri debuisse.  
At justiciarius, audita ejus confessione, retinuit  
eum absque omni tumultu, et duos alios cum eo;  
et, facto mane, misit Falcasium cum armatis  
multis per Thamensem fluvium, qui Constanti-  
num prædictum ad suspendium perduxerunt.  
Cum autem laqueum collo suo appositum et se  
omni auxilio destitutum conspexisset, obtulit pro  
vita habenda quindecim millia marcas argenti,  
sed nihil omnino profecit. Suspensus autem est  
ille et Constantinus nepos ejus, cum quodam  
Gaufrido, qui edictum Constantini in civitate

---

for not fulfilling the conditions | and Henry, on coming to the  
of the treaty between himself | throne.

A.D. 1222. proclaimaverat; et sic, civibus ignorantibus et sine tumultu, lata in eum sententia exsecutioni exstitit demandata. Et, his ita gestis, ingressus est in civitatem justiciarius cum Falcasio et aliis armatorum copiis, et quoscumque prædictæ seditionis deprehendit culpabiles capi fecit et in carcerem retrudi, quorum truncatis pedibus sive manibus, illos abire permisit; unde multi præ timore ab urbe fugientes nunquam postea sunt reversi. Rex vero, ad majorem vindictam omnes urbis magistratus deponens, novos constituit in civitate præfectos.

*De tonitruis et aliis tempestatibus.*

Thunder  
storms.

Eodem anno, sexto idus Februarii, audita sunt tonitrua<sup>1</sup> terribilia, ex quorum collisione fulmen exsiliens ecclesiam de Graham in comitatu Lincolniae sitam terribiliter accedit, ubi tantum talisque fœtorem emisit, quod multi, qui in ecclesia erant, fugientes fœtorem sufferre non valebant; tandem sacræ candelæ illuminatione et aquæ benedictæ aspersione vix ignis extinctus est; vestigia hujus rei adhuc in illo monasterio manent. Item eodem anno, in <sup>2</sup>die exaltationis sanctæ Crucis, per totam Angliam mugierunt horrenda tonitrua, et secuta est inundatio pluviarum cum turbine et impetu ventorum, quæ tempestas cum aeris intemperie usque ad purificationem beatæ Mariæ perseverans multis, et maxime colonis, molesta fuit; in æstate vero sequenti frumentum duodecim solidis vendebatur. Eodem etiam anno, <sup>3</sup>in festo sancti Andreæ apostoli, <sup>4</sup>au-

<sup>1</sup> *Tonitrua terribilia.*] In the Annal. Dunst. the damage sustained from these storms is more particularly noticed.

<sup>2</sup> *Die exaltationis sanctæ Crucis;*] September the 14th.

<sup>3</sup> *In festo sancti Andreæ;*] 30th of November.

<sup>4</sup> *Audita sunt tonitrua.*] Annal. Waverl. p. 187.

dita sunt tonitrua per totam Angliam generalia, A.D. 1222. quæ ecclesias et ecclesiarum turres, domos et ædificia, castrorum muros et propugnacula, subverterunt. In villa quoque quæ Pilardestuna dicitur, in pago Warewicensi sita, irruit tempestas illa in ædificiis cuiusdam militis, opprimens uxorem ejus cum octo hominibus utriusque sexus, in admiratione multorum, qui casum inspexerunt; deinde tempestas illa debacchando invalescens turbariam quandam in eadem villa, aquis profundis et palude circundatam, quasi in ictu oculi adeo reddidit siccum, quod, nec herbam nec lutum in ea relinquens, siccii lapides tantummodo remanserunt. Item in <sup>1</sup>vigilia sanctæ Luciæ virginis ventus vehemens et repentinus superveniens crudelius præfata tempestate desævit, nam generaliter per totam Angliam, quasi flatu diabolico agitata, ædificia diruit, ecclesias et eorum turres prostravit, arbores silvarum cum pomeriis radicibus evulsit, ita quidem quod vix aliquis immunis evasit a cuius se injuria <sup>2</sup>refrænaret.

*Ut Stephanus, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, libertates a rege exegerit.*

Anno Domini MCCXXXIII. rex Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Oxoniam. Et postmodum, in octavis Epiphaniæ, apud Londonias veniens cum baronibus ad colloquium requisitus est ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et magnatibus aliis, ut libertates et liberas consuetudines, pro quibus guerra mota fuit contra

A.D. 1223.  
Confirmation  
of the Great  
Charter de-  
manded.

<sup>1</sup> Vigilia sanctæ Luciæ ;] 12th of December. Canterbury, the particulars of which are in Wilkins' Concil. tom.

ii. p. 585. This year came also a bull from the pope to the archbishop of York, urging him to all diligence in establishing quiet.

A.D. 1223. patrem suum, confirmaret; et, sicut archiepiscopus ostendit evidenter, idem rex diffugere non potuit quin hoc faceret, cum in recessu Lodowici ab Anglia juravit, et tota nobilitas regni cum eo, quod libertates præscriptas omnes observarent et omnibus traderent observandas. Quod audiens Willelmus Briwere, qui unus erat ex consiliariis regis, pro rege respondens dixit, ‘Libertates quas petitis, quia violenter extortæ fuerunt, non debent de jure observari.’ Quod verbum archiepiscopus moleste ferens increpavit eum dicens, ‘Willelme,’ inquit, ‘si regem diligeres, pacem regni non impediros.’ Videns autem rex archiepiscopum in iram commotum dixit, ‘Omnes libertates illas juravimus, et omnes astricti sumus, ut quod juravimus observemus;’ et rex protinus, habito super hoc consilio, misit<sup>1</sup> literas suas ad singulos vicecomites regni, ut per milites duodecim vel legales homines uniuscujusque comitatus per sacramentum facerent inquiri, quæ fuerunt libertates in Anglia tempore regis Henrici avi sui, et factam inquisitionem apud Londonias mitterent ad regem in quindecim diebus post Pascha.

*De altercatione inter Walenses et Willelmum Marescallum.*

Disturbances in Wales. Eodem<sup>2</sup> anno, dum Willelmus Marescallus, comes Penbroc, fuit in Hibernia, Loelinus, rex

<sup>1</sup> Misit literas suas,] dated the 30th of January; Rymer, vol. i. p. 168.

<sup>2</sup> Eodem anno.] The extension of time given to this treaty was to expire at Easter, 1223. It appears that Llewellyn took advantage immediately of its expiration to recommence hostilities. Hemingford gives an ac-

count of these disturbances, and adds, that, the king sending forces to aid the earl, Llewellyn was glad to conclude a peace. There is a safe-conduct granted to Llewellyn to come to the king at Worcester, on the Monday after St. John Baptist's day (24 June), printed in Rymer, i. p. 168.

Walensium, in manu forti cepit duo castella A.D. 1223. prædicti Willelmi, et omnes quos in eis invenit capitibus privari fecit, et impositis in eisdem castellis Walensibus suis recessit. Sed, cum post dies paucos ad notitiam prædicti Marescalli res gesta pervolasset, rediit cum festinatione in Angliam; <sup>1</sup> exercitu magno congregato, castella prædicta obsedit et cepit; et quia Loelinus prius omnes homines Marescalli, quos in castellis coperat, capitibus amputatis interfecerat, Willelmus Marescallus Walensibus talionem reddens eorum capita detruncari fecit; et deinde, ad majorem vindictam, terram Loelini hostiliter ingressus igne et ferro quæque sibi obvia devastavit. Quod audiens Loelinus venit contra Marescallum in fortitudine gravi; sed Marescallus, Marte sibi propitio, hostes acriter invadens, multis ex Walensibus interfectis, omnes in fugam coegit, quos Marescallus potenter insecurus immisericorditer trucidavit; æstimati sunt autem interfici et vinculis mancipati ad novem millia hominum, paucissimis ex omnibus per fugam elapsis. Eodem anno, circa festum Dominicæ ascensionis, <sup>2</sup> Walterus Malus-clericus consecratus est Carleolensis episcopus per manum Willelmi, ejusdem ecclesiæ quondam archiepiscopi. Circa idem tempus prorupit oleum lucidissimum in magna ecclesia apud Eboracum de tumba beati Willelmi, ejusdem ecclesiæ quondam archiepiscopi. Eodem anno Romæ pluit terra sanguinea per tres dies, admirantibus multis.

<sup>1</sup> Exercitu.] The summonses issued by the king to the barons and the army to meet him at Gloucester, after the siege of Builth castle, are in Rymer, i. p. 170.

<sup>2</sup> Walterus Malus-clericus.] It appears from a letter of his printed in Rymer, i. p. 120, that he was John's messenger to the court of Rome, to argue his cause there against the barons in 1214.

*De morte Philippi, regis Francorum.*

A.D. 1223.  
Death of  
Philip of  
France.

Eodem tempore, circa festum sancti Petri ad vincula, Philippus, rex Francorum, <sup>1</sup> diem clausit extremum, cuius mortem cometa ardens et crinita, quæ paulo ante apparuerat, indicavit; cuius obitu divulgato, Henricus, rex Anglorum, misit archiepiscopum Cantuariensem cum tribus episcopis ad Lodowicum filium ejus, jam in regem coronatum, constanter rogans, ut redderet sibi Normanniam cum aliis terris transmarinis, sicut juraverat<sup>2</sup> in recessu suo de regno Angliæ, quando pax facta fuerat inter ipsum et regem Angliæ, [consentientibus] magnatibus universis. Ad hæc Lodowicus respondens dixit, se Normanniam et terras alias juste possidere, sicut ostendere paratus erit in curia sua, si rex Angliæ ad eam voluerit venire et ibidem juri parere. Respondit præterea, quod juramentum in Anglia factum ex parte regis Anglorum fuerat violatum, dum imprisii sui, qui apud Lincolniam capti fuerant, ad redemptionem gravissimam sunt compulsi; de libertatibus autem regni Angliæ, pro quibus guerra mota fuerat, quæ in recessu suo concessæ erant et ab omnibus juratæ, ita actum est, quod non solum illæ leges pessimæ ad statum pristinum sunt reductæ, sed et illis nequiores per totum regnum Angliæ sunt generaliter constitutæ. Quod audientes archiepiscopus et episcopi, cum aliud responsum habere nequiverant, ad propria sunt reversi, regi Angliæ ea quæ audiabant referentes.

<sup>1</sup> *Diem clausit extremum.*] See Rym. p. 148; but, as Rapin observes, ‘it is very likely they his character by Brito, and epitaph; Rec. des Hist. xvii. p. 115.

<sup>2</sup> *Juraverat.*] These conditions do not appear in the treaty, as in Rym. p. 148; but, as Rapin observes, ‘it is very likely they were stipulated in the secret articles, since the French historians do not scruple to own them.’

*De quodam Albigensium antipapa.*

Circa dies istos hæretici Albigenses consti- A.D. 1223.  
tuerunt sibi antipapam in finibus Bulgarorum, The Albi-  
Croatiae et Dalmatiæ, nomine Bartholomæum,  
genses elect  
cujus error in partibus illis adeo invaluit, ut  
etiam episcopos et alios multos regionum illarum  
ad suam allexerit pravitatem; contra quem <sup>1</sup>C.,  
Portuensis episcopus et in partibus illis aposto-  
licæ sedis legatus, Rothomagensi archiepiscopo  
scripsit in hæc verba; ‘Venerabilibus patribus,  
Dei gratia Rothomagensi archiepiscopo et ejus  
suffraganeis episcopis, salutem in Domino Jesu  
Christo. Dum pro sponsa veri Crucifixi vestrum  
cogimur auxilium implorare, potius compellimur  
lacerari singultibus et plorare. Ecce, quod vi-  
dimus, loquimur; et, quod scimus, testificamur.  
Ille homo perditus, qui extollitur super omne  
quod colitur aut quod dicitur Deus, jam habet  
perfidiaæ suæ præambulum hæresiarcham, quem  
hæretici Albigenses papam suum appellant, ha-  
bitantem in finibus Bulgarorum, Croatiae et Dal-  
matiæ, juxta Hungarorum nationem. Ad eum  
confluunt hæretici Albigenses, ut ad eorum con-  
sulta respondeat; est enim de Carcasona oriun-  
dus, vices illius antipapæ gerens, Bartholomæus  
hæreticorum episcopus, funestam ei exhibendo  
reverentiam; sedem et locum concessit in villa,  
quæ Porlos appellatur, et se ipsum in partes  
Tholosanas transtulit. Iste Bartholomæus in  
literarum suarum undique discurrantium tenore  
se in primo salutationis alloquio intitulat in hunc  
modum, ‘Bartholomæus, servus servorum sanctæ  
fidei, tali salutem.’ Ipse etiam inter alias enor-  
mitates creat episcopos et ecclesias perfide ordi-

<sup>1</sup> C.] ‘Conradus.’ See the let- at length in Martene, Thes. Anec-  
ter, here much abridged, printed | dot. tom. i. col. 901.

A.D. 1223.

nare contendit. Rogamus igitur attentius et per aspersionem sanguinis Jesu Christi, et propensius obsecramus, auctoritate domini; papæ, qua fungimur in hac parte, districte præcipientes, quatenus veniatis Senonis in octavis apostolorum Petri et Pauli proxime futuris, ubi et alii prælati Franciæ, favente Domino, congregabuntur, parati consilium dare in negotio prædicto, et cum aliis, qui ibidem aderunt, providere super negotio Albigeni; alioquin inobedientiam vestram domino papæ curabimus significare. Data Planiū,<sup>1</sup> sexto nonas Julii.<sup>2</sup> Sed hunc tandem tumultum mors prædicti antipapæ celeriter terminavit.

*De quibusdam baronibus schisma excitare volentibus.*

The barons  
murmur  
against  
Hubert de  
Burgh.

Eodem anno surrexit murmuratio non modica a magnatibus Angliæ contra Hubertum de Burgo justiciarum, <sup>2</sup>qui pacem regni conati sunt perturbare; dicebant enim ad invicem, quod animum regis exasperabat contra illos, et quod similiter non æquis legibus regnum regebat. Accessit præterea ad majoris odii incentivum adventus nuntiorum regis, quos Romam miserat, qui bullam domini papæ archiepiscopis Angliæ et eorum suffraganeis deferebant, quæ talem continebat sententiam, videlicet, quod dominus papa regem Angliæ plenæ ætatis adjudicaverat, ut de cætero negotia regni idem rex principaliter cum suorum domesticorum consilio ordinaret. Significavit etiam exsecutoribus prælibatis dictus

<sup>1</sup> *Planiū.*] ‘Provin;’ Thes. Anecd. col. 903.

<sup>2</sup> *Qui pacem regni conati sunt perturbare.*] In Rymer are printed two letters of the king to the pope and Gualo the legate,

on the state of the country, in which he asks them to write to the barons, urging them to peace and obedience. They are dated 19th November, in the presence of H. de Burgh, and the bishops of Bath and Salisbury.

papa in literis supradictis, quatenus auctoritate A.D. 1223. apostolica denuntiarent comitibus, baronibus, milibus et aliis universis, qui custodias habebant castrorum, honorum et villarum, quæ ad regis dominium spectabant, ut continuo visis literis regi illas redderent, contradictores autem per censuram ecclesiasticam ad satisfactionem compellerent; unde pars maxima comitum et baronum, quorum corda concupiscentia possidebat, hujusmodi præcepta indigne ferens bellumque suscitare disponens convenit in unum, et, conspiratione absque follibus confiata, supradictas occasiones prætendebat, ut pacem regni perturbaret; custodias autem jam dictas, per admonitionem archiepiscoporum et episcoporum, regi reddere supersedit, volens potius arma movere quam regi satisfacere de premissis. Sed hæc infra.

*De cruce Dominica apud Bromholm delata.*

Eodem anno apud<sup>1</sup> Bromholm crebuerunt divina miracula, ad gloriam et honorem salutiferæ crucis, in qua Salvator mundi pati dignatus est pro redemptione generis humani; et, quoniam tanto thesauro Britannia in oceano constituta divina largitate meruit beatificari, dignum est, imo dignissimum, memoriis posterorum imprimere, quo ordine a tam remotis partibus in Britanniam sit delata. Verum comes Flandrensis Baldewinus, ex comite Constantinopolitanus imperator effectus, ubi per multorum curricula annorum strenue vixit, contigit illum a perfidis regibus quodam tempore graviter infestari, contra quos cum impetu et absque deliberatione progrediens lignum Dominicum cum aliis reliquiis, quæ sem-

Miracles at  
Bromholm.

<sup>1</sup> *Bromholm.*] Chron. de Dunst., where they are recorded as happening in the year 1225; p. 158.

*Qualiter rex Anglorum, invitatis baronibus, dominica castella in usus suos receperat.*

A.D. 1234.  
The king  
demands of  
the barons  
the custody  
of their  
castles.

Anno Domini MCCXXIV. rex Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Norhamptonam, præsente archiepiscopo Cantuariensi cum suis suffraganeis et militia magna nimis ; comes vero Cestrensis cum suis conspiratoribus apud Leicestriam tenuit festum suum, tumens et minas contra regem et <sup>1</sup>justiciarum intendens pro custodiis castrorum ac terrarum, quas idem rex exigebat ab illo. In crastino autem post missarum solemnia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis cum suis suffraganeis episcopis, albis induiti vestibus et candelis accensis, excommunicaverunt omnes regis et regni perturbatores et sanctæ ecclesiæ et rerum ecclesiasticarum invasores ; deinde idem archiepiscopus misit solennes nuntios apud Leicestriam ad comitem Cestriæ et suos complices, firmiter denuntians singulis et universis, quod, nisi in crastino resignarent in manus regis omnia castella et honores ad coronam spectantes, ipse et omnes episcopi nominatim excommunicarent illos, sicut eisdem a domino papa fuerat demandatum. Tunc comes Cestrensis et ejus complices, cum per exploratores edocti fuissent quod rex majorem quam ipsi habuit numerum armatorum, consternati sunt valde, quia, si facultas eis suppeteret, in regem propter justiciarum potenter arma moverent ; sed, cum proprium conspexissent defectum, verebantur dubium certamen inire, et præterea timuerunt archiepiscopum et episcopos, ne forte illos excommunicarent nisi desisterent ab inceptis ; unde saluberrimo usi

---

<sup>1</sup> *Justiciarum.*] Whose strata- | out of their hands, to diminish  
gem it was, by taking the castles | their power; Rad. de Coggeshall.

consilio venerunt apud Norhamtonam ad regem A.D. 1224. universi, et a comite Cestrensi incipientes redididerunt singuli castella et municipia, honores et custodias, regi, quæ ad coronam spectare videbantur; mansit nihilominus eorundem magnatum indignatio adversus regem, quia noluit ad illorum instantiam justiciarum amovere. Erant autem hujus dissidii incentores comes Cestrensis, comes Albemarlensis, Johannes constabularius Cestriæ, Falcasius cum suis castellanis, Robertus de Veteri-ponte, Brienus de Insula, Petrus de Malo-leone, Philippus Marc, Ingelardus de Athie, Willelmus de Cantelo et Willelmus filius ejus, et multi alii, qui omnes pacem regni perturbare summopere conabantur.

*Qualiter Lodowicus, rex Francorum, Rupellam cum residuo Pictaviae subjugavit.*

Eodem anno rex Francorum Lodowicus duxit exercitum grandem ad Rupellam, ut et illam vel armis vel pretio subjugaret; quo cum per venisset, obtulit civibus non modicam pecuniam, ut villam suam ei reddentes fidelitatem sibi facerent essentque illi de cætero intendentes; at cives, cum a rege Anglorum se quasi <sup>Rochelle given up to the French.</sup> <sup>1</sup>derelictos reputassent, tam prece quam pretio inducti regi Francorum <sup>2</sup>Rupellam tradiderunt. Tunc rex tam in villa quam in castello milites posuit et servientes, ac deinde, de tota Pictavia securi-

<sup>1</sup> *Derelictos.*] In the Close Rolls is a writ to Savary de Mauleon as seneschal of Poitou, charging him with neglect in not having appointed B. de Podio (according to his own previous recommendation) to the government of Rochelle; p. 582. After Rochelle was taken, according to the French

chronicles, fearing to return to England, de Mauleon went over to the enemy. Rec. des Hist. tom. xvii. p. 307.

<sup>2</sup> *Rupellam tradiderunt.*] Letters upon the loss of Rochelle, from the mayor and council of Bayonne, are printed in Rymer, i. p. 173.

A.D. 1224. tate recepta,<sup>1</sup> sine sanguinis effusione ad propria pacifice remeavit. Est autem Rupella portus in Pictavia, ubi reges Anglorum et milites ad defensionem regionum illarum applicare consueverant, quibus nunc via præclusa est per insidias, quæ sibi a suis baronibus in Anglia parabantur.

*De obsidione castri Bedefordensis et de concilio  
Norhamtonensi.*

Council of  
Northamp-  
ton.

Per idem tempus convenerunt ad colloquium in octavis sanctæ Trinitatis apud Norhamptonam rex cum archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, baronibus et aliis multis, de regni negotiis tractaturi; voluit enim rex uti consilio magnatum suorum de terris transmarinis, quas rex Francorum paulatim occupaverat, sed secus accidit quam sperabat. Nempe fuerunt eo tempore apud Dunstapliam justiciarii regis, quos 'itinerantes' appellamus, Martinus scilicet de Pateshulle, Thomas de Muletona, Henricus de Braibroc, et alii, qui ibidem tenebant placita regis de nova dissaisina; ubi Falcarius inter alios, qui multos spoliaverat, cecidit in misericordia regis de plusquam triginta paribus literarum, de quibus singulis in centum libris erga regem debuerat condemnari. Hoc itaque cum Falcasio fuerat intimatum, iratus est valde; unde nimis inconsulte agens jussit militibus, qui in præsidio castri Bedefordensis erant, quatenus in manu armata ad Dunstapliam accedentes justiciarios præfatos caperent atque vinculis constrictos apud castrum de Bedeford in obscuritatem detruderent carceralem. Sed justiciarii talia cognoscentes recesserunt cum festinatione, quo im-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sine sanguinis effusione.*] In and killed many of the enemy; the Dunst. Chron. Savary de p. 140. Mauleon is said to have resisted,

petus eos ducebat; inter quos <sup>1</sup> Henricus de Brai- A.D. 1224.  
 broc incaute fugiens captus a militibus saepe  
 dictis et satis inhumane tractatus apud castrum  
 prælibatum est carcerali custodiæ mancipatus.  
 Rumore itaque divulgato, venit uxor prædicti  
 Henrici apud Norhamtonam ad regem, et, au-  
 diente universo concilio, de viro suo cum lachry-  
 mis querelam depositus; quod rex factum nimis  
 indigne ferens quæsivit consilium a clero simul  
 et populo, quid sibi super tanta injuria foret  
 agendum. At omnes una voce consilium regi  
 dederunt, quatenus sine mora, et omnibus aliis  
 prætermisis negotiis, in manu valida et armata  
 ad castrum prælibatum accedens tantam teme-  
 ritatem studeat vindicare; cumque domino regi Siege of Bed-  
 dicta placuisse sententia, ipso jubente, omnes ford castle.  
 ad arma quam citius convolantes ad castellum  
 de Bedeford, tam <sup>2</sup>clerus quam populus, per-  
 venerunt. Missis igitur a rege nuntiis ad magis-  
 tri castellanos, petiit ingressum sibi dari, et  
 Henricum de Braibroc justiciarium suum reddi  
 mandavit. Willelmus quoque de Breaute, frater  
 Falcasii, et alii inclusi, nuntiis responderunt, se  
 castellum non reddituros nisi inde a domino suo  
 Falcasio præceptum haberent, et ob hoc præ-  
 cipue, quod regi de homagio vel fidelitate non  
 tenebantur astricti. Quod responsum cum regi  
 renuntiatum fuisset, indignatus est valde, et ira-  
 tus jussit castellum cuneis militaribus circum-  
 cingi; illi vero, sese ad defensionem præparan-  
 tes, muros et propugnacula undique defendere  
 vacaverunt. Tunc archiepiscopus et episcopi

<sup>1</sup> *Henricus de Braibroc.*] In broc by his brother, i. p. 175.  
 Rymer is a writ of the king, by which he remits his anger against Colin de Breaute, which he had entertained against him for the imprisonment of Henry de Brai- <sup>2</sup>*Clerus.*] An account of the aid furnished by the clergy on this occasion is in a writ by the king, dated Bedford, 18th Aug.; Rym. i. p. 175.

A.D. 1224.  
Siege of  
Bedford  
castle.

universi ipsum Falcasium et omnes, qui in castelli præsidio erant, candelis accensis, <sup>1</sup>excommunicationis mucrone percuesserunt. Obsessum est autem castellum decimo sexto kalendas Julii, die videlicet Jovis proximo post octavas Trinitatis. Et, his ita gestis, venerunt ex præcepto regis <sup>2</sup>bellica instrumenta, petrariæ scilicet et mangonella, quibus in gyrum locatis, insultus acerrimos assidue faciebant; inclusi e contrario defensioni vacantes tela mortifera viriliter emittebant. Quid plura? vulnerabantur mutuo multi et occidebantur. Interea rex misit manum armatam, ut Falcasium quæreret et inventum regi præsentaret, sed ille per exploratores præmonitus ad Walliam usque confugit; unde nuntii ad regem revertentes se laborasse inaniter fatebantur. At rex in iram provocatus juravit per animam patris sui, quod, si per vim caperentur inclusi, patibulo suspenderet universos; illi vero per minas regis ad majores provocati injurias prohibuerunt regiis nuntiis, ne quis eos ulterius de reddendo castello sollicitaret. Crevit igitur hinc inde mortale odium ex multitudine peremptorum, ita quod nec fratres fratribus, nec parentes filiis, pepercérunt. Tandem vero, post stragem nimiam mutuo illatam, artifices regis castellum fecerunt ligneum, altum et <sup>3</sup>geometrica arte fabricatum, in quo balistarios collocaverunt, qui

<sup>1</sup> *Excommunicationis mucrone percuesserunt.*] The bishop of Coventry writes to the king, that, finding Faulkes de Breaute was staying in the neighbourhood of Chester, he, with the bishop of Exeter, had excommunicated him; *ibid.*

<sup>2</sup> *Bellica instrumenta.*] See a more particular account of the siege and taking of the castle in

the Chron. Dunst. p. 142, *seqq.* The Close Rolls contain many writs for arms, provisions, etc. for the use of the king and the army before Bedford castle; p. 605, *seqq.*

<sup>3</sup> *Geometrica arte fabricatum.*] Erant ibi duas machinæ ligneæ arte fabrili supra eminentiam turris et castri erecta ad opus balistariorum; *ibid.*

omnem castelli possent circumstantiam perscrutari ; nec deinceps erat aliquis in castello, qui ab armis exiret, quin protinus mortaliter laedetur. Nec idcirco inclusi prostertere adversarios omiserunt ; nam in confusionem propriam duos milites de exercitu regis, qui se nimis temere morti exposuerunt, cum multis aliis peremerunt, undecunque in se adversariorum suorum animos provocantes.

*De captione castri predicti et militum suspensiōne.*

Rex autem interim de maneriis Falcasii et Bedford castle taken. terris ubique per Angliam fecit fruges et armenta cum rebus aliis distrahi et infiscari, ut inde in obsidione diutina ex ejus damnis haberet auxilium. Tandem, cum a regis bellatoribus duae testudines, quas Gallice <sup>1</sup> 'Brutesches' appellant, non sine multorum læsione subactæ fuisse, invaserunt castellum undique consequenter inclusosque, vellent nollent, ingredi compulerunt. At regales castellum ingressi, equos, arma, cum victualibus multis et innumeris rebus aliis, lucrati, hilares revertuntur ; deinde turrim aggredientes regii victores magnam murorum partem contriverunt. Et his ita gestis, cum viderent inclusi se diutius resistere non posse, in vigilia assumptionis beatæ Mariæ de castello quidam ex eis exeentes misericordiam regis implorabant, quos rex omnes vinculis jussit arctissimis constringi donec residuos subjugasset. In crastino autem, cum omnes vulnerati et plagi lethiferis afflicti exiissent et ad præsentiam regis adducti fuissent, addicti sunt ad suspendium universi; suspensi sunt itaque inter milites et servientes, qui propter superbiam suam, quam

<sup>1</sup> *Brutesches.*] See Du Cange's Glossary, under the word 'Bratches.'

A.D. 1224.

regi ostenderant in obsidione jam finita, non potuerunt misericordiam impetrare, [viginti quatuor.] Henricus vero de Braibroc sanus et incolumis ad regem veniens multas ei gratiarum retulit actiones. Falcarius autem, spe falsa seductus, credidit suos per annum integrum castellum posse a captione defendere; sed tandem, cum fratres suos et alios omnes suspensos certa relatione cognovisset, sub conductu Alexandri, Coventrensis episcopi, apud Bedeford venit ad regem et corruens <sup>1</sup>pronus ad pedes ejus postulavit, quatenus pro magnis obsequiis suis et laboribus sumptuosis sibi ac patri suo tempore hostilitatis impensis misericordiam adhiberet. Tunc rex per consilium tradidit illum, castellis, terris ac rebus omnibus spoliatum, sub custodia Eustachii, Londinensis episcopi, donec quid de illo ageret esset sententia liter definitum; et sic quasi in momento idem Falcarius de ditissimo pauperissimus effectus, multis et maxime nocentibus poterit fieri in exemplum. De hoc vero casu fortunæ quidam sic ait,

‘ Perdidit in mense . Falco tam fervidus ense,  
Omine sub sevo . quicquid quæsivit ab sevo.’

Uxor quoque sæpedicti <sup>2</sup>Falcasi conspectui se regis et archiepiscopi representans dixit se in eum nunquam consensisse, ut illi matrimonio jungeretur; unde, cum tempore hostilitatis violenter capta esset et absque consensu desponsata, divorrium fieri postulavit. Tunc archiepiscopus statuit illi diem, ut interim deliberationem haberet quid agere debuisse; rex vero concessit ei terras omnes et possessiones suas per totam Angliam

<sup>1</sup> *Pronus ad pedes ejus.*] The charter by which he resigns all his money and other property into the king's hands is in Ry-

mer, i. p. 173; it is dated the 25th August.

<sup>2</sup> *Falcasi.*] ‘Margareta scilicet de Ripariis; Paris.

et eam sub custodia Willelmi comitis de War- A.D. 1234.  
renna deputavit. Regi vero, pro magnis labori-  
bus suis et expensis, tam a prælatis quam a  
laicis concessum est per totam Angliam caru-  
cagium, de qualibet caruca duas marcæ argenti ;  
magnatibus item concessit rex scutagium, vide-  
licet de scuto quolibet duas marcas sterlingo-  
rum ; et sic omnes ad propria recesserunt. Cas-  
tellum quoque illud fecit rex complanari et redi-  
gi in acervos, atque domos dedit Willelmo de  
Bello-campo, et locum cum ædificiis universis.

*Concessa est regi Anglorum quintadecima pars rerum  
mobiliū.*

Anno Domini MCCXXV. rex Henricus ad Na- A.D. 1225.  
tale tenuit curiam suam apud Westmonasterium, Tax of a  
præsentibus clero et populo cum magnatibus fifteenth  
regionis. <sup>Tax of a fifteenth</sup> levied on moveables.  
<sup>1</sup>Solennitate igitur, ut decebat, com-  
pleta, Hubertus de Burgo, domini regis justici-  
arius, ex parte ejusdem regis proposuit coram  
archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, baronibus  
et aliis universis damna et injurias, quæ regi  
illata fuerant in partibus transmarinis, ex quibus  
non solum rex, sed et comites multi ac barones  
sunt exhæredati cum ipso ; et, cum multi sunt  
in causa, multorum subventio erit necessaria.  
Petiti ergo ab omnibus consilium pariter et  
auxilium, quibus corona Angliæ dignitates amis-  
tas ac jura posset pristina revocare ; ad hoc  
quoque plene perficiendum, regi sufficere credi-  
dit, si ei quintadecima pars omnium rerum

---

<sup>1</sup> *Solennitate.*] The directions to the justiciaries as to the mode of collecting this tax may be seen in Rymer, p. 177; immediately following which is a bull from the pope to the king, ‘quod dictus rex prudenter se habeat erga suos vassallos.’ In it he urges the king, ‘ut cum vassallis tuis non ponas hoc tempore rationem, nec eos super restitutione tuorum reddituum scandalizes; sed hæc et alia, quæ possunt scandalum generare, prudenter in tempus differas opportunum.’

A.D. 1226.

mobilium totius regni Angliæ tam a personis ecclesiasticis quam a laicis donaretur. His in hunc modum prosecutis, archiepiscopus et concio tota episcoporum, comitum, baronum, abbatum et priorum, habita deliberatione, regi dedere responsum, quod regis petitionibus grataanter adquiescerent,<sup>1</sup> si illis diu petitas libertates concedere voluisset. Annuit itaque rex cupiditate ductus quod petebant magnates, chartisque protinus conscriptis et regis sigillo munitis, ad singulos Angliæ comitatus <sup>2</sup>chartæ singulæ diriguntur, et ad provincias illas, quæ in forestis sunt constitutæ, duæ chartæ sunt directæ, una scilicet de libertatibus communibus et altera de libertatibus forestæ; istarum autem tenor chartarum superius habetur expressius ubi historia agitur de rege Johanne, ita quod chartæ utrorumque regum in nullo inveniuntur dissimiles. Tunc constitutus est dies certus ad mensem post Pascha, ut de singulis comitatibus regni duodecim milites et legales homines eligerentur, qui addito juramento novas a veteribus discernerent forestas, ut omnes illæ, quæ inventæ fuerint afforestatae post primam coronationem Henrici avi istius regis, statim reafforestentur; et sic, soluto concilio, delatae sunt chartæ singulæ ad singulos comitatus, ubi ex regis mandato, literario interposito juramento, ab omnibus observari jubentur.

*Ut rex Anglorum Richardum fratrem suum in  
Wasconiam miserit.*

Eodem anno, in die purificationis beatæ Mariæ, Richardus, frater regis Angliæ, ab eodem

Expedition into Gascony under prince Richard.

<sup>1</sup> *Adquiescerent.*] The Cister-

<sup>2</sup> *Chartæ.*] In the Annal, Burton. and Walter Hemingford the Jews five thousand marks; these charters are given at length. Annal. Waverl. p. 189.

rege donatus est <sup>1</sup> cingulo militari, et decem nobiles cum eo, qui ad ejus sunt obsequium deputati; qui postea tempore vernali, a rege cum Willelmo<sup>2</sup> comite Saresbiriensi et Philippo de Albeneio militibusque quadraginta in Wasconiam die Palmarum missus, velis prosperis in civitate Burdegalensi omnes feliciter appulerunt; quorum adventus cum archiepiscopo et civibus divulgatus fuisse, honorifice ab omnibus sunt recepti. Deinde, congregatis civibus coram archiepiscopo et nuntiis regis, Richardus, frater regis prædicti, literas fratris sui archiepiscopo et civibus cunctis porrexit, in quibus rex humiliter supplicavit, quatenus omnes homines et fideles sui de regionibus illis fratrem ejus amicabiliter susciperent, et consilium ei pariter et auxilium præstarent, quibus terras amissas revocare valuisse; at omnes gaudenter ipsum suscipientes regi per illum Angliæ subjectionem fecerunt. Venerunt igitur ad eum multi de partibus illis milites et servientes, quibus cum stipendia sufficienter ministrasset, in ejus obsequio remanserunt; dederat ei namque rex, antequam illum miserat ad partes transmarinas, Cornubiæ comitatum cum tota Pictavia, unde ab omnibus comes Pictaviensis vocabatur. Itaque comes Richardus, cum avunculo suo Willelmo comite Saresbiriensi et Philippo de Albeneio et militia copiosa, processit per villas et castella Wasconiae regionis, et quoscumque contradictores, qui homagium <sup>3</sup> regi et fidelitatem facere noluerunt, invenit, castella eorum et villas obsedit et poten-

<sup>1</sup> Cingulo militari.] Chron. Dunst. p. 153.

<sup>2</sup> Willelmo comite Saresbiriensi et Philippo de Albeneio.] For the king's letters recommendatory on

their behalf, see Rymer, i. p. 177; compare the account of this expedition by the writer of the 'Gesta Ludovici,' Rec. des Hist. xvii. p. 307.

<sup>3</sup> Regi,] wanting in C.

A.D. 1225. ter omnia subjugavit; nam Riolense castrum cum villa longa obsidione cepit, <sup>1</sup>villam sancti Marcarii cum municipio obtinuit, Bregerac castrum obsedit et dominum ejus ad regis fidelitatem revocavit. Sed, dum in longa obsidione apud Riolense castrum acerrimos insultus et crebros ageret, Lodowicus, rex Francorum, Hungoni comiti Marchiæ aliisque Pictaviæ baronibus dedit in mandatis, quatenus ad castrum præfatum hostiliter accedentes comitem Richardum captum sibi præsentarent et obsessos a periculo liberarent. Comes vero Marchiæ, junctis sibi quibusdam baronibus et militibus armatis, cum apparatu non modico ad prædictam obsidionem dissolvendam processit, sed Richardus comes cum sociis suis, de adventu hostium per exploratores præmunitus, paravit ei insidias, et, parte exercitus sui ad obsidionem dimissa, ipse cum parte armatorum probatissima ad nemus quoddam, quod prope erat, divertens hostes venientes exspectavit ibidem; qui dum locum insidiarum versus obsidionem pertransissent, comes Richardus et socii ejus cum strepitu buccinarum et vibamine hastarum irruerunt in ipsos, et, dirissimo conflictu inter partes confecto, in fugam adversarios compulerunt, quos comes Richardus ardenter insecutus bigas hostium et summarios cum spoliis et vasis argenteis subegit, multis ex fugientibus imperfectis, et sic in brevi totam sibi Wasconiam subjugavit. Eodem anno Johannes, Eliensis episcopus, diem clausit extremum; cui successit Gaufridus de Burgo, archidiaconus Norwicensis.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Villam sancti Marcarii.] S.* of his successes, dated from this Macaire. A letter from Richard town on the 2nd of May, is in to his brother, giving an account Rymer, i. p. 178.

*De exilio Falcasii proditoris.*

Circa hos quoque dies, Martio scilicet mense, convenerunt apud Westmonasterium ad colloquium rex Anglorum cum magnatibus suis, ubi idem rex jussit sententialiter diffinire, quid de proditore suo Falcasio foret agendum. Proceres vero in hoc pariter consenserunt cum rege, eo quod patri suo multis fideliter servierat annis, ne de vita periclitaretur vel membris, sed, ut Angliam aeternaliter abjuraret, omnes communiter addixerunt; quo facto, praecepit Willermo comiti Warennae rex, ut ipsum sub salvo ad mare conduceret et navi impositum committeret ventis et velis. Quod cum factum fuisset, dum Falcarius navem ingrederetur, adjuvavit comitem praedictum cum lachrymis ut salutaret dominum suum regem, affirmans cum juramento, quod perturbationes, quas in regno fecerat, instinctu majorum regni Angliae se fecisse; sicque cum quinque tantum servientibus in Normanniam transvectus, confestim ut applicuit a ministris regis Francorum <sup>A.D. 1225.  
Sentence of  
banishment  
passed on F.  
de Breante.</sup> <sup>1</sup>captus est et regi praedicto praesentatus, sed, quoniam inventus fuit cruce signatus, dimiserunt eum, qui illico Roman profectus est. Tandem cum Roberto Passeeleawe, clero suo, papae praesentatus est, sicut suo loco dicetur.

*De visione qua forestæ deafforestari debeant.*

Eodem anno, ad mensem de Pascha, missi sunt a rege Angliae Hugo de Nevilla et Brienus de Insula cum aliis ad hoc assignatis per Angliam, ut in singulis forestarum provinciis duodecim milites, vel liberi homines et legales, eli-

Inspection  
of forests.

<sup>1</sup> *Captus.*] He was taken in letter of the pope's legate; Ry-Burgundy, as it appears from a *mer*, i. p. 176.

A.D. 1225. gerentur ad deambulandum metas forestarum, ut per sacramentum eorum, quæ forestæ remanere ut fuerunt prius et quæ deafforestari debent, discernatur. Facta itaque in brevi regii exsecutione mandati, licet non sine magna contradictione plurimorum, concessis libertatibus singuli usi sunt, de boscis suis propriis vendentes, essarta facientes, bestias venantes, terram arabilem de inculta sulpantes, ita quod de nemoribus deafforestatis omnes pro libitu disponebant; et non solum homines, verum etiam canes, qui prius expeditari solebant, has libertates se habere gaudebant. Communibus vero libertatibus magnates, milites et libere tenentes adeo usi sunt, quod nec iota unum in regis charta contentum exstitit prætermissum.

*De collectione quintædecimæ ad opus regis.*

Tax on  
moveables  
collected.

Circa eosdem denique dies quintædecimæ partis medietas totius regni omnium mobilium et rerum habitarum colligitur ad opus regis, concessis induciis de altera medietate usque ad festum sancti Michaelis. Eodem anno Hugo Bigod, comes Orientalium Anglorum, humanæ naturæ debitum solvit, cujus terras et honores omnes rex sub justiciarii custodia deputavit.

*De concubinis sacerdotum.*

Act on the  
concubines  
of the clergy.

Eodem anno exivit decretum ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et episcopis ejus suffraganeis in hunc modum. Concubinæ sacerdotum et clericorum, qui infra sacros ordines constituti et beneficiati sunt, ecclesiastica careant sepultura, nisi sane se correxerint et incolumes, vel tanta earum in extremis appareat pœnitentia, propter quam non immerito cum eis debeat dispensari. Item, non recipiantur ad osculum pacis, nec

panem benedictum percipient in ecclesia, quam- A.D. 1225.  
 diu concubinarii eas detinent in domibus suis  
 vel publice extra domos. Item, si pepererint,  
 non purifcentur, nisi prius sufficientem præsti-  
 terint cautionem archidiacono, vel ejus officiali,  
 de satisfactione in proximo capitulo post puri-  
 ficationem earum facienda. Item, sacerdotes,  
 in quorum parochiis concubinæ talium commo-  
 rantur, si non hoc ostenderint archidiacono, vel  
 ejus officiali, suspendantur; et, priusquam relax-  
 entur, gravi poenitentiae subjaceant. Item, quæ  
 convinci poterit, quod sacerdos eam carnaliter  
 cognoverit, publicam agat poenitentiam et so-  
 lennem, ac si de adulterio esset convicta, etiam  
 si soluta fuerit; si vero despontata super rem  
 hujuscemodi fuerit convicta, tanquam pro dupli-  
 ci adulterio puniatur, ne tanti reatus impunitas aliis  
 transeat in materiam delinquendi.

*Ut comes Saresbiriensis a naufragio fuerit liberatus.*

Per idem tempus Willelmus comes Saresbiriensis, qui cum comite Richardo militaverat in partibus transmarinis, ad Angliam transiturus naves intravit; <sup>1</sup> sed cum longo maris periculo et ventorum turbinibus per dies plurimos et noctes in partes diversas jactaretur, cum ipsis nautis et aliis omnibus, qui in navi erant, de vita desperatus, annulos pretiosos et quæcumque in auro vel argento aut pretiosis vestibus possidebat fluctibus pelagi commisit, ut, sicut ad vitam nudus intravit temporalem, ita ab omni honore terreno spoliatus ad patriam transiret

The earl of  
Salisbury  
wrecked;

<sup>1</sup> Sed.] Chron. Dunst. p. 161; manders offered him 200 marks where is also an account of the fleet, which had taken out treasure to allow them to proceed, which to Richard, having been stopped was refused; the wind, however, in Rochelle roads by Savary de shifting suddenly, they got under Mauleon on its return. The com-

A.D. 1225. æternam. Et, cum in suprema fuisset desperatione constitutus, visus est cereus ingens et magno splendore coruscans ab omnibus, qui in navi periclitabantur, in summitate mali, et juxta cereum stantem viderunt puellam quandam nimia pulchritudinè decoratam, quæ lumen cerei, quod nocturnas tenebras illustrabat, a ventorum pluviarumque irruentium robore conservaret præclarum; ex hac quoque cælestis visione claritatis tam comes ipse quam nautæ omnes securitate concepta, divinum sibi adesse auxilium confidebant. Et cum universi, qui in navi erant, quid hæc visio portenderet, ignorarent, solus Willelmus comes præfatus hujus benignitatis gratiam beatæ Mariæ virginis assignavit; siquidem comes sæpedictus, die quo primo donatus cingulo fuerat militari, cereum unum ante altare beatissimæ matris Dei assignavit, ut ad missam, quæ diebus singulis in honorem ejusdem Dei genitricis cum horis canonicis devote solet decantari, jugiter arderet, et pro lumine temporali lucem commutaret æternam.

*Qualiter idem comes hostium insidias evaserit.*

cast on the  
island of Ré;

His ita gestis, cum crastinus dies illuxisset, projectus est comes cum sociis suis, ventis impellantibus, ad quandam maris insulam, quæ Re dicebatur, tribus a Rupella distans miliaribus, ubi brevibus ingressi cymbis ad insulam navigabant. Est autem in insula illa abbatia quædam ordinis Cisterciensis sita, ad quam comes nuntios dirigens postulavit, ut tutus posset ibidem latere ab hostibus, donec aura sibi felicior arrideret; quod abbas loci sibi gratanter annuens cum honore ipsum et ejus consortes suscepit. Erat autem insula illa in custodia Savarici de Malo-leone, qui tunc temporis cum Lo-

dowico, Francorum rege, militabat et maris A.D. 1225.  
 insulas nonnullas cum armatis non paucis ob-  
 servabat ; cujus duo servientes, qui comitem  
 plene noverant et cum aliis multis ad insula-  
 rum custodiam fuerant deputati, amicabiliter  
 accedentes ad eum postquam per triduum deli-  
 tuerat ibidem, dixerunt, quod, nisi ante lucem  
 crastinam ab insula recederet, caperetur a suis  
 sodalibus, qui cum illis insulas et maris semitas  
 observabant. Tunc comes, datis servientibus <sup>his escape</sup>  
 prædictis viginti libris sterlingorum, ad naves <sup>thence.</sup>  
 celeriter convolavit, et maris sese fluctibus  
 commendans fore per tres menses antequam in  
 Angliam applicaret inter undas sævientes con-  
 tinue laborabat.

*Ut magister Otho pro negotiis domini papæ in Angliam  
 venerit.*

Eodem anno magister Otho, domini papæ nun- <sup>Otho, the</sup>  
 tius, in Angliam veniens pro magnis <sup>1</sup> ecclesiæ <sup>pope's legate,</sup>  
 Romanæ negotiis regi literas præsentavit ; sed <sup>arrives in</sup>  
 rex, cognito literarum tenore, respondit, quod <sup>England;</sup>  
 solus non potuit diffinire, nec debuit, negotium  
 quod omnes clericos et laicos generaliter totius  
 regni tangebat. Tunc per consilium Stephani,  
 Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, datus est dies a rege  
 in octavis Epiphaniæ, ut, <sup>2</sup>convocatis omnibus  
 clericis et laicis, super præfato negotio tunc  
 tractarent apud Westmonasterium, et ibidem  
 fieret quod justum singulis videretur.

*Ut idem Otho Falcasium regi pacificare laboraverit.*

Eodem tempore magister Otho ex parte do- <sup>intercedes</sup>  
 mini papæ regem Angliæ humiliter rogavit, ut <sup>for F. de</sup>  
 Falcasio sibi reconciliato uxorem cum terris et <sup>Breante.</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Ecclesiæ.] Chron. Dunst. p. 161. | <sup>2</sup> Convocatis omnibus clericis et laicis.] See below, p. 114.

A.D. 1225. omnibus rebus amissis ad integrum restitueret, et ipsum, qui patri suo et sibi in guerra sua tam fideliter servierat, pura, ut decebat, diligeret caritate. Ad hoc quoque <sup>1</sup> respondit rex, quod propter prodictionem manifestam ab omni clero et populo regni per judicium curiae suae ab Anglia fuerat in exilium pulsus, et, licet regni cura specialiter ad ipsum spectare videretur, debet leges quidem et bonas regni consuetudines observare. Hæc autem cum audisset magister Otho, cessavit ulterius de Falcasio sollicitare regem. Tunc idem Otho cepit ab omnibus ecclesiis Angliæ conventionalibus, nomine procura-tionis, duas marcas argenti; et sciendum est, quod, tempore quo magister Otho venit in Angliam, dominus papa misit nuntios per orbem universum, exactiones ubique indebitas exigens, sicut inferius dicetur.

*De puella quadam, qua seculum relinquens ad ordinem Minorum confugit.*

Legend.

Circa eosdem dies erat puella quædam in finibus Burgundiae, generis nobilitate præclara, quam parentes de possessionibus non modicis hæredem sibi constituere decernentes cuidam viro ex illustri prosapia genito nuptam tradere voluerunt; sed puella, quæ ab annis puerili-bus studiis fuerat liberalibus imbuta, in secreta cordis puritate virginitatem suam Deo dedica-verat. Parentum clam deserens palatum in habitu peregrino, ut se liberius a paternis con-spectibus amoveret, contulit se ad contuber-nium quorundam fratrum de ordine Minorum; ubi, ipsa exigente, de illius rigore ordinis ad plenum erudita calceamenta depositit, saccum

---

<sup>1</sup> Respondit rex.] Compare the legate's letters to the pope, in Rymer, i. p. 176.

et cilicium induit, atque crines, in quibus lux- A.D. 1225.  
uria regnare solet, despicabiliter præcidit, et,  
quibuscumque modis potuit, naturalem quem  
habebat corporis decorem in omnem studuit de-  
formitatem transferre. Sed cum ad hæc nimis  
inaniter laborasset, dum non potuit, prohibente  
natura, elegantissimam sui corporis [deformare]  
dispositionem, quæ in omni dimensitate videba-  
tur quasi incomparabilis, illam solummodo, quæ  
intus erat, carnis munditiam perenni Sponso,  
qui in cælis est, consecrare disposuit; et, hoc  
propositum ut liberius perduceret ad effectum,  
spontaneam paupertatem elegit, officium sanctæ  
prædicationis assumpsit, vestium asperitatem in-  
duit, in lecto pro stratu mattam, pro cervicali  
saxum, habuit, atque in vigiliis continuatis et  
jejuniis carnem affligens, orationibus insistens,  
in rerum supercælestium contemplatione studuit  
infatigabiliter conversari. Tandem, cum per  
multorum curricula annorum in omni perfecti-  
one et vitæ sanctitate Deo placere et evange-  
lium pacis per civitates et castella, et præcipue  
sexui muliebri, prædicare studuerat, invidit ejus  
perfectioni humani generis inimicus, et per sep-  
tem menses in tot puellam ac talibus rerum  
secularium temptationibus submergere curavit,  
quod, nisi ei divinum adfuisset auxilium, om-  
nia bona vitæ præcedentis studia amisisset;  
reduxit namque ei ad mentem diabolus die-  
bus simul et noctibus prædia parentum suorum  
quæ reliquerat foecundissima, vinearum fertilium  
emolumenta, spatia pratorum amoenissima et  
florum diversorum varietate distincta, fontium  
scaturientium et rivulorum suaviter murmurantium  
oblectamenta, lignorum in nemoribus pro-  
ceritatem, prolis fœcunditatem, viriles amplexus  
ac veneris inter marem et fœminam delectatio-

Legend.

A.D. 1225.  
Legend.

nem, lectorum nobilium mollitiem, adstantium balatronum jocunditatem, annulorum ac lapidum pretiosorum decorum, piscium et volatilium ferrumque silvestrium gustum delectabilem et suavem. In his igitur temptationibus et aliis consimilibus puella fere desperata et in diversas meditationes inducta, utrum derelicta repeteret, an in proposito religionis perseveraret, ineffabili mentis et corporis cruciatu diebus singulis et noctibus torquebatur; sed miserator et misericors Dominus, qui sperantes in se ultra quam possunt pati non permittit tentari, oculum puluae restituit rationis, ut cerneret quanta in rebus temporalibus et delectationibus supradictis curiosa sit sollicitudo, in carnali commixtione turpitudo, quanto res temporales sudore adquiruntur et cum quanto dolore amittuntur, quanta sit coram Domino virginalis munditia, qui matrem suam foecundam esse voluit et in virginitate permanere disposuit, quæ merces sequitur fructum boni operis, quæ dulcedo sit in studio sanctæ ac divinae contemplationis, quæ societas civium supernorum, quam suavis sit et delectabilis sanctorum refectio animarum et regnare cum Christo, ubi frigiditas nullum afficit, fames et sitis neminem affligit, ira, rixa, vana gloria, invidia, superbia, accidia, avaritia, cupiditas et ebrietas nullum premit. Hæc et his similia virgo beata sæpius mente revolvens, et inter temptationum turbines virtutum præteritarum custos existens, armis accincta divinis artes diaboli fraudulentas omnes feliciter superavit et ipsum ad tartara confusum direxit.

*Qualiter puella fuerit liberata per dæmonem  
a quodam viro libidinoso.*

Tandem post dies paucos, cum puella præfata ab omnibus esset diabolicis incursionibus penitus absolta, diabolus ad eam reversus salutavit illam et dixit, ‘Salve,’ inquit, ‘domina mea et Deo cælorum virgo dilectissima; ego vero sum ille Sathanas, qui te jam per septem menses in tot temptationibus, licet inaniter, induxi, ut a bono te proposito revocarem et in eis laqueis irretirem; sed, quoniam in artibus meis fraudulentis a te victus defeci, hoc mihi pro poena a Domino cæli inflictum est, ut nunquam de cætero mihi liceat aliquod hominum genus tentare vel quempiam a bonis actibus impedire. Habeo præterea mandatum a Domino, cui obtemperare necesse est, ut quodcumque mihi præceperis cum festinatione perficiam, et etiam quodcumque supplicium præceperis cum festinatione sine mora subire.’ Hæc audiens puella ait ad dæmonem, ‘Conseruet me Deus a vestro consortio et famulatu, novit enim Ille quod tales ministrum nunquam dilexi.’ Et, his ita gestis, contigit puellam quandam ingredi civitatem, et gratia hospitandi domum cuiusdam matronæ ingressa hospitium postulans impetravit. Vespere autem facto, juvenis quidam, prædictæ matronæ filius, de negotiis consuetis domum rediens, cum vidisset virginem, quam mater ejus caritative hospitaverat, coepit admirari in habitu adeo despicibili, et facie pallore simul et macie, omnium membrorum ejus naturalem dispositionem; in qua opus naturæ in tantum laudavit, quod a planta pedis usque ad verticem in nullo deliquit, sed et totius corporis sui dispositione etiam generis nobilitatem evidenter expressit. Quid ergo? Exarsit

A.D. 1225.  
*Legend.*

A.D. 1225.  
Legend.

juvenis in concupiscentia virginis, et accedens ad eam de consensu carnali puellam convenit. Illa, e contra, juveni constanter quod petiit denegans affirmavit se virginitatem suam ab ætate tenera Domino consecrasse ; et præterea, cum voto suæ religionis et ordinis castitas sit annexa, votum infringere esse nefarium asserebat ; et his dictis recessit, ut nocturnam caperet requiem, ubi in quodam domatis angulo mattam sub se pro stratu, et saxum pro cervicali, juxta sui ordinis rigorem, capiti supponebat. Tunc juvenis ille, libidinis igne succensus, statuit immutabiliter in corde suo, quod, si de liberalitate a puella consensum obtinere nequiret, ipse cum ea rem ageret violenter, et veniens ad illam expressit ei quid facere cogitabat. At foemina religiosa in angaria mentis constituta metuebat plurimum ne ejus puritas virginalis per ardorem adolescentis in aliquo læderetur, et reducens ad mentem quod sibi a diabolo dictum fuerat, quod videlicet ad nutum ejus quicquid præcipiteret illico adimpleret, extulit vocem et dixit, ‘Diabole,’ inquit, ‘ubi es ?’ Et continuo dæmon respondit dicens, ‘Adsum, domina. Quid tibi placet ?’ Et puella, ‘Libera me,’ inquit, ‘cito a nebulone isto, qui me inquietat, somnum capere non permittit.’ Et continuo dæmon juvenem per pedes truculenter arripiens non sine læsione illum longius a puella projecit; sicque ter nocte illa, dæmone procurante, dilecta Deo puella ab adolescentis ardore liberata in crastino recessit ab urbe, salva sibi pudicitia virginali. De hac quoque puella, quem finem habuerit, quoniam nullo tradente cognovi, ea quæ dicta sunt piis auribus et amatoribus sufficient castitatis.

*De quadam inclusa, quæ per septennium non comedit.*

Eodem anno, in urbe Legecestrensi, obiit A.D. 1225.  
Legend. puella quædam inclusa religiosa, quæ per septennium ante obitum nullum omnino gustavit cibum, nisi quod diebus Dominicis corporis et sanguinis Domini communionem accepit; quod miraculum cum ad audientiam Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi, pervenisset, fidem non adhucuit veritati, sed plane incredulus fecit per dies quindecim a presbyteris et clericis inclusam prædictam arcta nimis observari custodia, quousque compertum fuit illam in toto termino memorato nullo usam fuisse corporis nutrimento. Faciem quoque semper habuit ut lilium candissimam roseoque rubore perfusam, ad indicium pudicitiæ et munditiæ virginalis.

*Quod comitissa Saresbiriensis maritum respuerit.*

Circa hos quoque dies relatum est regi An-  
glorum, Willelmu[m] comitem Saresbiriensem, ip-  
sius regis avunculum, dum de partibus trans-  
marinis rediret in Angliam, in mari fuisse  
submersum; sed, cum rex hujus rei eventum  
nimis moleste tulisset, accessit ad eum Huber-  
tus, regni justiciarius, exigens ab eo ut uxo-  
rem ejusdem Willelmi daret Reimundo nepoti  
suo, cui honor comitatus illius jure hæreditario  
contingebat, ut eam sibi matrimonio copularet.  
Rex autem cum petitionem suam annuisset si  
posset comitissam inducere ad consensum, misit  
illico justiciarius Reimundum præfatum ad co-  
mitissam in nobili apparatu militari, si possit ad  
eius amorem mulieris animum inclinare. Cum-  
que eam Reimundus memoratus blandis sermo-  
nibus et promissionibus magnis ad consensum  
trahere conaretur, illa cum indignatione maxima

A.D. 1225. respondit, se nuper literas accepisse et nuntios, qui comitem virum suum sanum esse et incolument fatebantur; respondit præterea, quod dominus suus comes si in veritate defunctus fuisset, nullo modo ipsum reciperet sponsum, quia generis ejus nobilitas id fieri prohibebat; 'Alibi,' inquit, 'tibi quæras matrimonium, quia experto reperies te huc inaniter advenisse.' At Reimundus hæc audiens confusus ab illa recessit.

*Quomodo dominus papa præbendas sibi dari exegerit.*

A.D. 1226.  
Council held  
at West-  
minster to  
consider the  
demands of  
the pope.

Anno Domini MCCXXVI. rex Henricus ad natale Domini celebravit festum suum apud Wintoniam, præsentibus quibusdam episcopis et magnatibus multis. Solennitate itaque peracta, profectus est rex apud Merlebergiam, ubi gravi infirmitate correptus per dies multos ibi despe-ratus jacebat. Venit interea terminus concilii ad festum sancti Hilarii <sup>1</sup>apud Westmonasterium præfixus, ubi rex cum clero et magnatibus regni comparere debuerat, ut domini papæ mandatum audiret. Multis igitur in loco præfato congregatis<sup>2</sup> episcopis cum aliis prælatis et laicorum turbis, magister Otho, domini papæ nuntius, de quo habita est mentio superius, literas aperte coram omnibus recitavit; in quibus idem papa allegavit scandalum sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ et opprobrium vetustissimum, notam scilicet concupiscentiæ, quæ radix dicitur omnium malorum, et in hoc præcipue, quod nullus potest aliquod negotium in Romana curia expedire nisi cum magna effusione pecuniae et exhibitione donorum. 'Sed, quoniam scandali

<sup>1</sup> *Apud Westmonasterium.* ] king was declared of full age, ii. Tyrrell states, from a MS. of the Annals of S. Augustine Canterbury, that at this council the p. 859.

<sup>2</sup> *Congregatis episcopis.* ] Chron. Wilkes, p. 40.

hujus et infamiae Romana paupertas causa est, A.D. 1226.  
 debent omnes matris inopiam sublevare et patris  
 ut filii naturales; quia, nisi a vobis et aliis viris  
 bonis et honestis dona recipere mus, deficerent  
 nobis necessaria vitæ, quod esset omnino Roma-  
 næ incongruum dignitati. Ad istud itaque scan-  
 dalum penitus eradicandum, per consilium fra-  
 trum nostrorum, sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ cardi-  
 nalium, quandam providimus formam, cui si vo-  
 lueritis consentire, a scandalo matrem vestram  
 poteritis liberare et in curia Romana sine do-  
 norum obsequio exhibitionem justitiæ obtainere.  
 Forma autem provisa hæc est; Petimus in pri-  
 mis ab omnibus ecclesiis cathedralibus duas  
 nobis præbendas exhiberi, unam de portione  
 episcopi et alteram de capitulo; et similiter in  
 cœnobiis, ubi diversæ sunt portiones abbatis et  
 conventus; a conventibus quantum pertinet ad  
 unum monachum, æquali facta distributione bo-  
 norum suorum, et ab abbatte tantudem.'

Hiis in hunc modum propositis, persuasit ex  
 parte domini papæ magister Otho ut consenti-  
 rent prælati, allegans supradicta commoda, quæ  
 in literis continentur. Hæc autem omnia au-  
 dientes episcopi et ecclesiarum prælati, qui per-  
 sonaliter interfuerunt, divertentes seorsum ad  
 colloquendum, cum super rebus propositis diu-  
 tius deliberassent, responsum suum in ore ma-  
 gистri Johannis, Bedefordensis archidiaconi, com-  
 muniter posuerunt, qui veniens in præsentia ma-  
 gистri Othonis per hæc verba respondit; 'Do-  
 mine, ista, quæ nobis proponitis, regem Angliæ  
 specialiter tangunt, generaliter vero omnes ec-  
 clesiarum patronos regni; tangunt archiepisco-  
 pos et eorum suffraganeos, necnon innumeros  
 Angliæ prælatos. Cum ergo rex propter infir-  
 mitatem, et archiepiscopi nonnulli et episcopi

The resolution passed.

A.D. 1226.

et alii ecclesiarum prælati, sunt absentes, in eorum absentia vobis respondere non possumus nec debemus; quia, si id facere præsumeremus, in præjudicium omnium absentium fieret prælatorum.' Et, hiis dictis, venit Johannes Mareschallus et alii nuntii regis, ad omnes prælatos, qui de rege baronias tenebant in capite, destinati, districte inhibentes, ne laicum feodum suum Romanæ ecclesiæ obligarent, unde a servitio sibi debito privaretur. Hæc autem cum magister Otho intellexisset, statuit his qui aderant diem ibi in media Quadragesima, dum ipse procuraret regis adventum et absentium prælatorum, ut tunc negotium sortiretur effectum; sed illi absque regis et aliorum, qui absentes erant, assensu præfixum diem admittere noluerunt, unde singuli ad propria sunt reversi.

*De morte laudabili Willelmi, comitis Saresbiriensis.*

Death of the  
earl of  
Salisbury.

Rex Anglorum interea, cum apud Merlebergiā ab infirmitate sua plene convaluisse, venit ad eum ibi Willelmus, comes Saresbiriensis, qui post longa maris pericula antea in diebus Natalitiis in Cornubia cum difficultate applicuerat; qui, cum fuisset a rege in magna suspectus lætitia, de justiciario coram domino rege gravem depositus querelam, quod, dum in remotis partibus esset in servitio suo, ipse miserat degenerem virum quendam, qui eo vivente cum uxore sua fornicari disposuit et adulterinum cum ipsa matrimonium contrahere violenter; addidit insuper, quod, nisi rex plenam sibi de justiciario faceret justitiam exhiberi, ipsem quæreret de tanto excessu vindictam in gravissimam regni perturbationem. Tunc justiciarius, qui præsens erat, proprium confessus reatum in equis pretiosis et donativis ingentibus gratiam sibi co-

mitis reparavit; et, sic facta concordia, invitavit A.D. 1228. comitem ad mensam suam justiciarius, in qua, ut dicitur, idem comes occulto infectus veneno, ad castellum suum Saresbiriense profectus, lecto decubuit graviter infirmatus. Invalescente de-  
mum ægritudine, cum certissima suæ necis in-  
dicia cognovisset, fecit episcopum civitatis ad  
se venire, ut ea quæ Christiani sunt in confessi-  
one et viatico susciperet et legitimum de rebus  
habitibus conficeret testamentum. Intrante autem  
episcopo thalamum, in quo jacebat comes nu-  
dus omnino præter fœmoralia, contra eum cor-  
pus Domini ferentem ex lecto prosiliens, asper-  
rimumque laqueum circa collum connectens, cum  
jugi lachrymarum effusione se prostravit in pa-  
vimentum, summi Regis se esse proditorem con-  
testans, nec de loco moveri voluit, nisi facta  
confessione et vivifici sacramenti percepta com-  
munione, ut se sui servum ostenderet Creatoris; et sic per dies aliquot in suprema perseverans pœnitentia spiritum suo tradidit Redemptori. Contigit autem, quod, dum de castello ad novam ecclesiam per unum miliare corpus ejus ad tu-  
mulandum portaretur, cerei, qui cum cruce et thuribulo de more portabantur accensi, inter pluviarum effusiones et ventorum turbines lu-  
men continuum in itinere ministrabant, ut aperte ostenderent comitem tam ardue pœnitentem ad lucis filios <sup>1</sup> pertinere.

*Quod magister Otho Falcasium regi reconciliare  
studuerit.*

**Venit<sup>2</sup> eodem tempore ad regem Anglorum**

<sup>1</sup> *Pertinere.*] His epitaph is thus given by Paris:

'Flos comitum Willelmus obit,  
stirps regia, longus  
Ensis vaginam cœpit habere  
brevem.'

<sup>2</sup> *Venit . . . ad regem Anglorum  
magister Otho.*] The substance

of this chapter is the same with what has been before said above at p. 107.

A.D. 1226. magister Otho, domini papæ nuntius, petens ex parte ejusdem papæ ut, Falcasio sibi reconciliato, uxorem, terras, possessiones ad integrum ei et omnes redderet res sublatas ; cui rex respondit, quod ob proditionem manifestam ab omni clero et populo regni ab Anglia sententialiter est expulsus perpetuo exilium subiturus, quam sententiam non potuit, nisi vellet venire contra regni antiquas consuetudines, infirmare. Hæc cum audisset magister Otho regem ultrius sollicitare cessavit, et, his ita gestis, misit idem Otho litteras suas ad omnes ecclesias cathedrales per Angliam sive conventuales, exigens procurationes debitas nuntiis Romanis, ita quod nulla procuratio numerum quadraginta excederet solidorum.

*De concilio Bituricensi, cui præsedid Romanus,  
Francorum legatus.*

Council of  
Bourges.

Hoc eodem tempore venit magister Romanus ad partes Gallicanas a domino papa missus, ut ibi legationis officio fungeretur ; quo cum pervenisset, fecit convocare regem Francorum cum archiepiscopis, episcopis et clero Gallicano ad concilium, cum comite Tholosano, pro quo specialiter ad partes illas missus fuerat, sicut sequens relatio declarabit. <sup>1</sup> Convenerunt igitur ad Bituricam civitatem ad concilium Lugdoniensis, Remensis, Rothomagensis, Thuronensis, Bithuricensis, Auxianensis archiepiscopi, Burdegalensis vero Romæ fuit et Narbonensis ecclesia vacabat. Convenerunt igitur novem provinciarum suffraganei circiter centum, cum abbatibus et

---

<sup>1</sup> Convenerunt.] Compare Gesta Ludov. VIII. Rec. des Hist. xvii. p. 309. It was held on the feast of S. Andrew (30 Nov.), accord-

ing to the author of the Chron. Turonens. Martene; Ampl. Collect. tom. v. col. 1067.

prioribus et singulorum procuratoribus capitulo- A.D. 1226.  
rum, mandatum summi pontificis audituri; sed, Council of  
quoniam Lugdunensis archiepiscopus vendicabat Bourges.  
sibi primatiam super archiepiscopum Senonen-  
sem, et Rothomagensis super Bithuricensem,  
Auxianensem, Narbonensem, et eorum suffra-  
ganeos, timebatur de discordia, et ideo non fuit  
sessum quasi in concilio, sed ut in consilio.  
Quibus sedentibus et lectis in publico legati-  
onis literis, apparuerunt comes Tholosanus ex  
una parte et Simon de Monte-forti ex altera,  
qui petiit sibi restitui terram Reimundi comitis  
Tholosani, quam dominus papa et rex Fran-  
corum Philippus sibi et patri suo contulerunt, ex-  
hibens supra donatione facta utriusque, papæ  
scilicet et regis, munimenta; addiditque, comi-  
tem Reimundum abjudicatum fuisse Romæ in  
concilio generali propter hæresin, ad minus a  
parte majori terræ quam nunc tenet. E contra,  
comes Reimundus obtulit se facturum erga re-  
gem Francorum et ecclesiam Romanam quic-  
quid facere deberet pro hæreditate sua. Tunc  
cum peteret pars adversa ab eo, ut subiret judi-  
cium duodecim parium Galliæ, respondit Rei-  
mundus, ‘ Recipiat rex homagium meum et pa-  
ratus sum subire, quia forte aliter non haberent  
me pro pari.’ Cumque hinc inde fuisset pluri-  
mum altercatum, præcepit archiepiscopis singu-  
lis legatus tunc præsentibus, ut convocatis se-  
orsum unusquisque suffraganeis cum eis delibe-  
rarent super negotio præfato et traderent legato  
consilium suum redactum in scripto; quo facto,  
legatus excommunicavit omnes qui super hoc sua  
consilia revelarent, dicens se ea velle domino  
papæ significare et Francorum regi ostendere.

*Quod legatus dedit procuratoribus in dolo licentiam  
recedendi.*

A.D. 1226.  
Council of  
Bourges.

Post haec legatus dedit in dolo procuratoribus capitulorum licentiam ad propria revertendi, retentis tantum archiepiscopis, episcopis et abbatis et simplicibus prælatis; unde non immerito timuerunt, ne procurata eorum absentia, qui majoris prudentiae erant et experientiae, et præ multitudine potentiores ad contradicendum, aliquid statueretur in præjudicium absentium prælatorum. Quocirca dicti procuratores post deliberationem diutinam miserunt ad legatum procuratores metropolitanarum ecclesiarum, qui coram eo hujusmodi allegaverunt, 'Domine, audivimus quod habetis literas speciales a curia Romana de exhibendis præbendis in omnibus ecclesiis conventionalibus sive cathedralibus; quocirca multum miramur, quod non in hoc consilio proposuistis eas, nobis audientibus, quos specialiter tangunt. Unde rogamus in Domino, ne istud scandalum oriatur per vos in ecclesia Galicana, scientes, quod sine maximo scando et inæstimabili damno non posset hic ad effectum perduci; quia, esto quod aliquis assentiret, nullus esset ejus assensus in rebus, quæ omnes tangunt, cum fere omnes majores, et generaliter omnes subditi, necnon et ipse rex et omnes principes parati sunt contradicere et resistere usque ad capititis expositionem et omnis honoris privationem, præsertim cum videatur imminere propter hoc scandalum subversio regni et ecclesiæ generalis. Ratio autem nostri timoris est, quod cum cæteris regnis non habuistis sermonem, et quibusdam episcopis præcepistis et abbatibus, ut, cum præbendæ vacaverint, ad opus domini papæ reseruent.'

*Quod legatus a prælatis exegit duas præbendas dari ecclesia Romana.*

His auditis, cum niteretur legatus persuadere ut omnes consentirent, ostendit tunc primo dominus pape authenticum, in quo exegit a singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus duas præbendas, unam a capitulo et alteram ab episcopo; et in cœnobiis similiter, ubi sunt diversæ portiones, abbatis scilicet et conventus, duas exegit ecclesias, unam ab abbatе et aliam a conventu; æquali facta distributione bonorum suorum, a conventibus quantum pertinet ad unum monachum, sicut ipse interpretatus fuerat legatus, et ab abbatе tantundem. Tunc allegavit commoda quæ possent inde provenire, illud videlicet, quod amoveretur scandalum a Romana ecclesia, quæ mater est omnium ecclesiarum, concupiscentia scilicet, [quæ] radix est omnium malorum, cum nullus pro aliquo negotio in curia Romana faciendo aliquid offerret vel aliquis oblata reciperet.

*Objectiones procuratorum contra exactiones predictas.*

Ad hoc respondit procurator archiepiscopi Litudunensis, ‘ Domine, nullo modo volumus esse sine amicis in curia et largitate donorum.’ Alii æque procuratores sua incommoda allegabant, damna scilicet rerum, consiliorum, auxiliorum, obsequiorum, in hunc modum; ‘ Erit enim in qualibet diœcesi, vel ad minus in provincia, nuntius unus continuus, procurator Romanus, qui non vivet de proprio, sed graves exactiones et procurationes exiget ab ecclesiis majoribus et forte minoribus, ut nullus remaneat impunitus, nomenque procuratoris habens legati officio fungetur.’ Item dixerunt, imminere turbationes capitulorum, forte enim demandaret papa, cum vellet, procuratori

A.D. 1226.  
The pope  
demands two  
præbends  
of each  
cathedral.

Objections  
tendered by  
the proctors.

A.D. 1226. suo, vel alii, ut vice sua interesset electionibus, qui eas turbaret; et sic lapso tempore devolveretur electio ad curiam Romanam, quæ in omnibus vel pluribus ecclesiis Romanos poneret, vel tales qui eis plurimum essent devoti; et sic nullæ essent partes indigenarum prælatorum vel principum, cum multi sint viri ecclesiastici, qui potius curiae Romanæ quam regi vel regno providerent. Item addiderunt, quod, si proportionatiter fieret bonorum distributio, omnes in curia fierent divites, cum multo plus essent recepturi quam rex proprius; et sic majores non solum divites, sed et ditissimi, fierent. Cum igitur vermis divitium sit superbia, majores vix causas audirent, sed eas in immensum differrent, et minores scriberent inviti; cuius rei experimentum in evidenti est, quia et modo negotia protrahunt, etiam post percepta obsequia et securitatem percipiendi; et sic periclitaretur justitia, et oportet conquerentes mori in januis Romanorum tunc plenissime dominantium. Item, cum vix possibile sit fontem cupiditatis desiccari, quod nunc faciunt per se, tunc facerent per alios, et suis multo majora quam nunc dari munera procurarent, modica enim nulla sunt in conspectu divitium cupidorum. Item, multæ divitiae facerent cives Romanos insanire, et sic inter diversas parentelas tantæ orientur seditiones, quod posset timeri totius excidium civitatis, cuius etiam nec modo est expers omnino. Item dixerunt, quod, licet se obligarent qui modo præsentes sunt, id non susciperent eorum successores nec illam obligationem ratam haberent. Novissime autem sic negotium concluserunt, 'Domine, moveat vos zelus universalis ecclesiæ et sanctæ sedis Romanæ, quia, si omnium esset universalis oppressio, posset timeri ne immineret generalis

discessio, quod Deus avertat.' His auditis, re- A.D. 1226.  
spondit legatus, ut videbatur, plurimum commo-  
tus in bono, se cum esset in curia nunquam huic  
exactioni consensisse, et ipsum literas accepisse  
postquam Galliam fuerat ingressus, et se mul-  
tum super hæc doluisse; addidit etiam, super  
hæc quicquid præcepit, se tali conditione, licet  
tacita, intellexisse, si imperium et alia regna  
consentirent; adjunxit insuper, se nihil amplius  
super hæc attemptaturum donec per regna alia  
prælati consenserint, quod creditit provenire non  
posse.

*Quod magister Otho Romam invitus redierit.*

Eodem anno, cum magister Otho, domini papæ otho, the  
nuntius, tempore Quadragesimali ad Northan- legate, leaves  
humbriam profecturus et procurationes deside-  
ratas exacturus, Norhamtonam usque pervenis-  
set, venerunt ad eum, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo  
procurante, literæ domini papæ, in quibus con-  
tinebatur expressum, ut statim visis literis Ro-  
mam veniret, ejus potestate penitus enervata.  
Obliquo igitur oculo literis inspectis, demisso  
vultu eas projicit in ignem, atque illico pro-  
posito mutato, clitellis vacuis confusus ab Anglia  
recessit; injuncto Stephano, Cantuariensi archi-  
episcopo, sicut erat in literis domini papæ ex-  
pressum, ut, convocatis rege et omnibus Angliæ  
prælatis, responsum eorum super negotio, pro  
quo idem Otho missus fuerat, domino papæ  
transmittere non omittat. Magistro igitur Othono  
Angliam a tergo salutante, Stephanus, Cantu-  
ariensis archiepiscopus, vocatis ad concilium  
apud Westmonasterium post Pascha cunctis,  
quos negotium tangebat, recitari fecit literas  
suprascriptas de beneficiis Romanæ ecclesiæ con-  
ferendis coram rege et prælatis Angliæ, qui ad

A.D. 1226. ejus vocationem plene convenerant; sed, illis auditis ac diligenter intellectis, singuli singulos ad risum movebant super concupiscentia Romanorum, qui illud morale non intelligunt, vide-licet,

‘Quod<sup>1</sup> virtus reddit, non copia, sufficientem;  
Et non paupertas, sed mentis hiatus, egentem.’

Tunc rex, convocatis seorsum prælatis et quibusdam magnatibus, hoc archiepiscopo dedere responsum; ‘Ista,’ inquiunt, ‘quæ suadet nobis dominus papa, universam Christianitatis latitudinem respiciunt; et quoniam nos quasi in extremis orbis constituti sumus partibus, cum vide-rimus qualiter cætera regna erga tales se habuerint exactiones, dominus papa, cum ab aliis regnis habuerimus exemplum, in obsequiis nos inveniet aliis promptiores.’ Et, his dictis, concessa est omnibus licentia recedendi.

*Quod motio magna facta est super comitem  
Tholosanum.*

Crusade  
against the  
count of  
Toulouse.

Per idem tempus facta est prædicatio in partibus Gallicanis a legato Romano generaliter, ut omnes, qui possent arma movere, se cruce signarent super comitem Tholosanum et populum ejus, qui omnes hæretica fœditate dicebantur infecti. Ad ejus quoque prædicationem multitudo maxima prælatorum et laicorum crucis signaculum suscepserunt, plus metu regis Francorum vel favore legati, quam zelo justitiae, inducti; videbatur enim multis abusio, ut hominem fidelis Christianum infestarent, præcipue cum constaret cunctis eum in concilio nuper apud civitatem Bituricam habitu multis precibus persuasisse legato, ut veniret ad singulas terræ suæ

---

<sup>1</sup> *Quod virtus reddit.*] ‘Quod facit virtus’ in MS.

civitates inquirens a singulis articulos fidei, et, A.D. 1228.  
 si quempiam contra fidem inveniret sentientem  
 catholicam, ipse secundum judicium sanctæ ec-  
 clesiæ justitiæ ex eis plenitudinem exhiberet,  
 et, si civitatem aliquam inveniret rebellem, ipse  
 pro posse suo eam cum habitatoribus suis ad  
 satisfactionem compelleret; pro se ipso autem  
 obtulit, si in aliquo deliquerit, quod se fecisse  
 non recolit, plenam Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ sa-  
 tisfactionem ut fidelis Christianus, et, si legatus  
 vellet, etiam fidei examen subire. Hæc quoque  
 omnia legatus contempsit, nec potuit comes ca-  
 tholicus gratiam invenire, nisi pro se et hæredi-  
 bus suis hæreditatem suam deserens abjuraret.  
 Rex vero Francorum ad ejusdem legati exhorta-  
 tionem cruce signatus noluit expeditionem belli-  
 cam promovere, nisi literis prius a domino papa  
 impetratis ad regem Anglorum inhibitoriis, <sup>1</sup>ne  
 sub poena excommunicationis regem Francorum  
 inquietaret, vel arma contra eum moveret, de ali-  
 qua terra quam in præsenti possidebat sive juste  
 sive injuste, dum idem rex esset in servitio suo  
 et ecclesiæ Romanæ ad exterminandum hære-  
 ticos Albigenses et eorum fautorem et compli-  
 cem comitem Tholosanum; sed eidem regi, ad  
 exaltationem fidei, consilium et auxilium im-  
 pendere non tardaret. Et, his ita gestis, <sup>2</sup>rex  
 Francorum Lodowicus et legatus omnibus cruce  
 signatis diem statuerunt peremptorium, ut in  
 ascensione Domini apud Lugdunum cum equis  
 et armis sub poena excommunicationis venirent,  
 ipsos ad expeditionem propositam secuturi.

<sup>1</sup> Ne . . . inquietaret, ] wanting in C. Compare Hist. Albigensium, auct. Gul. de Podio Laurentio, Rec. des Hist. tom. xix. p. 216,

<sup>2</sup> Rex Francorum Lodowicus.] seqq.

*Quod rex Anglorum de transfretando propositum mutavit.*

A.D. 1226.  
Conduct of  
Henry.

Rex Anglorum interea, qui ardenti desiderio sitiebat ad partes transmarinas hostiliter transfretare, convocatis consiliariis suis, fecit recitari literas sibi a domino papa transmissas, querens ab eis consilium, quid super tali inhibitione sibi foret agendum. Placuit itaque prælatis et magnatibus omnibus, ut differretur negotium desideratum, donec constaret de rege Francorum, qui tam difficile opus et propositum habebat adeo sumptuosum, quem res esset exitum habitura. Erat igitur rex Anglorum de fratre suo Richardo, qui tunc in Wasconia bellicas agebat expeditiones, valde sollicitus, supra modum ad ipsum desiderans transfretare; sed, dum rex circa fratrem et de ejus subventione satis curiosus existeret, venerunt nuntii ejus ad regem cum literis, dicentes ipsum sanum esse et incolumem et quod omnia sibi prospere succedebant. Erat autem tunc inter regis consiliarios magister Willemus, cognomento Pierepunt, in arte peritus astronomiæ, qui constanter coram rege affirmabat, quod, si rex Francorum inchoatam expeditionem exsequendam assumeret, vel nunquam vivus rediret, aut maximam sui et rerum suarum suorumque omnium confusionem subiret. Rex autem, ex his quæ audierat exhilaratus, suorum consilio adquievit.

*De morte Richardi, Dunelmensis episcopi.*

Death of the  
Bishop of  
Durham.

Eodem anno Richardus de Marisco, Dunelmensis episcopus, pro turpissima quam agebat contra monachos suos causa, ad diem Londoniis constitutum cum tumultu valido reboantium legistarum properans, apud burgum sancti Petri

in abbatia hospitatus est; ubi, post splendidam A.D. 1226.  
refectionem cum nocte sequenti lecto sese re-  
cepisset, clerici ejus, mane facto et sole jam in  
altum vergente, thalamum ejus intrantes et  
illum excitare volentes invenerunt eum mortu-  
um et omnino extinctum, qui maxima confu-  
sione stupefacti celaverunt mortem ejus die illo  
usque ad vesperam, eo quod absque confessione  
et viatico exspirasset; deinde vero casum misera-  
bilem priori et conventui indicantes, fabricata  
cum festinatione lectica, corpus sepeliendum ad  
Dunelmensem ecclesiam detulerunt. Obiit au-  
tem primo die mensis Maii, postquam vixerat in  
episcopatu circiter annis <sup>1</sup> novem. De hoc quo-  
que episcopo non credimus fore tacendum, quod  
circa biennium ante mortem ejus, rex quondam  
Anglorum Johannes apparuit in visione nocturna  
cuidam monacho de sancto Albano apud Thine-  
muam tunc commoranti, qui familiaris fuerat  
regibus Anglorum, tam regi Richardo quam  
huic Johanni, ita quod in eorum negotiis exse-  
quendis aliquando Romam, aliquando in Sco-  
tiā, et ad alia loca plurima missus propensiōri-  
bus sibi studiis eorundem regum gratiam com-  
paravit. Monacho itaque in lecto quiescente,  
adstitit ei rex praeformatus in vestibus regalibus, de  
panno scilicet quem imperiale appellavit; quem  
monachus recognoscens, ac memoriter recolens  
quod mortuus fuisset, sciscitabatur ab eo qua-  
liter se haberet. Cui rex, 'Ita me,' inquit, 'ha-

<sup>1</sup> Novem.] Paris inserts his epitaph, as written by a monk of Durham, thus:

Culmina qui cupi	laudes pompasque siti
Est sedata si	si me pensare veli
Qui populos regi	memores super omnia si
Quod mors immi	non parcit honore poti
Vobis praeponi	similis fueram bene sci
Quod sum vos eri	ad me currendo veni

A.D. 1226. beo quod nemo pejus, nam hæc mea quæ vides in dumenta adeo ardentia sunt et ponderosa, ut nullus qui in seculo vivat illa tangere sufficeret præ ardore vel propter ponderositatem portare, quin protinus moriretur; sed tamen per Dei clementiam spero et gratiam ineffabilem, me quandoque misericordiam adepturum. Quæso igitur obnixius fraternitatem tuam, ut dicas Richardo de Marisco, nunc Dunelmensi episcopo, quod, nisi ante mortem suam vitam correxit flagitosam et eam per poenitentiam et satisfactionem condignam emendaverit, sedes ejus jam parata est in inferno; et, si his dictis tuis et mandatis meis fidem adhibere contempserit, per hæc intersignia omnem deponat ambiguitatem, quod, dum soli essemus in loco illo sibi notissimo, dedit mihi consilium, tam mihi quam sibi nimis damnosum, ut vide licet a monachis Cisterciensibus auferrem lanam suam unius anni, et quod multa alia dedit mihi consilia iniqua, pro quibus nunc perfero inenarrabilia, quæ etiam et illi debentur, tormenta. Quod, si adhuc dubitaverit credere mandatis meis, recolat quod in illo loco et hora eadem dedit mihi lapidem unum pretiosum, quem pro ingenti pecunia comparavit.' Et, his dictis, rex dispartuit et monachus stupens evigilavit.

Election of a successor. Defuncto itaque Richardo, Dunelmensi episcopo, prior et conventus cum a rege peterent licentiam eligendi pastorem, rex obtulit eis Lucam capellatum suum, multa supplicatione rogans, ut illum reciperent in pastorem. Monachi vero ad hoc responderunt, quod nullum recipieren t nisi canonica electione præmissa; rex autem e contra cum juramento affirmavit, ipsos futuros per septennium sine episcopo, nisi præfatum Lucam admitterent ad pontificatus honorem. Conventus vero illum ad tantam dignitatem

indignum judicantes de communi consensu <sup>A.D. 1226.</sup> fratrum elegerunt magistrum Willelmum clericum suum, virum literatum et honestum, Wigornensem archidiaconum, et ipsum regi præsenterunt; quem cum rex, objectis quibusdam frivolis exceptionibus, recusasset, monachi quosdam de conventu Romam miserunt ut electionem factam auctoritate summi pontificis confirmarent. Rex autem, cum talia cognovisset, misit Romam contra monachos episcopum Cestrensem et Lentoniæ priorem, ut eorundem monachorum propositum irritarent; et, sic diu illis altercantibus, negotium dilationem accepit.

*Quomodo Lodowicus, rex Francorum, Avinionem obseedit.*

Venit interea Dominicæ dies ascensionis, qui <sup>Siege of</sup> <sub>Avignon.</sub> fuerat a rege Francorum et legato Galligenis cruce signatis peremptorie constitutus. Rex autem, ad expeditionem necessariis apud Lugdunum rite præparatis, cum exercitu quasi invincibili iter arripuit, sequente legato cum archiepiscopis, episcopis et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis; aestimati sunt autem in exercitu militum et equitum belatorum ad quinquaginta millia, præter pedites, qui quasi sub numero non cadebant. Legatus autem excommunicavit publice comitem Tholosanum et omnes ejus fautores, et terram illius totam supposuit interdicto. Profectus itaque rex micantibus clypeis et vexillis, cuius progressus adeo erat horribilis, ut castrorum acies ordinata [in provinciam pervenit comitis Tholosani.] <sup>1</sup>Tandem in vigilia Pentecostes omnes

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tandem.*] See the account of this siege by an anonymous chronicler of the reign of Louis VIII. Rec. des Hist. tom. xvii. p. 309: see also a letter from the barons in the French army to the emperor Frederic; *ibid.* p. 344.

A.D. 1226.  
Siege of  
Avignon.

Avinionem venientes, quæ civitas proxima illis erat de potestate comitis supradicti, proposuerunt eam prius impetere et sic terram comitis totam ab initio usque ad finem cum habitatoribus ejus delere; ubi rex et legatus, transitum civitatis in dolo a civibus postulantes, dixerunt se illuc pacifice advenisse, et non ob aliud civitatis transitum postulasse, nisi ut itineris compendium sequerentur. Cives quoque super hæc colloquentes fidem eorum assertoribus non dederunt, dicentes, quod plus in dolo, quam pro viæ compendio, exigebant introitum civitatis. At rex in furorem versus juravit se inde non recessurum, donec comprehendenderet civitatem, et, machinis in locis congruis collocatis, jussit urbem acriter infestari. Fit igitur ad civitatem assultus gravissimus, dum petraria, balista, scrofa, catus, arcus, funda, ensis, lancea, scutum, galea, umbo, clava, lorica, sagitta, hinc inde quid valeat, experitur. E contra, civitas, ante dies illos ab hostium cuneis prorsus incognita, fossatis, moeniis, turribus, propugnaculis de foris, intus militibus, servientium millibus, equis et armis, lapidibus comportatis, machinis et repagulis, etiam in viciualibus referta, hostium supervenientium non expavit incursum; defensores enim urbis lapides pro lapidibus, tela pro telis, sudes pro sudibus, jacula pro jaculis, animosius remittentes vulnera Galligenis lethifera inferebant.

*De mortalitate et fame in obsidione.*

Mortality  
amongst the  
besiegers.

Cumque per tempus plurimum protraheretur obsidio, deficientibus alimentis, periit hominum innumera multitudo; comes enim Tholosanus, ut bellator peritissimus, ante Francorum adventum omnia alimentorum genera, cum senibus,

mulieribus, parvulis, necnon et animalibus cum A.D. 1226.  
jumentis, ab eorum præsentia longius removens, Siege of  
omne eis alimentorum genus subtraxit. Nec  
enim solummodo homines, verum etiam equos  
exercitus et jumenta fames extinxit, fecerat  
namque comes sæpedictus prata arari totius  
regionis, nec erat jumentis pabuli subsidium,  
nisi quod ibi delatum fuerat ex partibus Gal-  
licanis; unde, necessitate cogente, multæ legi-  
ones armatorum a castris recedentes, ut vic-  
tualia quærerent hominibus et pabula jumen-  
tis, multa repugnantia sibi municipia ceperunt,  
et multoties a comite Tholosano, qui cum suis  
erat agminibus in insidiis constitutus, damna  
non modica pertulerunt. In obsidione vero  
Galligenis <sup>1</sup> multa imminebant necis pericula,  
inter quos ferrebat potissimum mortalitas ho-  
minum et equorum, tela mortifera et damnosæ  
lapides civium se viriliter defendantium, fames  
generalis, et præcipue inter pauperes, quibus  
deerrat cum pecunia alimentum; atque præter  
cætera misericordiarum incommoda, quæ sine inter-  
missione grassabantur in populo, oriebantur ex  
cadaveribus jumentorum et hominum, quæ pas-  
sim moriebantur, muscæ quædam grossæ et ni-  
gerrimæ, quæ inter tentoria, papiliones et umbra-  
cula ingerentes dapes inficiebant et pocula, quas  
cum nemo arcere poterat a calicibus et catinis,  
mortem Galligenis subitam inferebant. Confu-  
sio regem et præcipue legatum invasit, quia, si  
tanta talisque expeditio infecto recedere negotio  
cogeretur, opprobrium tam Franci incurrerent  
quam Romani. Tunc principes exercitus, qui-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Multa imminebant necis peri-  
cula.]* ‘Ibidem tamen mortalitate  
maxima pullulante, de nostris  
circa duo millia telorum imbri-

<p>bus et lapidum volatu, et infirmi- tate propria, moriuntur;’ Rec. des Hist. tom. xvii. p. 309.</p>
---

A.D. 1226.  
Siege of  
Avignon.

bus in tot mortibus longa videbatur mora, minores castrorum cum majoribus ad urbem invadendum sollicitant; unde super pontem quendam, qui ultra Rodanum fluvium se extendit, ad urbem tanta se armatorum copia ingessit, quod vel a civibus, vel etiam præ pondere in eodem pugnantium, pons fractus præcipitavit in flumen rapidissimum ad tria millia armatorum. Quid ergo? Vox et exultatio civium, dolor et confusio fit Francorum. Tunc cives, visa opportunitate, dum Franci ad mensam sedentes epulis intenderent et poculis, die quodam exierunt de civitate in fortitudine gravi, et, facto impetu in hostes non præmeditatos, ad duo millia ex Francigenis peremerunt, et absque suorum læsione civitatem ingressi tales irruptiones fecerunt in hostes. At rex Francorum animo nimis consternatus jussit interfectos in Rodanum, propter corruptionem, præcipitari, qui aliud cœmeterium in tanta cadaverum multitudine non habebant. Fecerunt præterea inter se et urbem fossatum spatiōsum satis et altum, et insuper obsidio a civitate longius arcebatur. Legatus autem et omnis chorus prælatorum comitem Tholosanum et cives cum universo populo regionis, vindictæ genus aliud non habentes, sub anathemate concluserunt.

*De morte Lodowici, regis Francorum.*

Death of  
Louis VIII.

Tunc Lodowicus, rex Francorum, ut pestilentiam effugeret, quæ nimis ferrebat in castris, ad quandam abbatiam, Muntpancier appellatam, quæ non multum ab obsidione distabat, se contulit, donec civitas caperetur; ubi venit ad eum Henricus,<sup>1</sup> comes Campaniensis, cum jam

---

<sup>1</sup> *Henricus, comes Campanien-* [this time was Theobald VI.; *Ansis.*] The earl of Champagne at selm, ii. p. 840.

dies quadraginta in obsidione peregisset, petens A.D. 1226. de consuetudine Gallicana licentiam ad propria remeandi. Cui cum licentiam rex vetuisset, respondit comes, quod, factis quadraginta dierum excubiis, <sup>1</sup> non tenebatur, nec voluit, diutius interesse. Rex autem ad haec nimia succensus ira affirmavit cum juramento, quod, si ita recederet, ipse terram ejus totam incendio devastaret. Tunc comes, ut fama refert, procuravit regi venenum propinari ob amorem reginæ ejus, quam carna-liter amabat, unde libidinis impulsu stimulatus moras ulterius nectere non valebat. Comite igitur taliter recedente, infirmabatur rex usque ad desperationem, et pervagante ad vitalia <sup>2</sup> veneno perducitur ad extrema; licet alii asserant, ipsum non veneno, sed morbo dysenterico, expirasse. Mortuo quoque rege, Romanus qui adfuit apostolicæ sedis legatus, et prælati, qui aderant, ejusdem secreti consiliarii, mortem regis celari fecit donec civitas redderetur; quia, si ita solve-retur obsidio, magnum inde scandalum oriaretur. Finxit ergo legatus et prælati, qui aderant, regem gravi infirmitate detentum, sed ex medicorum judicio cito convalitum dicebant, de-nuntiantes principibus legionum, ut urbem viri-liter impugnarent. Corpus autem defuncti regis fecerunt multo sale condiri, et in abbatia illa viscera tumulantes reliquum corpus linteumini-

<sup>1</sup> Non tenebatur.] Although in ordinary cases the king had no further claim on his vassal for military service beyond forty or fifty days, yet it would appear that on the occasion of a crusade knights were forbidden, without especial leave, to abandon their sovereign; Fr. Translat. Mat. Par. iii. p. 520, note.

<sup>2</sup> Veneno perducitur ad extrema.] The French chronicler, above al-luded to, is silent as to the report that Louis had died by poison; according to him, the event took place after the surrender of Avignon. Wendover's account is, however, borne out by Ricard. de S. Germano, a contemporary historian, whose words are, 'ubi venenatus, ut dicunt, obiit'; Murator. tom. vii. col. 1000. The Annals of Waverley and Dunstable allude to the same report.

A.D. 1236. bus ceratis coriisque taurinis jusserunt involvi; et sic legatus cum prælatis ad obsidionem reversus est, corpore regis in abbatia sub tutâ custodia deputato. Cum igitur vidisset legatus quod nihil in obsidione proficiebant, sed diversis incommodis prorsus deficiebant, de consilio majorum, qui erant in castris, nuntiavit in civitatem, instantius petens, quatenus, accepta securitate pacifice veniendi et revertendi, mitterent duodecim ex majoribus civitatis ad legatum et venirent quantocius de pace et concordia tractaturi.

*Quod civitas Avinionis a Francis dolose sit subjugata.*

The town of  
Avignon  
taken by  
treachery.

Datis igitur de securitate obsidibus, venerunt ad colloquium legati cives duodecim, et de pacis forma diutius tractantes, persuasit civibus legatus constanter ut se redderent, salvis sibi et suis omnibus possessionibus et rebus cum libertatibus universis, sicut hactenus melius et liberius haberent. Ad hæc cives respondentes dixerunt, quod nullo modo se redderent, ut sub potestate viverent Francorum, quorum multoties experti fuerant superbiam et insolentiæ feritatem. Tandem post multas hinc inde disceptationes petivit legatus, ut cum prælatis qui aderant posset ingredi civitatem, ut fidem probaret in ea habitantium, affirmans cum juramento, se non ob aliud obsidionem protraxisse, nisi ut salutem quæreret animarum; addidit etiam, quod clamor infidelitatis, quæ in urbe invaluerat, ad papam ascendit, unde scire desiderabat utrum clamorem opere complevissent. <sup>1</sup>Tunc cives su-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Tunc cives.*] The French historians are silent as to the treachery asserted in the text to have been practised; in the Waverley Annals it is said, ‘ Legati apostolici tradiderunt urbem praedicto regi,’ p. 190.

per promissione sua fiduciam habentes et de A.D. 1226.  
fraude nihil sinistrum suspicantes, sub condicione prædicta, præstito utrinque juramento, concesserunt legato cum prælatis simpliciter et eorum sequelis ingressum urbis; quos dolose, ut prælocutum fuerat, Francigenæ apertis januis violenter subsequentes, spredo turpiter juramento, cives ceperunt et eos vinculis constrinxerunt, et dolosam sic adepti victoriam nobilissimæ civitatis turres et moenia confregerunt. Novissime vero legatus, civitate sub Francorum deputata custodia, soluta obsidione, corpus regis defuncti cum prælatorum tumultu Parisius iussit deferri, et in collegio antecessorum suorum more fecit regio sepeliri. Obiit autem rex mense Septembri, ut dicunt, cuius mortem per mensem, et eo amplius, celaverunt. De illis autem, qui ad obsidionem cum rege venerunt, tam de interfectis et in flumine submersis, quam de pestilentia et morte communi defunctis, plus quam viginti duo millia perierunt ibidem, filiis et uxoribus lachrymarum causam et gemitum relinquentes; unde perspicue constare videtur, bellum injuste fuisse susceptum, in quo concupiscentia magis exarsit, quam exterminium hæreticæ pravitatis.

*De coronatione Lodowici, regis Francorum, filii Lodowici.*

Defuncto itaque Francorum rege Lodowico, Coronation  
of Louis IX. regina ejus domina Blanca fecit convocare generaliter archiepiscopos, episcopos, et alios ecclesiistarum prælatos cum magnatibus coronam specantibus, ut venirent ad coronationem Lodowici filii sui et regis defuncti Parisius pridie kalendas Decembris. Sed pars maxima optimatum ante diem præfixum petierunt de consuetudine Gallicana

A.D. 1226. omnes incarceratos, et præcipue comites Flandrensem Ferrandum et Bononiensem Reginaldum, a carceribus liberari, qui in subversionem libertatum regni jam per annos duodecim sub arctiori custodia in vinculis tenebantur. Petierunt insuper quidam eorum terras suas sibi restitui, quas pater ejus Lodowicus et avus illius Philippus multo jam tempore injuste detineuerant occupatas. Adjiciunt etiam, quod nullus de regno Francorum debuit ab aliquo jure suo spoliari, nisi per judicium duodecim parium, nec aliquis bello premi, nisi prius denuntietur per annum; et, cum hæc omnia sibi fuerint emendata, tunc primo ad coronationem non tardabunt venire. Regina vero, de consilio legati, metuens ne mora periculum pareret, convocato regni clero, et paucis ex proceribus, quos habere poterat, fecit filium suum, puerum scilicet vix decennem, in regem die sancti Andreæ apostoli coronari. <sup>1</sup> Subtraxerunt se quidem ab hac coronatione dux Burgundiæ, comes Campaniæ, comes de Bar, comes de sancto Paulo, comes Britanniæ, et sere omnes, ut breviter dicatur, nobiles ad coronam spectantes, qui sese potius præparaverunt ad pugnam, quam ad pacis et concordiæ unitatem.

Rex autem Anglorum, audiens dissidium procerum prædictorum, misit ad partes transmarinas archiepiscopum Eboracensem Walterum, et Philippum de Albeneio militem, cum aliis solemnibus legatis, ad optimates Normanniæ, Andegaviæ, Britanniæ et Pictaviæ, qui sibi subjici de jure tenebantur, postulans cum magnis promissionibus

<sup>1</sup> *Subtraxerunt.*] Compare the account in the Chron. Turon. Rec. xviii. p. 318; where it is added, that they daily held correspondence with the ambas-

sadors from England, promising to betray the kingdom into Henry's hands. For documents upon these proceedings see Rymer, pp. 183, 184.

quatenus ipsum ad eos venire cupientem fideliter A.D. 1226.  
admittere dignarentur.

*De morte Falcasii, et de præsagio mortis ejus.*

Eodem anno Falcarius exscriptus ab Anglia, Death of  
Faulkes de  
Breaute. dum omnibus negotiis in curia Romana expeditis ad Angliam properaret reverti, apud sanctum Ciriacum vitam flagitiosam terminavit. Falcarius autem, dum adhuc viveret prædo nequissimus, postquam villam sancti Albani crudeliter spolierat, homines quosdam interfecerat, nonnullos captivos abduxerat, et tam ab abbatе, quam de villa tota, maximam pecuniaæ summam extorserat, ne ipsam abbatiam cum monasterio et villa igne concremaret, contigit ipsum apud sanctum Albanum casu venire, ut cum Pandulpho, Norwicensi episcopo, loqueretur; quem cum vidisset episcopus ad se venientem, audiente ipso abbatе et aliis multis, quæsivit ab eo, si sanctum Albanum in aliquo offendisset. Cui cum Falcarius respondisset, se in nullo martyrem offendisse, addidit episcopus dicens, ' Ideo hæc a te quæsivi, quia, cum nuper in stratu meo nocte quadam dormirem, vidi per somnium me esse in ecclesia sancti Albani, ubi cum stare ante majus altare, et facta oratione retro aspicarem, vidi te stare in choro monachorum; et, cum aspicarem sursum, vidi lapidem unum de turri magnum et ponderosum cum tanto impetu descendere super caput tuum, quod cum ipso capite tuo corpus totum contrivit, et ita subito evanisti ac si in terram demersus fuisses. Unde consilium tibi do, quod, si recolis te vel in minimo martyrem offendisse, antequam lapis super caput tuum descendant, sibi et suis omnibus satisfacias competenter.' Sed miser ille postmodum, cum ab abbatе et conventu de suis excessibus veniam postulasset, affirmavit

A.D. 1226. expresse, quod nullam omnino restitutionem faceret ablatorum; unde in evidenti est, quod illa satisfactio nulla fuit, quia ‘non dimittitur peccatum nisi restituatur ablatum.’ Lapidem quoque super caput suum descendere sensit, cum in brevi tempore deinceps apud Bedefordiam, post suspensionem fratrum et amicorum suorum, ipse demum pauper exilium subiit et nunc vitam morte misera terminavit. Eodem anno defuncti sunt episcopi, Benedictus Roffensis, et <sup>1</sup>Pandulphus Norwicensis; Pandulpho vero successit Thomas de Blundvilla, clericus de scaccario regis, qui a Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, Dominica prima ante nativitatem Domini munus consecrationis suscepit.

*Quod rex Anglorum a multis pecuniam extorsit.*

A.D. 1227.  
The king extorts money from the Londoners, clergy, and others.

Anno Domini MCCXXVII. rex Anglorum Henricus ad natale Domini festum celebravit apud Radingum; et in eisdem diebus natalitiis obiit Willelmus<sup>2</sup> comes Essexiae, in dolorem multorum, adolescens strenuus et in donorum largitate satis profusus. Deinde rex Londonias veniens causatus est cives, quod in suum præjudicium dederrunt Lodowico, regi Francorum nunc defuncto, in recessu suo ab Anglia quinque millia marcas argenti; unde compulsi sunt iidem cives regi persolvere, cavillatorum consilio, eandem pecuniæ summam. Cepit præterea ab eis quintam decimam partem omnium mobilium suorum et totius substantiæ suæ, sicut ei prius fuerat ab Anglia tota concessum. De Burgensibus autem et Nor-

<sup>1</sup> *Pandulphus Norwicensis.*] An abstract from two letters by Pandulph to Hubert de Burgh is printed in the Appendix to the first General Report from the Commissioners on Public Re-

cords, edit. 1819, vol. i. p. 189.  
<sup>2</sup> *Willelmus.*] William Fitz-Piers, sixth earl of Essex; dying without issue, he was succeeded by his nephew, Humphrey de Bohun, earl of Hereford.

hamtunensibus cepit de auxilio mille libras et A.D. 1227. ducentas, præter quintam decimam, quam generaliter omnes de regno Angliæ persolvebant. Compulsi sunt etiam viri religiosi et clerici beneficiati hanc quintam decimam dare omnium bonorum suorum, tam rerum ecclesiasticarum quam laicarum; nec profuit eis appellatio ad dominum papam interposita, sed, ordine turbato, archiepiscopi et episcopi, auctoritate papali, per censuram ecclesiasticam, quos laica potestas non potuit, ad solutionem omni destitutos solatio compulerunt.

*Quomodo rex in concilio apud Oxoniam habitu fecit cancellare cartas libertatum.*

Eodem tempore rex Anglorum, mense Febru-  
ario apud Oxoniam concilio congregato, denun-  
tiavit coram omnibus se legitimæ esse ætatis, ut  
de cætero solutus a custodia regia negotia ipse  
principaliter ordinaret; et sic qui prius tutorem  
habuit et rectorem Willelmum Mareschallum  
dum viveret, et postmodum Petrum, Wintonien-  
sem episcopum, excussit se per consilium Hu-  
berti de Burgo, justiciarii regni, de consilio et  
gubernatione dicti episcopi et suorum, qui regi  
fuerant prius quasi paedagogi, ita quod omnes  
illos a curia sua et cohabitatione removit. In  
eodem itaque concilio idem rex fecit cancellare  
et cassare omnes chartas de provinciis omnibus  
regni Angliæ de libertatibus forestæ postquam  
jam per biennium in toto regno fuerant usitatæ;  
hanc occasionem prætendens, quod chartæ illæ  
concessæ fuerant, et libertates scriptæ et signatæ,  
dum ipse erat sub custodia, nec sui corporis  
aut sigilli aliquam habuerit potestatem, unde  
viribus carere debuit, quod sine ratione fuerat  
usurpatum. Facta est autem super his in con-

Council held  
at Oxford.

A.D. 1227. *cilio ingens murmuratio, et omnes justiciarium hujus perturbationis judicabant auctorem; nam deinceps tanta regi familiaritate conjunctus est, ut omnes regni consiliarios præter ipsum pro nihilo reputaret. Tunc vero denuntiatum est viris religiosis et aliis, qui suis volebant libertatibus gaudere, ut innovarent chartas suas de novo regis sigillo, scientes quod rex chartas antiquas nullius esse momenti reputabat; pro quarum innovatione, non juxta singulorum facultatem taxatio facta est, sed quicquid justiciarius aestimabat solvere sunt coacti.*

*Quod nuntii regis in Franciam missi inaniter sunt reversi.*

*Return of  
the king's  
ambassadors  
from France.*

Eodem anno, defuncto papa Honorio, Gregorius,<sup>1</sup> Hostiensis episcopus, successit decimo quinto kalendas Aprilis. Per idem tempus, instante solemnitate Paschali, archiepiscopus Eboracensis et episcopus Karleolensis, cum Philippo de Albe-neio milite, nuntii regis, reversi sunt in Angliam ex partibus transmarinis. Missi quidem erant ad magnates illarum regionum, qui de jure antiquo ad regem Angliæ spectare tenebantur; quibus impositum fuerat ex parte regis, ut blandis exhortationibus cum promissionibus magnis eos inducerent, quatenus dictum regem ad illos venire cupientem reciperen et recognoscerent ut dominum naturalem. Sed, ne diu et inaniter verba protrahere videamur, antequam nuntii regis ad partes illas pervenissent, Francorum rex, matre ejus partes suas interponente, cum baronibus illis pacem fecerat et eorum homagia suscepserat, distribuens ipsis affluenter terras et castella ad jus regis pertinentia, faciens sibi de mammo-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hostiensis.*] Ugolino, bishop of Ostia, was enthroned in March 1227, and died in August 1241.

na iniuitatis amicos. <sup>1</sup> Comes vero Britanniæ, A.D. 1227.  
cujus filiam nuntii petebant regi per matrimonium copulandam, nuntiis regis dedit in responsis,  
quod ipse cum rege Francorum pacis foedus com-  
posuerat, quod nullo modo potuit violare. Nuntii  
autem jam ad regem reversi quæ facta fuerant  
per ordinem indicabant. Eodem tempore, mense  
Maio, Richardus <sup>2</sup>frater regis venit in Angliam,  
qui ab ipso rege et magnatibus regni cum gaudio  
susceptus est. Et eodem tempore Henricus de  
Sanfort, Cantuariensis archidiaconus, ad Roffensem  
episcopatum canonice electus, a Stephano,  
Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus consecrationis  
suscepit. Quo etiam anno, nonas Februarii, Hu-  
bertus, Angliæ justiciarius, gladio accinctus est a  
rege Cantiæ comitatus.

*Quomodo commoti sunt barones contra regem  
Anglorum.*

Tempore eodem, septimo idus Julii, orta est discordia inter regem Anglorum et fratrem ejus Richardum, Cornubiæ comitem, hac de causa; Rex Johannes, hujus regis pater, adhuc vivens, quod-dam dederat manerium Waleranno Teutonico, tunc de Berechamstude castellano, ad Cornubiæ perti-nens comitatum. Audiens autem comes Richardus, qui nuper venerat de partibus transmarinis, quod manerium illud ad suum spectabat comita-tum, præcepit villam saisiri in manu sua, donec sibi constaret, quale jus inde Walerannus haberet; cumque præfatus Walerannus hæc a referentibus

Quarrel of  
the king with  
his brother  
Richard,  
earl of Corn-  
wall.

<sup>1</sup> Comes vero Britanniæ. ] The anonymous writer of the Chronicle of Tours relates that the earls of Bretagne and Marche went to Vendôme and did homage before the legate on the 16th of March; Rec. des Hist. tom. xviii. p. 319.

<sup>2</sup> Frater regis; ] ‘ prius con-cessis treugis a rege Franciæ,’ Chron. Dunst. p. 167; see the conditions of the treaty in Richard’s letters patent, printed in Rymer, i. p. 186.

A.D. 1227.  
Quarrel of  
the king with  
his brother  
Richard.

cognovisset, venit cum festinatione ad regem, de fratre suo Richardo querelam deponens. Tunc rex fratri suo literatorie nuntiavit, quatenus confestim visis literis manerium redderet Waleranno. Richardus autem, literis inspectis, cum festinatione venit ad regem, ostendens sine aliquo advocate, rationabiliter similiter et eloquenter, ad jus suum manerium pertinere, unde paratus fuit curiae regiae subire judicium et magnatum regni. Rex vero et justiciarius, audientes nominare magnates, maxima sunt indignatione succensi; unde rex voce tumultuosa et nimis indiscreta fratri suo praecepit, ut incontinenti manerium Waleranno redderet, aut a regno Angliae non redditurus exiret. Ad haec comes constanter respondit, quod nec Waleranno jus suum redderet, nec sine judicio parium suorum a regno exiret; et, his dictis, comes ad hospitium suum cum festinatione perrexit. Tunc justiciarius, ut dicitur, metuens ne comes pacem regni turbaret, dedit regi consilium, ut nocte sequenti fratrem suum sopore depresso a militibus armatis faceret comprehendi, et, ut diurna pace frueretur, sub arcta custodia deputaret; sed comes Richardus ab amicis præmunitus ab urbe festinanter cum uno tantum equite clam recessit, nec prius frænum cohibuit donec Radingum usque pervenit. Commitlones autem ejus ipsum mane sequentes in loco sibi condicto dominum suum sanum et hilarem receperunt. Tunc comes versus Merlebergiam iter dirigens invenit ibi Willelmum Mareschallum amicum suum et sacramento confederatum, omnia ei quæ sibi acciderant indicavit; et inde simul ad comitem Cestriæ profecti ei rem gestam per ordinem retulerunt; qui simul ut erant omnes conjurati, exercitum grandem literis discurrentibus congerentes, convene-

runt in brevi apud Stanfordiam cum equis et A.D. 1227.  
 armis comes Cestrensis Ranulfus, comes Willel-  
 mus Mareschallus, comes Richardus frater regis,  
 comes Gloverniæ Gilebertus, comes Warenniæ  
 Willelmus, comes Herefordiæ Henricus, comes  
 [de] Ferraris Willelmus, comes Warewicensis Wil-  
 lelmus, cum baronibus multis et ingenti multi-  
 tudine armatorum, significantes regi cum minis  
 ampullosis, ut hanc injuriam fratri suo illatam  
 confestim emendaret, cuius transgressionis cul-  
 pam non regi, sed justiciario, imputarunt. Ad-  
 diderunt insuper, regi denuntiantes atrociter, ut  
 chartas, quas nuper apud Oxonię cancellaverat,  
 de libertatibus forestæ, sibi absque dilatione re-  
 stitueret sigillatas; sin autem, ipsi illum gladiis  
 discurreribus compellerent, ut sibi super his  
 satisfaceret competenter. Tunc rex statuit illis  
 apud Norhamtonam tertio nonas Augusti diem,  
 ut ibi faceret eis plenam rectitudinem exhiberi.  
 Partibus igitur apud urbem præfatam die statuto  
 convenientibus, rex, magnatibus ad hoc instanti-  
 bus, dedit fratri suo dotem totam matris suæ  
 comiti Richardo, addens ei terras omnes quæ ad  
 jus comitis Britanniæ pertinebant in Anglia, cum  
 suis omnibus terris, quæ fuerant comitis Bononiæ  
 nuper defuncti; et sic pacifice ad propria reces-  
 serunt.

Eodem anno heremita quidam in Alpibus ha- Legend.  
 bitans transmarinis, dum psalterium suum de  
 more quodam die ruminaret, cum venisset ad  
 psalmum ‘Exsurgat Deus,’ invenit subito psal-  
 mum deletum, et in loco psalmi hæc verba in-  
 scripta, ‘Excitatitur Romanus contra Romanum,  
 et Romanus Romano substituetur; Romæ alle-  
 viabuntur virgæ pastorum, et solatium erit in  
 otio; turbabuntur seduli et orabunt, et in la-  
 chrymis multorum erit requies; humilis alludet

A.D. 1227. furibundo, et favor extinguis palabitur; novus grex serpet ad tumulum, et qui mundantur in nemore tenui cibo cibabuntur; frustrata est spes sperantium et requies consolantium, in quam sperabant fiduciam; qui in tenebris ambulant ad lumen redibunt, et quæ diversa erant per diversa consolabuntur; non modica incipiet pluere nubes, quia natus est immutator sæculi; conserget favor contra simplicem, et simplicitas attenuata spirabit; decus in dedecus commutabitur, et gaudium multorum in luctum.' Hujus autem prophetæ interpretationem sequens rerum eventus luce clarius declarabit, si sollicite indagentur.

*Quomodo hoc tempore facta est motio magna in opus crucis.*

Progress of the crusades. Eodem anno, in fine mensis Junii, facta est motio maxima in opus crucis per orbem universum cruce signatorum, quæ adeo fuit numerosa, ut ex solo Anglorum regno plusquam quadraginta millia proborum hominum, præter senes et mulieres, profecti referantur. Hoc enim confessus est magister Hubertus, unus ex prædicatoribus in Anglia, asserens veraciter tot in suo rotulo conscripsisse. Qui omnes, et præcipue pauperes, in quibus divina voluntas quiescere solet, cum tanta devotione opus crucis assumpserunt, ut sibi inde procul dubio acquirerent favorem tonantis, quod signis constat evidenter declaratum; siquidem in nocte nativitatis beati Johannis Baptiste ostendit se Dominus in firmamento crucifixum, quod perspicue apparuit in cruce lucidissima corpus Dominicum clavis et lancea perforatum nec non cruore respersum, ut fidelibus suis patenter ostenderet Salvator mundi ex hac populorum devotione se fuisse placatum. Hanc quoque vi-

sionem, cum multis aliis, vidit mercator quidam, A.D. 1227.  
 qui piscem in rheda tulit ad vendendum, non  
 longe a vico qui Wxebregge nuncupatur; qua  
 insolita visione, splendore quoque perterritus et  
 quasi in extasi raptus, stetit attonitus, et quid  
 ageret ignorabat. Filius vero hominis illius,  
 quem unicum habuit socium, patrem confortans  
 hortatur, ut rhedam sistat et Dominum glorificet,  
 qui sibi talem dignatus est ostendere visionem.  
 In crastino vero, et singulis postea diebus, ubi-  
 cumque piscem suum venalem exposuit, visionem  
 cælestem, quam viderat, omnibus aperte prædi-  
 cavit, adhibito filii sui testimonio; unde sicut  
 multi dictis eorum fidem adhibuerunt, ita non-  
 nulli contempserunt, donec per similes visiones  
 et assiduas, quæ eodem tempore multis in locis  
 diversis apparuerunt, ad credendum inducti sunt,  
 in quibus ipse Crucifixus cælum reserare dig-  
 natus est et gloriam suam mirabiliter cum im-  
 menso lumine incredulis revelare. Inter alios  
 autem, qui de regno Angliæ exierunt in opus  
 Crucifixi, iter arripuerunt viri venerabiles, Petrus  
 Wintoniensis et Willelmus Exoniensis episcopi,  
 qui peregrinationis suæ votum fere per quinquen-  
 nium laudabiliter compleverunt.

*Quomodo negotium crucis fuerit hoc tempore  
 prosperatum.*

Hoc igitur negotium crucis, qualiter in hac  
 motione sit prosperatum, in his sequentibus lite-  
 ris, quas papa Gregorius omnibus Christi fide-  
 libus direxit, ostenditur evidenter: ‘Gregorius  
 episcopus, servus servorum Dei, omnibus Christi  
 fidelibus salutem, et cætera. Noverit universitas  
 vestra, nos de partibus transmarinis suscepisse lite-  
 ras sub hac forma; G[eroldus], miseratione divina  
 patriarcha Hierosolymitanus, humilis et indignus

Progress of  
 the crusade,  
 in a letter  
 from the  
 patriarch of  
 Jerusalem.

A.D. 1227.  
The patri-  
arch's letter  
on the  
crusade.

apostolicæ sedis legatus P. Cæsariensis, N. Nazarensis, et N. Narbonensis, archiepiscopi, E. Wintoniensis et W. Exoniensis episcopi, Hospitalis sancti Johannis, domus militiæ Templi et Hospitalis Teutonicorum, magistri, omnibus has literas inspecturis in Domino Jesu Christo salutem. Universitati vestræ necessitatem nostram instantissimam, et Jesu Christi, qui pro universis fidelibus sanguinem suum fudit, negotium, cogimur intimare. Non enim absque intimantis fervore ac multiplici lachrymarum effusione accidit, quod, sicut sperabamus communiter, in passagio Augusti nuper præteriti, serenissimus vir dominus imperator,<sup>1</sup> ut promiserat, in Syriam non transivit. Quo auditio, illi qui jam adventum ejus præverant peregrini in eisdem partibus, audientes, quod dictus imperator non venerat in passagio memorato, plus quam quadraginta millia viorum fortium in eisdem navibus, in quibus transferant, redierunt, magis in homine quam in Domino confidentes. Ibi tamen post eorum recessum octingenti fere milites remanserunt, clamantes unanimiter et dicentes, ‘Vel treugas rumpamus, vel communiter recedamus;’ qui non sine magna difficultate detenti hac occasione fuerunt, quia vir nobilis dux de Lemburgo ex parte domini imperatoris erat exercitui præferendus. Habito igitur concilio virorum prudentium, et præcipue domus Hospitalis et Templi ac Hospitalis Alemannorum, de treuga rumpenda, præfatus dux faceret quod Christianitati ac terræ sanctæ videretur potius expedire; sicque accidit,

<sup>1</sup> *Imperator.*] Upon the reasons | Sanutus, p. 211. Fuller has also  
alleged for the emperor's delay in | two chapters upon the character  
fulfilling his promise, see Guil. | of Frederic and his quarrel with  
Tyr. Continuat. in Martene et | the pope; Holy Warre, iii. §§ 29,  
Durand. Vett. Scriptt. v. col. 697; | 30.  
Raynald. ad an. 1227, § 27; and |

quod dux, requisitis super hæc consiliis et re- A.D. 1227.  
 ceptis, die quodam specialiter ad hoc assignato The patri-  
 comparuit coram nobis et quibusdam nobilibus arch's letter  
 terræ illius, ubi proposuit publice quod vole- on the  
 bat treugam infringere, et, qualiter utilius ac  
 melius in hac parte valeret procedere, ipsorum  
 auxilium et consilium implorabat. Verum cum  
 ipsi duci et quibusdam consiliariis suis diceretur,  
 quod treugam rumpere periculosum esset, et, cum  
 fuisse juramento firmata, penitus dishonestum,  
 responderunt, quod dominus papa excommunicar-  
 verat omnes cruce signatos, qui in isto passagio  
 non transirent, qui sciebat adhuc treugam per  
 biennium duraturam; ac per hoc intelligebant,  
 quod volebat treugam non servari, nec ipsi pere-  
 grini ibi remanere volebant aliquatenus otiosi.  
 Erant et multi qui dicebant, quod, si contingaret  
 recedere peregrinos, post recessum eorum in eos  
 insurgerent Saraceni, treuga non obstante. Mo-  
 vit præterea quosdam, quod Coradinus cum do-  
 minis de Haman et de Camele et de Halaph  
 gravissimam haberet guerram, unde plus solito  
 timet, ne ipsa treuga a Christianis frangatur;  
 quod si fieret, credebatur quod Coradinus, cum  
 videret guerris se undique coarctatum, deberet  
 inde verisimiliter procedere verbum pacis. Ha-  
 bito igitur super his longo deliberationis tractatu,  
 tandem unus fuit omnibus spiritus et vox una in  
 sanctam tendere civitatem, quam dominus Jesus  
 Christus proprio sanguine consecravit; et, ut  
 facilior ad eam haberetur accessus, fuit com-  
 muniter ordinatum, ut primo Cæsarea, et deinde  
 Joppa muniantur, quod ante passagium Augusti  
 sequentis procul dubio posse fieri sperabatur, et  
 tunc hyeme sequenti in domum Domini cum ip-  
 sius adjutorio lætantes valeant proficisci. Fuit  
 autem hæc publicata provisio extra civitatem

A.D. 1227.  
The patriarch's letter  
on the  
crusade.

Acon, instante festo apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, adstantibus peregrinis omnibus, ubi solemniter est imperatum, ut essent omnes parati in crastino Omnim sanctorum versus Cæsaream profecturi; quod audientes peregrini, qui consilium ignorabant, quod exercitus tractatum haberet, firmatis munitionibus prædictis, in Hierusalem procedendi tanta subito erant devotione succensi, quod excitaverunt oculos ad abundantiam lachrymarum, ut videbatur cuilibet se Spiritus Sancti gratia adeo roboratum, quod unus posset mille, et duo decem millia, superare. Non igitur oportet, ut devotioni vestræ multis supplicationibus insistamus, ubi tantæ necessitatis evidens instantia pro se clamat, sibique subvenire postulat indilate; quia mora ad se trahit periculum, et festinatio plurimum erit fructuosa. Clamat autem ad singulos Christi sanguis de terra; supplicat parvus et humilis exercitus, sed devotus, sibi celeriter subveniri, sperans in Domino et confidens, quod negotium humiliter inchoatum debeat ipso concedente feliciter terminari. Universi igitur et singuli, qui Christum induistis per fidem, viriliter accingimini ad terræ sanctæ succursum, cum hic causa communis agatur, vestræ scilicet fidei ac totius populi Christiani. Nos enim promotioni hujus negotii, provisore Domino et auctore, non cessamus intendere, sperantes fiducialiter, quod in manibus fidelium fideliter perseverantium debeat prosperari. Data Laterani, decimo kalendas Januarii, pontificatus nostri anno primo.'

*Qualiter negotium terra sanctæ pro defectu  
imperatoris fuerit impeditum.*

The emperor, having embarked, turns back.

Imperator autem Romanorum Fredericus,

municationis in hoc passagio præscripto a papa A.D. 1227. terminum habuit, ut vota peregrinationis persolveret, ad <sup>1</sup>mare Mediterraneum veniens cum parvo comitatu naves ascendit ; sed postquam per triduum ad terram promissionis tendere videretur, dixit se subita infirmitate præreptum, ita quod maris intemperiem simul et aeris corruptionem non potuit mortis discrimine diutius sustinere, unde retortis velis ad portum, quo mare ingressus fuerat, post tres dies applicuit ; et, his ita gestis, peregrini, qui ex diversis mundi partibus ad terram sanctam ipsum prævenerant, sperantes illum ducem habere et defensorem ad crucis inimicos debellandos, cum audissent dictum imperatorem in illo Augusti mensis passagio, sicut promiserat, non venisse, animo nimis consternati in eisdem navibus, in quibus venerant, plusquam quadraginta armatorum millia sunt reversi ; quod factum imperatoris damnose nimis redundavit in dedecus et in præjudicium totius negotii Crucifixi. Ob hanc autem causam, juxta multorum opinionem, ostendit se, ut prædictum est, mundi Salvator in cruce clavis confixum et cruore conspersum populo Christiano, quasi singulis et universis super injuria sibi ab imperatore illata querelam deponens.

*De morte fratris, qui ordinem Minorum primum instituit.*

Circa dies istos frater quidam de ordine <sup>Death of S.</sup> <sub>Francis.</sub> Minorum, nomine <sup>2</sup>Franciscus, qui illius ordi-

<sup>1</sup> *Mare Mediterraneum.*] We learn from the letters of Gregory, in Ric. de S. Germano, that Brun-disium was the place fixed on for the embarkation ; and that whilst there the plague broke out, which carried off the landgrave of Thu-

ringia, Siffrid bishop of Augs-burg, and many others ; Ray-naldi, col. 594.

<sup>2</sup> *Franciscus.*] For the biogra-phers of S. Francis, enumerated by Wadding and others, see the Act. SS. Octob. tom. ii. p. 545.

A.D. 1227.  
Sketch of  
the life of  
S. Francis.

nis institutor fuisse perhibetur et magister, Romæ mirabiliter ex hac luce migravit. Erat autem Franciscus memoratus generis nobilitate præclarus, sed tamen multo clarior morum probitate refulxit. Hic siquidem, puerilibus annis simpliciter transactis, coepit de mundi hujus illecebris et rerum temporalium mutabilitate sœpius mente revolvore, et quam nulla sunt, quæ temporaliter defluunt, indesinenter pensare; nam et hoc didicerat in literis et theologicis disciplinis, quibus ab ætate tenera incubuerat usque ad notitiam perfectam, quo ordine rerum labentium mutabilitatem contemneret ac viribus totis ad cœlestis regni desiderium suspiraret. Sed quod mente conceperat, ut liberius opere compleret, hæreditatem paternam non modicam cum cunctis seculi oblectamentis despiciens, cucullam et cilicum induit, calceamenta depositum, in vigiliis et jejuniis carnem maceravit, et, ut spontaneam eligeret paupertatem, nihil omnino proprium habere decrevit; nec etiam ipsam refectionem carnalem, nisi quod de eleemosynis fidelium sub titulo reciperet caritatis, et, si forte post tenuissimam refectionem aliquid superabundaret, nihil in crastinum reservans totum pauperibus erogavit. Vestitus etiam de nocte dormivit, mattam pro stratu cubiculi habuit, saxum capiti pro cervicali supposuit, cuculla solummodo et cilicio, quibus in die vestitus incessit, pro nocturnalibus operimentis contentus. Sicque in præparatione evangelii discalceatus incedens, et vitam apostolicam amplectens, diebus Dominicis ac festivis in ecclesiis parochialibus et aliis fidelium conventiculis officium prædicationis implevit; quod tanto efficacius cordibus audientium imprimere potuit, quanto a carnalibus desideriis et gastrimargiæ

crapulis exstitit alienus. Ut autem vir Dei Franciscus hoc salubre propositum ad effectum perduceret, articulos jam dictos, cum quibusdam aliis, quæ a fratribus illius religionis usque in hodiernum diem strenuissime observantur, in schedula conscriptos sedenti in consistorio Roma papæ Innocentio præsentavit et suam petitio-nem confirmari a sede apostolica postulavit.

*Quomodo dominus papa ordinem prædictum per privilegium confirmavit.*

Papa itaque in fratre memorato habitum de-formem, vultum despicabilem, barbam prolixam, capillos incultos, supercilia pendentia et nigra diligenter considerans, cum petitionem ejus tam arduam et executione impossibilem recitari fe-cisset, despexit eum et dixit, ‘Vade, frater, et quære porcos, quibus potius debes quam homini-bus comparari, et involve te cum eis in volu-tabro, et regulam illis a te commentatam tradens officium tuæ prædicationis impende. Quod audiens Franciscus inclinato capite exivit, et, por-cis tandem inventis, in luto se cum eis tamdiu involvit, quoisque a planta pedis usque ad ver-ticem corpus suum totum cum ipso habitu pol-luisset; sicque ad consistorium revertens papæ se conspectibus præsentavit dicens, ‘Domine,’ inquit, ‘feci sicut præcepisti; exaudi nunc, obse-cro, petitionem meam.’ Quod factum cum papa admirans conspexisset, contrastatus est valde quod illum despexisset, atque in se reversus præcepit ut lotus rediret ad eum; quo celeriter a sordibus mundato, reversus est festinanter. Commotus itaque papa super eo petitionem ejus admisit, et per privilegium Romanæ ecclesiæ officium prædicationis simul cum ordine petito ei confirmans cum benedictione dimisit. Deinde

The order of  
S. Francis  
confirmed by  
the pope.

A.D. 1227. famulus Dei Franciscus oratorium in urbe Romana, in quo contemplativos meteret fructus, construens spirituale certamen contra spiritus malignos et carnalia vitia egregius bellator assumpsit.

*De prædicatione fratris memorati et fine valde admirabili.*

Preaching of  
S. Francis. Franciscus igitur per Italiam totam, et cæteras nationes, et præcipue in urbe Roma, cum officium prædicationis devotus impleret, populus Romanus, totius bonitatis inimicus, prædicacionem viri Dei adeo despexit, quod nec ipsum audire, nec sanctis ejus voluerunt exhortationibus interesse. Tandem cum per dies plurimos prædicationem ejus despexit, Franciscus inducationem eorum graviter increpavit, ‘Doleo,’ inquit, ‘multum super miseria vestra, quod non solum me Christi famulum spernitis, verum et illum in me despicitis, quoniam Redemptorem mundi evangelizavi vobis ; et nunc recedens ab urbe testimonium illius invoco super desolatione vestra, qui est testis in cælo fidelis, atque in confusione vestram vado evangelizare Christum brutis animalibus et volatilibus cæli, ut auditentes salutifera Dei verba obedient et adquiescant.’ Sicque ab urbe exiens invenit sedentes in suburbio in morticiniis corvos, milvos et picas, aliasque aves multas in aere volitantes, et dixit eis, ‘Præcipio vobis in nomine Jesu Christi, quem crucifixerunt Judæi, cuius prædicationem miseri Romani despicerunt, quatenus ad me accedentes audiatis verbum Dei, in nomine ejus qui vos creavit et in arca Noe ab aquis diluvii liberavit.’ Et continuo ad imperium ejus universa illa avium multitudo illuc accedens circumdedit eum, et facto silentio, omniisque garitu de-

posito, per dimidium diei spatum verbis viri A.D. 1227.  
 Dei intendentes de loco non sunt motæ, sed sem-<sup>He preaches</sup>  
 per intuebantur faciem prædicantis. Hæc autem  
 res admirabilis cum a civibus Romanis simul et  
 ab intrantibus urbem et exeuntibus comperta  
 fuisset, et per triduum a viro Dei idipsum avibus  
 convocatis replicatum exstitisset, exierunt de civi-  
 tate clerus cum populo multo introducentes ho-  
 minem Dei cum veneratione magna in urbem,  
 quorum deinceps corda infructuosa et pertinaci-  
 ter obdurata oleo prædicationis obsecrantis emol-  
 liens in melius commutavit. Cœpit itaque cele-  
 bre nomen ejus per universos Italiæ fines ita di-  
 latari, quod multi nobiles ipsius exemplum se-  
 cuti, relicto seculo cum vitiis et concupiscentiis  
 ejus, sese magisterio suo subdiderunt. Crevit  
 igitur in brevi hic ordo fratrum prædictorum per  
 orbem universum, qui, in urbibus habitantes et  
 castellis, deni et septeni exierunt in diebus illis,  
 per villas et ecclesias parochiales verbum vitæ  
 prædicantes, et turbis agrestibus virtutum plan-  
 taria inserentes fructum plurimum cum usuris  
 etiam Domino obtulerunt; nec solum inter fide-  
 les semen verbi Dei et rorem doctrinæ cœlestis  
 consperserunt, verum etiam ad gentilium regiones  
 et Saracenorum nationes se conferentes perhibu-  
 erunt testimonium veritati, inter quos etiam multi  
 ex eis ad martyrii gloriam pervenerunt.

*De concursu populorum ad obitum fratris sæpe dicti.*

Tandem vero, cum amicus Dei Franciscus in <sup>Death of S.</sup>  
 urbe Roma simul et terris adjacentibus cum  
 fratribus suis per annos multos evangelium pa-  
 cis prædicasset, et talentum sibi creditum, ut  
 fœnator optimus, cum usuris multiplicibus suo  
 largitori restituisset, venit hora ejus, ut trans-  
 iret ex hoc mundo ad Christum, et pro mercede

Francis.

A.D. 1227. laborum acciperet coronam vitæ, quam Deus se diligentibus repromisit. Itaque quinto decimo die ante exitum suum de corpore apparuerunt vulnera in manibus ejus et pedibus sanguinem jugiter emittentia, sicut in mundi Salvatore in ligno pendente apparuerant cum crucifigeretur a Judæis. Latus quoque ejus dextrum adeo aperatum et cruento respersum apparuit, ut etiam secreta cordis intima perspicua viderentur. Quid ergo? factus est ad eum concursus hominum utriusque sexus rem tam insolitam admirantium; inter quos etiam ipsi cardinales accedentes sciscitabantur ab eo, quid hæc visio sibi vellet. ‘Hæc,’ inquit, ‘visio in me idcirco ostensa est, quibus mysterium crucis prædicavi, ut credatis in Eum, qui pro mundi salute hæc quæ videtis vulnera in cruce pertulit, et etiam ut me sciatis ejus esse servum, quem evangelizavi vobis crucifixum, mortuum et resuscitatum, et ut, omni ambiguitate remota, in hac fidei constantia usque in finem perseveretis; hæc vulnera, quæ in me ita videtis aperta et sanguine cruentata, statim cum defunctus fuero adeo sana erunt et cohærentia, ut carni cæteræ similia videantur;’ qui continuo absque omni corporis angustia et cruciatu carne solutus reddidit spiritum suo Creatori. Quo defuncto, nulla vulnerum prædictorum in latere, vel pedibus ejus sive manibus, [stigmata] remanserunt. Sepulto autem viro Dei in oratorio suo, Romanus pontifex ipsum in catalogum sanctorum admisit, et diem ejus depositionis solenniter instituit celebrari.

*De quibusdam novis institutionibus regis Anglorum.*

Anno<sup>1</sup> Domini MCCXXVIII. rex Anglorum Hen- A.D. 1228.  
ricus festum Dominicæ nativitatis apud Ebora- Revision of  
cum solenniter celebravit, et protinus inde re- the measures  
cedens versus Londoniam recto tramite propera- of grain, etc.  
vit. In hoc autem itinere mensuras bladi, vini  
et celiæ falsitatis arguens quædam confregit et  
comburere nonnulla præcepit, et vasa substitu-  
ens capaciora panem majoris ponderis fieri fecit,  
et hujus statuti contemptores poena gravi pecu-  
niaria multari præcepit.

Eodem tempore, mense Januario, <sup>2</sup>Rogerus de Legend  
Theoneio, vir nobilis et miles strenuus, non longe concerning  
a Radingo diem clausit supremum; cuius fra- Roger de  
ter major natu Radulphus, qui tunc absens erat, Theoney  
cupiens cum ipso habere colloquium antequam and his  
obiret, cum festinatione venit ad eum, sed de- brother.  
functo fratre, quem multum dilexit, priusquam  
veniret, nec vocem in illo nec sensum invenit.  
Radulphus vero de fratri obitu valde contristatus  
coepit cum fletu et vociferatione maxima fra-  
trem jam defunctum adjurare, ut fraterno ductus  
affectu secum loqueretur; cumque coram militi-  
bus suis et aliis multis adstantibus clamores et  
obsecrations ingeminaret, addidit etiam, quod  
nunquam deinceps comedederet, nisi ipsius collo-  
quio frueretur. Tunc mortuus ille in lecto re-  
sidens increpavit acriter fratrem, quod spiritum  
ejus inquietans ad corpus denuo revocasset.  
'Jam,' inquit, 'et poenas vidi malorum et gau-  
dia beatorum, necnon supplicia magna, quibus

<sup>1</sup> Anno Domini MCCXXVIII. ] of lands in Wales, Devonshire, wanting in C. Norfolk (principally), Essex, and

<sup>2</sup> Rogerus de Theoneio.] In the Inquisit. post mortem it is noticed that a Roger de Thony, in the 48th of Henry III., died seised of lands in Hertfordshire; and in the 5th of Edward I. is recorded the death of Radulphus de Thonny, felo, seised of lands in Hertfordshire.

A.D. 1228. miser ego deputatus sum, oculis meis conspexi. Væ, vœ mihi ! quare torneamenta exercui et ea tanto studio dilexi ? Cui frater, ‘ Nonne,’ ait, ‘ et tu salvaberis ?’ Et ille, ‘ Salvabor,’ inquit ; ‘ unum enim opus in honorem perpetuæ virginitatis Mariæ, per quam salvabor, feci.’ Cui Radulphus, ‘ Nunquid supplicia, quibus addictus es, ut dicis, operibus bonis, missis et eleemosynis poterunt mitigari ?’ Ad hæc Rogerus, ‘ Poterunt quidem.’ ‘ Et ego,’ ait Radulphus, ‘ tibi in veritate promitto, me pro salute nostra et antecessorum nostrorum domum religionis facturum, quam cum monachis religiosis implevero, pro liberatione animæ vestræ et prædecessorum nostrorum Deum æternaliter invocabunt.’ Respondit Rogerus, ‘ Promissionibus tuis multum indigeo, sed nihil quæso mihi promittas, nisi quod desideras effectu complere.’ Et sic fratri cunctisque adstantibus valedicens spiritum denuo exhalavit. Deinde Radulphus frater ejus in eodem anno, sicut promiserat, abbatiam in partibus occidentis regni Angliæ construens monachos Cistercienses imposuit, et locum prædiis et beneficiis non modicis ampliavit.

*De translatione Richardi, Saresbiriensis episcopi, ad Dunelmum.*

The Bishop  
of Salisbury  
translated to  
Durham.

Eodem anno, cassata Romæ electione magistri Willelmi Scoti, Dunelmensis electi, Richardus, Saresbiriensis episcopus, ad eundem episcopatum electus est et translatus ; post cujus promotionem canonici Saresbirienses elegerunt magistrum <sup>1</sup> Robertum Bingeham, cocanonicum suum, in animarum suarum episcopum et pastorem. Quo utique anno decisa est contentio inter monachos Coven-

<sup>1</sup> Robertum Bingeham. ] He | Bath at Wilton, on the 27th of was consecrated by the bishop of | May ; Annal. Waverl. p. 192.

trenses et canonicos Lichefeldenses super episcopo eligendo Romæ per sententiam diffinitivam, ita ut deinceps episcopos alternatim elegant, monachi primum, et canonici eo defuncto alterum; hoc tamen observato, <sup>A.D. 1222.</sup> ut prior Coven-trensis in electione primam semper habeat vocem. In hac autem sententia videtur plurimum juri monachorum fuisse derogatum, qui eatenus semper pontifices elegerant absque canonicorum consensu. Eodem anno imperator Constantinopolitanus humanæ naturæ debitum solvit, filium hæredem<sup>3</sup> relinquens parvulum et nondum idoneum ad imperii dignitatem.

*De sententia in imperatorem lata.*

Circa<sup>3</sup> dies istos papa Gregorius, cum imperatoris contumaciam, simul et Crucifixi contemptum, ut sibi videbatur, impunitum diutius distulisset, tandem, ne canis videretur latrare non valens, de consilio cardinalium suorum ipsum imperatorem excommunicavit, et latam sententiam per literas apostolicas in diversis mundi partibus publicari præcepit. Inter cæteros autem hujus sententiae publicatores Stephano scripsit archiepiscopo in hæc verba; ‘Gregorius episcopus Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, salutem, et cætera. In maris amplitudine spatiose navicula Petri posita, vel potius exposita turbibibus tempestatum, sic jugiter procellis et fluctibus agitatur, ut ejus gubernatores ac remiges vix contingat aliquando inter inundantium imbrum angustias respirare; nam, si quandoque prospero

<sup>1</sup> Ut prior ... vocem.] ‘Ita quod prior in electione primam vocem habeat, et decanus secundam;’ Chron. Dunst. p. 168.

<sup>2</sup> Hæredem.] Baldwin the second was only eleven years old when

his brother Robert de Courtenay, the emperor, died. During his minority John of Brienne was appointed to the government.

<sup>3</sup> Circa dies istos.] Compare Raynaldi, tom. i. pp. 592, seqq.

A.D. 1228.  
The pope's  
censure of  
the emperor.

flante vento plenis velis ad portum tenditur, subito ventus irruens ex adverso, impulsus ab illo cuius halitus ardere facit, ad altitudinem maris et turbulentum profunditatis oceanum navis raptur, quæ cincta fluctibus mergitur, nec submergitur, quia in ea Dominus residens discipulorum tandem clamoribus excitatur, dum fugat spiritus insufflantes, et mari ventisque imperat, fit tranquillum. Quatuor quidem procellæ quatunt navem istam; nam perfida paganorum turba terram inclytam Christi sanguine consecratam impie detinere contendunt; rabies tyrannorum temporalia rapiens exterminat justitiam et conculcat ecclesiasticam libertatem; hæreticorum insania Christi tunicam scindere nititur et subvertere fidei sacramentum; falsorum fratrum et filiorum dolosa perversitas concutit viscera et latus dilacerat matris suæ. Sicque foris pugnæ, intus timores; extra interficit gladius, et dominibus mors similiter intentatur; sicque frequenter fit, quod Christi ecclesia tot angustiis perturbatur; dum alere credit filios, nutrit in sinu ignem, serpentes et regulos, qui flatu et morsu et incendio cuncta vastare nituntur. Hinc est, quod ad monstra hujusmodi perimenda, et expugnandas acies inimicas, ad tempestatum inquietudines mitigandas, apostolica sedes his temporibus cum multa diligentia quandam alumnum, imperatorem videlicet Fredericum, quem quasi a matris utero exceptit, uberibus lactavit, humeris bajulavit, de manibus quærentium animam ejus frequenter eripuit, educare studuit, multis laboribus et expensis usque ad virum perfectum perduxit, ad regiæ dignitatis decorem et tandem ad fastigium culminis imperialis provexit, credens illum habere defensionis virgam et baculum senectutis. Ipse autem, dum in Teutonicam se

transtulit ad habendas imperii obtinendas, jocunda, ut credebatur, auspicia, sed verius pericula, matris obtutibus inferebat ; nam sponte, non monitu, sede apostolica ignorante, crucem suis affixit humeris, vovens solenniter se in terræ sanctæ subsidium profecturum. Deinde se et alios cruce signatos excommunicari obtinuit, nisi certo proficiscerentur tempore ; sed incidenter absolutionem petiit et accepit de parendo super hæc mandatis ecclesiæ, prius præstito juramento. Exuberantem autem gratiam super ipsum apostolica sedes infundens, ut festinantius ad terræ sanctæ transiret subsidium, ipsum contra morem ad coronam vocavit, qui ad hoc non invitatus, sed multiplicatis intercessoribus invitari per magnificos nuntios consuevit ; sicque idem sub crucis vexillo usque ad hæc tempora propria negotia plenius et perfectius consummavit. Tandem cum manibus felicis recordationis Honori papæ, prædecessoris nostri, in beati Petri basilica recepisset diadema, de manibus nostris, tunc in minori officio constitutis, crucem resumpsit, voto publice innovato. Plures sub spe sui subsidii ad crucem sumendam induxit, et certum recepit terminum transfretandi. Habito quoque postmodum apud Verulas cum ecclesia Romana colloquio, juravit publice, se in certo termino, a Romana sibi ecclesia præfigendo, et tanquam imperatorem honorifice profecturum. Exinde apud Ferentinum in colloquio simili duorum annorum transfretandi elegit sibi terminum et præfixit ; sicque transiturum, et nobilem mulierem, natam carissimi filii nostri in Christo Johannis regis Hierosolymorum, illustris ipsius regni hæredem, in conjugem recepturum, solenniter præstito juramento spopondit ; adjungens, quod per hoc ad obsequium terræ sanctæ, non ut cæteri pere-

A.D. 1222.  
The pope's  
censure of  
the emperor.

A.D. 1228.  
The pope's  
censure of  
the emperor. grini, sed ut Templarii et Hospitalarii, se in perpetuum obligaret. Appropinquante itaque termino prælibato, coepit excusationes multiplices prætendere, se ad transitum asserens non paratum; et, ut denuo trinorum sibi daretur terminus annorum, grandia obtulit obsequia terræ sanctæ cum obligationibus satis magnis. Apostolica vero sedes, ne, tantis laboribus exsufflati et inutiliter sic exhaustis, totum dissolveretur negotium, quod huic principi post Romanam ecclesiam principalius incumbebat, habito plurium episcoporum et aliorum virorum consilio, de contingentibus nil omittens, venerabilem fratrem nostrum P. Albanensem episcopum, et bonæ memoriæ G. titulo sancti Martini presbyterum cardinalem, ad confirmanda illa, quæ imperator pro crucis obsequio spontaneus promittebat, transmisit. Cumque apud sanctum Germanum cum pluribus Alemanniae principibus pariter convenissent, imperator propria manu juravit, quod inde ad biennium, id est in passagio Augusti nunc proximo transacto, omni excusatione et dilatione cessantibus, transfretaret, mille milites ibidem per biennium teneret ad suum stipendum pro subsidio terræ sanctæ, centum millia unciarum auri, in quinque passagiis tunc proximo futuris, illuc destinaret certis assignanda personis. Et tunc cardinales presbyteri, de imperatoris consensu, in conspectu principum ac populi circumstantis, excommunicationis sententiam publice auctoritate sedis apostolicæ protulerunt, in quam incideret imperator, si forte in aliquo defecerit prædictorum. Obligavit insuper se imperator ad centum chelandras et quinquaginta galeias ducendas et tendendas ultra mare, et quod insuper duobus milibus militum passagium certis terminis largiretur, in animam suam jurari faciens se ista quæ dixi-

mus impleturum, et sponte consentiens in se et A.D. 1222.  
 regnum suum ferri sententiam si hæc non fuerint The pope's  
censure of  
the emperor.  
 observata. Qualiter autem hæc impleverit, ad-  
 vertas; nam cum ad ejus frequentem instantiam  
 multa cruce signatorum millia, per excommuni-  
 cationis sententiam coarctati, in termino desti-  
 nato ad portum Brundusii properassent, quia  
 gratiam suam imperator substraxerat civitatibus  
 fere cunctis in portibus constitutis, et idem a  
 prædecessore nostro ac a nobis frequentius moni-  
 tus, ut diligenter pararet omnia, et fideliter, quæ  
 spöonderat, adimpleret, ipse præmissorum, quæ  
 sedi apostolice et cruce signatis per prædicato-  
 res et literas suas fecerat de sponsione passagii  
 necessariorum et victus, suæ salutis immemor,  
 tamdiu in æstivi fervoris incendio in regione  
 mortis et aeris corruptela detinuit Christianum  
 exercitum, ut non solum magna pars plebis, ve-  
 rum etiam non modica multitudo nobilium et  
 magnatum, pestilentia, sitis ariditate, ardoris in-  
 cendio, ac multis incommoditatibus exspiravit,  
 inter quos defecerunt bonæ memoriæ episcopi  
 Andegavensis et Augustensis. Pars vero non  
 modica infirmitate gravata regrediens in viis,  
 in silvis et planitiis, in montibus et speluncis,  
 occubuit jam ex parte. Sane reliqui, vix  
 obtenta licentia, licet galeiæ, chelandræ, ac na-  
 ves sufficientes ad transitum victualium, homi-  
 num et equorum, ut promiserat, non adessent,  
 in festo tamen beatæ Virginis, cum jam temporis  
 instantia imminaret ut naves transmarinis par-  
 titibus inciperent remeare, sulcare maria inchoa-  
 runt, sed pro nomine Jesu Christi se discrimini  
 concurrentes, ac credentes imperatorem cominus  
 eorum vestigia secuturum. Idem vero, evacuatis  
 præmissionibus, ruptis vinculis quibus tenebatur  
 astrictus, calcato timore divino, contempta reve-

A.D. 1228.  
The pope's  
censure of  
the emperor.

rentia Jesu Christi, censura ecclesiastica vilipensa, ac relichto exercitu Christiano, exposita infidelibus terra sancta, devotione populi Christiani abjecta, in suum et totius Christianitatis opprobrium retrorsum abiit abstractus et illectus ad consuetas regni delicias, abjectionem corporis suis frivolis excusationibus, ut dicitur, gestiens palliare. Attendite ergo, et videte, si est dolor sicut dolor sedis apostolicæ, matris vestræ, sic crudeliter et toties deceptæ in filio, quem lactaverat, in quem posuit in hoc facto spei suæ fiduciam, in quem tot beneficiorum abundantiam cumulavit. Dissimulans interim, ne, occasione inventa, se averteret a terræ sanctæ subsidio, exilia præsumum, spoliations, captivitates et injurias multiplices, quas ecclesiis, viris religiosis, clericis irrogavit, et obaudiens querelas multiplices pauperum, populorum et nobilium, patrimonii ecclesiæ clamantium contra ipsum, quas in aures Domini Sabaoth credimus introisse. Et quamvis ecclesia Romana tueri debeat filium tanta diligentia educatum et magnificentia exaltatum, nunc ipsum gemit sine Marte victum, absque hoste prostratum, et in suæ confusionis opprobrium tam ignominiose dejectum. Non minus gemit exterminium exercitus Christiani, qui non inimicorum gladiis vel virtute defecit, sed calamitate tam miserabili est consumptus. Gemit etiam, quod pars residua bellatorum, exposita maris periculis et fluctibus tempestatum, absque duce, præceptore, et principe ducitur, quo ignorat, modicum profectura terræ sanctæ utilitatibus; quibus debitæ consolationis solatium et opportunæ subventionis auxilium, impedientibus jam maris frementis procellis temporisque angustia, juxta votum non possumus ministrare. Gemit insuper excidium sanctæ terræ, quam

nunc eripi de manibus paganorum sperabamus ; A.D. 1228.  
quam olim, ut asseritur, recuperasset Christianus  
exercitus per concambium Damietæ, nisi semel  
eis et iterum imperialibus fuisse literis inter-  
dictum ; qui etiam non fuisse in manibus pa-  
ganorum inclusus, si galeiarum subsidium, ut ex  
parte sua promissum fuerat et fieri poterat, sub-  
secutum esset, nam Damietta, quæ, ut astruitur,  
suo tradita nuntio et aquilis imperialibus insig-  
nita, eodem die crudeliter spoliata, et per suos  
deteriorata viliter et ignominiose, per ipsos fuit  
infidelibus restituta. Recurrit etiam ad redi-  
viva suspiria, et amissionem præscriptam, reco-  
lens Damietæ tot laborum angustias, tot expen-  
sarum dispendia, tot mortes fidelium, et tot ex-  
cursus temporum, quæ inutiliter affluxerunt, sub-  
ortis lachrymis flere non cessat ; nec est qui con-  
soletur eam ex omnibus caris ejus, nec abster-  
gat lachrymas a maxillis. Cum ergo vox ejus in  
Rama jam sonuerit, et Rachel non solum filios,  
sed hæc omnia irremediabili lamentatione deplo-  
ret, quis fidelium a gemitibus et suspiriis conti-  
nebit ? Quis filiorum, cernens aquarum profluvia  
de matris oculis prodeuntia, lachrymas non ef-  
fundet ? Quis matris non compatietur angustiis,  
nec immensis ejus doloribus condolebit ? Quis  
fidelium propter hæc non ardentius inflamma-  
bitur ad subsidium terræ sanctæ, ne Christi-  
ana juventus ex insperato casu penitus prostra-  
ta videatur et ignominiose animo consternata ?  
Nonne viri cordati et filii Jesu Christi debent  
ad subsidium terræ sanctæ tanto fortius animari,  
quanto ignominiam amplius resultare conspiciunt  
ex insperata ruina in Patrem et filium, in Re-  
demptorem atque redemptos, in Christum et po-  
pulum Christianum ? Nos igitur hoc negotium  
tanto ardentius resumere affectamus et profun-

A.D. 1228.  
The pope's  
censure of  
the emperor;

diori consilio alta intendimus remedia invenire, quanto magis necessitas et ex multis inflata doloribus <sup>1</sup> nostra grandis angustia pavit; et sic cum Dominus populo suo modicum ostendit se iratum, de illius manu hoc tempore sacrificium non acceptans, qui prudentiam non est imitatus illorum, per quem salus in Israel fieri consuevit. Non tamen misericordiae Dei sunt consumptae, nec ejus miserationes penitus defecerunt. Sperantes namque in misericordia Dei nostri, qui viam nobis ostendit, per quam in hoc opere prospere gradiamur, et viros secundum cor suum destinabit, qui praecedant in cordis puritate ac manuum munditia exercitum Christianum. Ideoque fraternitatem vestram obsecramus in Domino, per apostolica scripta præcipiendo mandantes, quatenus hæc clero et populis vobis commissis fideliter exponentes, ac inducentes eosdem ad hæc exsequenda, suos studeant animos præparare; et ipsos ad vindicandam injuriam Jesu Christi sedulis exhortationibus invitetis, ut cum ipsos sedes apostolica, habito majori tractatu, sollicitandos providerit, promptos inveniat et paratos. Porro, ne tanquam canes muti, non valentes latrare, videamur deferre homini contra Deum, non sumentes ultionem de illo, qui tantam injuriam in Dei populo procuravit, imperatorem videlicet Fredericum, qui nec transfretavit in termino constituto, nec illuc in taxatis passagiis præscriptam pecuniam destinavit, nec mille duxit milites per biennium tenendos ad suum stipendum pro subsidio terræ sanctæ ibidem, sed in tribus articulis manifeste deficiens in descriptæ excommunicationis laqueum ultroneus se ingressit, excommunicatum, quanquam inviti,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Nostra.*] 'Nostram' in MS.

publice nuntiamus et mandamus ab omnibus arc- A.D. 1223.  
tiis evitari, per vos et alios ecclesiarum prælatos declares him  
excommunicatum facientes publice nuntiari; con- excommunicated.  
tra ipsum, si contumacia ejus exegerit, gravius  
processuri. Confidimus tamen adhuc in pii Pa-  
tris clementia, qui neminem vult perire, quod  
oculi mentis caligantes hoc ecclesiastico delibuti  
collyrio, si non fuerit animo rebellis, lumine po-  
terunt illustrari, ut suam aspiciat nuditatem, et  
ignominiam suam, quam incurrit, avertat, sique  
recurrat ad Medicum, et ad matrem ecclesiam  
revertatur, per humilitatem debitam et satisfa-  
ctionem congruam salutis remedia recepturus.  
Nos enim ejus salutem in Domino affectamus  
interire, quem olim sincere dileximus in minori  
etiam officio constituti. Data Laterani, ponti-  
ficatus nostri anno secundo.'

*Quomodo promulgaverit se fuisse excommunicatum  
injuste.*

Imperator itaque Fredericus, cum a referenti- The emperor  
bus se excommunicatum cognovisset, perturba- complains of  
tus est valde; et sicut papa per literas suas in  
omnibus Christianorum finibus latam fecerat sen- the injustice  
tentiam publicari, ita dictus imperator scripsit of the pope's  
universis regibus et principibus Christianis con- sentence.  
querens sententiam in eum fuisse injuriose latam.  
Denuntiavit etiam singulis et universis, se non  
frivolis excusationibus, sicut ei papa mendose  
imposuit, a peregrinatione reversum inchoata,  
sed maximæ infirmitatis causa, Illius super hoc  
testimonium invocans, qui est testis in cælo  
fidelis. Affirmavit insuper, quia, quam citius sibi  
Deus prosperitatem præstiterit corporalem, vo-  
tum suæ peregrinationis, sicut decet imperatorem,  
cum honore congruo persolvere Domino procu-  
rabit. Inter cæteros siquidem catholicos reges

A.D. 1228.

literas<sup>1</sup> auro bullatas Anglorum regi transmisit, proponens in eisdem Romanam ecclesiam tanto jam avaritiae succensam incendio et concupiscentia manifesta, quod, bonis ecclesiasticis non sibi pro voto sufficientibus, imperatores, reges et principes exhæredare et tributarios constituere non veretur. Habeat autem de præmissis rex Anglorum ex se ipso exemplum, cuius patrem, regem scilicet Johannem, tamdiu excommunicatum tenuit, quo usque ipsum et regna ejus constituit sub tributo. Habeant etiam generaliter omnes idem exemplum de comite Tholosano, et alios principes multos, quorum terras et personas tamdiu sub interdicto concludere molitur, donec illos in consimilem redigat servitatem. In conclusione demum epistolæ hæc adjecit, exhortans orbis principes universos, ut contra tantam sibi prospiciant avaritiam et iniquitatem, quia

'Tunc sua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet.'

*Quod imperator movit persecutionem contra papam.*

Letter of the pope complaining of the emperor's violence.

Ex hac itaque imperator perturbatione commotus excitavit contra dominum papam et Romanæ ecclesiæ patrimonium persecutionem gravissimam, invadens ejus civitates et occupans castella, sicut idem papa per literas suas Romano, Francorum legato, directas evidenter expressit in hæc verba ;

*Querimonia pape de imperatore.*

'Gregorius episcopus Romano, Francorum legato, salutem, et cætera. Attende, quæsumus,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Literas auro bullatas.*] The letter of Henry, acknowledging the receipt of the pope's letters of complaint, as well as to the emperor, with a similar acknowledgment, at the same time urging him to reconciliation with Gregory, are printed in Rymer, p. 189; both are dated the 20th of February.

et vide, si est dolor sicut dolor noster, quia filium A.D. 1222.  
quem nutrit ecclesia Romana et exaltavit, spe-  
rans eum propugnatorem habere contra perfidas  
nationes, ecce nunc persecutorem sentit imma-  
nem et hostem validum experitur. Et ne tacea-  
mus atroces injurias et jacturas enormes, quibus  
Fredericus dictus imperator ecclesiam et perso-  
nas ecclesiasticas damnabiliter hactenus flagel-  
lavit, patrimonium apostolicæ sedis per Sar-  
acenos et alios impugnat, et, quod detestabilius  
est, cum Soldano et aliis Saracenis nefandis con-  
trahens pactiones illis favorem, Christianis odi-  
um, exhibet manifestum, ad exterminandas domos  
Hospitalis et fratum militiae Templi, per quas  
reliquiae terræ sanctæ hactenus sunt observatæ,  
impie annullando. De mandato enim illius inter  
Saracenos et Christianos fide fracta treugarum,  
cum Saracenis per terras domorum prædictarum  
hostiliter equitans, occisis et captis quampluri-  
mis, cum prædas plures abduxissent, Templarii  
ex hoc moti insurrexerunt contra ipsos, et cum  
prædas abstulissent ad valentiam sex millium  
marcarum, Thomas, comes Atterarum, imperato-  
ris bajulus, illis redeuntibus, furibundus et cur-  
rens, eandem prædam, ipsis non audentibus, juxta  
ordinis sui instituta, manum armatam contra  
Christianos erigere, abstulit violenter et reddidit  
Saracenis, præter quædam, quæ idem Thomas  
sibi dicitur retentasse. Quod si Saraceni prædam  
auferant Christianis, dictus Thomas non solum  
ad recuperationem ejus intendit, sed nec patitur  
ut Christiani prædam aliquando auferant Sarace-  
nis; quare factum est, ut illi ex hoc insolentio-  
res effecti nostros audacter impugnant, et nostri  
prodictionis periculum formidantes minus aude-  
ant refragari, et sic effusio sanguinis Christiani  
nonnunquam in imperatoris damnabile lucrum

A.D. 1228. cedit. Adhuc quoque Thomas prædictus, vel potius imperator per ipsum, prædictas domos immanius persecutus ipsas domibus et possessiōnibus, quas habebant, vi arctiori per violentiam spoliavit, easque privilegiis apostolicae sedis pri-vare contendens et imperiali subjecere jurisdictioni nititur, in manifestam subversionem ecclesiasticæ libertatis; centum sclavos etiam, quos domus Hospitalis et Templi habebant in Sicilia et Apulia, colligi faciens eos reddidit Saracenis, nulla exinde recompensatione facta domibus supradictis; et sic servis Christi servos præfert Machometi, ut ex præmissis ostenditur evidenter. Adhuc pro certo scias, quod, licet dictus imperator cum paucis militibus mare dicitur intrasse, contra patrimonium ecclesiæ magnum exercitum Christianorum et Saracenorum multitudinem destinavit, ut de observatione fidei suæ et malignitate constet, omnibusque manifestum exhibeat argumentum. Unde, inquam, firmam spem fiduciamque habemus in Illo, qui ecclesiam suam supra fidei petram stabiliens, quantumcunque irruant venti et inundent flumina, ipsam tamen non permettit everti. Dum itaque videmus eum in subversione fidei Christianæ ita nequiter machinantem, ita impie sævientem, possemus extremum periculum formidare; sed, quantumcunque impii prolongetur iniqitas, nunquam tamen in sua poterit pravitate prævalere, sed in ea potius evanescet. Cum igitur ex officio, licet indignis, nobis injuncto providere cogimur, ne minister Machometi in Christi ministros diutius valeat desævire, sed sæviens potius confundatur et gloria Christiani nominis exaltetur, dilectioni tuæ per apostolica scripta præcipiendo manda-mus, quatenus per terram legationis tue hæc solenniter prædicans Christi fidelibus, ut pro

statu fidei et religionis observantia stent ex A.D. 1228.  
animo, tanquam prosequentes singuli proprium  
interesse, ac salutaribus monitis effectibus eos  
et exhortationibus inducere non postponas. Da-  
tum Laterani, nonas Augusti, pontificatus nostri  
anno secundo.'

*Quomodo populus Romanus excitavit seditionem contra  
Romanum pontificem.*

Per idem tempus populus Romanus in papam <sup>The pope driven from Rome by the people.</sup> Gregorium <sup>1</sup> seditionem excitantes in solemnitate Paschali illum ejecerunt ab urbe, in sequentes eum usque Viterbum castellum suum, ubi fortiter invalescentes fugaverunt eum usque Perusium. Papa, aliud vindictæ genus non habens, persecutores suos excommunicationis sententia innodavit. Eodem tempore rex Francorum misit in Provinciam super comitem Tholosanum expeditionem non modicam militarem, ut dictum comitem debellarent et ab illis finibus propulsarent. Audientes autem quod dictus comes erat tunc apud castrum Saracenum, quod ad jus suum spectare videbatur, decreverunt eum ibidem inclusum obsidione vallare; comes vero de eorum adventu præmunitus cum ingenti copia armatorum illis venientibus insidias paravit, et in silva quadam, per quam Franci erant transituri, cum suis delitescens hostium exspectavit adventum. Venientibus autem Francigenis ad locum insidarum, irruit in eos cum suis legionibus comes

<sup>1</sup> *Seditionem excitantes.*] The mode employed by Frederic to obtain this influence is stated by a contemporary writer to have been as follows: He sent to the chief men, 'the Frangipani,' of the city, and demanded of them an account of the value of all their property; having purchased this,

he restored it again to the former possessors, to be held by them in fee: when therefore the emperor was again excommunicated, these men excited the people against the pope, and he was driven from the city: Conrad. Ursperg. in Raynaldi, i. p. 606.

A.D. 1222. non præmeditatos, et, facto hinc inde conflictu gravissimo, capti sunt ex Francis milites quingenti et multi interfecti. Capti sunt autem servientes armati ad duo millia bellatorum, quos omnes ad nudam carnem spoliatos, quorundam eorum fecit comes oculos erui, aures et nares præcidi, manus ac pedes aliorum truncari, et sic turpiter mutilatos ad propria remittens deforme spectaculum Francigenis exstiterunt. Milites quoque captivos omnes, collectis prius manubiis eorundem, comes victor sub arctiori custodia deputavit. Actum autem est bellum hoc decimo quinto calendas Junii apud castrum Saracenum. Et, ut breviter dicatur, ter in illa æstate expeditionibus repetitis,<sup>1</sup> Franci fugati vel capti sunt et incarcерati a comite sæpe dicto.

*De obitu Stephani, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.*

Eodem anno Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Slindonam manerium suum septimo idus Julii diem clausit extremum, et Cantuariæ sepultus est pridie nonas ejusdem. Quo sepulto, monachi Cantuarienses, impetrata a rege licentia, elegerunt monachum de gremio ecclesiæ suæ, magistrum Walterum de Heinesham, tertio nonas Augusti; quem cum monachi præsentassent regi, ipse post diutinam deliberationem eundem electum certis objectionibus recusavit. Primo quidem ipsis objecit monachis, quod talem elegerunt qui sibi inutilis erat et regno; secundo, quod pater ejusdem de furto convictus patibulo

<sup>1</sup> *Franci fugati vel capti sunt.]* The successes of Raymond, however, appear to have been but of short duration. On the 12th of April in the following year a peace was concluded with Louis, by which, between the pope and

the king, the count lost nearly all his territories, and remained a prisoner in the Louvre during six weeks, until the three preliminary articles of the treaty had been executed.

suspensus fuit; tertio, quod steterat in causis A.D. 1228. contra patrem suum regem Johannem tempore interdicti. Episcopi præterea Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganei eidem electo objecerunt, quod sanctimonialem quandam oppresserat et ex illa pueros susceperebat; adjicientes insuper, quod electio archiepiscopi sine illorum præsentia non debuerat celebrari. Electus vero præfatus electioni factæ firmiter adhærens, post appellatiōnem interpositam, assumptis sibi monachis qui busdam Cantuariensibus, domini papæ se conspectibus præsentavit, petens instanter, ut electionem factam confirmaret; sed dominus papa, cum cognovisset quod a rege et episcopis electio contradicta fuisset, distulit negotium donec rei certitudinem didicisset. Rex autem et episcopi, cum audissent, quod electus memoratus ad curiam Romanam iter arripuisse, objectiones præmissas in scriptum redactas et tam regio quam episcoporum [sigillo] roboratas per Roffensem et Cestrensem episcopos domino papæ transmiserunt, magistrum Johannem, Bedefordensem archidiaconum, hujus negotii constituentes patronum. Nuntii tandem Romam pervenientes domino papæ regis et episcoporum literas porreverunt; quibus papa diligenter inspectis de consilio cardinalium statuit partibus diem in crastino Cinerum, ut tunc mediante justitia causam sententialiter diffiniret. Eodem anno per totam æstatem facta sunt tonitrua et coruscationes horribiles, quæ ædificia multa succenderunt in locis diversis, homines et animalia peremerunt; et subsecutæ sunt in autumno sequente pluviarum inundationes assiduae, quæ in frugibus colligendis damna non modica cultoribus intulerunt.

*De irruptione facta a Wallensibus.*

A.D. 1228.  
Disturbances  
in Wales.

Eodem<sup>1</sup> tempore, mense Augusto, milites et servientes de castello Montis-Gomerii, quod in confinio Walliæ situm est, exierunt cum populo regionis, ut transitum cuiusdam viæ non longe a castello positum, propter latrones Wallenses, qui in illo loco viatores peremerunt assidue et transeuntes spoliaverunt, latius facerent et securum. Venientes siquidem ad locum cum gladiis, securibus, fustibus et armis, cœperunt arbores et ligna, veprium densitates et fruteta, succindere, ut viam redderent viatoribus spatiosam. Quod cum a Wallensibus compertum fuerat, supervenerunt in fortitudine gravi et hostes acriter invadentes compulerunt eos castellum ingredi, hinc inde quibusdam peremptis; et, cum castellum obsidione vallassent Wallenses, inclusi continuo Huberto, Angliæ justiciario, cui rex nuper honorem illum cum castello dederat, significaverunt, et rex cum festinatione illuc veniens Wallenses ab obsidione removit. Rex autem Anglorum, qui cum paucis venerat armatis, maiorem exspectavit exercitum, et tandem multitudine armatorum stipatus ad silvam pervenit supradictam, quæ, ut dicebatur, spatiosa erat nimis, habens quinque leucarum longitudinis; sed, licet magna esset et præ nimia densitate ad destruendum difficillima, cum ingenti tamen labore succisa est et ignibus concremata. Et rex inde ad interiora exercitum ducens venit ad quoddam habitaculum albi ordinis, Cridia vocatum, quod Wallensibus erat receptaculum, sicut regi fuerat intimatum. Injecto igitur ad jussiōnem regis igne in ædificiis illis, omnia in favillas

<sup>1</sup> Eodem tempore.] Chron. Walt. Hemingford, p. 572.

redegerunt. Hubertus vero justiciarius, cum si- A.D. 1222.  
 tum loci quasi inexpugnabilem advertisset, rege  
 consentiente, jussit ibi castellum firmari; sed,  
 antequam opus inceptum ad perfectionem veni-  
 ret, multi utrinque interficti sunt, et vir nobilis  
 Willelmus de Brausia, dum victualia quæreret,  
 a Wallensibus captus et in vinculis est abductus.  
 Quidam etiam miles, quem rex nuper donaverat  
 cingulo militari, cum aliis ad victualia quærenda  
 exierat; cum socios ab hostibus videret præclu-  
 sos, in medios hostes audacter prorupit, et, mul-  
 tis ex obstantibus interemptis, ipse tandem cum  
 quibusdam aliis de exercitu regis occubuit inter-  
 fectus. Erant autem multi ex majoribus exer-  
 citus regis, qui cum Loelino erant confederati ac  
 regi ficte adhæserunt; unde, deficiente in exer-  
 citu omni alimentorum genere, coactus est rex  
 turpem inire concordiam, in hoc consentiens, ut  
 castellum magnis sumptibus fere jam consum-  
 matum ipsius regis complanaretur expensis, et  
 Loelinus pro laboribus regis et impensis daret  
 tria millia marcas eidem regi, et sic foedere con-  
 firmato unusquisque ad propria remearet; sic-  
 que rex Angliæ, postquam per tres fere menses  
 in constructione castelli prædicti occupatus fue-  
 rat et pecuniam infinitam inutiliter consumpse-  
 rat, remanente <sup>1</sup> Willelmo de Brausia in vinculis  
 Loelini, viro nobili, ignominiose ad propria re-  
 meavit. Et tunc multos commovit ad risum, quod  
 cum primo construeretur castellum, justiciarius

<sup>1</sup> *Willelmo de Brausia.*] In the Chron. Dunst. it is said, that he redeemed himself for three thousand marks and the castle of Poet, which he gave to Llewellyn with his daughter in marriage. Hemingsford thus describes his death: 'Anno vero sequenti Leulinus eundem Willielmum de

Breans, baronem nobilem, quem ad festa Paschalia invitaverat post epistolarum copiam, super adulterio et violatione uxoris suæ accusans, et malitioso eum et hostiliter aggressus est, et eum in carcerem trudens morte turpissima et absque omni judicio finaliter interemit.'

A.D. 1222. dans illi nomen vocavit illud ‘Stultitiam Huberti,’ quia, cum novissime viderent post tot labores et expensas solo tenus complanatum, iusticiarium omnes non solum prophetam, sed etiam plus quam prophetam, esse dixerunt.

*Quomodo Fredericus in terram sanctam applicatus negotium Christi promovit.*

The emperor  
sails for the  
Holy Land.

Eodem anno Fredericus, Romanorum imperator, mare Mediterraneum <sup>1</sup> ingressus, ut Domino votum peregrinationis persolveret, in vigilia nativitatis beatæ virginis Mariæ apud Achon applicuit. Venientes ei obviam clerus terræ et populus cum<sup>2</sup> magno honore, ut tantum decebat virum, illum receperunt; veruntamen, quoniam noverant eum a papa excommunicatum, non ei communicauerunt in osculo neque in mensa, sed consuluerunt, ut domino papæ satisfaciens rediret ad sanctæ ecclesiæ unitatem. Templarii vero et Hospitalarii in adventu ejus flexis genibus adoraverunt eum, genua ejus deosculantes, et omnis fidelium qui aderat exercitus glorificabant Deum in adventu ipsius, sperantes quod per eum fieret salus in Israel. Tunc imperator ad universum exercitum gravem depositus querimoniam de pontifice Romano, quod injustam tulerat in eum sententiam, affirmans se gravissimæ infirmitatis causa iter suum ad terræ sanctæ subsidium distulisse. Soldanus vero Babylonie, cum ejus ad-

<sup>1</sup> *Ingressus.*] Upon the causes which determined Frederic to undertake this expedition, and the progress of it, see Michaud, *Hist. des Crois.* iv. p. 25, seqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Cum magno honore.*] It is amusing to read the accounts of Frederic's conduct and his success, as given by different writers:

an anonymous chronicler (*Rec. des Hist.* xviii. p. 581) speaks of it as, ‘Ejus malo Deus utens in bonum ei ubique victoriam dedidit’; whilst Fuller opens his chapter on this part of his history with, ‘See how God's blessing goeth along with the pope's curses,’ p. 163. See Raynaldi, *tom. ii. p. 1, seqq.*

ventum in Syriam cognovisset, misit ei xenia A.D. 1228. multa et pretiosa in auro et argento, in pannis sericis et lapidibus pretiosis, in camelis et elephantis, in ursis et simiis, et aliis rebus mirificis, quibus omnibus regiones abstinent occidentis. Invenit autem imperator, tempore quo Achon applicuit, principes et rectores exercitus populi Christiani, ducem de Leinburgo, patriarcham Hierosolymitanum, archiepiscopos Nazarensem, Cæsariensem et Narbonensem, episcopos Angliae Wintoniensem et Exoniensem, magistros Hospitalis et militiae Templi et Hospitalis Teutonicorum, qui præerant octingentis militibus peregrinis et peditibus quasi decem millibus de diversis mundi partibus congregatis; qui omnes pari devotione ducti Cæsaream et quædam munierant castella, ita quod nihil defuit eis, nisi ut Joppen restaurarent, et sic in sanctam tenderent civitatem.<sup>1</sup> Imperator itaque, cum statum terræ sanctæ cognovisset, approbavit plurimum peregrinorum propositum; et, præparatis omnibus ad progrediendum necessariis, processerunt feliciter, prævio imperatore, et decimo septimo kalendas Decembris apud Joppen prospere pervenerunt. Sed quoniam unusquisque de exercitu necessaria victus ad dies plurimos sibi et equitaturis suis cum summariis per terram portare nequivit, et specialiter propter hoc in portu Achonensi naves essent paratae, quæ victualium copiam exercitui adferre debebant, repente suborta tempestate et supra modum tumescentibus procellis, per septem dies continuos peregrinis Christi victualia fuerant interdicta. Erat autem tunc timor magnus inter multos, ne iratus Dominus populum suum delere vellet de super-

<sup>1</sup> *Imperator itaque.*] Compare the account by Ric. de S. Germano; Murat. vii. p. 1011.

A.D. 1222. ficie terræ ; sed ineffabilis clementia Dei, quæ neminem temptari permittet ultra quam sustinere potest, tandem clamoribus lachrymosis fidelium excitatus imperavit ventis et mari et facta est tranquillitas magna, et continuo, ducente Domino, venit apud Joppen innumera navium multitudo cum ingenti copia frumenti et hordei, vini et omni genere victualium, ita quod indeficiens abundantia fuit semper in exercitu usque ad perfectam reædificationem castri memorati, prout rerum necessitas exigebat.

*De Joseph, qui ultimum Christi adventum adhuc vivus exspectat.*

The wandering Jew.

Hoc denique anno venit in Angliam archieписcopus quidam Armeniæ majoris, gratia peregrinationis, ut sanctorum hujus regionis reliquias et loca venerabilia, sicut et per alia regna fecerat, visitaret; literas quoque domini papæ ad commendationem personæ suæ viris religiosis et prælatis ecclesiasticis exhibuit, ut ab ipsis cum debita reverentia reciperetur et honorifice tractaretur. Hic demum apud sanctum Albanum veniens ab abbate et conventu reverenter susceptus est, ubi cum ab itinere fatigatus ob sui suorumque recreationem aliquandiu perendinaret, cœpit per interpres suos de ritu et religione hujus patriæ multa et moribus vivendi inquirere, et de partibus orientis plura admiranda referre. Interrogatus autem inter cætera de Joseph, viro illo, de quo frequens sermo habetur inter homines, qui, quando passus est Dominus, præsens fuit et locutus est cum eo, qui adhuc vivit in argumentum fidei Christianæ, si illum aliquando viderit vel de illo quicquam audierit, respondit pro archiepiscopo miles quidam de familia ejus, qui interpres illius erat,

et dixit lingua Gallicana, ‘Bene,’ inquit, ‘do- A.D. 1228.  
minus meus novit hominem illum, et paulo <sup>The wander-</sup>  
antequam iter arriperet ad partes occidentis  
idem Joseph in Armenia comedit ad mensam  
domini mei archiepiscopi, quem multoties vide-  
rat et audierat loquentem.’ Et postmodum in-  
terrogatus de rebus gestis inter Dominum Jesum  
Christum et eundem Joseph respondit, ‘Tempore  
passionis Jesu Christi, cum captus a Judæis in  
prætorium adductus fuisset ante præsidem Pila-  
tum, ut judicaretur ab ipso, accusantibus illum  
constantem Judæis, cum Pilatus nullam in eo  
causam mortis invenisset, dixit ad eos, ‘Accipite  
eum vos et secundum legem vestram judicate  
eum;’ sed tandem, invalescentibus clamoribus Ju-  
dæorum, Pilatus dimisit illis Barabbam ad pe-  
titionem illorum, et tradidit eis Jesum, ut cruci-  
figeretur. Trahentibus autem Judæis Jesum ex-  
tra prætorium, cum venisset ad ostium, Carta-  
philus, prætorii ostiarius et Pontii Pilati, cum  
per ostium exiret Jesus, pepulit eum pugno post  
tergum impie et irridens [dixit,] ‘Vade Jesu ci-  
tius, vade, quid moraris?’ Et Jesus severo vultu  
et oculo respiciens in eum dixit, ‘Ego,’ inquit,  
‘vado, et tu exspectabis donec redeam.’ Itaque  
juxta verbum Domini exspectat adhuc Cartaphilus  
ille, qui tempore Dominicæ passionis erat  
quasi triginta annorum, et semper, cum usque  
ad centum attigerit annorum, redit ad illum æta-  
tis statum, quo fuit anno quando passus est  
Christus. Verum post passionem Domini, cres-  
cente fide catholica, idem Cartaphilus baptizatus  
fuit ab Anania, qui Paulum baptizavit aposto-  
lum, et vocatus est Joseph. Habitat autem fre-  
quenter in utraque Armenia et in aliis regioni-  
bus orientis, vivens inter episcopos et alios ec-  
clesiæ prælatos, homo sanctæ conversationis et

A.D. 1228.  
The wander-  
ing Jew.

religionis, pauca habens verba et circumspecta, ut qui nihil loquitur, nisi ab episcopis et viris religiosis fuerit requisitus; et tunc refert de rebus antiquitatis, et de iis quæ gesta fuerant in passione Domini et resurrectione, et de testibus resurrectionis, illis videlicet qui surrexerunt cum Christo et venerunt in sanctam civitatem et apparuerunt multis; refert etiam de symbolo apostolorum, et eorum divisione et prædicatione; et hoc sine risu et omni levitate verborum, ut qui magis versatur in lachrymis et timore Domini, metuens semper et suspectum habens adventum Jesu Christi, ne ipsum in ultimo examine inveniat iratum, quem ad passionem properantem irridens ad dignam provocaverat ultionem. Veniunt ad eum multi de remotis mundi partibus, delectantes in ejus visione et confabulatione, quibus, si sint viri authentici, de rebus interrogatis breviter quæstiones absolvit. Munera omnia sibi respuit oblata, victu moderato tantum et vestitu contentus. In hoc semper ponit suæ spem salutis, quia ignorans deliquit, dicente Domino et orante in passione sua pro inimicis suis, ‘Pater,’ inquit, ‘ignosce illis, quia nesciunt quid faciunt.’

*Quomodo magister Rogerus successit Eustachio,  
Londoniarum episcopo.*

Death of  
Eustace,  
bishop of  
London.

Eodem anno <sup>1</sup>Eustachius, Londinensis episcopus, diem clausit extreum; in cuius loco canonici elegerunt magistrum Rogerum, cognomento Nigrum, et de gremio ecclesiæ suæ canonicum, quem rex sibi præsentatum sine difficultate

<sup>1</sup> *Eustachius.*] He had filled the offices of justiciary, chancellor of the exchequer, and treasurer; upon his appointment to London, the following distich was written:

‘Eustachi nuper bene stabis,  
nunc bene stabis:  
Ille status valuit, prævalet  
iste tamen.’  
Godw. i. 180.

recepit.<sup>1</sup> Eodem tempore obiit Galfridus, Eliensis A.D. 1228. episcopus, mense Decembris, et sepultus est in ecclesia cathedrali pridie idus mensis ejusdem; quo defuncto, monachi elegerunt communi assensu <sup>2</sup>Hugonem sancti Edmundi abbatem, qui regi præsentatus gratanter susceptus est et episcopatus bonis omnibus investitus.

*Quomodo magnates transmarini regem Anglorum sollicitant ut transfretaret.*

Anno Domini MCCXXIX. rex Anglorum Henricus ad natale Domini tenuit curiam suam apud Oxoniam, præsentibus magnatibus regni. Venit autem ad eum ibi archiepiscopus Burdegalensis, missus a magnatibus Wasconiae, Aquitaniae et Pictaviæ, qui a rege cum honore susceptus dies cum illo natalios celebравit. Venerunt etiam et alii solennes nuntii ad dictum regem de Normannia, quorum omnium unum atque idem erat negotium, ut videlicet ex parte magnatum regionum prædictarum regem studiose sollicitarent, quatenus ad partes illas venire in persona propria dignaretur, denuntiantes ei, quod universi ad eum cum equis venirent et armis et populo regionis, atque cum illo immutabiliter starent, ut revocare posset hæreditates amissas. Rex autem, qui adhuc erat nimia simplicitate perplexus, a justiciario suo, quem consiliarium unicum habuit, consilium quærens nil aliud accepit, nisi ut negotium differret, donec hora felicior arrideret. Nuntii vero, aliud non habentes in responsis, ad propria sunt reversi.

A.D. 1229.  
Henry re-  
fuses the  
invitation  
of the Nor-  
man and  
other French  
barons.

<sup>1</sup> *Recepit.*] He was consecrated on Trinity Sunday, the 10th of June, by Joceline, bishop of Bath, or, according to others,

by Henry, bishop of Rochester. <sup>2</sup> *Hugonem.*] Hugh Norwold was consecrated at the same time with the preceding.

*Quomodo astronomici Tholetani scripserunt de  
concourse planetarum.*

A.D. 1229.  
Predictions  
by the astro-  
nomers of  
Toledo.

Eodem<sup>1</sup> anno astronomici Tholetani omnibus Christi fidelibus in hæc verba literas direxerunt; ‘Omnibus Christi fidelibus ad quos literæ istæ pervenerint, magister Johannes David, Tholetanus, et omnes ejusdem loci magistri, salutem et Spiritus Sancti solamen. Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo nono, usque ad septem annos mense Septembri, sole existente in Libra; convenient omnes planetæ simul, et sol erit in cauda Draconis; et fiet significatio rerum mirabilium et horrendarum; et fiet diluvium ventorum per Saturnum et Martem; crescentque mare ultra solitum; et erit ventorum tanta conflictio, quod stabunt fere simul, et obscurabunt et denigrabunt totum orbem; et dabunt sonos horribiles, corda hominum dissipantes, et subvertentes ædificia et arbores, et plures valles montibus æquabuntur; et civitates multas præcipitabunt, maxime Babyloniam, <sup>2</sup>Haldas, Methan, Tripolin, et præcipue civitates sitas in locis arenosis et sabulosis; sed ante hæc omnia erit eclypsis solis, et erit sol a tertia usque ad meridiem ignei coloris et rubicundi, quod significat maximam sanguinis effusionem; et post sequetur eclypsis lunæ in coloribus permixtis, et significat maximam confusionem gentium; et post hæc erunt prælia multa et occisiones in oriente et occidente, et erunt terræmotus universales, id est per totum orbem, et mortalitas et contradic<sup>tio</sup> gentium et regnorum ad invicem, ita

<sup>1</sup> *Eodem anno.*] The chapter mains in the month of August; following is not found in Paris. | col. 1022.  
Ric. de S. Germano gives it in nearly the same words, saying | <sup>2</sup> *Haldas.*] ‘Baldach;’ Ric. de that it was received at S. Ger- | S. Germ.

quod maximus imperator morietur; et post illo- A.D. 1229.  
rum diluvium ventorum pauci remanebunt viven-  
tes, sed quotquot remanebunt deliciis divitiis-  
que affluent; orietur dubetas inter Saracenos, et  
relinquent mahumerias suas et fient unum cum  
Christianis. Ideoque nos, cum omnibus magis-  
tratibus atque consodalibus nostris peritisque  
astrologis Tholetanis, hoc comperientes vobis  
duximus revelandum, injungentes in remissio-  
nenem peccatorum et redemptionem animarum ves-  
trarum, quatenus hoc reveletis ignorantibus pro-  
videatisque vobis ubi habitetis dum venti dura-  
bunt; flabunt enim in mense Septembri, et tunc  
super terra vix invenietur mansio secura. Præ-  
paretis ergo cavernas in planitie circumdata mon-  
tibus, non arenosis, non sabulosis, sintque oper-  
tæ trabibus, et terram desuper ponite, nec sint  
arbores sitæ, quibus orificium cavernæ possit ope-  
riri, et præparetis ibi vobis cibaria quadraginta  
dierum; et sciatis quod nobiscum concordant et  
conveniunt omnes philosophi astronomi Hispaniæ,  
Græciæ, Arabiæ, Armeniæ et Hebræi. Au-  
divimus enim quod Manichinus rex constituit  
turrim excellentis ædificii, coadjuvantque eum  
omnes vicini sui, et erit turris ad instar maximi  
montis. Hoc autem dicimus de rege Siculo, quæ  
nobis pericula videntur. Nihil ergo in præsenti  
restare videtur populo Christiano, nisi ut singuli  
et universi ita præparare studeant conscientias  
suis per poenitentiam fructuosam, per humilem  
et puram confessionem, per satisfactionem con-  
dignam, ne venienti Sponso vacuis occurrentes  
lampadibus, cum fatuis virginibus oleum non ha-  
bentibus, januam, quod absit, inveniant clausam;  
sed cum prudentibus potius virginibus, lampa-  
dibus ornatis, cum Sponso introire ad nuptias  
mereantur. Credimus enim fiducialiter, quod

A.D. 1229.

infra hoc sequens septennium aliqua visuri sumus; quibus sive in veritate, sive per similitudinem, his literis astronomicorum non immerito poterimus adaptare.' Sed hoc infra.

*Quomodo papa Gregorius bellum movit contra  
Romanorum imperatorem Fredericum.*

The pope  
makes war  
against the  
emperor.

Circa dies istos papa Gregorius, nimis moleste ferens, quod Romanorum imperator excommunicatus et rebellis ad terram sanctam transierat, de illius poenitentia et satisfactione, ut rediret ad ecclesiæ unitatem, non mediocriter desperabat; decrevit ergo eum, quem contumacem vidit et rebellem, <sup>1</sup>ab imperiali fastigio depellere, et aliud quemlibet filium pacis et obedientiæ loco ejus subrogare. Sed, quoniam hujus rei certudo nobis non nisi per alios constare potuit, ponemus hic literas Thomæ cujusdam comitis, quem imperator cum quibusdam aliis in recessu suo imperii tutorem constituit et rectorem, quas imperatori super hoc negotio in Syriam destinavit et quas a quodam suscepimus peregrino; 'Excellentissimo domino Frederico, Dei gratia imperatori Romanorum et semper augusto, ac Siculorum regi potentissimo, Thomas, comes Atteranensis, suus in omnibus fidelis ac devotus, salutem et de hostibus triumphare. Post recessum vestrum, domine excellentissime, Gregorius, pontifex Romanus et magnificentiae vestrae hostis publicus, congregato exercitu copioso <sup>2</sup>per Johannem de Breisnes, regem quondam Hierosolymorum, et alios quosdam viros strenuos quos militiæ suæ principes constituit, terram vestram

<sup>1</sup> Ab imperiali fastigio depellere.] Compare Raynaldi, tom. ii. p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Per Johannem de Breisnes.] 'Ghesse whether his plots ran not low when he used such dregs;' Holy Warre, p. 165.

et hominum vestrorum hostiliter ingressus, contra legem Christianam decrevit vos in gladio vincere materiali, quem non potuit dejicere in gladio, ut asserit, spirituali; nam Johannes præfatus, de regno Francorum et aliis conterminis regionibus militiam contrahens non modicam, sub spe imperii, si vos possit subigere, de <sup>A.D. 1229.</sup> <sup>1</sup>thesauris apostolicis suis militibus stipendia ministrat. Itaque idem Johannes et alii sedis apostolicæ principes militiae terram vestram et hominum vestrorum hostiliter ingressi ignem in ædificiis et villis accumulant, spolia et armenta rapiunt, homines captos diversis cruciatibus tormentant et ad gravissimam redemptionem compellunt, nulli sexui parcunt nec cuiquam extra ecclesiam vel cœmeterium deferunt, vicos et castella capiunt, non habentes ad hoc respectum, quod sitis in servitio Jesu Christi; et, si quis de imperatore mentionem facit, Johannes de Breisnes affirmat non esse alium imperatorem præter ipsum. Mirantur super his amici vestri, excellentissime imperator, et præcipue clerus imperii vestri, qua consideratione et conscientia talia facere potest pontifex Romanus et contra Christianos arma movere, maxime cum Dominus dixerit Petro in gladio materiali percutere volunti, ‘ Mitte gladium tuum in vaginam; omnis enim, qui percusserit in gladio, gladio peribit;’ vel quo jure possit ille, qui quasi diebus singulis prædones, incendiarios et Christianorum tortores excommunicat et ab ecclesiæ unitate separat, talibus assensum præbere et auctoritatem præstare, similiter admirantur. Provideatis nunc, obsecro, imperator potentissime, secu-

<sup>1</sup> *Thesauris apostolicis.*] The pope's soldiers bore as their device the keys upon the standards, to show that they fought for the rights of S. Peter; Ric. de S. Germ.

A.D. 1239.

ritati vestræ et honori super præmissis, quia inimicus vester sæpedictus Johannes de Breisnes omnes portus cismarinos cum exploratoribus armatis non paucis munivit, ut, si forte incautus a peregrinatione redires, ipse vos sub captione conclusum incarceraret, quod Deus avertat.'

*Quomodo nuntii regis Anglorum instabant Romæ ad dejectionem electi Cantuariensis.*

The king's messengers at Rome, concerning the see of Canterbury.

Eodem tempore, instante die Cinerum, qui electo Cantuariensi et nuntiis regis Anglorum fuerat præfixus, ut quid de jure foret a papa diffiniendum inter partes, procuratores dicti regis, et præcipue magister Johannes de Houtona, dominum papam et cardinales omnes assiduis petitionibus convenerunt, sed illos invenientes ex more difficiles timuerunt valde a suo desiderio defraudari; unde, habito tractatu detestabili super præmissis, promiserunt domino papæ ex parte regis Anglorum ab universo regno Angliæ et Hiberniæ decimationem omnium rerum mobilium ad guerram suam contra imperatorem sustinendam, ut eos in regis proposito exaudiret. At dominus papa, qui rebellem imperatorem super omnia æstuabat dejicere, tantis promissionibus exhilaratus trahitur ad consensum, et sedens in consistorio hæc quæ sequuntur proposuit;

*De cassatione Walteri monachi, Cantuariensis electi.*

The election of Walter declared void.

‘ Nuper ad audientiam nostram pervenit elec-  
tio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ de quodam monacho  
Waltero nomine, et postquam audivimus, quæ  
pro se idem monachus et pro sua electione pro-  
posuit; auditis etiam objectionibus et exceptio-  
nibus episcoporum Angliæ, tam contra electio-  
nem præfatam, quam in personam electi, per

venerabiles fratres nostros<sup>1</sup> Coventrensem et Rof- A.D. 1220.  
fensem episcopos, et dilectum filium archidia-  
conum Bedefordiae, in audiencia nostra propo-  
sitis, examinationem circa electi prænominati  
personam venerabilibus fratribus nostris domino  
Albanensi, magistro Thomæ de sancta Sabina,  
et magistro P. cardinalibus, commisimus faci-  
endam. Cumque electus coram illis constitutus  
requisitus esset de descensu Domini ad inferos,  
utrum in carne, vel sine carne, descenderit, male  
respondit. Item de confectione corporis Christi  
in altari male respondit. Item requisitus de  
Rachele, qualiter plorabat filios suos, respondit  
male ‘Cum primo esset mortua.’ Item requisi-  
tus de sententia excommunicationis contra juris  
ordinem lata, male respondit. Item requisitus  
de matrimonio, si alter contrahentium infidelis  
decesserit, male respondit. Super his omnibus  
articulis diligenter examinatus est a cardinali-  
bus, quem non solum dicimus minus bene re-  
spondisse, sed pessime. Cum igitur nobilis sit  
ecclesia Cantuariensis et nobilem habuisse præ-  
latum, virum discretum, modestum et de gremio  
Romanæ ecclesiæ assumptum; et iste modo elec-  
tus, quem non solum pronuntiamus indignum,  
imo, si de rigore juris procederemus, aliud dicere  
cogeremur, ita insufficiens est, quod ad tantum  
honorem non debet assumi; electionem de ipso  
factam omnino cassamus, provisionem nobis dic-  
tae ecclesiæ reservantes.’

*De promotions Richardi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.*

Cassata sane in hunc modum electione præ-  
fata, procuratores regis Angliæ et episcoporum  
Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganeorum, literas

Richard,  
chancellor of  
Lincoln,  
elected.

---

<sup>1</sup> Coventrensem et Roffensem episcopos, et dilectum filium,] want-  
ing in C.

A.D. 1229.  
Election of  
Richard to  
the see of  
Canterbury.

de rato eorundem, tam regis quam episcoporum, in domini papæ præsentia exhibentes proposuerunt de magistro <sup>1</sup>Richardo, Lincolniensis ecclesiæ cancellario, quod esset vir eminentis scientiæ et literaturæ ac conversationis honestæ, quodque tam ecclesiæ Romanæ quam regi et regno Angliæ esset non mediocriter fructuosus, atque modis omnibus coram domino papa ejus personam commendantes dictum papam trahunt cum suis cardinalibus ad consensum; sicque memorato Richardo non electo ad archiepiscopatum, <sup>2</sup>sed dato, dominus papa suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ literas in hæc verba direxit; ‘Gregorius episcopus, et cætera. Ex commissa nobis a Domino cura pastoralis officii, et concessa, licet immeritis, plenitudine ecclesiasticæ potestatis, cogimur ecclesiarum omnium, per quotidianam instantiam, sollicitudinem et curam gerere, eisque cum necessitas ingruerit, et ex justitiæ debito et ex gratiæ beneficio, paterna diligentia providere. Inter cæteras autem particulares ecclesiæ et metropoles universas ad Cantuariensem ecclesiam, tanquam ad nobilissimum sedis apostolicæ membrum, in ejus opportunitatibus oculos considerationis expandimus, quam mater ecclesiarum, apostolica sedes, tanto benigniori debet favore prosequi, quanto eam inter alias divina dispositio in spiritualium plenitudine et temporalium ubertate gratia prä tulit ampliori. Hanc etenim velut paradisum

<sup>1</sup> *Richardo.*] In the Waverley Annals is a note to the effect that, until this individual, no two archbishops of Canterbury had borne the same names. The successor of Becket was the first Richard.

<sup>2</sup> *Sed dato.*] Tyrrell remarks, that this was a new encroachment, and the first archbishop

that ever the pope took upon him to nominate, without a previous election by the convent or bishops; vol. ii. p. 866. In the Chronicle of Dunstable it is said, that, the election of Walter being declared void, the monks for that turn had lost their privilege; p. 186.

voluptatis et hortum deliciarum ordinatione sua A.D. 1229.  
 plantavit Altissimus, de qua producere valuit Election of  
 lignum scientiae boni et mali in institutione dig- Richard to  
 nitatis metropolitæ, lignum vitæ in ordine re- the see of  
 ligionis monasticæ et regularis observantiae dis- Canterbury.  
 ciplina, ligna pomifera in suffraganeis, quæ per  
 operationem sanctam delectant in visu, per fide-  
 lem doctrinam confortant in gustu, per opinionem  
 bonam recreant in olfactu. De eodem loco flu-  
 vius egreditur, per quem gloriosissimi Thomæ  
 martyris sanguis exprimitur, qui dum vitam  
 mortuis, sanitatem ægrotis, libertatem servis et  
 audaciam timidis contulit, inde progrediens in  
 quatuor procul dubio capita derivatur; cuius  
 miraculorum excellentium signa dum sollicita  
 meditatione discutimus, raras et insolitas divinæ  
 plantationis delicias invenimus. Hujus itaque pa-  
 radisi <sup>1</sup> custode, bonæ memoriae Stephano, quon-  
 dam Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, sanctæ Roma-  
 næ ecclesiæ cardinali, viro utique pereminentis-  
 sime donis scientiæ et munere gratiæ supernis  
 carismatibus delibuto, erepto de carnis ergas-  
 tulo, et ad paradisi cœlestis jocunditatem et  
 requiem, sicut speramus et credimus, evocato,  
 dilecti filii Cantuariensis conventus electionem  
 celebratam ab eis de Waltero, monacho Cantua-  
 riensi, nobis præsentare curarunt; qua post cog-  
 nita electionis merita, et examinata personæ lite-  
 ratura, justitia mediante, cassata, hominem cul-  
 minis, quem per vitam et scientiam, intellectum  
 pariter et affectum, ad imaginem et similitudi-  
 nem Dei conditum, habentem per salutarem doc-  
 trinam vitæ spiraculum, in paradyso, ut operetur  
 et custodiat illum, duximus collocandum, magis-  
 trum Richardum, Lincolnæ cancellarium, quem

---

<sup>1</sup> *Custode.*] ‘Custodie’ in MS.

A.D. 1229. tam ex fratrum nostrorum, qui eum in scholis noverunt, quam ex venerabilium fratrum nostrorum Roffensis et Coventrensis episcoporum et aliorum plurium testimonio, virum didicimus eminentis literaturæ, conversationis honestæ, famæ integerrimæ, excellentissimæ industriæ, zelatorem animarum et ecclesiasticæ libertatis, Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, de fratrum nostrorum consilio, præsentibus præfatis episcopis, præfigimus in archiepiscopum et pastorem. Quapropter fraternitatem vestram monemus et hor tamur, per apostolica scripta mandantes, quatenus, tanquam caritatis filii et devotionis, ipsum, ad honorem omnipotentis Dei et apostolicæ sedis et Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, recipientes cum humilitate debita et devotione sincera intendantis eidem, et tanquam patri et pastori animarum vestrarum et metropolitano vestro obediatis humiliter et devote. Gaudere quidem debetis in Domino, quod illius gratia principaliter coope rante, qui inspirando prævenit et <sup>1</sup>adjuvando prosequitur, provisum est laudabiliter ecclesiæ viduatæ. Data, et cætera.

*Quomodo terra sancta restituta est Frederico imperatori.*

The emperor  
recovers the  
Holy Land.

Eodem anno Dominus noster Jesus Christus, Salvator et omnium sæculorum Consolator, visitans misericorditer plebem suam, civitatem sanctam Hierusalem, et terram totam, quam Dominus idem et Redemptor noster, Dei Filius, suo sanguine consecravit, precibus universalis ecclesiæ, generaliter populo Christiano, specialiter vero Romanorum imperatori restituit Frederico. Fuit autem aliiquid beneplacitum Domino in po-

<sup>1</sup> *Adjuvando.*] ‘Adjuvantem’ in MS.

pulo suo, qui exaltat mansuetos in salutem, ut A.D. 1229.  
faceret vindictam in nationibus et dissensiones  
in gentibus Saracenis. Erat enim in diebus istis  
Soldanus Babyloniae domesticis undique praelitis  
tam graviter oppressus, quod, ne minus suffice-  
ret ad plura, coactus est cum imperatore medi-  
antibus<sup>1</sup> treugis decennalibus componere, ac ter-  
ram sanctam populo sine sanguinis effusione  
reddere Christiano. Sicque missum est a Domi-  
no bellum bonum, ut rumperetur pax mala; sed  
hujus gratiae divinae beneficium, ut legenti clা-  
rius illucescat, literas legat Romani imperatoris  
auro bullatas, quas Henrico Angliae regi in hęc  
verba direxit;

*Epistola imperatoris ad regem Anglorum de premissis.*

‘ Fredericus, Dei gratia Romanorum imperator,<sup>His letter to  
Henry III.</sup> semper augustus, Hierusalem et Sicilię rex, ca-  
rissimo amico suo Henrico, Anglorum regi, salu-  
tem et sincerae dilectionis affectum. <sup>2</sup> Lætentur et  
exultent omnes in Domino, et glorientur pariter  
recti corde, qui, ut notam faceret potentiam suam,  
non in equis aut curribus gloriatur, nunc dedit sibi  
gloriam in paucitate virorum, ut cognoscant et  
intelligant omnes, quod ipse sit gloriosus in ma-  
jestate, terribilis in magnificentia, mirabilis in  
consiliis super filios hominum, pro voluntate sua  
tempora mutans et diversarum corda gentium  
in unum convertens, cum in paucis diebus istis  
miraculose potius quam fortitudine illud negoti-  
um sit peractum, quod a longis temporibus retro-  
actis multi principes et diversi orbis potentes  
in multitudine gentium nec per vires quantum-

<sup>1</sup> Treugis.] The heads of the treaty, with the notes of Geroldus, ed by Raynaldi, ii. p. 6.

<sup>2</sup> Lætentur et exultent.] Compare Raynaldi, ii. p. 7; and Rocard. de S. German. col. 1011, seq. Continuat. Will. Tyr. p. 698.

A.D. 1229.  
The emperor's letter  
to Henry.

cunque grandes, nec per metum aliquem, facere hucusque modo quolibet potuerunt. Ne igitur desiderium vestrum longus sermo diu teneat in suspenso, <sup>1</sup>sanctitati vestræ cupimus esse notum, quod nos habentes spem nostram in Deo firmiter, et credentes quod Jesus Christus Filius ejus, pro cuius servitio corpus et animas exposuimus sic devote, nos in tam ignotis et remotis regionibus non relinqueret, quin saltem pro honore et gloria et laude sua consilium et auxilium nobis tribueret salutare ; in ipsius autem nomine ab Achon procedentes fiducialiter quinto decimo die mensis Novembbris proximo præteriti prospere venimus apud Joppen, ut, castro loci ejusdem reædificato fortiter <sup>2</sup>ut decebat, in Hierusalem sanctam civitatem eundi postmodum, tam nobis quam omni populo Christiano, non solum facilior, immo brevior et securior, pateret accessus. Igitur sub fiducia divinæ spei nobis apud Joppen existentibus, et super reædificatione castri, prout exigebat rei necessitas et causa Christi, intendentibus magnifice, ut decebat, dum a nobis et peregrinis omnibus sollicite agerentur haec omnia, de Soldano Babyloniæ ad nos, et a nobis ad Soldanum eundem, nuntii plures et pluries venerunt et redierunt hinc inde ; ipse etenim et alias Soldanus, qui Xaphat dicitur, frater ejus, apud civitatem Gazam diffusum habentes exercitum dieta una distabant a nobis ; ex alia vero parte in civitate Sichen, quæ Neapolis vulgo nominatur et in campestribus locis sita est, Soldanus Damasci, nepos eorum, cum innumera multitudine militum et peditum gentis

<sup>1</sup> Sanctitati.] The reviser of our manuscript has marked this word for correction. In the Cotton MS. of Paris, collated by

Watz, 'sinceritati' had been substituted.

<sup>2</sup> Ut decebat.] 'Ut dicebatur' in C.

suee prope nos et Christianos ad unam dietam A.D. 1229.  
similiter morabatur. Et cum de restitutione ter-  
ræ sanctæ ab alterutra partium tractaretur, tan-  
dem Jesus Christus, Dei Filius, devotam patien-  
tiam nostram et patientem devotionem ex alto  
respiciens, compatiendo misericorditer nobis in  
semetipso, sic fecit, quod Soldanus Babylonie  
Hierusalem civitatem sanctam nobis restituit,  
locum videlicet ubi steterunt pedes Christi, locum  
etiam ubi veri adoratores in spiritu et veritate  
Patrem adorant. Ut enim de restitutione hu-  
jusmodi certos vos faciamus per singula, nove-  
ritis quod non solum restitutum est nobis corpus  
civitatis prædictæ, sed contrada tota, sicut de-  
scendit inde usque ad maritimam castri Joppen,  
ut peregrini de cætero processum liberum ad se-  
pulchrum habeant securumque regressum; hoc  
tamen adjecto, quod, cum Saraceni illarum par-  
tium in veneratione maxima templum habeant,  
ad adorandum, secundum ritum eorum, ibi in  
figuram peregrinorum illuc frequenter accedant,  
ipsos de cætero libere permittamus venire, ve-  
runtamen quot voluerimus et sine armis, nec  
hospitatbuntur in civitate, sed de foris, et conti-  
nuo facta oratione recedant. Præterea restituta  
est nobis civitas Bethleem, et tota terra media  
inter Hierusalem et civitatem ipsam; civitas  
Nazareth, cum tota terra media inter Achon et  
ipsam civitatem; tota terra Turonis, quæ lar-  
gissima est et ampla, et valde commoda Chris-  
tianis; civitas Sydonis, cum tota planicie et per-  
tinentiis suis, quæ tanto erit de cætero gratior  
Christianis, quanto magis extitit Saracenis et  
hactenus fructuosa, maxime cum portus ibi sit  
nimis congruus, et inde arma et necessaria mul-  
ta ad civitatem Damasci, et de Damasco fre-  
quenter ad Babyloniam portarentur. Et quamvis

The emperor's letter to Henry.

A.D. 1229.  
The emperor's letter  
to Henry.

civitatem Hierusalem, sicut melius unquam fuit, reædificare nobis liceat, secundum pactum, nec non et castrum Joppen, castrum Cæsareæ, castrum Sydonis, et castrum sanctæ Marie Teutonicorum, quod fratres ipsius domus in montana Achon ædificare cœperunt, et ab olim nullo treugarum tempore permissum exstitit Christianis, ipse tamen Soldanus usque ad finem treugarum, quæ inter nos et ipsum per decennium sunt statutæ, ædificia vel castra aliqua de novo facere vel ædificare non debet. Sicque die Dominica, decimo octavo die mensis Februarii nuper præteriti, die scilicet in quo Christus Dei Filius a mortuis resurrexit, et in memoriam resurrectio- nis Dominicæ a Christianis omnibus tam generaliter quam solemniter colitur et veneratur in orbe, concordia hujusmodi hinc inde exstitit juramento firmata. Vere igitur nunc nobis et omnibus illuxisse denuo visus est dies ille, in quo angeli cecinerunt Deo, 'Gloria in excelsis Deo et in terra pax, hominibus bona voluntas.' Ad recognitionem vero tam grandis beneficii tantique honoris, quæ, præter merita nostra et contra opinionem multorum, ad perennem misericordiæ suæ laudem misericorditer contulit nobis Deus, et ut in loco suo sancto vitulum labiorum nostrorum personaliter offeremus eidem, noveritis, quod die sabbati, decimo septimo die mensis Martii hujus secundæ indictionis, cum peregrinis omnibus, qui nobiscum fideliter Christum Dei Filium sunt secuti, intravimus sanctam civitatem Hierusalem, et statim, tanquam catholicus imperator, adorato sepulchro Dominico reverenter, sequenti die <sup>1</sup>coronam portavimus, quam

<sup>1</sup> Coronam. ] Frederic placed was unattended, however, by the crown upon his own head, amidst much pomp and circumstance supplied by the German and Teutonic knights. It any of the religious offices usual on such occasions; see Michaud, iii. p. 39.

Dominus omnipotens de throno majestatis suæ A.D. 1229.  
nos habendam prævidens de speciali gratia pie-  
tatis suæ inter orbis principes nos mirabiliter ex-  
altavit, ut sic prosequentibus nobis tantæ digni-  
tatis tripudium, quæ nobis competit jure regni,  
magis ac magis notorium universis appareat,  
quod manus Domini fecit hæc omnia; et, cum  
miserationes ejus super omnia opera sint ejus-  
dem, cognoscant orthodoxæ fidei cultores de  
cätero, et enarrent longe lateque per orbem,  
quod Ille, qui est benedictus in secula, visitavit  
et fecit redemptionem plebi suæ, et erexit nobis  
cornu salutis in domo David pueri sui. Sane,  
priusquam de civitate recedamus sancta Hieru-  
salem, de magnifica reædificatione ipsius turrium  
ac murorum suorum taliter ordinare proposui-  
mus, et ita super hæc intendere volumus dili-  
genter, quod non minor sollicitudo nec diligen-  
tia in absentia nostra habeatur inde, quam si  
personaliter super hoc ipsi essemus præsentes.  
Ut autem hæc præsens nostra epistola exulta-  
tione sit plena per totum, et sic limes ejus  
principio se adaptet in gaudiis, ut regalem ani-  
mum pro voto lætificet, ad incrementum lætitiae  
et totius gaudii præcedentis, amicitiae vestræ  
cupimus esse notum, quod Soldanus prædictus  
omnes captivos illos, quos secundum pactum  
inter Christianos et ipsum habitum tempore  
quondam Damietæ perditæ non reddidit, et alios,  
qui postea capti fuerunt, restituere nobis debet  
modo. Data apud civitatem sanctam Hierusa-  
lem decimo septimo die mensis Martii, anno Do-  
mini millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo nono.'

*De signis præcedentibus hanc restitutionem terre  
sanctæ.*

A.D. 1229.  
Signs  
preceding  
the recovery  
of the Holy  
Land.

Notandum vero est in hac terræ promissionis et Hierusalem sanctæ civitatis restitutio populo Christiano, quod sicut ante hoc generale gaudium et totius Christianitatis tripudium astronomi Tholetani scripserunt de planetarum concursu et ventorum tam horrendum diluvium, ita quod starent simul cum terræ motu et eclipsi, tam solis quam lunæ, velut paulo superius in gestis hujus anni scriptum est, eodem modo ante ejusdem terræ sanctæ et crucis Dominicæ captiōnem a Salaadino, viro perfido et cruento, et alii, qui tunc fuerunt astronomi ejusdem civitatis, scripserunt domino papæ Clementi sub hac forma; ‘Ab anno præsentis incarnationis Domini nostri Jesu Christi, qui est millesimus centesimus septuagesimus nonus, usque in septem annos, mense Septembri, sole existente in Libra et cauda Draconis, erit, si Deus pati voluerit, conventio planetarum in Libra et cauda Draconis, sed est admirabilis non mutabilium rerum mutationis significantia. Sequetur terræ motus terribilis, et destruentur loca consueta perditionis per Saturnum et Martem, manentes in signis atris et mortalitas et infirmitas. Ostendet etiam ea conjunctio ventum validum, denigrantem aerem et obscurum redditem, venenis infectum, et in vento sonus erit terribilis destruens corda hominum; et a regionibus arenosis [sabulonem accipiet et arenis] civitates proximas in planicie sitas cooperiet, et primo civitates orientis le Mech, Babylonem et omnes civitates proximas locis arenosis; nulla quidem evadet, quæ arenis et terra non operiatur. Signa autem hujus rei hæc præcedent; erit in eodem anno, antequam

planetæ conveniant in Libra, eclipsis solis, qua A.D. 1229.  
totum corpus ejus obscurabitur, et in oppressione præcedenti luna tota eclipsim patietur; et erit eclipsis solis ignei coloris et deformis, ostendens majorum bellum futurum cum effusione sanguinis prope fluvium in terra orientis et similiter in terra occidentis; et cadet dubietas et ignorantia inter Judæos et Saracenos, donec relinquant penitus synagogas et mahumerias suas, et eorum secta jussu Dei penitus destruetur et annihilabitur; unde vobis notum sit, ut, quando eclipsim videritis, de terra exeatis cum omnibus vestris.'

*Quod propter peccata hominum crux olim et terra  
sancta capta erant a Salaadino.*

Erat autem in diebus illis multa malitia hominum super terram, ita 'quod corruperat fere omnis caro coram Domino viam suam;' jam enim eo usque flagitiorum consuetudo proruperat in populo, ut omnes, abjecto erubescen*Saladin's previous victories permitted for the sins of the people.*tiæ velo, palam et passim ad turpia declinarent. Cædes, rapinas, adulteria, immunditias, mendacia, prodiciones, dissolutiones ad turpia, longum est enumerare, præcipue nobis, qui res gestas describere destinamus. Veruntamen cum hostis ille antiquus corruptionis spiritum longe latèque disseminasset in orbe, specialius tamen Syriam occupavit, et unde cæteræ regiones suscepérant religionis exordium, inde tunc totius immunditiæ sumebant exemplum. Hinc igitur Dominus et Salvator mundi, terram nativitatis, passionis et resurrectionis suæ in turpitudinis abyssum corruisse conspiciens, hæreditatem suam sprevit, et virgam furoris sui, videlicet Saladinum, in obstinatae gentis permisit exterminium debacchari; maluit enim terram sanctam

A.D. 1229. per aliquantulum temporis spatiū profanis gentium ritibus ancillari, quam illos diutius florere, quos ab illicitis nullius honestatis compescerat respectus. Hanc autem futuræ demolitionis instantiam casus prænosticabant diversi, fames scilicet valida, terræ motus frequens, tam lunæ etiam quam solaris defectus; sed et ventus ille validus, quem de planetarum concursu cum mortalitate et aeris intemperie astronomi Tholetani ex stellarum inspectione pronuntiaverant futurum, in hujus rei significationem procul dubio commutatus migravit; vere enim ventus erat validus, qui quatuor mundi cardines concussit, ac orbem universum ex gentibus excitandum in seditiones et prælia ac terræ sanctæ exitium præmonstravit. Mansit autem sub potestate inimicorum Christi civitas sancta Hierusalem et terra promissionis tota, cum vivifica cruce Dominica, per annos quadraginta duos, usque in annum præsentem, qui est ab incarnatione Domini millesimus ducentesimus vicesimus nonus, quando venit tempus miserendi Domini, ut respiceret in orationes humilium et reædificaret Syon, ut videretur in gloria sua, in loco videlicet sanctæ nativitatis, passionis et resurrectionis suæ, et audiaret gemitus compeditorum et absolveret filios peremptorum. Vere et absque omni ambiguitate audivit Dominus gemitus compeditorum in hac restitutione terræ sanctæ, quæ istis diebus facta est per diligentiam imperatoris Frederici, cooperante clementia divina; dum per pactum inter ipsum habitum et Babyloniae Soldanum omnes captivi, qui erant in paganismo compediti et ad vilissima quælibet servitutis genera addicti, modo a jugo servitutis liberati venerunt in sanctam civitatem Hierusalem et apparuerunt multis, et, factis orationibus in locis venerabilibus

sanctæ civitatis, reversi sunt per diversas orbis A.D. 1129. partes in regiones suas, laudantes et benedictentes Deum in omnibus, qui audierant et viderant, quæ fecit Dominus mirabiliter et ostendit eis.

*De reconciliations sanctæ civitatis Hierusalem et aliorum locorum.*

Ingressus est igitur, ut diximus, sanctam civitatem Hierusalem exercitus Christianus, et patriarcha cum episcopis suffraganeis mundificavit templum Domini et ecclesiam sancti sepulchri, sanctæque resurrectionis ejusdem, cum aliis ecclesiis venerabilibus civitatis; abluentes pavimentum et parietes aqua benedicta, et agentes processiones in hymnis et canticis, reconciliaverunt Deo loca universa diuturnis infidelium sororibus prophanata; verum quamdui imperator, qui excommunicatus fuerat, intra urbis mœnia moram fecit, nullus prælatorum in ea missam celebrare præsumpsit. Magister tamen Walterus, frater quidam de ordine Prædicatorum, vir religiosus, providus ac discretus, qui a domino papa officium prædicationis in exercitu Christi suscep-  
rat, quod multo jam tempore feliciter impleverat, celebravit divina in ecclesiis suburbanis, unde devotionem fidelium plurimum excitavit. Deinde prælatis singulis, tam minoribus quam majoribus, ac viris religiosis, ecclesiis suis sibi restitutis et possessionibus antiquis, gaudentibus cunctis super donis cælestibus, quæ præter spem omnium acciderant, intenderunt unanimiter cum peregrinis omnibus ad reædificationem civitatis, et muros cum fossatis, turresque cum propugnaculis, magnis sumptibus ac studiosis laboribus reparantes; nec solum acta sunt hæc in civitate sancta Hierusalem, sed et in omnibus civitatibus

Entry of the  
Christians  
into Jeru-  
salem.

A.D. 1229. et castellis illius terræ, quam Dominus Jesus Christus suis sanctis pedibus calcavit et suo sacro sanguine consecravit.

*Hic ponuntur quidam excessus, in quibus papa ostendit imperatorem esse reum.*

The pope's causes of complaint against the emperor.

Venit eodem tempore in Angliam magister Stephanus, domini papæ capellanus et nuntius ad regem Anglorum, missus ut colligeret decimas domino papæ a nuntiis ipsius regis Romæ promissas ad guerram suam sustinendam contra imperatorem Romanorum susceptam ; audierat enim idem papa de imperatore præfato multa detestanda, quæ faciebat contra legem Christianam, quorum tenorem in scriptum redigens per diversas orbis partes literis apostolicis publicare curavit. <sup>1</sup>Proposuit autem contra eum in primis, quod in die annunciationis beatæ Mariæ, cum esset excommunicatus, intravit ecclesiam sepulchri sancti in Hierusalem et ibi ante majus altare propria manu sese coronavit, et ita coronatus resedit in cathedra patriarchatus et ibi prædicavit populo, excusando malitiam suam et accusando ecclesiam Romanam, imponens ei, quod injuste processerat contra eum ; et sic egressus ab ecclesia in comitatu satellitum suorum, sine omni persona ecclesiastica, portavit coronam usque ad palatium Hospitalis. Item in palatio suo Achronensi fecit convivari Saracenos, et fecit eis habere mulieres Christianas saltatrices ad ludendum coram eis, et, ut dicebatur, commiscebantur eis. Item, fœdus quod initum cum Soldano, nemo scivit qua conditione tractatum fuit inter eos, nisi ipse solus ; veruntamen

<sup>1</sup> *Proposuit autem.*] The form of counted the principal reasons for the sentence of excommunication proceeding to such an extremity, against Frederic, in which are re- is printed in Raynaldi, ii. p. 12.

manifeste videbatur, quod magis approbaret, secundum quod perpendi poterat per gestus exteriores, legem Saracenorum, quam legem fidei nostræ, quia in multis ritus ipsorum imitatus est. Item, in scripto quod est inter ipsum et Soldanum, quod lingua appellatur Arabica ‘mosepha,’ continetur, quod, durantibus treugis, ipse juabit eum contra omnes homines Christianos et Saracenos, et e converso Soldanus ipsum. Item, spoliavit canonicos sanctæ crucis in Achon a quibusdam redditibus, quos recipere debebant in portu Achronensi. Item, spoliavit archiepiscopum Nichossiensem in Cypro. Item, protexit quandam episcopum Surianorum potentia seculari, contra patriarcham, ab excommunicato et schismatico ordinatum. Item, spoliavit canonicos sancti sepulchri oblationibus ipsius sepulchri, et patriarcham oblationibus Calvariæ loci et loci Golgatha, et canonicos sancti templi oblationibus suis, et per manus satellitum suorum fecit omnes oblationes istas colligere, propter quod factum frater Walterus excommunicavit eum in civitate Hierosolymorum et omnes satellites suos. Item, in die Palmarum prædicatores de pulpito, ubi prædicabant, viliter et violenter fecit dejici et crudeliter tractari et incarcерari. Item, infra passionem Domini obsedit patriarcham et episcopos Wintoniensem et Exoniensem et Templarios in domibus suis, et, cum vidi se non posse prævalere, confusus dimisit. His igitur de causis, licet aliæ non desint, quicquid egit in terra sancta pro nihilo reputans dominus papa movit guerram contra ipsum, asserens justum esse et fidei Christianæ necessarium, ut tam validus ecclesiæ persecutor a fastu imperii depellatur; et, quod his omnibus detestabilius est, contra matrem suam Romanam ecclesiam tam gravem excita-

A.D. 1229.  
The pope's  
charges  
against the  
emperor.

A.D. 1229.

verat persecutionem, ita quod castella ejus cum terris et possessionibus occupavit, et velut hostis publicus detinet occupatas.

*De decimis Gregorio pape ab Anglia collatis.*

Stephen,  
the nuncio,  
arrives, to  
collect the  
tithes pro-  
mised the  
pope.

Per idem tempus, cum magister Stephanus, domini papæ capellanus et nuntius, regi Anglo-rum negotia ipsius papæ et sui causam adventus ostendisset, fecit rex convenire apud Westmonasterium Dominica, qua cantatur <sup>1</sup> 'Misericordia Domini,' archiepiscopos, episcopos, abbates, priores, Templarios, Hospitalarios, comites, barones, ecclesiarum rectores, et qui de se tenebant in capite, ad locum præfixum et diem, ut audirent negotia memorata et de rerum exigentiis communiter tractarent ibidem. Omnibus igitur congregatis, tam laicis quam prælatis, et eorum subjectis, magister Stephanus coram omnibus recitavit literas domini papæ, in quibus exigebat decimas omnium rerum mobilium de tota Anglia, Hibernia et Wallia, ab universis laicis et clericis, ad guerram suam sustinendam, quam contra Romanum imperatorem suscepérat Fredericum. Ostendit autem in literis memoratis, quod ipse solus hanc expeditionem suscepérat pro universalí ecclesia, quam dictus imperator jam diu excommunicatus et rebellis subvertere nititur, sicut evidētibus apparet indiciis; unde, divitiae sedis apostolice cum non sufficiant ad ipsum exterminandum, necessitate compulsus ab universis ecclesiæ filiis implorat auxilium, per quod expeditionem inchoatam et in parte jam feliciter prosperatam perducere valeat ad desideratum effectum. Persuadet denique dominus papa, in conclusione negotii, singulis ecclesiæ membris,

<sup>1</sup> *Misericordia Domini.*] The second Sunday after Easter, in this year the 29th of April.

quatenus sicut filii naturales ecclesiæ Romanæ, A.D. 1229.  
 quæ mater est omnium ecclesiarum, potenter sub-  
 veniant, ne, quod absit, ipsa deficiente, mem-  
 bra cum capite succumbere videantur. His et  
 aliis in hunc modum in authentico domini papæ  
 patenter expressis, persuasit magister Stephanus  
 omnibus qui aderant, ut consentirent, allegans  
 honorem et commodum,<sup>1</sup> quæ possent exinde ob-  
 temperantibus provenire. Rex autem Anglorum,  
 a quo cæteri omnes sperabant habere defensio-  
 nis auxilium, qui Romæ per procuratores suos,  
 ut supradictum est, ad decimas solvendas fuerat  
 obligatus, non potuit contradicere; et, cum nihil  
 responderet, visus est tacendo consensum præ-  
 bere. Comites vero et barones ac laici omnes  
 plane decimas se datus contradixerunt, no-  
 lentes baronias suas vel laicas possessiones Ro-  
 manæ ecclesiæ obligare. Episcopi quoque, ab-  
 bates, priores et alii ecclesiarum prælati, post  
 trium vel quatuor dierum deliberationem et mur-  
 murationem non modicam, tandem consenserunt,  
 metuentes excommunicationis sententiam vel in-  
 terdicti sibi inferri, si mandatis apostolicis obvi-  
 arent. Tunc magister Stephanus prælatis omni-  
 bus literas domini papæ procuratorias ostendit,  
 quibus idem papa ipsum ad dictas decimas colli-  
 gendas procuratorem constituerat, ut non secun-  
 dum taxationem factam in vicesima, quæ paulo  
 ante regi data fuerat pro libertatibus obtainendis,  
 sed secundum quod melius possunt, ad commo-  
 dum domini papæ, et uberioris omnia bona et  
 mobilia singulorum taxari; videlicet de omni-  
 bus redditibus, proventibus, fructibus carruca-  
 rum, oblationibus, decimis, nutrimentis anima-  
 lium et fructibus, et de omnibus obventionibus

Tithes  
claimed by  
the pope's  
nuncio.

<sup>1</sup> Quæ possent.] In MS. 'qui posset.'

A.D. 1229.  
Tithes  
claimed by  
the pope's  
nuncio.

ecclesiarum vel aliarum possessionum, quocumque nomine censeantur, non aliquibus debitis vel expensis aliqua occasione deductis. Habuit etiam ex eisdem literis auctoritatem contradictores excommunicandi et ecclesias interdicendi ; unde, constitutis procuratoribus suis in singulis comitatibus regni, omnes illos excommunicavit, qui circa decimas ipsas reddendas vel taxationem faciendam per se, vel per aliud, colludium, pactum iniquum, subtractionem vel fraudem aliquam duxerint faciendam. Et, quoniam negotium festinum exigebat auxilium, praelatis omnibus et aliis sub poena excommunicationis indixit, ut vel mutuo, vel alio quocumque modo, pecuniam perquisitam sibi traderent indilate, ut eam domino papæ incontinenti transmitterent, eandem postmodum, decimis singulorum rite taxatis, plenarie recepturi. Erat enim idem papa tot et tantis involutus debitis, ut, unde bellicam quam suscepereat expeditionem sustineret, penitus ignoraret. Et sic soluto concilio, murmurantibus cunctis, recesserunt.

*De exactions gravissima dictarum decimatarum.*

The grievous  
exaction of  
them.

Et, his ita gestis, misit incontinenti literas suas magister Stephanus ad singulos episcopos, abbates, priores et cuiuscumque professionis viros religiosos regni, sub poena interdicti et excommunicationis præcipiens, ut tali die tantam pecuniæ summam sibi transmitterent de moneta ad pondus denarii probata et nuper fabricata, ut inde creditoribus domini papæ satisfacere posset et ipsi poenas evaderent interdicti ; erat enim in hujus rei exsecutione adeo improbus exactior, ut etiam de frugibus autumni futuri, quæ adhuc in herba crescebant, singulos compelleret decimatarum sibi pretium exhibere. Prælati vero,

aliud remedium non habentes, calices, phialas, A.D. 1229.  
 philacteria et alia sacra altaris vasa, quædam vendiderunt, nonnulla <sup>1</sup> in pignus sub fœnore posuerunt. Continuis maledictionibus, sed occultis, repleta est terra, imprecantibus cunctis, quod nunquam talis exactio suis fiat exactoribus fructuosa. Solus comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, nolens terram suam redigere in servitutem, non permisit de feodo suo viros religiosos vel clericos decimas memoratas conferre, quamvis Anglia et Wallia, Scotia et Hibernia ad solutionem compellantur. Hoc autem multis in hac decimatione solatium præbebat et levamen, quod regna transmarina et longe posita non sunt ab ista exactione quieta. Cumque tandem istarum plenitudo divitiarum ad summum pontificem pervenisset, ipse Johanni de Breisnes et aliis militiæ sue principibus ita affluenter eas distribuit, quod gravior cessit in damnum imperatoris, dum municipia ejus et castella in ejus absentia subvertebant. Eodem anno magister Robertus de Binge-ham, Saresbiriensis electus, apud Septoniam munus consecrationis suscepit, sexto kalendas Junii, per manum Willelmi, Wigorniensis episcopi, adstantibus episcopis, Jocelino Bathoniensi, et Alexandro Coventrensi. Eodem tempore rex Anglorum

<sup>1</sup> In pignus sub fœnore posuerunt.] Anticipating the difficulty that might arise to the clergy and others of meeting the demands made upon them in this iniquitous tax, the legate, it appears, had brought with him certain money-lenders, who, at an enormous interest, supplied the required sums. These usurers are afterwards spoken of by Matthew Paris under the title of Caursini, from, as he says, 'causantes vel capientes et uraini,' as a 'pestis'

abominanda,' who involved king and subject alike within their net. The instance here recorded appears to have been the commencement of the system of money-lending, afterwards practised by the Italian merchants until the reign of Edward the third. The reader may find a very interesting paper upon this subject, by Mr. Bond of the British Museum, in the *Archæologia*, vol. xxviii. p. 207.

A.D. 1229. Henricus, in die Pentecostes, Johannem filium Huberti, Angliæ justiciarii, cingulo militari donavit tertio nonas Junii.

*De consecratione Richardi Cantuariensis, Rogeri Londinensis et Hugonis Eliensis, episcoporum.*

Consecration  
of the arch-  
bishop of  
Canterbury.

Eodem tempore, in die sanctæ Trinitatis, convenientibus Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganeis apud eandem civitatem, consecratus est magister Richardus, Cantuariensis electus, per manum Henrici, Roffensis episcopi, sine pallio, ita quod licuit ei vel ordines celebrare vel ecclesias dedicare. Consecrati sunt etiam cum eo eodem die, per ministerium ejusdem episcopi, ante majus altare in ecclesia sanctæ Trinitatis, Rogerus electus Londinensis et Hugo Eliensis, quarto idus Junii.

*De magno apparatu regis Anglorum ad transfretandum congregato.*

Preparations  
at Ports-  
mouth for  
the king's  
passage into  
France.

Sub eisdem diebus, instantे festo sancti Michaelis, rex Anglorum Henricus congregavit apud Portesmūe totam nobilitatem regni Angliæ, comites, videlicet, barones et milites, cum tanta equitum ac peditum turba, quantam nullus antecessorum suorum aliquo creditur tempore congregasse; ubi etiam venerunt ad eum de regionibus Hiberniæ, Scotiæ, Walliæ et Galwalliæ tanta militum et armatorum multitudo, quod admirationi omnibus habebantur; proposuit namque rex cum tanta armatorum copia transfretare, ut terras, quas pater amiserat, in suum dominium revocaret. Demum, cum principes et mareschalli militiae regis ad naves venissent, ut victualiaingererent et arma, adeo paucas invenerunt naves, ut non sufficienter ad medietatem exercitus transferendum; quod verbum cum ad regis notitiam

pervenisset, iratus est vehementer et crimen to- A.D. 1229.  
 tum in Hubertum de Burgo, justiciarum, refun-  
 dere curavit, et, audientibus cunctis, vocavit eum  
 senem proditorem, improperans ei, quod hunc pro-  
 curavit defectum pro quinque millibus marcis,  
 quas a regina Francorum acceperat, ut suum  
 propositum impediret, et gladium quasi furia in-  
 vectus rex educens voluit justiciarum interficere;  
 sed comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, et alii qui ad-  
 erant, sese interponentes ipsum a mortis discri-  
 mine servarunt; at ille a regis præsentia se sub-  
 traxit, donec ira rex deposita animum mitigaret.  
 Applicuit interea in portu illo comes Britanniæ  
 Henricus<sup>1</sup> septimo idus Octobris, qui regem con-  
 ducere debuit in terram suam sub salvo conductu,  
 sicut condictum fuerat inter eos et sacramento  
 firmatum; sed idem comes, cum aliis sapientibus  
 de exercitu, dederunt regi consilium, ut negotium  
 differret incepsum usque ad sequens Pascha, quia  
 periculoso erat tempore hyemali iter tam ar-  
 duum expedire; quo auditio, rex licentiam dedit  
 omnibus ad propria revertendi, et justiciarius  
 cum rege pacificatus est. Comes autem Britan-  
 niæ regi fecit homagium contra omnes homines  
 de Britannia; et rex reddidit ei totum jus suum  
 in Anglia, et, datis ei quinque millibus marcis ad  
 custodiam terræ suæ, remisit eum in regionem  
 suam. Eodem anno Richardus, Cantuariensis  
 archiepiscopus, pallium sibi a domino papa trans-  
 missum suscepit nono kalendas Decembris, et  
 apud Cantuariam in ecclesia cathedrali, præsente  
 rege et suffraganeis episcopis, divina cum ipso  
 pallio celebravit.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Henricus.*] The name of the earl of Britanny at this time was Peter, surnamed Mauclerc, son of Robert II., comte de Dreux; Henry was the name of the duke of Burgundy. See Raynaldi, ii. p. 18.

*De quodam fœnectoro male mortuo.*

A.D. 1229.  
Death of  
an usurer.

Erat hoc tempore in minori Britannia fœnector quidam, qui pecuniam suam tribuens ad usuram immensum nummorum congregavit acervum. Hic, cum multoties ab episcopo loci increparetur, quod non licebat sibi de usuris rem augere, noluit audire episcopum, sed, licet non recte, strenuus rem augebat; cumque tandem ab episcopo incorrigibilis videretur, excommunicavit eum et ab unitate fidelium segregavit, quod ille parvipendens excommunicatus non multo post vitam miserabiliter terminavit. Quo sine viatico et confessione defuncto, uxor ejus et filii venerunt ad presbyterum villæ, rogantes ut corpus defuncti more ecclesiastico sepeliret; presbyter autem hoc facere recusavit, eo quod excommunicatus decessit, præcipiens ut in bivio extra villam sepelirent eum. Uxor autem defuncti hoc audiens venit ad comitem cum filiis, querimoniam coram eo deponens, quod presbyter ille parochianum defunctum noluit sepelire, causam reticens, quod excommunicatus obiisset. At comes contra presbyterum in iram versus jussit ministris suis, ut euntes ad presbyterum ex parte sua præciperent, quatenus mortuum sepeliret; quod si facere contradiceret, ipsum vivum cum mortuo sepelirent ligatum. Hoc cum factum esset, omnes episcopi Britanniæ ipsum comitem sub anathemate concluserunt; unde suborta inter eos discordia, episcopi illi a comite omnes in exilium sunt expulsi, et comes excommunicatus remansit, donec sententia confirmaretur a papa.

*Quod Fredericus, Romanorum imperator, reversus est  
in terram suam.*

Eodem anno, cum Fredericus, Romanorum imperator, terram sanctam Christianitati restituisset et treugas decennales a Soldano Damasci impetratas juramento hinc inde confirmasset, in die inventionis sanctæ Crucis naves ascendit, ut, transito mari Mediterraneo, reverteretur in terram suam; sed quoniam audierat, quod a Johanne de Breisnes insidiæ sibi parabantur in portibus cismarinis, inconsulte timuit applicare, et, ne de ejus captione gauderent inimici illius, in tuto loco applicuit, præmissis exploratoribus suis, qui conduxerunt illum ad portum securitatis et salutis. <sup>1</sup>Cum autem prospere in Sicilia applicuisset cum modico comitatu, audivit quod æmuli ejus jam castella multa subjugaverant et municipia, et quod etiam per terras imperii liberum haberent discursum, cum non esset qui eis obviaret; sed, cum tandem ejus divulgaretur adventus, confluebant ad eum homines imperii naturales, qui per fidelitatem ei fuerunt astricti, quibus vallatus et ex aliis adventantibus confortatus audacter prorupit in hostes et terras amissas ac castra coepit paulatim revocare.

A.D. 1229.  
Return of the  
emperor to  
Germany.

*Quod rex Anglorum ad Natale fuit apud Eboracum.*

Anno Domini MCCXXX. rex Anglorum Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam cum rege Scotorum apud Eboracum, quem ad illud festum invitaverat, præsente archiepiscopo civitatis, cum comitibus, baronibus, militibus et familia magna nimis, ubi dicti reges multa distribuebant festiva

A.D. 1230.  
The king  
keeps the  
feast of  
Christmas  
at York.

<sup>1</sup> *Cum autem.*] See a more particular account of the successes of the emperor, from Conrad, R. | de S. Germano, etc. in Raynaldi, ii. p. 9.

A.D. 1230. suis militibus indumenta. Rex autem Anglorum prodiga liberalitate regi Scotorum contulit equos pretiosos, cum annulis multis ac gemmis; atque, festo per triduum continuato, epulabantur quotidie splendide, tantam solemnitatem in exultatione et letitia celebrantes. Die autem quarto, concione soluta, rex Scotorum in suam revertitur regionem, rex Anglorum Londonias properabat.

Thunder  
storm in  
London.

Contigit eodem tempore, in die scilicet conversionis sancti Pauli, in urbe Londoniarum, dum episcopus civitatis in ecclesia cathedrali ante majus altare staret infulatus ad celebrandum divina, praesente populo civitatis ob honorem beati Pauli congregato, quod tanta subito in aere facta est nubium densitas et solaris obnubilatio claritatis, ut vix socius socium in ecclesia videre posset. Admirantibus cunctis et diem judicii suspectum habentibus, facta est repente tonitrui adeo horribilis super ecclesiam concussio, ut ipsa ecclesiae fabrica tota cum turri eminentissima super capita omnium ruere videatur. Ex illa autem collisione nubium tanta fulminis exivit coruscatio, ut tota ecclesia intus ignea videretur; nec defuit fœtor inter hæc omnia, sed ita intolerabilis habebatur, ut omnes qui aderant extingui timerent, sicque ad millia utriusque sexus hominum, qui in ecclesia erant, nihil verius quam mortem suspicentes, rapido cursu monasterio exierunt attoniti et corruentes in terram sine sensu aliquandiu permanerunt. Solus ex omni multitudine episcopus, cum uno tantum diacono, ante majus altare sacris vestibus indutus remansit intrepidus expectans Domini voluntatem. Aere tandem purgato, cum omnis multitudo evadendi fiduciam concepisset et ecclesiam iterum fuisset ingressa, episcopus residuum missæ devote complevit.

Facta est autem super hoc casu totius civitatis A.D. 1230. non modica admiratio, metuentibus cunctis, ne magnum aliquid et insolitum prognosticaret futurum. Eodem anno, tempore Quadragesimali, imperator Romanus contra hostes suos ita invaluuit, quod castra sua et jura omnia ad imperium spectantia potenter revocavit; quoscumque in castellis suis ex adversariis cepit, aut vivos excoriat, aut patibulo suspendit. Johannes vero de Breisnes, qui hostis ejus erat publicus, metuens incidere in manibus illius, fugit in Gallias ad natale solum. Et sic, <sup>1</sup> mediantibus amicis et viris religiosis, statutæ sunt treugæ inter dominum papam et ipsum imperatorem, quounque in aliquam pacis formam convenienter. Per idem tempus <sup>2</sup> Willelmus de Brausia, vir nobilis et potens, a Loelino, principe Walliarum, patibulo suspensus est mense Aprili, cum uxore ejus, ut dicebatur, in adulterio deprehensus.

Eodem tempore, ad exactionem regis, archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates et priores per Angliam totam regi eidem pecuniam dederunt non modicam, quasi per eam subtracta patri suo jura posset revocare in partibus transmarinis. Cives Londinenses pro eodem negotio ad redemptionem gravissimam sunt compulsi; Judæi etiam tertiam partem rerum suarum omnium, vellent nollent, persolverunt.

*Quod rex Anglorum cum exercitu transiit in  
Britanniam.*

Rex Anglorum Henricus in solemnitate Paschalii apud Radingum congregavit exercitum

Expedition  
into Bri-  
tany.

<sup>1</sup> *Mediantibus amicis et viris religiosis.]* For an account of the overtures first made for peace, see Raynaldi, ii. p. 18, seq.; and

for the terms of the treaty, *ib.* p. 21.

<sup>2</sup> *Willelmus de Brausia.]* See above, p. 178, note.

A.D. 1230.  
Expedition  
into Bri-  
tannia.

copiosum valde, omnium videlicet nobilium regni, qui sibi debebant servitium militare, et aliorum innumerabilium ex regionibus diversis, qui inde castra movens ad portum de Portesmue pridie kalendas Maii cum universa multitudine sua naves ascendit. Rex autem, procurantibus nautis suis,<sup>1</sup> in Britannia applicuit apud sanctum Mauloum quinto nonas Maii; multi quoque de exercitu regem sequi non valentes diversis applicuerunt in locis, sed, Deo id procurante, absque laesione ac rerum diminutione omnes ad regem in Britannia pervenerunt. Comes autem Britanniae regem reverenter et cum honore suscipiens tradidit ei municipia regionis illius et castella, nobilesque Britanniae multi ad eum venientes homagia fecerunt et fidelitatem ei juraverunt; <sup>2</sup> Andreas tamen de Viteri, et alii viri nobiles pauci, ad fidelitatem regis venire contemnentes munierunt castra sua alimentis et ad pugnam viriliter sese præparabant. Rex autem Francorum, cum de adventu regis Anglorum certitudinem didicisset, congregavit exercitum valde copiosum, atque micantibus undique scutis et vexillis ad Andegavensem per-

<sup>1</sup> In *Britannia applicuit.*] In the chronicle of William of Nangis two rebellions of the earl of Brittany are recorded, the one in 1228, the other in the following year. In the first of these Henry is reported to have crossed to his assistance, but, finding the French king too strong for him, 'cum pudore et ignominia versus Angliam, regem Francias pertimescens, velociter transfretavit.' Rec. des Hist. xx. p. 316. The accounts of this writer are not, however, borne out by public documents or contemporaneous historians.

<sup>2</sup> *Andreas tamen de Viteri.*] In the Annales d'Aquitaine, Robert de Vitre, brother of the earl of Brittany, is mentioned as one of the generals of the army raised by Blanche against the rebels, fol. 74. The letters of submission to the king by Andrew, declaring that he will never, without the king's consent, enter into any composition with the king of England or earl of Brittany, are printed by Martene, Vett. Scriptt. Ampl. Collect. tom. i. col. 1240. They are dated June, 1230.

venit civitatem, ubi castrametatus ibi moram A.D. 1230.  
 protraxit non modicam, ut progressum regis An-  
 glorum in Pictaviam præpediret. Rex vero An-  
 glorum dum apud urbem Nannensem majorem  
 exspectabat adhuc numerum ex diversis partibus  
 adventantium armatorum, rex Francorum cum  
 exercitu suo quoddam debile municipium<sup>1</sup> Hodum  
 appellatum obsedit, quod ab urbe Nannetis qua-  
 tuor leucis vix distabat, atque levi conatu illud  
 cepit et subvertit, et ad Andegavensem rediit ci-  
 vitatem. Eodem anno facta est<sup>2</sup> eclipsis solis,  
 contra morem solitum, summo mane confestim  
 post ortum suum, pridie idus Maii, in Rogatio-  
 nibus, scilicet feria tertia, ita quod agricolæ  
 et alii multi, labores mane inchoatos propter  
 nimiam obscuritatem relinquentes, stratum re-  
 petere et sese iterum sopori dare decreverunt,  
 sed tandem, quasi post unius horæ spatium, mul-  
 tis admirantibus, sol consuetam obtinuit clarita-  
 tem. Eodem tempore<sup>3</sup> dux Saxonie, et regis  
 Anglorum consanguineus, veniens in Angliam a  
 civibus Londinensis honorifice susceptus est;  
 erat autem idem dux homo tantæ proceritatis et  
 longitudinis, ut, cunctis admirantibus et quasi  
 ad spectaculum accidentibus, visum ex ipsius  
 intuitu refecerunt.

*De discordia inter barones Galliae orta.*

Habebant quoque hoc tempore guerram ad in-  
 vicem omnes fere magnates Galliae, sicut dux<sup>4</sup> Dissensions  
 amongst the French  
 barons.

<sup>1</sup> *Hodum appellatum.*] The hands; Rec. des Hist. tom. xx.  
 castles of Oudon and Chanto- p. 319.  
 ceaux were taken, according to<sup>5</sup> <sup>2</sup> *Eclipsis solis.*] Calvisius,  
 Nangis, in the preceding year; it Chronolog. p. 802.  
 was upon the taking of the lat-<sup>3</sup> *Dux Saxonie.*] Albert I.;  
 ter, according to the same au- he succeeded his father, Ber-  
 thority, that the earl of Britanny, nard III., in 1212, and died in  
 astonished at the king's success, 1260. He married Helen, daugh-  
 surrendered himself into his ter of Otho, duke of Brunswick.

A.D. 1230.  
Dissensions  
in France.

Burgundiæ, comes Bononiæ, <sup>1</sup>comes de Drius, comes de Mascu, comes sancti Pauli, comes de Bar, Engeramus de Curci, Robertus de Curtenai, et multi alii, qui jurati et confederati erant, ut dicebatur, regi Angliæ et comiti Britanniæ Henrico; bellum indixerant comitibus Campaniensi et Flandrensi; qui omnes, impetrata licentia a rege Francorum, completis in obsidione Andegaviæ quadraginta dierum excubiis, reversi sunt in patriam suam. Quos rex, cum illos retinere non potuit, secutus est, ut, si possibile esset, eos discordes ad concordiam reformaret; sed, cum idem rex nobiles ad pacem reducere nullatenus potuisset, ingressi sunt cum equis et armis hostiliter comites terram comitis Campaniæ <sup>2</sup>atque illam igne et ferro depopulari cœperunt. <sup>3</sup>Comes vero Campaniæ cum ingenti armatorum copia hostibus occursens prælium campestre commisit; at comites, tam sibi quam suis agminibus viriliter resistentes, ex militibus illius ducentos sub captione concluserunt et tredecim peremerunt. Quod cum comes Campaniensis cognovisset, campum per fugam deseruit, omni commilitonum suffragio destitutus, quem fugientem hostes acriter insequentes, et quoscumque attingebant in ore gladii prosternentes, non cessabant donec ipsum comitem infra portas Parisiacæ civitatis cursu rapido intruserunt. Tunc, nolentes ulterius insequi illum, reversi in Campaniam spoliaverunt eam totam, castra et municipia complanantes, villas et urbes igne conflagrantes, vites

<sup>1</sup> Comes de Drius . . . Engeramus de Curci.] ‘Le comte de Dreux, le comte de Mâcon, le comte de S. Paul, le comte de Bar, Enguerrand de Coucy;’ Fr. Translat. Mat. Paris, iii. p. 444.

<sup>2</sup> Atque . . . cœperunt,] wanting in C.  
<sup>3</sup> Comes vero Campaniæ.] Theobald IV., surnamed le Grand; compare the account of this war as given by Joinville; Rec. des Hist. xx. pp. 203, seq.

et pomeria succidentes, extra ecclesias nihil intactum reliquerunt. Agebant autem contra comitem magnates quasi de crimine proditionis et reum læsæ majestatis, ut qui dominum suum regem Lodowicum in obsidione Avinionis ob amorem reginæ, quam amabat, veneno necaverat, ut dicebant; unde, cum iidem magnates in curia regis Francorum, eodem rege præsente, querimoniam sæpe deposuissent et ipsum comitem per duellum convincere voluissent, regina, per quam omnia regni negotia disponebantur propter regis simplicitatem et puerilem ætatem, noluit eos audire. Quocirca ipsi, se a regis fidelitate subtrahentes et reginæ, Francorum regnum per guerram turbare cœperunt; indignabantur enim talem habere dominam, quæ, ut dicebatur, tam dicti comitis quam legati Romani semine polluta metas transgressa fuerat pudicitiae viduæ.

*De strage Hiberniensium, et captione cuiusdam regis.*

Eodem anno, mense Julio, <sup>1</sup> regulus quidam de Connioth, Hibernensis, cum regem Anglorum et Willelmum Marescallum cognovisset in finibus transmarinis bellicas agere expeditiones, atque regnum Hiberniæ quasi vacuum a subsidio militari, congregavit undique exercitum copiosum, sperans se posse omne genus Anglorum ab Hiberniæ finibus exturbare; ingressus igitur hostiliter terram regis Anglorum, spoliis et rapinis atque incendiis intendebat. Sed cum hæc omnia ad aures Gaufridi de Marisco, qui vices justiciarii sub rege in partibus illis gerebat, [venissent,] adjunctis sibi Waltero de Lasci cum Ri-

Disturbances  
in Ireland.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Regulus quidam.*] Compare | Script. ed. O'Conor, tom. ii. part.  
the account as given in the | iv. p. 39.  
Annal. Buellian. Rer. Hibern.

A.D. 1230.  
Disturbances  
in Ireland.

chardo de Burgo et exercitu non modico, contra hostes audacter prorupit, et, exercitum suum in tres turmas dividens, duabus præfecit Walterum de Lasci et Richardum de Burgo, tertiam sibi retinens ad regendum; atque duas acies instructas, quibus præerant prædicti Walterus et Richardus, occultavit in silvis quibusdam, per quas venturi erant hostes, et dolosas eis insidias præparavit; tertiam vero, quam ipse regebat, statuit, ut directa fronte adversariis occurrens ad campestre prælium eos provocaret. Tandem hostes supervenientes, cum unam tantum aciem gentis Anglorum conspexissent, irruerunt in eos, quasi sub spe certa victoriae consequendæ; sed acies Anglorum tamdiu fugam simulavit, quounque Hibernienses illos insequentes loca insidiarum pertransiissent. At illi, qui in insidiis erant, de latibulis erumpentes et aerem clamore horribili verberantes a tergo et a latere irruerunt in hostes; et acies, quæ prius fugerat, in Hibernienses a fronte revertens stragem eis misabilem intulerunt, <sup>1</sup>interfecti namque referuntur ex Hiberniensibus ad viginti millia virorum bellatorum, et rex eorum captus est et carcerali custodiæ deputatus. Eodem tempore Fulco Paganellus<sup>2</sup> de Normannia, vir nobilis, et Willelmus frater ejus, relictis castellis suis ac terris, venerunt ad regem Anglorum in Britanniam, fidelitates ei et homagia facientes. Venerunt etiam cum eis ad sexaginta milites viri strenui et potentes, qui omnes persuaserunt regi, ut hosti-

<sup>1</sup> *Interfecti namque.*] ‘Parta est Victoria contra Aedum filium Roderici, contra regem Connachicæ, et contra Connachtenses, et expulsus est Aed filius Roderici, et occisus est Donnoch O’Rochtuig supremus dux clientelæ

Muredagi, et multi alii cum ipso occisi sunt;’ Annal. Buellian. Rer. Hibern. Script. ed. O’Conor, tom. ii. part. iv. p. 39.

<sup>2</sup> *Paganellus,*] or ‘Painel;’ see Fr. Translat. Mat. Paris, iii. p. 447, note.

liter Normanniam intraret, sub spe certa terram A.D. 1230. subjugandi; quorum rex consiliis libenter adquiesceret, sed Hubertus de Burgo id fieri non permisit, dicens, periculoso fore hoc modis omnibus attemptare. Quod audientes milites prædicti postulaverunt regem propensius, ut assignaret eis ducentos milites de exercitu suo, cum quibus Normanniam intrarent, certissimis ei assertionibus promittentes, quod omne genus Francorum de Normannia exturbarent; nec etiam id fieri permisit Hubertus justiciarius, asserens, regi non expedire ut traderet milites suos ad mortem ultronea voluntate. Sicque nobiles illi miserabiliter illusi fuerunt, quia rex Francorum incontinenti exhäuseravit eos, castella et omnia, quæ illorum erant, potenter in sua jura convertens.

*Quod rex Anglorum in Gasconia profectus homagia ceperit.*

Et, his ita gestis, rex Anglorum per consilium Huberti de Burgo, cum exercitu suo ex Britannia per Andegaviam in Pictaviam transiens, profectus est in Gasconiam, ubi acceptis homagiis, et regione sub securitate disposita, rediit in Pictaviam, ubi multorum homagia suscepit. In hac quoque equitatione obsedit rex Mirebelli castrum et cepit laudabili virtute Anglorum, qui assultus audacissimos assidue iterantes violenter inclusos subegerunt, et recedentes omnes in vinculis abduxerunt. Hoc igitur tempore, mense Augusti, dominus papa Gregorius et Romanorum imperator Fredericus, mediantibus utrorumque <sup>1</sup> fidelibus et amicis, in concordiam convene-

<sup>1</sup> *Fidelibus et amicis.*] Among the principal promoters of the peace were the archbishops of Rheggio and Salzburg, the mas-

ter of the Teutonic knights at Rome, the dukes of Austria, Carinthia, and Moravia, etc.; Raymond of Poitou.  
Henry in Gascony and Poitou.

A.D. 1220. runt; veniens enim Romam dictus imperator absolutus est, omnibus ad jura imperii spectantibus ex integro revocatis. Comederunt ergo simul magnus sacerdos et maximus imperator in palatio summi pontificis per triduum, gaudentibus cardinalibus et potentatibus imperii de concordia tam desperata et tam subito confirmata. Eadem tempestate comes Cestrensis Ranulphus munivit castellum apud sanctum Joannem de Beverona, quod ad jus uxoris suæ comitissæ jure hæreditario pertinebat, militibus, alimentis et armis; reddiderat enim illi castrum illud comes Britanniæ Henricus, quando confederatus regi Anglorum omnia jura sua in regno Angliæ, rege concedente, recepit.

*De concordia facta inter regem Francorum et barones.*

Peace concluded between the king of France and his barons.

Circa eosdem dies, mense Septembri, converunt ad colloquium rex Francorum et <sup>1</sup>regina mater ejus cum magnatibus illius regni, qui post mortem Lodowici regis guerram habuerant ad invicem, ut est superius dictum, ubi de pace tractantes talem concordiam firmaverunt; Provisum est autem communiter a proceribus præfatis, ut comes Campaniensis, qui hujus discordie causa principalis extiterat, cruce signatus peregrinationem terræ sanctæ subiret ad militandum ibidem cum centum militibus contra inimicos Crucifixi; et præterea rex Francorum et mater ejus, tactis sacrosanctis evangeliis, juraverunt, quod singulis redderent jura sua, et

<sup>1</sup> *Regina mater ejus.*] The incompatible with the disorders French historians defend the of which she has been accused queen-mother against the charges by our historian; see above, pp. of Wendover, as being a woman 135, seqq. of such habits as were altogether

quod omnes homines terræ illius secundum rec- A.D. 1220.  
tas consuetudines et singulis debitas judicarent.

*De reditu regis de Britannia in Angliam.*

Jacebat interea rex Anglorum apud urbem <sup>Henry</sup> <sub>returns to</sub> Nannetensem cum exercitu suo, nihil agens, nisi quod thesauros consumpsit. Comites vero ac barones, cum Hubertus, regis justiciarius, non permisit ut contra hostes arma moverent, fecerunt inter se convivia juxta consuetudinem Anglicanam, et crapulis intendebant et poculis ad invicem, ac si dies Natalitios celebrarent, inter quos qui pauperes erant, rebus omnibus consumptis, equos distrahebant et arma, ut exinde ad tempus vitam ducerent infelicem. Tandem rex Anglorum, <sup>1</sup>mense Octobri, dispositis rebus necessariis ad custodiam terræ illius, dimisit ibi milites quingentos et mille servientes stipendiarios, super quos principes constituit comitem Cestriæ Ranulphum, Willelmum Mariscallum, et Willelmum Albemarliæ comitem, cum quibusdam aliis viris bellatoribus et in opere martio præelectis ; sique rex naves conscendens post plurima maris pericula apud Portemue applicuit septimo kalendas Novembris. Venerunt autem multi diversæ professionis ad eum homines diversis illum exeniis honorantes ; sed comes de Glovernia et de Clare <sup>2</sup>Gilebertus de partibus illis rediens diem clausit extremum, cuius terrarum et honorum omnium rex Huberto justiciario custodiam concessit.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mense Octobri.*] ‘Modicum ibi (sc. in Britannia) proficiens reversus est mense Octobri ; Chron. Dunst. 201. ‘Reversus est in Angliam cum fratre suo Richardo ;’ Hemingf. p. 573. ‘Rediit in Angliam circa festum Omnium sanctorum,’ An. Waverl. p. 192.

<sup>2</sup> *Gilebertus.*] He was buried at Tewkesbury ; Annal. Waverl. p. 192.

*De equitationibus factis in partibus transmarinis post discessum regis.*

A.D. 1230.  
Doings in  
Anjou after  
his departure.

Post recessum regis Anglorum ex partibus transmarinis comes Cestrensis et alii principes militiae regis cum toto ejus exercitu fecerunt equitationem per Andegaviam et per dies quindecim moram fecerunt in ea, et ceperunt castellum Guncier<sup>1</sup> et complanaverunt illud, et villam combusserunt; deinde ceperunt castellum novum super Sartam, et illud subvertentes villam incendio tradiderunt; sicque cum impregnabilibus spoliis et praedis in Britanniam sunt reversi. Nec multo post Normanniam hostiliter ingressi ceperunt ibi castellum Punthursun, et eo complanato villam combusserunt, et absque rerum dispendio in Britanniam redierunt. Eodem anno facta est eclipsis<sup>2</sup> lunæ, remanente sibi brevissima claritate, quasi per spatium trium horarum, decimo kalendas Decembris, ipsa luna decima tertia existente.

*De exactione scutagii pro expeditione transmarina.*

A.D. 1231.  
The arch-  
bishop of  
Canterbury  
refuses to  
pay the  
scutage.

Anno Domini MCCXXXI. rex Anglorum Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Lamheiam, Huberto, Angliæ justiciario, necessaria omnia festivitati regiæ procurante. Ac deinde, septimo kalendas Februarii, convenerunt ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium rex cum prælatis et aliis magnatibus regni, ubi exegit idem rex<sup>3</sup> scutagium, de quolibet scuto tres marcas, ab omnibus, qui baronias tenebant, tam laicis

<sup>1</sup> *Guncier.*] The reviser of our MS. has marked this word for correction; the French translator reads 'Gonnord'; iii. p. 447.

<sup>2</sup> *Eclipsis lunæ.*] Calvisius, Chronolog. p. 803.

<sup>3</sup> *Scutagium.*] Termed, for distinction's sake, 'the scutage of Poitou,' after the king's first passage to Bretagne; Rot. Pip. 15 Hen. III.; Carte, ii. p. 40.

quam prælatis ; cui Richardus, Cantuariensis A.D. 1231.  
archiepiscopus, et quidam episcopi cum eo au-  
dacter resistentes dixerunt, quod non tenentur  
viri ecclesiastici judicio subjici laicorum, cum  
absque illis concessum fuisse scutagium in fini-  
bus transmarinis. Tandem post multas hinc  
inde disceptationes negotium, quantum ad præ-  
latos reclamantes, usque in quindecim dies post  
Pascha dilationem accepit ; omnes ali, tam  
laici quam clerici ac prælati, favebant regiæ vo-  
luntati.

*De discordia inter regem et archiepiscopum.*

Per idem tempus Richardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ad regem veniens <sup>1</sup>conquestus est de Huberto, Angliæ justiciario, quod castellum de Tunbregge cum villa et pertinentiis ejus et alias quasdam terras Gileberti comitis de Clare nuper defuncti, quæ ad jus suum et ecclesiæ Cantuariensis spectabant, [injuste detinebat,] unde idem comes sibi et antecessoribus suis ipse et predecessores sui ad recognitionem et homagium tenebantur ; qua de causa regem rogavit, ut custodiam dicti castelli cum pertinentiis sibi restitueret et jura ecclesiæ Cantuariensis conservaret illæsa. Ad hæc respondens rex dixit, et

The arch-  
bishop com-  
plains of  
Hubert the  
Justiciary.

<sup>1</sup> Conquestus est de Huberto, Angliæ justiciario. ] Chron. Dunst. p. 202. The quarrel is described in the Annal. Waverl. as being between the archbishop ‘ et regales, qui violenter eje-  
runt homines archiepiscopi de quadam custodia, quæ, sicut nonnullis visum est, proprie spec-  
tat ad jus Cantuariensis ecclæsiæ ;’ p. 193.

<sup>2</sup> Comitem . . . de se tenere.] See the title of the earls of Clare p. 311, and iv. p. 768, note.

to Tunbridge, as stated by Carte, ii. p. 40. In the 42nd Hen. III. the seignory of this manor was claimed by archbishop Boniface, and an agreement entered into by him with Richard de Clare, earl of Gloucester, concerning the services, which the archbishop required of the earl, by reason of the tenements which the latter held of him in Tunbridge, etc. ; Hasted's Kent, ii. p. 311, and iv. p. 768, note.

A.D. 1231. vacantes custodias comitum et baronum et eorumdem haeredum ad suam coronam usque ad aetatem legitimam pertinere, unde sibi licere proposuit tales custodias cui voluerit vendere vel conferre. Archiepiscopus vero, cum aliud responsum habere non potuit, excommunicavit omnes invasores possessionum praedictarum, et omnes, praeter regem, qui cum eis communionem haberent, et tam pro his quam <sup>1</sup>aliis de causis Romam profectus jus suum et ecclesiae suee prosequi maturavit. Rex vero e contra, <sup>2</sup>ut causam suam prosequeretur, magistrum Rogerum de Cantelo Romam cum aliis quibusdam nuntiis destinavit. Eodem tempore, mense Aprili, expleta solennitate Paschali, Richardus frater regis desponsavit comitissam Gloverniae, sororem scilicet Willelmi Marescalli, comitis de Penbroc; et, nuptiis vix completis, idem comes Willelmus, in militia vir strenuus, in dolorem multorum diem clausit supremum, et Londoniis apud Novum Templum <sup>3</sup>sepultus est juxta patrem suum decimo septimo kalendas Maii.

*Quod Loelinus in Wallia crudeliter senvire coepit.*

*Disturbances  
in Wales.*

Eodem mense Maio Wallenses de latibulis, ut sorices e cavernis, erumpentes terram, quae fuit Willelmi de Brausia, flammis discurrentibus vastaverunt; sed, rege Anglorum illo tendente cum

<sup>1</sup> *Aliis de causis.*] He had a suit also against the abbot of S. Augustine's, who refused to receive consecration at his hands; Chron. Dunst. p. 203.

<sup>2</sup> *Ut causam suam prosequeretur.]* It would appear that the king, to a certain extent, was successful in his suit, for in Rymer the reader may find a bull of Gregory, addressed to the

archbishops and bishops of England, ‘de non excommunicando, sine causa manifesta, justiciarios, vicecomites et ballivos regis,’ i. p. 200.

<sup>3</sup> *Sepultus.*] His epitaph is thus recorded in the Annal. Waverl.: ‘Militis istius mortem dolet Anglia; ridet Wallia viventis bella minasque timens.’

modica manu militari, ipsi ad suas more solito A.D. 1231.  
sunt reversi cavernas. Rex autem partes aus-  
trales repetens dimisit in partibus illis Huber-  
tum, justiciarium regni, ad reprimendum impe-  
tus eorundem; sed illi, continuo ut audierant  
recessum regis, ad prædandum reversi, non longe  
a castro Montis-Gomerii provincias infestantes  
sævire cœperunt. Sed cum milites, qui erant  
in præsidio castri memorati, hoc cognovissent,  
ne tam libere sine offensione discurrerent, exie-  
runt ad prælrium contra ipsos, et viam rever-  
tendi præcludentes multos ex eis ceperunt et  
plurimos peremerunt; cumque illos, quos vivos  
ceperant, justiciario præsentassent, jussit omnes  
decapitari et regi Anglorum capita præsen-  
tari. Quod factum Loelinus nimis moleste  
ferens collegit exercitum copiosum, et terras  
baronum, qui in limbo Walliæ degebant, et pos-  
sessions gravi depopulatione contrivit, et, nec  
ecclesiis neque personis ecclesiasticis parcens,  
matronas quasdam nobiles et pueras, quæ causa  
pacis et salutis ad ecclesias confugerant, cum  
ipsis ecclesiis concremavit.

*Quod rex, Loelino excommunicato, in Walliam  
exercitum conductit.*

Cumque hoc enorme factum ad aures regis  
pervenisset, <sup>1</sup> collegit apud Oxoniæ exercitum  
copiosum tertio idus Julii, ubi cum tota nobi-  
litas Angliæ, tam cleri quam populi, congregata  
fuisset, episcopi omnes et ecclesiarum prælati,  
præsente rege, Loelinum cum suis fautoribus,  
qui ecclesias concremarant, anathemate percus-

Henry  
marches  
against  
Llewellyn.

<sup>1</sup> *Collegit . . . exercitum copio-  
sum.]* The king also issued a  
proclamation inviting the Irish to  
invade Wales, promising to as-  
sure to them such lands as they  
might be able to acquire; Rymer,  
i. p. 200.

A.D. 1231.  
War in  
Wales.

serunt ; quo facto, rex exercitum promovens ad Herefordensem urbem cito volatu pervenit. Erat autem eo tempore <sup>1</sup> Loelinus cum exercitu suo non longe a castello Montis-Gomerii in quodam prato, quod ripariam habebat vicinam paludibus obsitam, ubi militibus castri memorati dolosas insidias præparabat. Nam fratrem quendam de abbatia Cisterciensis ordinis, quæ prope erat, Cumira nuncupata, direxit Loelinus, ut dicitur, ad castellum ; quem cum viderunt milites castelli transeuntem per eos, exierunt ut cum fratre loquerentur, et sciscitantes ab eo, si quid de Loelino rege audisset, respondit, quod viderat eum cum parvo comitatu in prato vicino, ubi exspectabat majorem numerum armatorum. Milites vero, cum a fratre requirent, si possent ripariam et pratum equites cum securitate transire, respondit frater, ‘ Pons, qui ultra ripariam itinerantes ducere solebat, confractus est a Loelino, quia metuebat impetum vestrum ; sed tamen poteritis secure, ubicumque volueritis, ripariam et pratum in equis transire, et Wallenses cum paucis equitibus vel vincere vel fugare.’ Quo audito, adhibuit fidem falsis assertionibus fratris Walterus de Godarville, custos castelli, et præcipiens commilitonibus et servientibus, ut convolarent ad arma, ascensis equis, ad locum celeriter pervenerunt ; quos Wallenses cum impetu venire conspicientes ad silvam quandam, quæ prope erat, dolosam illico inierunt fugam. At castellani rapido equorum volatu eos insequentes in riparia præfata ac palude illius prati submersi sunt usque ad ventres equorum, illi præ-

<sup>1</sup> *Loelinus.*] In the Patent Rolls at Shrewsbury, dated Worcester, is a pass from the king, granting safe conduct to the messengers of 27th May; Rymer, i. p. 200. It would appear that Llewellyn took no notice of this summons.

cipue qui primi veniebant; sed alii, qui seque- A.D. 1231.  
 bantur, ex sociorum submersione præmuniti de  
 casu commilitonum suorum non mediocriter con-  
 dolebant. Tunc Wallenses, hostium submersio-  
 nem cognoscentes, reversi sunt cum impetu su-  
 per eos, et cum lanceis suis milites et equos in  
 cœno volantes crudeliter peremerunt. Fac-  
 tus est autem ibi hinc inde conflictus gravissi-  
 mus, multis utrobique peremptis, sed tamen Wal-  
 lenses victoria potiuntur. <sup>1</sup>Captus est autem ibi  
 Ægidius, filius Richardi de Argentonio, miles  
 strenuus, cum quibusdam aliis, quorum nomina  
 non audivi.

*De ultione predicti sceleris, et constructione castri  
 Matildis.*

Cumque tandem casus, qui militibus jam dictis war in  
 acciderat, regi fuerat denuntiatus, cum festina- Wales.  
 tione ad abbatiam, cuius frater præfatos milites  
 prodiderat, hostiliter transiens, in ultionem tanti  
 sceleris quandam grangiam illius abbatiae bonis  
 omnibus spoliatam combussit, et ipsam abbatiam  
 similiter spoliatam omnino jussit igne cremari;  
 sed abbas loci, ut ædificia sumptuosis valde la-  
 boribus constructa salvaret, trecentas marcas  
 regi numeravit, et sic ejus indignatio paulisper  
 cessavit. Et, his ita gestis, fecit rex reædificare  
 castellum Matildis in Wallia de lapide et cæ-  
 mento eleganter, quod a Wallensibus olim pro-  
 stratum fuerat, atque, magnis sumptibus cum  
 esset opus feliciter consummatum, posuit in eo  
 rex milites et clientes, qui incursionses Wallen-  
 sium refrænarent.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Captus est.]* ‘Capti sunt au- | Ricardi de Argenthom;’ Chron.  
 tem a parte Lewelini duo filii | Dunst. p. 205.

*De treugis statutis inter reges Francorum et Anglorum.*

A.D. 1231.  
Truce with  
France.

Circa eosdem dies, mense Junio, rex Francorum promovit exercitum copiosum, ut Armoricanam Britanniam expugnaret; sed, cum ejus adventum Henricus Britanniae et Ranulphus Cestriæ comites, qui in finibus illis militiæ regis Anglorum præerant, cognovissent, regi paraverunt insidias venienti, et a tergo rhedas ejus et vehicula, quæ arma ferebant cum alimentis et machinis, invadentes ceperunt omnia, et machinas igne concremantes lucrati sunt ibidem equos sexaginta. Deinde Franci, cum Britanniam cognoscerent quasi inexpugnabilem, simul et debile principium suum habentes suspectum, procurantibus ex parte regis Francorum archiepiscopo Remensi et Philippo comite Bononiensi, atque ex parte regis Anglorum comitibus Britanniae et Cestriæ in hoc consentientibus, <sup>1</sup>statutæ sunt treugæ et juramento firmatæ triennales inter dictos reges tertio nonas Julii. Eodem mense Julio Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, completo in terra promissionis jam fere per quinquennium magnificæ peregrinationis voto, reversus est in Angliam, et in kalendis Augusti Wintoniæ susceptus est cum processione solenni in ecclesia cathedrali. <sup>2</sup>Venerunt eodem tempore, post treugas statutas, comes Britanniae et comes Cestriæ, cum Richardo Marescallo, ex finibus transmarinis in Angliam, et ad regem profecti in Walliam, qui adhuc occupabatur in constructione

<sup>1</sup>Statuta sunt treugæ.] Letters plenipotentiary for concluding a truce with France had been granted to the earl of Cornwallis and others, dated 6th of September 1230; Rymer, i. p. 198.

<sup>2</sup>Venerunt.] Before their return, an aid, a fortieth part of all the moveables of the nobility, laity, and regular and secular clergy, had been granted by universal consent; Close Rolls, 15 Hen. III.; Carte, p. 40.

caſtri Matildis, honorifice sunt ab eo recepti. Ri- A.D. 1231.  
 chardus vero Marescallus, se regi repreſentans  
 ut hæredem fratriſ ſui Willelmi Marescalli, ob-  
 tulit regi pro hæreditate ſua homagium ſuum et  
 quicquid ei de jure ſuo facere tenebatur. Cui <sup>1</sup>re-  
 ſpondens rex, per conſilium Huberti conſiliarii  
 ſui ac justiciarii, quod audierat uxorem fratriſ  
 ſui defuncti eſſe prægnantem, unde noluit eum  
 audire, donec rei veritas probaretur; objecit  
 etiam eidem Richardo, quod conveſtus fuerat  
 inter hostes ſuos publicos in partibus Gallicanis,  
 unde rex präcepit, ut cito de regno non rever-  
 ſurus exiret, affirmando, quod, post dies quindecim  
 [ſi] inveniretur in regno, carceri perpetuo trade-  
 retur. At Richardus, cum aliud non haberet re-  
 ſponſum, transfretavit in Hiberniam, ubi omnes  
 milites et homines fratriſ ſui illum cum gaudio  
 recipientes reddiderunt omnia ei castella, quæ  
 erant fratriſ ſui, homagiumque illi cum fidelitate  
 fecerunt; castellum etiam de Penbroc in ſua  
 potestate recipiens, cum toto honore ad castel-  
 lum pertinente, collegit multitudinem armatorum,  
 hæreditatem ſuam, etiam invito rege, ſi nec-  
 eſtas cogeret, ſubjugare diſponens. Tandem rex,  
 mutato conſilio, metuens ne pacem regni tur-  
 baret, ſuscepit homagium ejus et fidelitatem, et  
 ei omnia jura ſua, ſalvo ſibi relevio conſueto,  
 confeſſit.

*Quod Richardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Romam  
 profectus in reditu obiit.*

Venit hoc tempore ad curiam Romanam Ri- Death of the  
 chardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et in præ- archbishop of  
 ſentia domini [papæ] hæc proposuit quæ ſequun- Canterbury.

<sup>1</sup> *Respondens rex.]* ‘Ricardus | dem hæreditatem ſuam recupe-  
 Marescallus, qui per injuſtam di- | rare promeruit,’ Chron. Dunſt.  
 lationem valde diſnificatus, tan- | p. 205.

A.D. 1231.

tur. Conquestus est in primis de rege Anglorum, quod solummodo omnia regni negotia per consilium Huberti justiciarii, aliis spretis magnatibus, disponebat. Item, de justiciario proposuit, quod<sup>1</sup> habuit uxorem, cuius consanguineam prius habuerat sibi matrimonio copulatam, et quod jura ecclesiæ Cantuariensis invaserat et injuste detinebat. Proposuit etiam, quod episcopi quidam ejus suffraganei, neglecta pastorali cura, sedebant ad scaccarium regis, laicas causas ventilantes et judicia sanguinis exercentes. Item conquestus est, quod clerici beneficiati et infra sacros ordines constituti plures habebant ecclesiæ, quibus adnexa fuerat cura animarum, et quod insuper, sicut episcopi, ab ipsis trahentes exemplum, curis secularibus et laicorum se judiciis immiscebant. His autem et consimilibus coram papa propositis, petiti, ut talibus limam correctionis excessibus adhiberet. Cumque hæc omnia dominus papa diligent studio intellexisset, et vidisset quod universa, quæ proposuerat archiepiscopus, justitia fuerant et ratione subnixa, jussit incontinenti, quatenus archiepiscopi negotia sive petitiones expedirentur, justitia mediante. Proposuerunt autem in contrarium clerici regis, pro ipso rege et justiciario multa inaniter allegantes; sed parum vel nihil profecerunt, quia, ut breviter dicatur, favor archiepiscopi, quicquid petiti, impetravit. Archiepiscopus autem, cum, expletis negotiis omnibus pro voluntate sua, repatriare maturaret, <sup>2</sup>apud [sanctam

<sup>1</sup> Quod habuit uxorem. ] His third wife, Margaret, the daughter of the king of Scotland, related to his second wife Isabel, the countess of Gloucester. The Chron. Dunst. tells us that he evaded this inquiry, ‘machina-

tionibus dolosis iniquitatem suam prolongavit, audientiam bonorum judicum declinando, et malitiose literas impetrando ad tres judices, in tribus Angliae angulis constitutos,’ p. 207.

<sup>2</sup> Apud sanctam Gemmam.] ‘Ad

Gemmam] diem clausit supremum tertio nonas A.D. 1231.  
**Augusti;** et sic, ipso exspirante, exspirabant cum  
 eo negotia impetrata.

*Quod rex Anglorum revocatus est a nuptiis sororis  
 regis Scotorum.*

Eodem tempore rex Anglorum, constructo in Henry dis-  
 Wallia castello supradicto, mense Octobris in suaded from  
 Angliam remeavit. Proposuit sane idem rex eo marrying the  
 tempore ducere in uxorem <sup>1</sup>sororem regis Scotorum, sister of the  
 indignantibus comitibus et baronibus uni- king of  
 versis; non enim, ut aiunt, decebat, quod rex Scotland.  
 duceret natu filiam minorem, cum Hubertus jus-  
 ticiarius natu majorem haberet sibi matrimonio  
 copulatam; sed, ab hoc proposito cum per comi-  
 tem Britanniæ fuisse rex revocatus, dedit eidem  
 comiti Britanniæ quinque millia marcas argenti,  
 et sic rediit in regionem suam.

*De electione et cassatione Radulphi, Cantuariensis  
 electi.*

Defuncto, ut dictum est, Richardo, Cantuariensi Ralph de  
 archiepiscopo, decreverunt monachi Cantuariae Neville  
 Radulphum de Neville, Cicestrensem episcopum, elected arch-  
 sibi in præsulem postulare; erat autem cancel-  
 larius regis, unde monachi, electione facta, præ-  
 sentaverunt eum regi octavo kalendas Octobris;  
 quem rex gratanter, quantum ad se pertinebat,  
 acceptans de maneriis et rebus aliis ad archi-  
 episcopatum adjacentibus illum protinus inves-  
 titivit. Et monachi Romam profecturi, ad electum

sanctam Geminam morbo correptus obiit, atque ibidem apud ecclesiam fratrum Minorum honoriſce tumulatus est.' Annal. Waverl. p. 193.

<sup>1</sup>*Sororem regis Scotorum.]* Isabella; she was already the wife of Roger Bigod earl of Norfolk,

married, as appears from a writ printed in Rymer, in 1295; Rym. i. p. 178. There was also a natural daughter of William of Scotland named Isabel, married first to Robert de Bruce and afterwards to Robert de Rosse; Chron. Mailr. p. 175.

A.D. 1231. suum venientes, petierunt ab illo auxilium ad expensas itineris ; sed ille plane affirmavit, quod propter hoc eis nec obolum unum donaret. Sed monachi illi, non ideo minus Romam profecti, electionem sive postulationem factam petierunt a papa, ut auctoritate apostolica confirmaret. Dominus itaque papa, facta, ut dicitur, a magistro Simone de Langetuna inquisitione de persona postulati, respondit, ipsum curialem esse et illiteratum ; unde papa, postulatione cassata, concessit, ut conventus Cantuariensis alium archiepiscopum ac talem eligerent, qui sibi esset pastor animarum salubris et ecclesiæ utilis Anglicanæ, qui domum reversi conventui retulerunt quomodo fuerant a suo desiderio defraudati.

Election declared void by the pope.

*De insolentia clericorum Romanorum.*

Disturbances on account of the Italian clergy.

Suborta est hac tempestate in Anglia maxima rerum perturbatio, immo, ut verum fateamur, indiscreta præsumptio, 'propter Romanorum insolentiam clericorum, quæ tam nobiles regni quam ignobiles ad temerariam compulit ultionem, sicut in subscriptis continetur expressum ; 'Tali episcopo, et tali capitulo, universitas eorum, qui magis volunt mori quam a Romanis confundi, salutem. Qualiter circa nos et alias personas ecclesiasticas Angliæ hactenus se habuerint Romanii et eorum legati, vestram non dubitamus latere discretionem, beneficia regni suis, secundum quod eis placet, conferendo, in vestrum et omnium aliorum regni intolerabile præjudicium et gravamen ; in vos etiam et coepiscopos vestros aliasque personas ecclesiasticas, ad quos

<sup>1</sup> Propter Romanorum insolentiam clericorum.] Wilkins has printed a bull of the pope, issued with a view to redress this griev-

ance, by which he allows patrons to present to churches, on the death of the Italian incumbents; Concil. i. p. 629.

collatio beneficiorum pertinere dinoscitur, quod A.D. 1231.  
magis dignum est pro confusione notari, suspensionis sententias fulminando, ne alicui de regno beneficia conferatis, donec quinque Romanis, nec dum proprio nomine nominatis, immo nato Rumfredi, et nato talis et talis, in singulis ecclesiis vestris per totam Angliam sit provisum, unicuique eorum in redditu centum librarum ; alia etiam gravamina quamplurima tam laicis et magnatibus regni super advocationibus suis et eorum eleemosynis ab eis et antecessoribus suis datis in pauperum regni sustentationem, quam clericis et aliis viris religiosis regni super rebus et beneficiis, inferendo. Nec præmissis contenti ad ultimum a clericis regni beneficia, quæ obtinent, ut ea Romanis conferant, non secundum quod decet, sed sicut eis placet, auferre volentes, in eis illam intendunt prophetiam adimplere, ‘Spoliaverunt Ægyptios, ut ditarent Hebræos, multiplicando gentem suam, non magnificando lætitiam ;’ sic dolorem dolori nobis et vobis omnibus accumulando, ut melius nobis videatur mori, quam vivere sic oppressi. Unde licet grave sit nobis contra stimulum calcitrare, tamen, quia qui nimis emungit, elicit sanguinem, nos severitatem eorum animadvertentes, qui ab initio tanquam advenæ<sup>1</sup> Romam sunt ingressi, nunc autem nos non tantum judicare, sed etiam condemnare, intendunt, alligantes onera importabilia, quæ nec in se nec in suos digito movere volunt, de communi consilio magis elegimus, licet tarde, resistere, quam eorum oppressionibus intollerabilibus amplius subjacere seu majori subjici servituti. Hinc est quod vobis mandamus, districte inhibentes, quatenus, cum nos ecclesiam, regem

---

<sup>1</sup> *Roman.*] Corrected by a somewhat later hand ‘Romani.

A.D. 1231. similiter et regnum, nitamur a tam gravi jugo servitutis eripere, circa eos, qui de Romanis vel eorum redditibus se intromittunt, nullas partes vestras interponere præsumatis; pro certo scituri, quod, si hujus mandati, quod absit, extiteritis forte transgressores, quæ vestra sunt incendio subjacebunt, et poenam, quam Romani incurrit in personis, vos incurretis. Valete.'

*Prohibitio ne reddantur firmæ vel redditus clericis Romanis.*

Disturbances  
on account of  
the Italian  
clergy.

'Item religiosis et aliis, qui habent ecclesias Romanorum ad firmam, universitas prædicta, salutem. Cum post innumerabiles confusiones et infinita gravamina, quæ Romani, ut scitis, regno Angliæ inflixerunt ad præsens, in præjudicium regis et magnatum regni, circa advocationes ecclesiarum suarum et eorum eleemosynas, qui clericos regni spoliare nituntur beneficiis suis, ut ea Romanis conferant, in majorem regni et nostri confusionem, de communi consilio magnatum elegimus, licet tarde, resistere, quam eorum oppressionibus intolerabilibus de cætero subjacere, et eos per subtractionem beneficiorum suorum per totum regnum, quod aliis intendebant inferre, sic arctare, ut a regni molestatione desistant. Hinc est quod vobis mandamus, districte injungentes, quatenus de firmis ecclesiarum, sive de redditibus camerarum, quas de Romanis habetis, vel debetis eis, de cætero non respondeatis, sed dictas firmas et redditus habeatis paratos in crastino Dominicæ, qua cantatur 'Lætare Hierusalem,' procuratori nostro literatore a nobis ad hoc dato, abbates scilicet et priores in eorum monasteriis, alii vero presbyteri et clerici vel laici ad proprias ecclesias Romanorum, tradituri; pro certo scientes, quod, si hoc non feceritis, quæ ves-

tra sunt incendio subjacebunt, et nihilominus periculum, quod Romanis imminet in personis, vobis imminebit. Valete.' His ita gestis, prædicta universitas misit per milites et ministros literas has novo quodam sigillo signatas, in quo sculpti erant duo gladii, et inter gladios scriptum erat 'Ecce duo gladii hic,' in modum citationum ad ecclesias regni cathedrales, ut, si quos invenirent contradictores, juxta quod provisum fuerat punirent eos.

*De quodam consistorio apud sanctum Albanum habito,  
et de captione Cincii.*

Per idem tempus, decimo sexto kalendas Januarii, habitum est apud sanctum Albanum ingens consistorium abbatum, priorum, archidiaconorum, cum tota fere nobilitate regni magistrorum et clericorum, qui omnes ad hoc convenerunt per mandatum domini papæ, ut celebrarent divortium inter comitissam Essexiæ et virum suum, si ratio id dictaret. In crastino autem, consistorio soluto, cum singuli redirent ad propria, clericus quidam Romanus, nomine <sup>1</sup>Cincius, qui ecclesiæ sancti Pauli Londoniarum erat canonicus, per prædictam universitatem, ut creditur, non longe a villa sancti Albani captus est et abductus a viris armatis et capitibus velatis; sed magister Johannes Florentinus, Norwicensis archidiaconus, qui huic consistorio adfuit, ab hac captione evasit, et ad urbem Londoniarum fugiens delituit ibidem multis diebus. Cincius vero post quinque septimanas, crumenis evacuatis, ut dicitur, ad urbem Londoniarum sanus et incolmis est reductus.

A court held  
at S. Alban's  
by the pope's  
mandate.

<sup>1</sup> Cincius.] Chron. Dunst. p. 206.

*De distractione bladi de Wihingeham violenta.*

A.D. 1232.  
Disturbances  
on account of  
the Italian  
clergy.

Anno Domini MCCXXXII. rex Anglorum Henricus fuit ad Natale apud Wintoniam, cui Petrus, ejusdem urbis antistes, necessaria omnia procuravit, et festiva tam regi quam suis exhibituit indumenta. In illis autem diebus natalitiis distracta sunt horrea de Wihingeham cujusdam Romani ditissima per prædictam universitatem, ut creditur, a paucis armatis servientibus et capitibus velatis. Procurator vero illius ecclesiæ et custos, cum talem violentiam inspexisset, venit ad vicecomitem regionis, et de violata pace regis et injuria domino suo illata ei patenter ostendit. At vicecomes mittens ad locum ministros suos cum militibus quibusdam vicinis jussit inquire quidnam hoc esset; venientes quoque ad horrea milites memorati invenerunt homines illos armatos et sibi penitus ignotos, qui jam ex maxima parte<sup>1</sup> horrea evacuerant et bladum bonis conditionibus et ad commodum totius provincie vendiderant, sed et pauperibus partem caritative pertinentibus ex animo conferebant. Milites vero, qui advenerant, cum interrogassent eos unde essent, qui pacem regis offendere et talia facere præsumebant, illi continuo milites seorsum vocantes ostendebant literas regis<sup>2</sup> patentes, prohibentes ne quis eos præsumeret impidire; at milites hoc

<sup>1</sup> *Horrea evacuerant.*] The pope charged the bishops with conniving at these disorders, in a letter which he wrote to Henry, respecting his own and predecessors' merits and services to him and his father, complaining not only of the outrages above mentioned, but also of the ill-treatment of his nuncios and ministers; one of these being cut in pieces, another left half dead,

their bulls trodden under foot, etc., and insisting on a speedy reparation of damages and punishment of the malefactors; Carte, ii. p. 42. The bull is dated 7th June 1232; Rymer, i. p. 203.

<sup>2</sup> *Patentes.*] Paris adds, 'adulterinas et sophisticas.' 'Literas patentes ipsius justiciarii,' Chron. Dunst. p. 207.

audientes, tam ipsi quam alii, qui advenerant, A.D. 1232 pacifice recesserunt; sicque infra dies quindecim distractis omnibus, armati illi de loco recesserunt, loculis plene refectis. Tandem cum hæc violentia ad notitiam Rogeri, Londoniensis episcopi, pervenisset, convocatis decem episcopis in<sup>1</sup> crastino beatæ Scholasticæ virginis Londoniis in ecclesia beati Pauli, omnes hujus violentiæ auctores anathematis sententia percusserunt, involventes etiam illos, qui in Cincium, Londoniensis ecclesiæ canonicum, manus injecerant violentas, cum universitate prædicta et illis omnibus qui fecerunt sigillum et literas superscriptas.

*Quod rex auxilium per totam Angliam sibi dari postulavit.*

Convenerunt eo tempore, nonas Martii, ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium ad vocatōnem regis magnates Angliæ, tam laici quam prælati, quibus rex proposuit, quod magnis esset debitibus implicatus causa bellicæ expeditionis, quam nuper egerat in finibus transmarinis, unde necessitate compulsus ab omnibus generaliter auxilium postulavit. Quo auditō, comes Cestrensis Ranulphus pro magnatibus loquens regi respondit, quod comites, barones ac milites, qui de eo tenebant in capite, cum ipso erant ibi corporaliter præsentes, et pecuniam suam ita inaniter effuderunt, quod inde pauperes omnes recesserunt, unde regi de jure auxilium non debebant; et sic, petita licentia, laici omnes recesserunt. Prælati vero regi respondentes dixerunt, quod episcopi multi et abbates, qui vocati erant, non fuerunt præsentes; et sic petierunt inducias,

The king demands an aid of the laity and clergy.

<sup>1</sup> In crastino beatæ Scholasticæ virginis.] The 10th of February.

A.D. 1233. quousque ad diem certum possent omnes pariter convenire. Præfixus est itaque dies a quindecim diebus post Pascha, ut, omnibus congregatis, tunc fieret, quod erat de jure faciendum. Eodem tempore conventus Cantuariensis elegerunt Jo-hannem, priorem suum, in archiepiscopum et pastorem animarum suarum, qui, cum esset regi præsentatus et ab eo receptus, profectus est Romam, ut electionem rite factam impetraret a sede apostolica confirmari.

*Visio de rege Richardo valde laudabilis.*

Bishop of  
Rochester's  
vision  
concerning  
Richard I.

Sub eisdem diebus Henricus, Roffensis episcopus, cum in sabbato, quo cantatur 'Sintientes venite ad aquas,' apud Sidingeburniam, præsente electo Cantuariensi, ordines celebasset solennes, adstante clero et populo, fiducialiter protestatus est dicens, 'Gaudete omnes in Domino fratres, qui hic præsentes estis, scientes indubitanter, quod nuper uno et eodem die exierunt de purgatorio rex quondam Anglorum Richardus et Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, cum uno capellano ejusdem archiepiscopi, ad conspectum divinæ majestatis, et eo die non nisi tres illi de locis penalibus exierunt; et ut his dictis meis fidem adhibeatis plenissimam et certam, quia vel mihi vel alii tertia jam vice hoc per visionem revelatum est ita manifeste, quod ab animo meo omnis dubitationis ambiguitas removetur.' Et, quoniam hic mentio facta est de magnifico rege Richardo, unum de actibus ejus ad ædificationem audientium referre curabo.

*Quomodo rex Richardus vidit Crucifixi imaginem  
contra militem eam adorantem caput inclinare.*

Legend con-  
cerning the  
same king.

Regnante dicto rege Richardo, miles quidam de regno Angliae in Nova degens Foresta, qui

longo usu bestias regis furtive venari consueverat, quadam vice interceptus est cum vena-<sup>A.D. 1222.  
Legend  
concerning  
Richard I.</sup>  
tione furata et per judicium curiae ipsius regis in exilium relegatus. Hanc enim legem de venatione furto sublata rex ille clementissimus in hoc temperavit, quod cum [apud] reges antecessores ejus, si quilibet in fraude venationis deprehensi fuissent, eruebantur oculi eorum, absindepabantur virilia, manusque cum pedibus truncabantur; sed tale judicium <sup>1</sup>pio regi Richardo visum est nimis inhumanum, ut homines ad imaginem Dei creati, pro feris, quae juxta legem naturalem generaliter omnibus sunt concessae, de vita vel membris periclitarentur, ut id faciendo feris ac bestiis deterior videretur. Hoc enim solummodo sufficiebat ei, ut quilibet in tali culpa deprehensus<sup>2</sup> vel Angliam abjuraret vel poenam carceralem subiret, salvis omnibus vita et membris. Miles igitur, ut dictum est, exulatus coactus est cum uxore et liberis panem inter extraneos mendicare, qui prius exquisitis deliciis fruebatur. Tandem in se reversus miles cogitavit a rege misericordiam implorare, ut in haereditate sublata restitui mereretur, et veniens ad regem in Normannia invenit eum summo mane in quadam ecclesia, ut missam audiret. Et miles ecclesiam tremens intravit, non ausus in regem oculos erigere, quia, cum esset visu quasi speciosissimus hominum, quandoque tamen terribilis videbatur; et ante imaginem Crucifixi, quae in ecclesia erat, se conferens et genuflexiones cum lachrymis multoties iterans, Crucifixum humiliter precabatur, ut per ineffabilem clementiam suam gratiam sibi regis misericorditer reconciliaret, qua haereditatem recuperaret amissam. Rex autem,

<sup>1</sup> Pio.] In MS. 'pro.'

<sup>2</sup> Deprehensus. ] 'Deprehensi'  
in MS.

A.D. 1232.  
Legend  
concerning  
Richard I.

militem intuens sollicite orantem cum lachrymis et devotione non facta, vidi de illo rem mirabilem et relatione condignam; nam quotiescumque miles, quem de familia sua non esse deprehendit, genua flexit, ut imaginem adoraret, imago e contra Crucifixi ad genuflexiones ejus caput et collum satis humiliter inclinavit, et regem hoc cum stupore saepius conspicantem in admirationem commovit. Rex autem statim, officio missæ completo, fecit militem ad suum accersiri colloquium, et diligenter sciscitabatur ab eo quis et unde fuisse. At ille cum timore regi respondens dixit, 'Domine,' inquit, 'homo vester ligius sum, sicut omnes antecessores mei fuerunt;' et narrationem incipiens retulit coram rege quo ordine cum venatione deprehensus exhaeredatus fuerat et cum sua familia exulatus. Dixit ergo rex ad militem, 'Fecistine aliquando in vita tua boni aliquid ad sanctæ crucis reverentiam et honorem?' At miles de actibus suis præteritis sollicite cogitans regi rem, quam egerat ob Crucifixi reverentiam, enarravit.

*Quomodo miles inimico pepercit pro reverentia  
Crucifixi.*

Legend  
concerning  
Richard I.

'Pater meus,' inquit, 'et aliis quidam miles villam quandam inter se dimidiabant, quam jure haereditario possidebant; et, cum pater meus in omnibus divitiis abundaret, alias e contra miles semper pauper erat et egenus, contra patrem meum invidia ductus paratis insidiis interfecit eum. Ego autem, qui tunc puer eram, cum annos viriles attigissem et in haereditate paterna confirmatus fuisse, cogitavi immutabiliter in ultionem patris mei militem illum interficere; sed ille super his præmunitus per annos plurimos ab insidiis, quas ei studiose paraveram, se cal-

lide custodivit. Tandem cum in die Parasceues, A.D. 1232.  
qua crucem subiit Christus Jesus pro salute  
mundi, ad ecclesiam properarem servitium audi-  
turus, vidi inimicum præcedere me, ut similiter  
ad ecclesiam iret. Festinavi post tergum ejus,  
ut eum interficerem gladio educto ; sed ille casu  
retro respiciens, cum me rapido cursu advenire  
conspiceret, ad crucem quandam, quæ secus viam  
stabat, confugit, quia nimia senectute gravatus  
se defendere non valebat. Et cum illum, qui  
lignum crucis inter brachia tenebat amplexum,  
erecto gladio vellem perimere et cerebrum effun-  
dere, adjuravit me per nomen Crucifixi illius,  
qui in ligno crucis eo die pro totius mundi salute  
pependit, ne eum interficerem, votum faciens et  
firmiter promittens, quod pro anima patris mei,  
quem occidit, capellanum unum assignaret in  
perpetuum, qui missam diebus singulis celebra-  
ret. Ego autem senem illum videns lachryman-  
tem, commotus sum ad pietatem, et sic, ob amo-  
rem et reverentiam Illius, qui pro salute mea et  
omnium crucem ascendit et eam suo sanguine  
sanctissimo consecravit, mortem patris mei militi  
condonavi.' Tunc rex militi respondens ait, 'Sa-  
pienter,' inquit, 'egisti, quia Crucifixus ille tibi  
nunc vicem pro vice sufficienter persolvit ;' et ad-  
vocans episcopos et barones, qui aderant, revela-  
vit audientibus cunctis visionem, quam rex ipse  
solus viderat, quomodo, scilicet, imago Crucifixi  
ad singulas militis genuflexiones caput cum collo  
humiliter inclinavit. Et rex continuo ad se vo-  
cans cancellarium suum præcepit, ut per literas  
suas patentes vicecomiti, quem miles sibi nomi-  
naret, daret in mandatis, quatenus, visis literis,  
militi terram suam redderet totam in eo statu  
quo illam recepit quando illum a patria exu-  
lavit.

*De patientia regis in persecutionibus.*

A.D. 1232.  
Piety of  
Richard I.

Nec illud de virtutibus magnifici regis loquentes credimus negligendum, quod statim coronatus in regem rectam semper justitiam cunctis exhibuit, pro munere nunquam judicium subverti permisit. Episcopatus et abbatias vacantes continuo et absque venalitate viris canonice electis concessit, nec eas aliquando sub laicorum custodia deputavit; prælatos omnes ordinatos, et præcipue viros religiosos, honoravit, et pro reverentia Jesu Christi eos offendere adeo metuit, ut tempore quodam, cum ad mandatum domini papæ omnes prælati totius regni coram rege congregati fuissent, ut partem vicesimam mobilium suorum ad subventionem terre sanctæ concederent, et seorsum sederent super præfato negotio colloquentes, rex ait Galfrido filio-Petri et Willelmo Briwerre, qui apud pedes ejus sedebant, voce demissa, 'Videtis prælatos illos, qui ibi sedent?' 'Videmus, domine,' inquiunt; et rex ad eos, 'Si scirent,' inquit, 'quomodo eos ob reverentiam Dei timeo, et quam invite offenderem illos, ipsi me conculcarent quemadmodum conculcatur calceamentum vetus et dejectum.' Netaendum est etiam, quomodo regni nuper adepti delicias pro amore Regis æterni relinquens thesauros patris sui ac proprios in obsequio Crucifixi et terræ sanctæ liberatione effundere curavit, et quam potenter terram promissionis totam, præter civitatem sanctam Hierusalem, de manibus inimicorum crucis extorsit. Ubi deficientibus sibi thesauris, terram sub treugis triennalibus constituens, a Salaadino impetravit, ut sacerdos quidam, usque ad treugas elapsas, apud Dominicum sepulchrum de cruce missam diebus singulis ad regis stipendia celebraret;

et in hunc modum recedens rex ad terminum A.D. 1232.  
treugarum resumptis viribus thesaurisque mul-  
tiplicatis redire disposuit, relictis regno et re-  
bus omnibus, quibus dominabatur in partibus  
occidentis, ut in sancta civitate Hierusalem in  
regem coronatus prælia domini Sabaoth præ-  
liaretur et agmina præiret, et crucis inimicos,  
dum viveret, debellaret. Sed humani generis  
inimicus, qui bonis semper operibus invidet et  
prosperitatibus populi Christiani, excitavit con-  
tra regem devotum ducem Austriae et impera-  
torem Romanum, qui illi revertenti paraverunt  
insidias; captus est ab hostibus, et, velut bos  
esset vel asinus, venditus est imperatori Ro-  
mano. Incarceratus autem, et secus quam de-  
ceret tantum virum malitiose tractatus, ad red-  
emptionem gravissimam est compulsus. Rex  
præterea Francorum, magnifici regis pium præ-  
pediens propositum, terras ejus, dum esset in  
servitio crucis, invasit; et sic undique ab inimi-  
cis præventus martyrium, quod nondum suscep-  
rat in corpore, sicut proposuerat, in terra promis-  
sionis, servavit in mente, qui desiderium habuit  
revertendi et mori in obsequio crucis. Accessit  
ad cumulum adhuc tentationum ejusdem regis,  
quod, dum esset in obsequio crucis, comes Johannes,  
frater ejus, moliebatur Angliam subjugare,  
castella quædam obsidendo et fratri suo guerram  
movendo, sed laudabili fidelitate gentis Anglo-  
rum propositum illius frivolum exstitit et inani-  
ter attentatum. O admiranda magnifici regis  
constantia! quæ nunquam in adversis potuit  
frangi, sicut nec in prosperis extolli, sed omni-  
bus semper hilarem exhibens vultum nunquam  
in rege apparuit diffidentiæ signum. Hæc et his  
similia virtutum opera regem nostrum Richar-  
dum coram summo Deo reddiderant gloriosum,

A.D. 1232.  
Piety of  
Richard I.

unde nunc merito, cum venisset tempus misericordie Dei, de locis, ut credimus, poenitibus translatus est ad regna sine fine mansura, ubi militi reposita est a rege Christo, cui fideliter servivit, corona justitiae, quam repromisit Deus diligentibus se. Gaudent de ejus societate sancti illi, quorum sanctas redemit reliquias a Salaadino in terra promissionis pro quinquaginta duobus bizantiorum millibus, pacto interposito cum eisdem sanctis, ut apud Deum in suprema necessitate sua suis eum intercessionibus adjuvarent. Erant enim reliquiæ memoratae in quatuor eburneis collectæ capsellis, tempore captionis terræ sanctæ ac crucis reverendæ ab infidelibus Saracenis, per totam Judeam et Galilæam, et erant singulæ capsellæ tantæ magnitudinis ac ponderositatis, ut vix a quatuor hominibus portarentur. Sed hæc superius in gestis hujus regis Richardi latius referuntur.

*De distractione frugum clericorum Romanorum.*

Riots against  
the Italian  
clergy.

Eodem anno distracta sunt horrea Romanorum per totam fere Angliam, a viris quibusdam armatis et adhuc <sup>1</sup>ignotis, bonis conditionibus et ad commodum multorum; et opus, licet temerarium, in solennitate Paschali inchoantes, sine contradictione et libere, quod inceperant, compleverunt. Largas eleemosynas advenientibus distribuebant egenis, et quandoque nummos inter pauperes seminantes eos colligere hortabantur. Delituerunt clerici Romani in abbatis, de injuriis sibi illatis murmurare non audentes, quia elegerunt potius res suas amittere, quam puniri sententia capitali. Erant autem hujus temeritatis auctores viri quasi quater viginti et

<sup>1</sup> Ignotis.] ‘Per quosdam satellites blada Romanorum violenter excussa venderentur,’ Chron. Dunst. p. 207.

quandoque minus, qui, magistrum habentes Wil- A.D. 1232.  
lelmum quendam, <sup>1</sup>cognomento Wither, ejus per  
omnia obtemperabant præceptis. Sed cum post  
modicum tempus hæc, quæ facta fuerant, ad  
summi pontificis notitiam pervenerunt, indigna-  
tus est valde, et misit <sup>2</sup>literas ad regem Anglo-  
rum, mordaces nimis et increpatorias, quod tales  
in regno suo fieri permisit rapinas viris eccle-  
siasticis, non habens respectum ad sacramenta,  
quæ juraverat tempore coronationis suæ, non so-  
lum de pace ecclesiæ manutenenda, verum etiam  
de recta justitia tam clericis quam laicis conser-  
vanda. Mandavit igitur in eisdem literis regi,  
sub poena excommunicationis et interdicti firmi-  
ter præcipiens, quatenus, diligent facta inquisi-  
tione, si quos hujus violentiæ inveniret auctores,  
tam graviter puniret obnoxios, ut ex poena illo-  
rum cæteris metum incuteret et terrorem. De-  
dit etiam Petro, Wintonensi episcopo, et abbatii  
sancti Eadmundi per literas in mandatis, ut in  
australi parte Angliæ, facta inquisitione dili-  
genti, quoscumque hujus rei invenirent culpa-  
biles, tamdiu denuntiarent eos excommunicatos  
quousque Romam venirent a sede apostolica ab-  
solvendi ; similiter in parte regni aquilonari ar-  
chiepiscopo Eboracensi, episcopo Dunelmensi et  
Johanni, natione Romano et Eboraci canonico,  
idem papa, eadem inquisitione commissa, præ-  
cepit, ut illius violentiæ transgressores Romam  
mitteret absolvendos, appellatione non obstante.

<sup>1</sup> *Cognomento Wither.*] His real name, as it appears below, was Robert de Twenge. In the Fine Rolls, 29 Hen. III., is a writ to the sheriff of Yorkshire, ordering him to make a return of the value of all the land and cattle belonging to Robert de Twenge in his bailiwick.

<sup>2</sup> *Literas.*] Rymer, tom. i. p. 204; see above, p. 232, note.

*De inquisitione facta super distractione p̄fata.*

A.D. 1232.  
Inquiry in-  
stituted by  
command of  
the pope.

Facta igitur inquisitione de violentia memorata, tam a rege quam ab episcopis et exsecutoribus prædictis, et sacramento mediante cum examinationibus et testibus productis, inventi sunt multi transgressores, quidam de facto, quidam de consensu, quorum nonnulli episcopi erant et clerici regis, cum quibusdam archidiaconis ac decanis, militibus etiam et laicis multis. Quidam vero vicecomites et eorum præpositi et ministri pro eodem excessu, rege jubente, capti sunt et incarcerati, et alii præ timore sibi per fugam consulentes a quærentibus non fuerunt inventi. Principalis autem domini regis justiciarius Hubertus de Burgo ex hoc arguitur fuisse transgressor, quod prædonibus illis tam literas regis patentes quam proprias exhibuerat, ne quis eos de p̄fata violentia præpediret. Venit præterea ad regem inter cæteros Robertus de Tuinge, miles strenuus, qui aliis consentientibus fruges Romanorum vendiderat et Willelmum Wither se fecerat appellari, quinque servientes armatos et hujus violentiæ auctores circumduxerat, protestans manifeste, quod in odium Romanorum et causa justæ ultionis transgressus fuerat, qui per sententiam Romani pontificis et fraude manifesta nitebantur eum ab unica, quam habuit, ecclesia spoliare; addidit etiam, quod maluit ad tempus injuste excommunicari, quam a suo beneficio sine judicio spoliari. Tunc rex et exsecutores præfati militi dederunt consilium, ut, qui in canonem latæ sententiæ inciderat, Romam absolvendus properaret, et jus suum coram domino papa protestaretur et quod ecclesiam juste pariter et canonice possidebat; dedit etiam ei rex literas ad papam testimoniales de jure suo, de-

precans obnixe, ut militem illius intuitu ex- A.D. 1232.  
audiret.

*Quomodo electio prioris Cantuariensis Romæ fuerit  
reprobata.*

Venit eodem tempore Romam prior Johannes, electus Cantuariensis, in hebdomada Pentecostes, et, cum literas suæ electionis domino papæ exhibuisset, præcepit magistro Johanni de <sup>1</sup>Columna et aliis quibusdam cardinalibus, ut examinaret illum, si dignus esset ad culmen hujusmodi promoveri; qui, cum examinassent per triduum electum illum in decem et novem, ut dicitur, articulis diligenter, protestati sunt coram domino papa, se causam in ipso legitimæ recusationis non invenisse. Veruntamen visum est domino papæ in electo memorato, quod nimis esset senex et simplex et ad tantam insufficiens dignitatem; et cum persuasisset ei, ut cederet, electus humiliter factæ electioni renuntiavit et licentiam petiit ad propria revertendi. Tunc papa, concessa licentia monachis, ipsis præcepit ut alium talem eligerent, cui onus suum communicare et curam posset committere pastoralem.

*Quod rex Anglorum quosdam ministros suos a suis  
removit officiis.*

Circa dies istos Loelinus, princeps Wallensis, fines baronum Angliæ ingressus cœpit, more solito, vacare incendiis ac rapinis. Accesserunt itaque ad regem Anglorum Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, et alii consiliarii ejusdem regis, dicentes, magnum coronæ suæ fore scandulum, quod Wallenses, nullius momenti latrones,

Election of  
the prior of  
Canterbury  
refused by  
the pope.

<sup>1</sup> *Columna.*] The MS. reads erroneously ‘Columba.’

A.D. 1232.

annis singulis terras suas et baronum suorum impune pervagantes et incendio cuncta depopulantes nihil relinquunt intactum; quibus rex respondit, 'Audivi,' inquit, 'a thesaurariis meis, quod redditus omnes de scaccario meo vix mihi sufficient ad simplicem victum et vestitum et eleemosynas<sup>1</sup> consuetas, unde paupertas non permittit, ut bellicas expediam actiones. Tunc consiliarii regi responderunt, 'Si pauper es,' inquiunt, 'tibi imputes, qui honores et custodias ac dignitates vacantes ita in alios transfers et a fisco alienas, quod nec in divitiis auri vel argenti, sed solo nomine, rex debeas appellari; nam antecessores vestri, reges magnifici et in omni divitiarum gloria ditissimi, non aliunde, sed ex regni exitibus et emolumentis, thesauros impregnabiles congesserunt.' At rex ab eis instructus, quos nominatim exprimere nefas esset, et contumeliis provocatus, cœpit a vicecomitibus et ballivis aliisque ministris suis de redditibus et rebus omnibus ad fisci commodum spectantibus ratiocinium exigere, et quoslibet de fraude convictos a suis officiis deponens exegit ab eis pecuniam suam etiam cum usuris, et tenens coarctabat eos, donec redderent debitum universum. Rannulphum etiam, cognomento Britannum, cameræ sue thesaurarium, ab officio deponens cepit ab illo mille libras argenti, et loco illius substituit Petrum de <sup>2</sup>Rivallis, genere Pictavensem. Et sic undique loculos rex jejunos in brevi, licet non plena gravidos crapula, reparavit.

<sup>1</sup> *Eleemosynas consuetas.*] It appears from the Pipe Rolls, that there were yearly pensions to several monasteries; Tyr., ii. p. 874.  
<sup>2</sup> *Rivallis.*] 'Orivalis' in MS., but marked for correction.

*Quod rex ab Huberto justiciario ratiocinium exegit.*

Per<sup>1</sup> idem tempus rex, per consilium Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, Hubertum de Burgo, proto-justiciarum regni, ab officio suo removit, et Stephanum de Segrave, militem, solo nomine subrogavit, quarto kalendas Augusti; et post dies paucos rex, contra Hubertum nuper depositum perturbatus, exegit instanter ab eo ratiocinium de thesauris suis ad scaccarium suum redditis, et de debitibus, quae ei debebantur de tempore patris sui et de tempore suo. Item exegit de dominicis suis rationem, de quibus fuit de possessione die obitus Willelmi comitis Pembroc, tunc justiciarii et marescalli sui, qui ea teneant et habeant in Anglia, Wallia, Hibernia et Pictavia; item de libertatibus, quas habuit tunc temporis in forestis, warennis, comitatibus et aliis locis, qualiter custoditæ sint vel alienatæ; item de quintadecima et sextadecima et aliis redditis, tam ad scaccarium suum, quam ad Novum Templum Londoniarum et alibi. Item de prisis factis pro jure suo relaxando, tam in terris quam in mobilibus; item de ipsis, quæ ipse rex amisit per negligentiam Huberti; item de vastis factis sine commodo ipsius regis, tam per guerram quam alio modo; item de libertatibus, quibus idem Hubertus usus est in terris sibi datis, et episcopatibus et custodiis, sine warranto, quæ pertinent ad dominum regem; item de injuriis et damnis illatis, et clericis Romanis et Italicis, et nuntiis domini papæ, contra voluntatem domini regis, per auctoritatem ipsius Huberti tunc justiciarii, qui nullum consilium voluit apponere ut illa corrigerentur, quod fa-

A.D. 1232.  
The Justici-  
ary removed  
from his  
office.

<sup>1</sup> *Per idem tempus.*] Waverl. Annal. p. 194; Chron. Dunst. p. 208.

A.D. 1232. cere tenebatur ratione officii sui ad justiciarum pertinentis ; item de pace regis, qualiter sit custodita, tam versus homines terræ suæ Angliæ, Hiberniæ, Wasconiæ et Pictaviæ, quam alios extraneos ; item de scutagiis, carrucagiis, donis et xeniis, sive custodiarum exitibus, spectantibus ad coronam, quid inde actum sit ; item de maritagiis, quæ rex Johannes dimisit in custodia ipsius in die quo obiit, et de aliis maritagiis sibi traditis tempore suo. Ad hæc respondit Hubertus, quod chartam habuit patris sui, per quam ipsum absolvit ab omni ratiocinio de rebus perceptis et percipiendis de thesauris suis, qui ejus fidelitatem in tantum expertus fuerat, quod noluit ab eo ratiocinium audire. Tunc dixit Petrus, Wintoniensis antistes, quod talis charta post obitum regis Johannis non habebat vigorem ; unde ad hunc regem non pertinere proposuit de charta patris sui, quin rationem exigat de prædictis. Hæc sunt quasi levia quædam, de quibus rex rationem ab Huberto exegit ; sed sequuntur gravia plura, in quibus idem Hubertus arguitur quasi de crimine læsæ majestatis, quæ sunt haec ;

*De quibusdam criminibus a rege Huberto justiciario objectis.*

Charges  
against  
Hubert de  
Burgh.

Proposuit<sup>1</sup> contra Huberum idem rex, quod, cum nuntios solennes misisset ad ducem Austriæ, filiam ejus petens in uxorem, scripsit eidem duci Hubertus per literas in præjudicium ipsius regis et regni, dissuadens ne illi filiam suam matrimonio copularet. Item proposuit, quod, cum militarem expeditionem duxisset ad partes trans-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Proposuit contra Huberum.]* as recorded by Paris in the Ad-  
Compare the charges which were ditamenta, p. 149.  
afterwards brought against him,

marinas, ut terras revocaret amissas, idem Hubertus dissuasit ne rex Normanniam intraret hostiliter vel in alias terras ad jus suum spec-  
A.D. 1232.  
Charges  
against  
Hubert de  
Burgh.  
 tantes; unde thesaurum suum inaniter consumpsit ibidem, et magnates illi, qui cum ipso erant. Item arguit eum rex, quod filiam regis Scotorum, quam rex Johannes tradidit illi in custodiā, ut eam sibi matrimonio sociaret, ipse proditiōse concubuit cum ea et sub fornicatione liberos generavit ex illa nobilemque puellam prostituit, et cum spe regni Scotorum, si fratrem superviveret, eam sibi substraxit. Dixit etiam rex, quod lapidem quendam pretiosum, qui talem habuit virtutem, quod nulli, qui eum portaret in bello, vinci potuisset, ipse de thesauro suo furtive gemmam sustulit, et eam Loelino inimico suo, regi Walliae, proditiōse transmisit. Item ei imposuit, quod per literas, quas Loelino principi Walliarum transmiserat, suspensus erat ut latro vir nobilis, Willelmus de Brausia, et proditiōse peremptus. Hæc omnia, sive in veritate, sive malitiosa mendacitate, sunt domino regi ab æmulis præfati Huberti suggesta, quæ rex instantia vehementi ab eodem Huberto exegit sibi, juxta curiæ suæ judicium, emendari. Tunc Hubertus in arcto positus, cum aliud remedium non haberet, postulavit inducias deliberandi super præmissis, asserens, res magnas esse et arduas, quas rex proposuit contra ipsum; et sic, induciis vix a rege commoto concessis usque ad exaltationem sanctæ Crucis, Hubertus nimis perterritus ad Meretonie prioratum ab urbe Londoniarum divertit. Sic Hubertus, qui prius, ob regis amorem et regni defensionem, omnium Angliæ magnatum in se provocaverat odium, nunc a rege desertus, absque amicis, fit solus et omni solatio destitutus; solus Lucas, Dublinensis ar-

A.D. 1232. chiepiscopus, instantissimis precibus et lachrymis rogavit regem pro eo, sed non potuit in tantis excessibus exaudiri.

*De quibusdam enormibus, qua justiciario objiciebantur.*

Charges  
against  
Hubert de  
Burgh.

Cumque vidissent multi, quod favor principis contra Hubertum, quem prius quasi singulariter dilexerat, fuerat permutatus in odium, insurrexerunt ei qui oderunt eum, multa enormia ei imponentes. Dixerunt enim quidam in eum, quod duos nobiles viros, Willelmum comitem Saresbiriensem, et Willelmum Marescallum, comitem Penbroc, veneno procuravit necari, et simili scelere Falcasium atque Richardum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, interfecit. Cives vero Londonienses coram rege querimoniam proposuerunt, quod Hubertus saepe dictus Constantinum concivem suum fecerat sine judicio et injuste suspendi, de quo excessu postulant sibi justitiam exhiberi; unde factum est, quod rex fecit per civitatem Londoniarum communi edicto proclamare, ut omnes, qui habebant querelam contra Hubertum de quacumque injuria, venirent ad regem justitiam illoco recepturi. At Hubertus, cum talia cognovisset, ad ecclesiam Meritoniae fugit inter canonicos pavidus delitescens. Eodem anno, tempore autumnali, electus est magister <sup>1</sup>Johannes, cognomento Blundus, clericus, apud Oxonię in theologia studens, in archiepiscopum Can-

<sup>1</sup> Johannes, cognomento Blundus.] He was refused consecration to the see of Canterbury, on the plea that he held against the canons two benefices, and had received money from the bishop of Winchester both before and after his election; see below, p. 207. ‘Verior tamen causa fuit,

quod maxime fovebat partes regis Johannis, cum utriusque gladii dominium sibi vindicaret;’ Wood, Hist. Oxon. 1674, i. p. 87. According to Godwin, his Christian name was Richard; who states that he was afterwards, in 1245, promoted to the see of Exeter.

tuariensem ; qui a rege susceptus cum monachis quibusdam Cantuariensis Romam profectus est, ut electionem suam confirmari a sede apostolica impetraret.

*De quadragesima regi concessa, et quomodo Hubertus de [Burgo] ad Mertonam fugit.*

Convenerunt tempestate eadem apud Lambethiam ad colloquium, in exaltatione sanctae Crucis, coram rege, episcopi et alii ecclesiarum praefati cum proceribus regni, ubi concessa est regi pro debitis, quibus comiti Britanniæ tenebatur astrictus, quadragesima pars rerum mobilium ab episcopis, abbatibus, prioribus, clericis et laicis,

A tax of a  
fortieth on all  
moveables  
granted.

sicut ea habuerunt, frugibus congregatis, in autumno, anno regni ejusdem regis decimo sexto. Hubertus quoque de Burgo, cui datus fuerat a rege terminus ille ad respondendum super articulis et exactionibus supradictis, iram regis nimis habens suspectam non ausus est comparere, suggestum enim ei fuerat, quod rex habuit consilium illum morte turpissima condernare ; unde ad pacem ecclesiæ confugiens apud Meritonam inter canonicos delituit, donec sibi aura felicior arrideret. Sed tandem cum rex ei significasset, ut veniret ad curiam suam juri pariturus, nuntiavit regi, quod iram ejus habens suspectam ad ecclesiam confugerat, quæ ultimum remedium est omnibus injuriam patientibus, et quod inde non exiret, donec illius animum in melius cognosceret immutatum. Tunc rex in iram versus significavit per literas majori Londoniarum, jam hora instante vespertina, quatenus statim visis literis, conjunctis sibi universis civibus urbis, qui arma movere possent, iret ad Meritonam hostiliter, et Huber-

to Hubert flies  
to Merton  
priory;

um de Burgo vivum sibi seu mortuum præsentaret.

A.D. 1232. At major, signo communi pulsato, fecit convenire populum civitatis, et, coram eis regis literis perfectis, præcepit omnibus, ut convolarent ad arma et regium summo mane exsequerentur edictum. Cives autem, cum hujusmodi literas intellexissent, gavisi sunt valde, quia Hubertum mortali <sup>1</sup> odio perstringebant, et in crastino ante lucem exeuntes ab urbe ad viginti millia armatorum versus Meritonam vexilla moverunt et arma, ut mandatum regium prosequerentur effectu. Sed, dum hæc agerentur, suggestum fuit regi a comite Cestrensi, quod, si talem excitaret seditionem in vulgo irrationabili et fatuo, posset rex timere, ne seditionem semel inchoatam sedare non valeret cum vellet; et sic, mutato consilio, rex majori nuntiavit, ut promotum exercitum illico revocaret. At cives animo nimis consternati, reversi sunt in civitatem negotio imperfecto.

*Quomodo Hubertus de Burgo de quadam capella extractus in turri Londoniensi retruditur.*

takes refuge  
in Borsars  
church;

Post hæc archiepiscopus Dublinensis multis precibus impetravit a rege inducias Huberto sœpe dicto usque ad octavas Epiphaniæ, ut tempus haberet deliberandi super exactionibus præmissis, quæ urgentissimæ fuerunt, ut, habita deliberatione, regi posset rationabiliter respondere et satisfacere competenter. Tunc Hubertus, accepta, ut credebat, securitate per literas regis patentes, iter arripuit ad sanctum Ead-

<sup>1</sup> *Odio perstringebant.*] Paris here adds, that some more prudent citizens, headed by Andrew Bakerel and John Travers, determined, before proceeding to extremities, to obtain the bishop of Winchester's advice as to what they should do. Accordingly

they went to his palace, and, waking him 'a somno stupido,' sought his counsel; his answer was, that on either hand it was a bad business, ('durum hinc, dirum inde,') but that they must obey the king's orders.

mundum, ubi uxor ejus morabatur, et transiens A.D. 1232.  
per Essexiam hospitatus est in villa quadam,  
quæ ad jus pertinet episcopi Norwicensis, in  
domibus episcopi supradicti; quod factum cum  
regi relatum fuisset, ira vehementi incanduit,  
metuens, si Hubertus ita recederet, perturbati-  
onem machinaretur in regno; unde facti poeni-  
tens misit post eum Godefridum de Crauecumbe,  
militem, cum trecentis armatis, præcipiens sub  
pœna suspensionis, quatenus illum captum re-  
ducerent et in turri Londonensi vinctum incar-  
cerarent. At illi cum festinatione profecti invene-  
runt Hubertum <sup>1</sup> in quadam capella hospitio suo  
vicina, crucem in una manu Dominicam et in al-  
tera corpus Domini bajulantem; erat enim præ-  
munitus de adventu quærerentium animam ejus,  
et surgens de stratu soporatus ad capellam nu-  
dus confugit. At Godefridus supradictus cum  
sociis armatis capellam ingressus præcepit ex  
ore regis, ut exiret de capella et veniret Lon-  
donias cum rege locuturus; sed cum Hubertus is dragged from the altar;  
respondit, quod nullo modo exiret, Godefridus  
et ejus complices rapuerunt de manibus illius  
crucem et Dominicum corpus, et vinculis illum  
constringentes arctissimis equo imposuerunt, et  
ad turrim Londoniarum ipsum ducentes posue-  
runt in carcere compeditum. Quo facto, nun-  
tiaverunt regi quod factum fuerat; et ille, qui  
pervigil eorum exspectabat adventum, latus stra-  
tum petivit.

*Quomodo idem Hubertus reductus est ad capellam.*

Mane autem facto, cum Rogerus, Londonien-  
sis antistes, cognovisset quo ordine Hubertus  
extractus fuerat de capella, venit celer ad regem,

by the inter-  
ference of  
the bishop  
of London  
returned  
thither.

<sup>1</sup> *In quadam capella.*] According to the Dunst. Chron., the church of Boisars, p. 208.

A.D. 1223.  
Case of the  
justiciary.

increpans illum audacter, quod pacem sanctæ ecclesiæ violaverat, dixitque, quod, nisi ipsum cum festinatione a vinculis liberatum remitteret ad capellam, a qua erat violenter ejectus, ipse omnes hujus violentiæ auctores excommunicatio-nis sententia innodaret. Rex autem, licet invit-us, reatum suum intelligens remisit Hubertum ad capellam, et, ubi captus fuerat a militibus armatis, restituitur ab eisdem quinto kalendas Octobris ; quo facto, rex dedit vicecomitibus Hertfordiæ et Essexiæ in mandatis sub poena sus-pensionis, quatenus in propriis personis et cum omnibus hominibus duorum comitatum capel-lam obsidione vallarent, et ne Hubertus evade-ret, vel a quoquam cibum acciperet, explorarent. At vicecomites præfati, sicut eis præceptum fu-erat, ad locum venientes capellam cum domo episcopi, quæ prope erat, obsidentes, cinxerunt capellam et locum per gyrum fossato lato satis et alto, <sup>1</sup>decernentes ibi quadraginta dierum ex-cubias observare. Et Hubertus hæc omnia æqua-nimiter ferens, puram habens conscientiam, ut dicebat, causam suam Domino commendabat ; rogans jugiter divinam clementiam, quatenus illum ab instanti periculo liberaret, sicut ipse super omnia honorem regis semper dilexerat ea-tenus et salutem. Sed rex ipsius meritis male respondens, cui tanto servierat studio, quod regi soli sibi placere sufficiebat, nunc in tali statu constitutus est, quod rex omnibus generaliter prohibuit, ne quis pro eo rogaret vel de Huberto

<sup>1</sup> *Decernentes.*] ‘Ubi, eo per quadraginta dies moram faciente, comitatus Essexiæ capellam ob-sedit, et ad modum castelli fossata circumfodit ;’ Chron. Dunst. p. 208. The reader will find an

account of the pursuit and cap-ture of the fallen justiciary in the record concerning him taken from the Patent Rolls ; Rymer, i. p. 208.

in ejus præsentia ficeret mentionem. Sed tamen A.D. 1232  
 Lucas, archiepiscopus Dublinensis, qui unicus ei  
 erat amicus, regi pro eo cum lachrymis inces-  
 santer supplicabat, ut saltem quid sibi placeret  
 de Huberto facere intimaret ; cui rex respon-  
 disse fertur, ut ex multis eligeret unum, vel in  
 æternum Angliam abjurare, vel perpetuum car-  
 cerem subire, vel palam se esse proditorem con-  
 fiteri, vel se in regis ponere voluntate. Ad hæc  
 respondit Hubertus, quod nullum horum eligeret  
 articulorum, ut qui consilium regis nimis habe-  
 bat suspectum, quia nihil se fecisse recolit tanta  
 confusione dignum ; veruntamen, ut domino suo  
 regi satisfaciat, libenter ad tempus exiret a regno,  
 sed illud non abjurabit. Morabatur autem post-  
 ea Hubertus in capella præfata multis diebus et  
 noctibus obscessus cum duobus servientibus, qui  
 ei victualia ministrabant, donec ex præcepto re-  
 gis subtracta ei fuerunt omnia cibariorum ge-  
 nera et servientes ejus de capella ejecti. Tunc Surrenders himself to the sheriff.  
 Hubertus in arcto positus, cum fame perire sibi  
 turpe videretur, sponte de capella exivit, offerens  
 se vicecomitibus, qui illum observabant ; dixit  
 enim, se potius velle regis misericordiam expe-  
 riri, quam fame detestanda perire. Tunc vincu-  
 lis arctioribus constrinxerunt illum vicecomites  
 saepe dicti et equo illum imponentes duxerunt  
 ad urbem Londoniarum, ubi, rege jubente, sub  
 arcta custodia deputatur in turri compedibus  
 mancipatus.

*De collectione quadragesimæ rerum mobilium regi  
 concessarum.*

‘ Henricus,<sup>1</sup> Dei gratia rex Anglorum, Petro Writ for collecting the tax on moveables.

<sup>1</sup> *Henricus.*] This writ is also | Col. 16 H. III. m. 2. *dors.* Tyrrell,  
 upon record in the Tower, R. ii. p. 877.

A.D. 1232.  
Writ for  
collecting  
the tax on  
moveables.

de Thaneo, Willelmo de Culeworthe et Adæ filio Willelmi, collectoribus quadragesimæ, salutem. Sciatis, quod archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores et clerici, terras habentes, quæ ad ecclesiæ suas non pertinent, comites, barones, milites, liberi homines et villani de regno nostro, concederunt nobis in auxilium quadragesimam partem omnium mobilium suorum apparentium, sicut ea habuerunt in crastino sancti Matthæi anno regni nostri decimo sexto, videlicet, quod de bladis, carrucis, ovibus, vaccis, porcis, haraciis, equis carretariis et deputatis ad wainnagum in maneriis, exceptis bonis, quæ prædicti archiepiscopi, episcopi et aliæ personæ ecclesiasticæ habent de ecclesiis parochialibus et de ecclesiis præbendatis, et præbendis, et terris ad præbendas pertinentibus et ecclesiis parochiales spectantibus. Provisum est generaliter a prædictis fidelibus nostris, quod prædicta quadragesima hoc modo assideatur et colligatur; quod, videlicet, de qualibet villa integra eligantur quatuor de melioribus et legalioribus hominibus, una cum præpositis singularum villarum, per quorum sacramentum quadragesima pars omnium mobilium prædictorum taxetur et assideatur super singulos in præsentia militum assessorum ad hoc assignatorum; et postea per sacramentum duorum legalium hominum earundem villarum inquiratur et assideatur quadragesima omnium mobilium, quæ prædicti quatuor homines et præpositi habent; et districte inbrevietur et aperte, de cuius vel de quorum baronia qualibet villa fuerit in parte vel in toto. Et, postquam quadragesima fuerit assisa et in scriptum redacta, rotulus omnium particularum de singulis villis et singulis comitatibus liberetur senescallo singulorum baronum, vel attornato ipsius senescallii, vel

ballivo libertatis, ubi aliquis libertatem habuerit, scilicet, quod baro vel dominus libertatis velit et possit prædictam quadragesimam colligere et pro ea habenda distringere; si vero non velit, vel non possit, vicecomites distinctionem faciant prædictam, ita quod nil inde recipient, sed tota quadragesima prædicta prædictis militibus assessoribus liberetur in majori et securiori villa singulorum comitatuum. Et de qualibet villa fiat summa tallia inter senescallum baronis, vel ejus attornatum, vel senescallos domini libertatis, et prædictos assessores. Et deponatur pecunia per eosdem assessores in aliquo loco tutiori ejusdem villæ, ita quod assessores habeant sigilla sua et seras et claves suas super pecuniam prædictam, et vicecomites similiter sigilla sua et seras et claves suas. Et assessores, statim ex quo quadragesima assisa fuerit per ipsos, mittant rotulos suos ad scaccarium de toto itinere suo; et similiter, ex quo dicta pecunia ab eis collecta fuerit, mittant rotulos suos ad scaccarium de recepta sua, et prædicta pecunia reservetur in locis ubi deposita fuit, donec ad mandatum nostrum deferatur usque ad Novum Templum Londoniarum. Nihil autem capietur ab aliquo homine nomine quadragesimæ, qui non habuerit de hujusmodi bonis mobilibus ad valentiam quadraginta denariorum ad minus. Ad prædictam siquidem quadragesimam assiden-dam in comitatu Hertfordiæ assignavimus vos, et mandavimus vicecomiti nostro de Hertforde, quod singulas villafas comitatus sui certis diebus et locis, quos ei scire facietis, ad mandatum nostrum coram vobis venire faciat, et in omnibus, quæ ad dictum negotium pertinent, vobis intendant et obedient. Valete.'

*De morte Ranulphi, comitis Cestriæ.*

A.D. 1232.  
Death of  
Ralph, earl  
of Chester.

Eodem tempore Ranulphus, comes Cestrensis et Lincolniensis, apud Walingeford <sup>1</sup>diem clausit extremum quinto kalendas Novembris, cuius corpus delatum est apud Cestriam tumulandum. Successit ei in comitatum Cestrensem <sup>2</sup>Johannes nepos ejus ex sorore sua, quem genuit comes David, frater Willelmi, regis Scotorum; <sup>3</sup>alius autem nepos ejus ex sorore secunda Lincolniaæ obtinuit comitatum et de barone comes effectus est; comes quoque Arundel, alias nepos ejus, quingentas libratas terræ suscepit.

Circa hos quoque dies, instante festo beati Martini, suggestum fuit Anglorum regi, quod Hubertus, quondam justiciarius, apud Novum Templum habuit thesaurum non modicum sub eorundem Templariorum custodia deputatum. At rex magistrum Templi ad suum vocans colloquium sciscitabatur districtius ab eo si ita fuisset; at ille, non ausus regi veritatem negare, confessus est [quod] habebat pecuniam sibi ac fratribus suis fideliter commendatam, sed quantitatem et numerum penitus ignorabant. Tunc rex cum minis prædictam a fratribus exegit, ut pecuniam illam incontinenti sibi redderent, asserens eam de thesauro suo dolo fuisse subtrahitam; cui responderunt fratres, quod nulli pecuniam traderent sibi in fide commissam absque

<sup>1</sup> *Diem clausit extremum.*] Paris adds, that, when Hubert heard that one of his greatest enemies was dead, he exclaimed, ‘Proprietetur ei Dominus! Ille homo meus fuit de manibus suis, nec tamen unquam mihi profuit, ubi obesse potuit.’

<sup>2</sup> *Johannes.*] John le Scot, son of David earl of Huntingdon,

brother of William the Lion, king of Scotland, by Maud, sister and heir of the last earl. Nicolas, Synops. of the Peerage.

<sup>3</sup> *Alius . . . nepos.*] John de Lacy; he married Margaret, daughter and heir of Robert de Quincy, earl of Winchester, by Hawise, fourth sister and co-heir of the earl of Chester; *ibid.*

illius licentia, qui illam in Templo commenda- A.D. 1232.  
verat reservandam. At rex, quia pecunia me-  
morata sub protectione ecclesiæ fuerat deputata,  
non habuit consilium ut violentiam ingereret ;  
unde thesaurarium curiæ suæ, cum justiciaris  
suis de scaccario, misit ad Hubertum, qui jam  
tunc erat in turri Londinensi compeditus, ut  
pecuniam exigerent ab eo regi ex integro as-  
signandam. Nuntii autem prædicti cum Hu-  
berto ex parte regis talia præsentassent, respon-  
dit continuo, quod seipsum et sua omnia regis  
submitteret voluntati. Præcepit ergo, ut fra-  
tres militiae Templi claves omnes ex parte sua  
domino suo regi præsentarent, ut de rebus ibi  
deputatis suam faceret voluntatem ; quod cum  
factum fuisset, jussit rex pecuniam illam fideli-  
ter numeratam in suo reponi thesauro, et rerum  
omnium inventarum summam in scriptum redigi  
et suæ præsentiae exhiberi. Invenerunt autem  
clericci regis et thesaurarius cum eis in illo  
deposito octo millia libras argenti optimæ mo-  
netæ, septies viginti cupas aureas et argenteas  
bene deauratas, cum tanta pretiosorum lapidum  
ac nobilitate gemmarum, quod pretium rerum  
omnium inventarum, ut dicitur, excedebant. His  
itaque divulgatis, venerunt ad regem quidam, qui  
Hubertum persequi non cessabant, accusantes  
eum et dicentes, quod nunc de furto convictus et  
fraude dignus erat morte turpissima condemnari ;  
quibus rex respondit, ‘ Hubertus a pueritia prius  
avunculo meo regi Richardo, et postea regi Jo-  
hanni patri meo, satis servivit fideliter, ut au-  
divi, qui, si contra me male egerit, nunquam per  
me iniqua morte morietur ; malo enim rex fa-  
tuus reputari ac remissus, quam crudelis et ty-  
rannus ;’ et, his dictis, concessit Huberto omnes  
terras, quas ex dono patris sui vel ex emptione

A.D. 1232. possidebat, ut inde sibi ac suis necessaria prouideret. Et paulo post suscepérunt Hubertum sub fidejussione Richardus comes, frater regis, Willelmus comes Warenniæ, Richardus comes Marescallus et <sup>1</sup>Willelmus comes de Ferrariis, et missus a rege ad castellum de Divisis traditus est sub custodia quatuor militum prædicatorum comitum, ut sub libera custodia servaretur ibidem. Eodem anno, in crastino sancti Martini, audita sunt tonitrua horribilia, quæ vicissim per dies quindecim continuata multos terruerunt, et præcipue cives Londonienses, qui hanc pestem adeo habent familiarem, quod, si usquam sit in Anglia, ibi non desit; secutum est autem in regno Anglorum inter regem et barones miserabile dissidium, sicut sequens historia declarabit.

*De visitatione facta super viros cujuscumque religionis  
per orbem universum.*

The pope's  
bull for a  
general visi-  
tation of  
monasteries.

Hoc quoque anno papa Gregorius constituit visitatores super viros religiosos per orbem generaliter universum Christi nomine insignitum sub hac forma; 'Gregorius episcopus, venerabilibus fratibus suffraganeis ecclesie Cantuariensis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Egressus a facie Dei Sathan, ad fortia manum mittens, de sua calliditate confisus vitiorum laqueis irretire molitur electos in sortem Dominicam evocatos, majores ibi parans ille tortuosus insidator insidias, ubi graviores conspexerit corruptelas. Sane cum frequenter ad nostram audientiam pervenisset, quod monasteria Cantuariensis provinciae in spiritualibus enormiter et tempora-

---

<sup>1</sup> Willelmus comes de Ferrariis.] Lincoln and constable of Chester; Rym. i. p. 208.  
The writ above alluded to, for Lord Ferrers, has John, earl of

libus per malitiam et incuriam in eis habitantibus sunt collapsa, nos culpas eorum nolentes A.D. 1332.  
 The pope's  
 bull for the  
 visitation of  
 monasteries.

ulterius sub dissimulatione transire, ne, si eas dimiserimus incorrectas, ipsas nostras efficere videamur, monasteriis illis, quae ad Romanam ecclesiam nullo noscuntur medio pertinere, in eadem provincia constitutis, visitatores, reformatores et correctores, tam in capite quam in membris, deputavimus speciales; plenaria sibi potestate concessa, ut visitantes eadem monasteria vice nostra corrigant et reformat, quae in ipsis correctionis et reformationis officio noverint indigere, constitutionibus vel correctionibus aliis in provinciali capitulo rite factis in suo robore nihilominus duraturis. Licet autem nobis in plenitudinem potestatis assumptis cura cunctorum immineat generalis; quia tamen vos, qui vocati estis in partem sollicitudinis, super grege vobis commisso specialiter decet esse sollicitos et attentos, ne ovis morbida pereat; universitatem vestram monemus et hortamur, in virtute obedientiae districte vobis præcipiendo mandantes, quatenus singuli vestrum, tam in civitatibus quam in diocesibus vestris, per vos ipsos, aut per viros religiosos, qui experimento rerum in hujusmodi visitationibus sunt instructi, loca monachorum, monialium et canonicorum regularium, necnon secularium clericorum, vobis subiecta visitare curetis, tam auctoritate nostra quam vestra generaliter universa reformantes et corrigentes in capite et membris, omni gratia et timore postpositis, in eisdem quea reformanda noveritis et etiam corrigenda, salvis his, quae circa religiosos in provinciali capitulo provide sunt statuta juxta constitutionem concilii generalis, contradictores per censuram ecclesiasticam, appellatione postposita, compescendo; præcep-

A.D. 1232. tum nostrum taliter impleturi, quod ultionum Deus in illo tremendo judicio, qui unicuique juxta opera sua reddet, de manibus vestris non requirat sanguinem eorundem, et nos ad id limum correctionis apostolicæ apponere non cogamur. Data Spoleti, quinto idus Junii, pontificatus nostri anno sexto.'

*De visitatione facienda super ecclesiæ exemptas.*

Strictness  
of the  
visitation.

Aliis autem ecclesiis et viris religiosis, qui immediate ad Romanam spectabant ecclesiam, non episcopos, sed abbates, ordinis Cisterciensis maxime et Præmonstratensis, visitatores dedit, viros scilicet indiscretos et <sup>1</sup>nimir asperos, qui in hac visitatione ita insolenter et immisericorditer processerunt, quod in pluribus monasteriis rationis metas excedentes compulerunt multos ad remedium appellationis confugere ; qui Romanam profecti, post multas pecuniaæ effusiones et labores non modicos, visitatores alios impetrarunt. Et, ut tandem breviter dicatur, ista visitatio per orbem universum ad ordinis potius deformationem, quam reformationem, processit ; dum omnes, qui in diversis orbis partibus unicam beati Benedicti secuti fuerant regulam, per novas constitutiones ita inveniantur ubique discordes, quod ex omnibus cœnobiosis vel aliis virorum religiosorum ecclesiis vix duo habeantur in norma vivendi concordes. Verum abbas quidam Montis-belli, dum in hac visitatione procedere formidaret, consuluit dominum papam super dubiis quibusdam

<sup>1</sup> *Nimir asperos.*] In the Annal. Dunstab. is recorded the severity exercised by John, abbot of Boxley, and his colleagues, in carrying out the visitation of the monasteries of the Black Monks. The monks appealed to Rome,

but in vain. The abbot of Evesham escaped by declaring that monastery only exempt from the bishop of Worcester's visitation, and liable, therefore, to be visited by the archbishop of Canterbury; p. 214.

articulis, a quo, in forma procedendi, talem me- A.D. 1232.  
ruit habere responsonem ;

*De consultatione facta ad papam super visitationes  
praedictas.*

‘ Ea, quæ pro religionis honestate et religio- The pope's  
sorum salute provide ordinantur, apostolico sunt directions  
munimine roboranda, ut suscipiantur devotius et to the  
diligentius obseruentur. Cum ergo per dilectum visitors.  
filium abbatem Montis-belli quædam capitula no-  
bis fuerint præsentata, quæ ad castigandum trans-  
gressiones multiplices et excessus, quos in qui-  
busdam cœnobii invenerat, videbantur pro sa-  
lute ac honestate nostra laudabiliter statuenda,  
nos examinari et corrigi fecimus, et præcipimus  
ut inviolabiliter observetis, quæ sigillis venera-  
bilium fratrum nostrorum Hostiensis et Tuscu-  
lanensis muniri fecimus ad cautelam. Et adhuc  
volumus et præcipimus auctoritate apostolica, ut  
visitatores ad generale capitulum convocent ab-  
bates, et priores non habentes abbates proprios,  
tam exemptos quam non exemptos, qui non con-  
sueverunt capitulum celebrare; præsidentes in  
ipso capitulo generali, canonico impedimento ab-  
lato. Eos igitur, qui contempserint vel neglex-  
erint convenire, cessante cuiuslibet appellationis  
obstaculo, per censuram ecclesiasticam venire  
compellant, et usque ad satisfactionem condig-  
nam, quam in eos rite tulerint, non relaxent;  
eadem censura facturi, quæ in eodem capitulo  
deliberatione provida fuerint ordinata, firmiter  
observari; reddituri tam ipsi quam visitatores,  
et alii quilibet, ministerii Domino, in cuius con-  
spectu nuda sunt omnia et aperta, in extremo  
examine rationem; sed et omnem sollicitudinem  
et diligentiam circa correctionem et reformatio-  
nem ordinis ad visitationem cœnobiorum stude-

A.D. 1222.  
The pope's  
directions to  
the visitors  
of monas-  
teries.

ant adhibere. Porro cum visitatores, secundum statuta generalis concilii, in generali abbatum capitulo processerint ad visitationis officium exsequendum, de statu monasteriorum et observandis regularibus observantiis diligenter inquirant, et tam in spiritualibus quam in temporalibus corrigant et reformat quæ viderint corrigenda; ita quod monachos delinquentes per abbates loci corrigi faciant, eisque injungi pœnitentiam salutarem, juxta beati Benedicti regulam et apostolica instituta, et non secundum normam pravæ consuetudinis, quæ jam pro lege quibusdam ecclesiis inolevit. Ipsi etiam visitatores monachos, quos contumaces invenerint et rebelles, juxta modum culpæ, vice nostra, regulari censura compellant absque personarum delectu, non parcendo rebellibus ob suam pertinaciam vel potentiam amicorum, quin ovem morbidam ejiciant ab ovili, ne inficiat oves sanas. Si vero abbates in corriganidis, juxta visitatorum mandatum et regularia instituta, seipsis suisve monachis inventi fuerint negligentes, proclamentur, corripiantur, et ita puniantur publice in capitulo generali, quod poena eorum sit aliis in exemplum. Prout si abbas aliquis, non exemptus, fuerit a visitatoribus nimis negligens et remissus inventus, id loci diocesano denuntient sine mora, et per illum detur ei fidus et prudens coadjutor usque ad capitulum generale. Quod si dilapidator inventus fuerit, aut alias merito amovendus, per diocesanum, postquam sibi a visitatoribus fuerit denuntiatum, amoveatur absque iudiciorum strepitū a regimine abbatiae et a monasterio; provideatur interim administrator idoneus, qui temporalium curam gerat, donec ipsi monasterio fuerit de abbatie provisum. Quod si forsitan episcopus hoc implere noluerit vel neglex-

erit, visitatores, vel præsidentes in capitulo generali, defectum episcopi ad sedem apostolicam non differant intimare. <sup>A.D. 1232.</sup> Hæc eadem circa exempla abbates fieri præcipimus, depositione tantum ipsorum sedi apostolicae reservata ; ita tamen, ut abbate, qui videbitur amovendus, interim per visitatores vel in capitulo præsidentes ab administratione suspenso, administrator idoneus monasterio deputetur. Illorum autem excessus, et alia quæ visa fuerint intimanda capitulis, præsidentes nobis denuntient per fideles nuntios et prudentes, quibus de communi abbatum contributione, juxta cuiuslibet facultatem, sufficienter ministrentur expensæ. Sequentes autem visitatores priorum perquirant vestigia diligenter visitatorum, et eorum negligentias et excessus referant sequenti capitulo generali, ut juxta culpam debitam poenam portent.' Et hæc de visitatione dicta sufficient. Eodem anno Rogerus, Londoniensis episcopus, accusatus inter alios de consensu distractionis frugum clericorum Romanorum, <sup>1</sup> profectus est ad sedem apostolicam, ut suam ibi innocentiam excusaret.

*Quod rex Anglorum ministros a curia sua removit.*

Anno Domini MCCXXXIII. rex Anglorum Hen- <sup>A.D. 1233.</sup> ricus, anno regni sui decimo septimo, tenuit cu- <sup>The king removes his</sup> riam suam ad Natale apud Vigorniam, ubi, ut dicitur, de consilio Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, omnes naturales curiæ suæ ministros a suis removit officiis, et Pictavenses extraneos in eorum ministeriis subrogavit. Willelmum quoque de Rodune, militem, expulit, qui in curia regis vices

<sup>1</sup> *Profectus est ad sedem apostolicam.]* 'Apud civitatem Pal-

<p>mensem jocalia et expensas itineris perdidit ; quas pro parte</p>	<p>vix recuperavit. Quid autem Romæ profecerit, ignoratur ;'</p>
	Ann. Dunst. p. 215.

A.D. 1232.  
Change of  
ministry.

gerebat Richardi magni Marescalli ; quod idem Richardus nimis moleste tulit. Walterum quoque Karleolensem episcopum idem rex, per consilium prædictum ab officio thesaurarii prius expellens, centum libras argenti ab eo cepit, et custodias quasdam, quas ei per chartam suam confirmaverat dum viveret, contumeliose subtraxit. Consiliarios vero suos omnes, tam episcopos quam comites, ac barones et quosque de regno suo nobiles, ita præcipitanter abjecit, quod nulli credebat, nisi episcopo memorato et filio<sup>1</sup> ejus Petro de Rivallis ; unde factum est, quod, expulsis castrorum custodibus per totam Angliam, rex omnia sub ipsius Petri custodia commendaret. Tunc Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, ut regis favorem liberius obtineret, attraxit in suum consortium Stephanum de Segrave, virum flexibilem, et Robertum Passeelewe, qui sub Petro de Rivallis thesauros regis servabat; et sic contigit, ut illorum consilio et arbitrio universa regni negotia ordinaret. At rex, invitatis Pictavensibus et Britonibus transmarinis, qui egentes et lucro avidissime inhiantes, venerunt ad duo millia cum equis et armis milites et servientes, quos in suo retinens obsequio posuit in præsidiis castrorum regni in locis diversis, qui homines Anglie naturales et nobiles totis viribus opprimebant, proditores eos vocabant, quos etiam de proditione apud regem accusabant ; quorum mendaciis rex simplex fidem adhibens tradidit custodias comitatum et baroniarum cum juvenibus nobilibus et puellis generosis ; horum autem utrumque sexum turpiter degenerabant, cum ignobiliter maritabant. The-

<sup>1</sup> *Filio ejus.]* By others he is | bishop of Winchester ; Holinshed, p. 215.  
called ‘ caro suo,’ and ‘ nepoti ;’  
‘ nephew, or rather son, to the

saurorum etiam suorum rex eis custodias cum A.D. 1233.  
legibus patriis et judiciis commisit. Quid plura?  
Judicia committuntur injustis, leges exlegibus,  
pax discordantibus, justitia injuriosis; et cum  
nobiles de regno de oppressionibus sibi irrogatis  
coram rege querimoniam deponerent, episcopo  
impediente praedicto, non fuit qui eis justitiam  
exhiberet. Episcopos etiam quosdam Angliae  
idem episcopus ita apud regem accusabat, quod  
eosdem quasi hostes publicos devitaret.

*Quod Marescallus regem increpavit.*

Cumque his et consimilibus injuriis Richardus The earl  
comes, regni Marescallus, videret tam nobiles  
quam ignobiles opprimere et jura regni penitus  
deperire, zelo justitiae provocatus, <sup>monstrates.</sup> <sup>1</sup>associatis sibi  
quibusdam magnatibus, ad regem audacter ac-  
cessit, increpans eum, audientibus multis, quod  
per pravum consilium advocaverat extraneos  
Pictavenses, in oppressionem regni et hominum  
suorum de regno naturalium, legum pariter ac-  
libertatum; unde regem humiliter rogabat, ut  
tales excessus corrigere festinaret, per quos co-  
ronae suæ et regni sui subversio imminebat;  
affirmabat insuper, quod, si hoc emendare dif-  
fugeret, ipse et cæteri de regno magnates tam-  
diu se ab ipsis consilio subtraherent, quamdiu  
alienigenarum consortio frueretur. Ad hæc au-  
tem respondens Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus,  
dixit, quod bene licuit domino regi extraneos  
quoscumque vellet vocare ad defensionem regni  
sui et coronæ, et etiam tot et tales, qui possent  
homines ejus superbos et rebelles ad debitum  
compellere famulatum. Comes vero Marescal-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Associatis sibi quibusdam mag-| nens discrimini, se murum inter-  
natibus.] ‘Ut pacem et concor-| dominum regem et magnates op-  
diam reformaret, se ipsum expo-| posuit;’ Annal. Waverl. p. 195.*

A.D. 1222. lus et cæteri magnates perturbati a curia rece-  
dentes, cum aliud non poterant habere responsum,  
firmiter promiserunt ad invicem, quod pro hac  
causa, quæ omnes tangebat, usque ad divisionem  
corporis et animæ decertarent.

*De tonitruo hyemali.*

Thunder  
storms  
throughout  
England.

Eodem anno, decimo kalendas Aprilis, audita sunt tonitrua terribilia, et secuta est per totam æstatem<sup>1</sup> tanta pluviarum inundatio, quod ubique vivaria confregit, et stagna atque molendina per universam fere Angliam a suis sedibus violenter evulsit; nempe in campus arabilibus et fructiferis, in partibus diversis, et aliis insolitis locis, proruperunt fontes per rivulos discurrentes, ex quibus aqua inter fruges stans, ad modum stagni collecta, admirantibus multis, pisces fluviales produxit; molendina etiam in stationibus et sedibus fiebant diversis, ubi nunquam antea visa fuerunt. Eodem quoque tempore, sexto scilicet idus Aprilis, circa horam diei primam, in finibus Herefordiæ et Vigorniæ apparuerunt in cælo quatuor soles adulterini circa solem naturalem diversi coloris, quidam in semicirculis, quidam in rotundis. Hi soles plusquam mille<sup>2</sup> viris fide dignis apparentes terrible illis spectaculum præbuerunt; unde quidam eorum propter visionem insolitam pinxerunt soles et circulos diversis coloribus insignitos in pellibus literalibus, ne res tam insolita a memoriis hominum laberetur. Secuta est autem eodem anno in partibus illis guerra crudelis, strages et humani sanguinis

<sup>1</sup> Tanta pluviarum inundatio.] very great; Annal. Waverl. p. 194.  
In Waverley new monastery, it is said, the water rose to the height of eight feet. Many men and much cattle were drowned, and the loss in other respects was

<sup>2</sup> Viris fide dignis.] The bishop of Hereford and Sir John Monmouth are among those spoken of as witnesses of these phenomena.

effusio terribilis, et per totam Angliam, Walliam et Hiberniam perturbatio generalis. Circa idem denique tempus, mense Junio, in parte australi Angliæ visi sunt a multis secus maris littus immanissimi duo dracones in aere graviter prælantes, atque post diutinam pugnam unus alterum superavit, et fugatum usque in profundum abyssi insecurus est, nec amplius visi fuerunt.

*De cassatione Cantuariensis electi.*

Per idem tempus cassatus est magister Johannes, cognomento Blundus, Cantuariensis <sup>A.D. 1233.</sup> <sup>1 electus.</sup> Divulgatum quidem erat Romæ, quod post electionem suam acceperat ex dono Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, mille marcas argenti, præter alias mille marcas, quas eidem Johanni crediderat, ut promoveretur, unde constat manifeste, quod magis ei nocuit quam profuit familiaritas episcopi memorati; confessus præterea Romæ fuerat idem Johannes, ut dicitur, quod duo habebat beneficia, quibus cura annexa fuit animarum, contra statuta concilii generalis, qua præsumptione creditur reprobatus. Sed quoniam, jam cassatis tribus ecclesiæ Cantuariensis electis, præfata fuit diu ecclesia a pastore viduata, dedit monachis, qui cum electo cassato venerant, protestatem eligendi magistrum <sup>2 Eadmundum,</sup> ecclesiæ Saresbiriensis canonicum, in pastorem animarum suarum; cui etiam pallium transmisit, ne tanta sedes metropolitana a pastore diutius frustraretur. Monachi vero nec ipsum nec alium quemlibet, nisi de consensu conventus sui, recipere decreverunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Electus.*] See above, p. 248, | called from the place of his note.

<sup>2</sup> *Eadmundum.*] Edmund Riche, | He was the author of the ‘*Speculum Ecclesiæ.*’  
of Pountney or Pontigny, so

*De discordia orta inter regem et magnates regni.*

A.D. 1233.  
The barons  
refuse to  
meet the  
king at  
Oxford.

Circa dies istos, cum Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, et complices ipsius in odium gentis Anglorum pariter et contemptum cor regis ita immutabiliter perverterant, ut eorum exterminium modis omnibus moliretur, invitavit paulatim tot Pictavensium legiones, quod totam fere Angliam repleverunt, quorum rex agminibus quocumque pergebat vallatus incessit; nec quicquam siebat in regno, nisi quod Wintoniensis episcopus et Pictavensium turba disponebant. Tunc rex, missis literis suis, vocavit omnes de regno comites et barones ad colloquium, ut venirent apud Oxoniam ad festum sancti Johannis; sed ipsi noluerunt ad ejus mandatum venire, tum propter insidias alienigenarum, tum propter indignationem, quam conceperant adversus regem, qui extraneos ob eorundem baronum vocavit contemptum; et, cum hoc regi per nuntios solennes denuntiassent, iratus est vehementer, et judicialiter jussit diffiniri, quo ordine debeat eos compellere ad suam curiam convenire. Tunc decretum est per judicium, ut tertio vocentur a rege, ut probet si venire velint, an non. In hoc autem colloquio <sup>1</sup>frater quidam de ordine Prædicatorum, qui coram rege et quibusdam episcopis præsentibus verbum Dei prædicabat, libera voce regi patenter dixit, quod nunquam diurna pace frueretur, nisi Petrum, Wintonensem episcopum, et Petrum de Rivallis, ejus <sup>2</sup>filium, a suo consilio removeret. Cumque alii multi, qui aderant, idipsum regi protestarentur, significavit magnatibus memoratis, ut venirent apud

<sup>1</sup> *Frater quidam.*] By name | consanguineum.' In the Chron. Robert Bacon, according to Paris. Dunst. he is called 'Petrum de

<sup>2</sup> *Filiu[m].*] Paris adds, ' sive | Orivalle,' p. 218.

Westmonasterium quinto idus Julii ad colloqui- A.D. 1233.  
um, et ibi per eorum consilium emendaret quic-  
quid de jure noverat corrigendum. Sed cum  
audissent magnates præfati, quod paulatim ap-  
plicuerunt in regno prædones multi cum equis  
et armis a rege invitati, cum nullum pacis sig-  
num vidissent, supersederunt ad diem sibi statu-  
tum venire, denuntiantes regi per nuntios solen-  
nes, quatenus, omni dilatione remota, ejiceret Pe-  
trum, Wintoniensem episcopum, et cæteros Pic-  
tavenses de curia sua, sin autem, ipsi omnes de  
communi consilio totius regni ipsum cum inquis  
consiliariis suis a regno depellerent et de novo  
rege creando tractarent.

*Quod rex Anglorum quosdam viros nobiles exularit.*

His ita gestis, rex animo consternatus est ve-  
hementer et ejus curia tota, vultum demittentes  
et non mediocriter metuentes, ne fieret error filii  
patris errore deterior, quem homines sui de fas-  
tigio regni deponere satagebant. Tunc Petrus  
sæpe dictus episcopus consilium regi dedit, ut  
arma moveret contra rebelles homines suos, et  
castella eorundem ac terras Pictavensibus con-  
ferret, qui regnum Angliæ a suis proditoribus  
tuerentur. Rex autem inprimis iram conceptam  
in Gilebertum Basset, virum nobilem, retorquens  
spoliavit<sup>1</sup> eum a quodam manerio, quod ex dono  
Johannis regis acceperat; qui cum a rege quod  
jus suum erat repeteret, vocavit eum proditorem,  
communans, quod, nisi a curia sua recederet, sus-  
pendio traderetur. Richardum quoque<sup>2</sup> Siuard,

The bishop of  
Winchester  
advises the  
king.

<sup>1</sup> *Spoliarit eum.*] ‘Sathan fabricante, . . . ordine juris prætermisso, de consilio Pictavensium;’ Chron. Dunst. p. 218.

Siward, and he is so spoken of in the Chron. Dunst, in certain passages. The king gave his lands and those of Basset to Peter de Rivaulx: Wikes, p. 42;

<sup>2</sup> *Siward.*] Wikes also calls him Annal. Waverl. p. 196.

A.D. 1233. militem strenuum, qui ejusdem Gileberti<sup>1</sup> sororem habuit sibi matrimonio copulatam sine ipsius licentia, ut dicebat, jussit rex capi et captum sibi præsentari. Alios quidem omnes de regno nobiles et potentes suspectos habens obsides exegit ab eis, significans universis per literas suas, quatenus infra kalendas Augusti tot et tales sibi obsides præsentarent, quibus ab ejus animo omnem rebellionis suspicionem auferrent.

*Quod Marescallus præmunitus sit de proditione.*

The earl  
marshall  
warned of  
the intrigue  
against him.

Cumque comites ac barones Angliæ in magno militiæ apparatu Londonias tenderent ad colloquium kalendis Augusti sibi præfixum, Richardus comes Marescallus cum cæteris venire proponens hospitatus est cum<sup>2</sup> sorore sua, uxore scilicet Richardi fratris regis; quæ cum fratrem interrogasset, quo iter haberet, respondit ille, quod ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium constitutum venire festinaret. Cui illa, ‘Noveris, frater carissime, quod paratae sunt tibi insidiaæ, si venias, ut capiaris ab inimicis tuis, qui te regi et episcopo Wintoniensi præsentabunt, ut de te faciant, sicut de Huberto comite Cantianæ fecerunt.’ Marescallus vero vix credere consensit verbis sororis suæ, quousque modum captionis et a quo caperetur probabilibus argumentis ostendit. At comes Marescallus tunc primo dictis sororis suæ fidem adhibens nocte superveniente iter arripuit, nec prius frænum cohibuit, donec in Walliam festinus viator pervenit. Venerunt autem ad colloquium prædictum comes Cestrensis, comes Lincolniensis, comes de Ferrariis et comes Richardus frater regis, cum aliis comitiibus et baronibus multis, sed nihil ibi actum fuit

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sororem.*] Paris adds ‘aut neptem.’ | <sup>2</sup> *Sorore sua.*] ‘Isabella,’ Paris.

propter absentiam comitis Marescalli et Gile- A.D. 1233.  
 berti Basset et quorundam aliorum absentiam  
 magnatum; unde rex, per consilium episcopi  
 Wintoniensis et Stephani de Segrave, fecit in-  
 vitare per literas omnes de regno magnates, qui  
 sibi ad militare servitium tenebantur, ut veni-  
 rent apud Gloverniam cum equis et armis die  
 Dominica ante assumptionem beatæ Mariæ. Sed  
 Richardus Marescallus et alii multi, qui fuerant  
 confoederati, cum venire noluissent ad diem sta-  
 tutum, fecit rex, ac si proditores essent, villas  
 eorum concremari, parcos et vivaria eorum de-  
 struere, castella obsidione vallare. Erant autem  
 viri nobiles, qui confoederati dicebantur, comes  
 scilicet Marescallus, Gilebertus Basset et fratres  
 ejus, viri bellatores et nobiles, Richardus Siuard,  
 vir martius ab adolescentia, Walterus de Clifor-  
 dis, miles electus, cum aliis multis, qui eis ad-  
 hærebant; quos omnes rex absque judicio curiæ  
 suæ et parium suorum exules et proscriptos de-  
 nuntiari fecit, terras eorum Pictavensibus dedit,  
 præcepitque ut eorum corpora caperentur, ubi-  
 cumque invenirentur in regno.

*Quod Wintoniensis episcopus quosdam confederatos  
 comitis Marescalli corrupit.*

Tunc Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, qui vires  
 comitis Marescalli et confoederatorum suorum in-  
 firmare modis omnibus conabatur, comites Ces-  
 triæ et Lincolnæ, datis mille marcis, corrupit,  
 ut, relicto Marescallo et causa justitiæ, ad re-  
 gem eos retro respicientes retorqueret et partes  
 ejus foverent; nam Richardus, frater regis, diu  
 ante ad regem reversus erat, qui Marescallo  
 prius adhærebat. Hæc cum Marescallus cog-  
 novisset, confoederatus est Loelino, principi Nor-  
 walliæ, et aliis potentibus regionis illius, inter-

The earls of  
 Chester and  
 Lincoln de-  
 sert the  
 marshal.

A.D. 1233. posito juramento, quod nullus eorum contra regem sine altero concordaret. Tunc in crastino assumptionis beatæ Mariæ applicuerunt apud Doveram viri armati multi ex regionibus transmarinis venientes et ad regem apud Gloverniam pervenerunt; at rex illorum et aliorum multorum vallatus catervis ad Herefordensem urbem exercitum promovit.

*De injuria Waltero, Karleolensi episcopo, illata.*

The bishop  
of Carlisle  
detained at  
Dover.

Per idem tempus Walterus, Karleolensis episcopus, <sup>1</sup> pro quibusdam injuriis a rege sibi, ut dicebat, illatis, apud Doveram navem erat ingressus, ut transfretaret; supervenerunt autem quidam ministri regis ejientes eum cum suis omnibus de navi, et firmiter ex parte ipsius regis prohibebant, ne absque illius licentia de regno exiret. Applicuit autem tempore, quo hæc facta erant ibidem, Rogerus, Londoniensis episcopus, a curia Romana reversus, qui videns injuriam, quæ præfato inferebatur episcopo, excommunicavit omnes, qui in eum manus injecerant violentas, et inde profectus ad regem invenit eum apud urbem Herefordensem in Wallia cum exercitu copioso; ubi in præsentia regis et quorundam episcoporum de violentia Karleolensi episcopo illata supradictam excommunicationis sententiam innovavit, non mediocriter rege murmurante, et, ne talem ferret sententiam, prohibente; cum quo etiam omnes qui adfuerunt episcopi illos excommunicaverunt universos, qui hujus perturbationis occasionem præstabant.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pro quibusdam injuriis. ] | custodiis et quæstibus spoliatus.'  
'Officio thessaurarii et omnibus | Chron. Dunst. p. 291.

*De diffidatione Marescalli et obsidione cuiusdam  
castelli ipsius.*

Et, his ita gestis, rex, de consilio episcopi Wintoniensis, Marescallum diffidavit per episcopum Menevensem, et sic jussit contra eum arma movere et ejus castella obsidere. Ingressus igitur rex terram comitis Marescalli obsedit quoddam castellum ipsius, cuius nomen non teneo, sed cum per dies plurimos illud graviter impugnasset et parum vel nihil profecisset, deficientibus exercitu alimentis, cum obsidionem solvere oportebat, puduit regem illuc venisse; unde, missis quibusdam episcopis ad comitem Marescallum, exegit ab eo, quatenus propter honorem ipsius regis, ne videretur castellum inaniter obsedisse, illud sibi tali conventione redderet, ut infra dies quindecim illud integrum ipsi restitueret Marescallum, atque omnia, quae in regno erant corrigenda, interim per consilium episcoporum, qui super his fidejussores fuerant, emendaret. Et ad hoc perficiendum constituit rex diem ipsi Marescalli ac cæteris exulatis Dominica proxima post festum sancti Michaelis apud Westmonasterium; et sic redditum est regi castellum, obsidione soluta.

*De liberatione Huberti de Burgo.*

Circa dies istos Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, qui modis omnibus in mortem Huberti de Burgo aspirabat, qui in castro de Divisis in vinculis tenebatur, nulla de Huberto mentione facta, regem rogavit attentius, ut concederet sibi castri custodiam memorati, <sup>1</sup>hac occasione ductus, ut copiam haberet illum, sicut dicitur, perimendi.

<sup>1</sup> *Hac occasione ductus.]* Annal. Waverl. p. 195.

A.D. 1233.

Sed Hubertus, de his omnibus ab amicis suis, qui in curia regis erant, præmunitus,<sup>1</sup> duobus ministris, qui ei in illius castri præsidio serviebant, hoc consilium revelavit, qui ipsius miseriae compatiens sollicite cogitabant, qualiter illum a mortis discrimine liberarent. Considerata igitur temporis opportunitate, dormientibus castelli custodibus, unus eorum, altero explorante, in prima noctis sancti Michaelis vigilia, præfatum Hubertum in humeris arripuit compeditum, et de<sup>2</sup> turri clam custodibus descendens et pium furtum ferens latitudinem castelli pertransiit, veniensque ad majorem portam per ostium exiuit, et sic quoddam ingens fossatum, licet cum difficultate, transcendens ad ecclesiam villæ parochialemp impiger viator conscendit, nec sarcinam prius depositum quam ad majus altare lætus pervenit. Juvenes vero, qui Hubertum liberaverant, ab eo recedere nolentes pro laude sibi futurorum reputabant et mercede cælesti si pro tanti viri liberatione mortem incurrerent temporalem.

*Quod Hubertus ab ecclesia violenter extractus  
incarceratur in castello.*

dragged  
from the  
altar of a  
neighbour-  
ing church.

Evigilantibus interea castellanis, cum Hubertum in loco non reperiunt consueto, perturbatis sunt valde, et catervatim exeuntes de castro cum laternis et fustibus et armis omnia quærendo perlustrabant, donec a referentibus audierunt Hubertum esse in ecclesia ex compedibus liberatum, quo cum tumultu concurrentes invenerunt eum ante altare crucem Dominicam

<sup>1</sup> *Duobus ministris.*] In MS. ‘duos ministros,’ but with a mark for correction.

<sup>2</sup> *De turri . . . descendens.*] Chron. Wikes, p. 42.

‘Dimissus per cancellos cum mappis et manutergiis, agente quadam armigero suo, qui solus de familia sua ei ministravit.’

manibus bajulantem ; quem atrociter arripiens A.D. 1223.  
 tes et fustibus pariter ac pugnis impie cædentes et pellentes, cum duobus liberatoribus suis illum ad castellum reducunt et graviori quam prius custodiae committunt. Sed res gesta cum ad aures Roberti, Saresbiriensis episcopi, per venisset, venit celeriter ad castellum, præcipiens ipsis ecclesiæ violatoribus, ut Hubertum ad pacem ecclesiæ quantocius reductum in illo statu, quo illum invenerant, dimitterent absolutum ; sed castellani tumultuose satis episcopo respondentes dixerunt, se malle quod Hubertus suspenderetur, quam ipsi ; et, cum illum reducere noluisserent, episcopus de commissa sibi potestate omnes nominatim excommunicavit, qui illum detinebant et qui in eum manus injecerant violentas. Tunc episcopus ille, conjuncto sibi Rogero, Londonensi episcopo, et quibusdam aliis episcopis, venit ad regem super injuria Huberto illata coram eo querelam deponens, nec prius ab eo recessit quam Huberti liberationem impetravit ; et sic in ecclesia, invito rege, remissus est decimo quinto kalendas Novembbris. Sed rex iratus vicecomiti provinciæ illius dedit per literas in mandatis, ut ecclesiam obsideret, donec Hubertus in ea ex ciborum inedia moriretur.

*Quod Marescallus castellum cepit, quod regi tradiderat.*

Per idem tempus, elapsis quindecim diebus postquam comes Marescallus regi castellum suum tradiderat, ut predictum est, ut sibi redde-ret repetenti, misit ad regem, termino evoluto, rogans, ut juxta pactum restitueret sibi castrum suum, de quo fidejussores constituerat episcopum Wintoniensem et Stephanum de Segrave, qui tunc vices justiciarii gerebat sub rege, quod

A.D. 1233.

etiam firmaverant interposito juramento. Rex autem cum indignatione respondit, quod illud non redderet, sed alia potius ejus castella sibi subjugaret. Sed idem Marescallus, cum neque fidem neque juramentum vel pacem aliquam viderat a regis consiliariis observari, collegit exercitum copiosum, et castellum, quod suum fuerat, obsidione vallavit, machinas per gyrum adhibuit et municipium illud levi negotio sibi subjugavit.

Court at  
West-  
minster.

Erat interea rex apud Westmonasterium ad colloquium septimo idus Octobris, sicut magnatibus promiserat, ut per eorum consilium emendaret ea, quae in regno fuerant corrigenda; sed iniquum, quod tunc sequebatur, consilium id fieri non permisit. Plures autem episcopi, qui praesentes erant, regem humiliter rogabant in Domino, quatenus pacem faceret cum baronibus suis et nobilibus, quos absque judicio parium suorum exulaverat, villas eorum et aedificia igne cremerat, silvas et pomeria succiderat, parcus et stagna destruxerat. Proditores eos vocabat, per quos pacem regni sui et consilia ordinare et negotia disponere debebat. Ad haec respondens Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, dixit, quod non sunt pares in Anglia, sicut in regno Francorum; unde licet regi Anglorum per justiciarios, quos constituerit, quoslibet de regno reos exulare et mediante judicio condemnare. Episcopi quoque haec audientes quasi una voce comminabantur, quod nominatim excommunicarent principales regis consiliarios iniquos; ex quibus in capite expresserunt Petrum, Wintonensem episcopum, et filium ejus Petrum de Rivallis, Stephanum de Segrave, justiciarum, et Robertum Passeelewe, thesaurarium. Quibus respondens Petrus Wintoniensis allegavit quod Romæ fuerat a summo pontifice episcopus consecratus et

inde ex eorum potestate exemptus, unde, ne in A.D. 1283.  
eum ferrent sententiam, sedem apostolicam ap-  
pellavit. Tunc episcopi omnes illos excommu-  
nicaverunt, qui animum regis immutaverant in  
odium naturalium hominum suorum de regno, et  
omnes qui perturbarent pacem regni.

*Quod rex omnes citari fecit, qui sibi tenebantur ad  
servitium militare.*

In hoc quidem colloquio venerunt nuntii ad regem, dicentes, quod comes Marescallus ceperat castellum suum in Wallia, et quosdam ex militibus suis ibidem interfecerat et de ministris. The king summons all who owed military service to meet him at Gloucester. Hæc audiens rex perturbatus est valde, et præcepit episcopis cunctis, ut Marescallum nominatim excommunicarent, qui castrum occupaverat memoratum ; sed illi e contra communiter dixerunt, indignum esse illum excommunicare, quia castellum quod suum fuerat occupavit. Tunc rex perturbatus misit literas in omnes Angliæ fines, præcipiens cunctis, qui sibi ad militare servitium tenebantur, quatenus in crastino festivitatis Omnia sanctorum apud Gloverniam cum equis et armis convenirent, quo ipse vellet conducere illos, ituri. Per idem tempus Hubertus de Burgo, quondam Angliæ justiciarius, <sup>1</sup>raptus est ab ecclesia de Divisis a viris armatis, ubi militaribus armis decenter indutus circa horam diei primam <sup>2</sup>in Walliam adductus est ac regis hostibus sociatus tertio kalendas Novembbris.

<sup>1</sup> Raptus est ab ecclesia.] ‘Su-  
bito superveniens Ricardus Sy-  
ward cum multitudine armata  
volentem extraxit de ecclesia ;’  
Chron. Dunst. p. 221. ‘Eo no-  
lente ;’ Wikes, p. 42.

<sup>2</sup> In Walliam adductus est. ]  
‘Usque Austiclive, et præpara-  
tis ibi navibus, brachium maris,  
quod ibi adjacet, transnavigantes  
ipsum Hubertum in castrum de  
Strugoyl ... in tuto deposuerunt ;’  
*ibid.* p. 42.

*Quod exulati invaserunt exercitum regis Angliae apud Grosmunt.*

A.D. 1238.  
The king  
defeated  
before  
Grosmunt.

Circa eosdem etiam dies, cum rex Anglorum apud Gloverniam copiosum collegisset exercitum, versus Herefordiam in Walliis legiones promovit, et inde terram ingressus Marescalli, ad ipsius exhaeredationem et corporis captionem modis omnibus anhelabat. Sed ille, ut bellator providus, ante regis adventum armenta subtraxerat et victualia, unde rex, pro alimentorum defectu moram ibi facere non valens, <sup>1</sup>ad castellum de Grosmunt cum exercitu suo divertit; ubi cum per dies aliquot moram protraxisset, Marescallus et ejus confederati cum proscriptis ab Anglia et exulatis, missis exploratoribus, cognoverunt regem infra castelli ambitum pernoctare, et maiorem partem exercitus extra in tentoriis excubias celebrare. Tunc omnis multitudo, praeter Marescallum, qui regem invadere noluit, cum Wallensibus et exercitu copioso, <sup>2</sup>in die sancti Martini episcopi post crepusculum illuc prope rantes, et illos, qui in tentoriis soporati jacebant, invadentes, equos plusquam quingentos cum cliestis et spoliis ac supellectili universa occuparunt, fugientibus cæteris fere nudis quo impetus quemque ducebat; nec ex eis quenquam lædere vel captum abducere voluerunt victores illi, praeter duos milites, qui ex omnibus interficti fuerunt. Ceperunt ergo bigas et vehicula cuncta, quibus pecunia et victualia ferebantur et arma, atque sarcinis bene dispositis ad tuta latibula sunt reversi. Hujus autem rei testes sunt Petrus Wintoniensis, Radulphus Cicestrensis, episcopi, Stephanus de Segrave, regis justiciarius, Petrus de Rivallis,

<sup>1</sup> Ad castellum de Grosmunt . . . | <sup>2</sup> In die sancti Martini episcopi.]  
divertit.] Chron. Dunst. p. 219. | 11th of November.

thesaurarius, Hugo Bigod comes de Nortfolc, A.D. 1233.  
 Willelmus comes Saresbiriensis, Willelmus de Bello-campo, Willelmus de Albeneio junior, et alii multi, qui nudi fugientes omnia quæ sua erant amiserunt; unde factum est, quod multi de exercitu regis, et illi præcipue qui equos et arma et pecuniam amiserant universam, recedentes cum maxima confusione ad propria sunt reversi. Tunc rex, qui quasi solus inter hostes remanserat, posuit in castris Walliæ ruptarios Pictavenses, qui impetum reprimenter inimicorum suorum, et constituit principes illius militiae viros nobiles, Johannem Monemutensem et Radulphum de Thoenio, cui etiam dedit castellum Matildis, quod antiquitus sui juris erat; et, his ita gestis, rex apud Gloverniam reversus est. Eodem tempore, in principio mensis Novembris, audita sunt tonitrua horribiles coruscationes emitentia per dies plurimos; unde dici solet in antiquo rusticorum proverbio, quia mulier non debet lugere mortem mariti vel filiorum suorum, sed tonitrum potius hyemale, quia semper aut famem aut mortalitatem vel tale aliquid denuntiat adsuturum.

*De gravi conflictu inter Marescallum et <sup>1</sup>gentes transmarinas.*

Eodem tempore, cum comes Marescallus terras hostium suorum ingressus prædas ageret et armamenta contraheret, venit casu ad oppidum Monemutense, quod erat sibi contrarium, ubi jubens exercitum suum procedere ad expeditiōnem inchoatam, cum centum sociis equitibus ad castellum divertit, ut situm ejus exploraret, quod post dies paucos proposuit obsidere; qui

The earl  
marshal  
taken pri-  
soner by  
Baldwin de  
Guisnes.

<sup>1</sup> *Gentes transmarinas.*] ‘Gentibus transmarinis’ in MS., but marked for correction.

A.D. 1233.  
The marshal  
taken  
prisoner;

cum oppidum circuiret, conspexit eum Baldewinus de Gysnes, miles strenuus, cui rex illud custodiendum commiserat cum Pictavensibus multis, et intelligens quo Marescallus erat, quem vidit castellum cum paucis explorare, exiuit cum mille viris fortissimis et eleganter armatis, et rapido equorum cursu ad illum tendens captum cum suis omnibus ad oppidum perducere cogitabat. Videntes autem commilitones comitis Marescalli hostes cum impetu advenire, dederunt ei consilium, ut sibi per fugam consuleret, inconsultum dicentes cum paucis armatis cum tot hostibus dimicare; quibus respondens Marescallus dixit, se nunquam eatenus in prælio hostibus terga dedisse; nec se modo id facturum affirmat, exhortans omnes, ut viriliter defensioni vacarent, ne morirentur inulti. At castellani interim in eos fortiter irruentes cum lanceis et gladiis rem agebant. Fit gravissimus utrobique conflictus, sed nimis inæqualis, dum centum solummodo viri contra mille adversarios in multo diei spatio dimicabant. Baldewinus vero de Gysnes tandem, associatis sibi duodecim bellatoribus fortissimis et eleganter armatis, impetum faciens in comitem Marescallum voluit ipsum sub captione conclusum vivum perducere ad castellum; sed ille hostes non permisit proprius accedere, gladium vibrans a dextris et a sinistris, sed, quoscumque cum illo contingebat, aut in terram mortuos prosternebat aut attonitos ictuum collisione reddebat, et sic solus contra duodecim, et illi contra solum, diutius decertabant. Sed demum, cum ad eum accedere non auderent, cum lanceis suis equum, in quo sedebat, peremerunt; sed ille, qui doctus erat in præliis Gallicanis, militem quendam sibi importunum per pedem arripuit, quem cum in terram

prostravisset, equum ipsius agili saltu conscendit A.D. 1283.  
 et iterum defensioni vacavit. Tunc Baldewinus,  
 miles in armis strenuus, indigne ferens quod  
 Marescallus contra tot adversarios sese tamdiu  
 defendebat, potenter irruit in eum, et, arrepta  
 ipsius galea de capite ejus, eam ita truculenter  
 avulsit, quod sanguis ex ore ejus et naribus  
 emanavit; et arripiens per frænum equum illius  
 cœpit sessorem trahere versus castellum, aliis a  
 tergo illum impellantibus, ut ferrent auxilium  
 Baldewino, qui Marescallum per frænum trahe-  
 bat. Tunc ille, tanquam in arcto positus, ensem  
 in gyrum vibrando, ictus importabiles hostibus  
 imprimens, duos ex illis in terram attonitos pro-  
 stravit; sed nec sic sese ab eorum manibus libe-  
 ravit. Videns autem balistarius quidam ipsius is rescued.  
 Marescalli dominum suum in periculo constitu-  
 tum, de balista spiculum emisit, et percutiens in  
 pectore Baldewinum, qui Marescallum ducebat,  
 armis non obstantibus illum perforavit, qui cor-  
 ruens in terram credidit se lethaliter vulneratum;  
 at sodales Baldewini, hoc viso, Marescallum re-  
 linquentes dominum in terra jacentem exerunt,  
 quem quasi mortuum reputabant.

*De strage facta a Marescallo apud castrum  
 Monemutense.*

Et, dum hæc agerentur ibidem, nuntiatum est exercitui ipsius Marescalli, quæ facta fuerant de illo, et venientes cum festinatione in auxilium ejus hostes quantocius compulerunt in fugam. At illi fugientes ad flumen quendam, qui prope erat, ut evaderent, invenerunt pontem confractum, per quem transire sperabant, unde plurimi in flumen sese mittentes cum equis et armis submersi perierunt; alii autem, quo fugerent non invenientes, interfecti sunt, atque alii sub cap-

Battle of  
Monmouth.

A.D. 1233.  
Battle of  
Mamouth.

tione conclusi; unde pauci ex omnibus, qui de castello exierant, incolumes sunt reversi. Capti sunt autem in parte Marescalli Thomas Siuard, juvenis in militia præclarus, cum duobus sociis militibus, qui perducti sunt ad castellum captivi. Ex castellanis autem capti sunt milites quindecim et plurimi servientes, quos Marescallus in vinculis cum equis et armis ac manubiis multis abduxit. In loco quidem certaminis remansit occisorum multitudo, tam Wallensium quam Pictavensium et transmarinarum nationum; atque Baldwinus de Gysnes ad castellum a sociis perducitur graviter vulneratus. Acta est autem haec belli congressio <sup>1</sup>in die beatæ Catharinae virginis apud castellum memoratum. Post hunc quoque conflictum comes Marescallus, cum Gileberto Basset et Richardo Siuard ac cæteris exulatis et eorum confoederatis, Pictavensibus, qui erant in castris regis Anglorum, lethiferas posuerunt insidias, ita ut, quotiescumque aliquis eorum ad prædandum exivit, nihil aliud quam capita singulorum pro redēptione ceperunt; unde contigit in brevi, quod tam numerosa extraneorum multitudo in viis et locis diversis interfecta jaceret, quod aerem totum corrumperet regionis.

*De admirabili prudentia et zelo justitiæ comitis  
Marescalli.*

Proposals  
made by the  
king to the  
marshal.

Per idem tempus, cum comes Marescallus in abbatia de Margan pernoctaret, venit ad eum die Jovis proximo ante Natale frater quidam de ordine Minorum, Agnellus nomine, qui familiaris erat domino regi et consiliarius ipsius, ut ostenderet ei quæ audierat in curia regis de eo ab ipso

<sup>1</sup> In die beatæ Catharinae virginis.] 25th November.

rege et consiliariis ejus. Ab ore autem regis au- A.D. 1223.  
divit, ut dicebat, quod, licet dictus comes Mares- Proposals  
callus proditiose nimis et inique egerit contra made by the  
king to the marshal.  
ipsum, si, nulla facta narratione de aliquo opere  
præambulo, se vellet omnino supponere miseri-  
cordiae domini regis, rex concederet ei vitam  
cum membris, et tantum de Herefordschire quod  
inde honeste vivere posset. Audivit etiam a Ste-  
phano de Segrave, quod forma misericordiae re-  
velaretur duobus de amicis Marescalli, de qui-  
bus confideret, qui Marescallo significant, quod  
secure se posset ponere in misericordia regis;  
ita tamen, quod nec ipsi Marescallo, nec alii,  
formam misericordiae revelarent, et sic ignorans  
formam hoc facheret. Ab aliis autem de curia  
audivit, quia expediebat Marescallo facere præ-  
dicta; quia debitum, quia utile, quia tutum. De-  
bet, quia fecit injuriam domino suo; qui, ante-  
quam rex invaderet terram aut personam Mares-  
calli, ipse invasit terram domini regis, combus-  
sit, destruxit, et homines interfecit. Et si ille  
dicit, se hoc fecisse ad tuitionem corporis sui et  
haereditatis suæ; dicunt, quod non, quia in ipsius  
corpus aut exhaeredationem non fuit unquam ali-  
quid machinatum. Nec ob hoc tamen deberet  
prorumpere contra dominum suum, donec oculata  
fide cognosceret regem contra ipsum talia  
cogitare; et ex tunc liceret talia attemptare. Ad  
hoc respondens Marescallus fratri Agnello dix-  
it, ‘Ad primum, quod dicunt, debeo, quia terram  
regis invasi, non est verum; quia rex ipse, cum  
semper paratus essem stare juri et judicio parium  
meorum in curia sua, et per plures internuntios  
pluries petii illud, quod ab ipso mibi semper ex-  
stitit denegatum, terram meam violenter ingressus  
contra omnem justitiam invasit. Cui sperans in  
humilitate placere, formam pacis cum eo mihi

A.D. 1233.  
Proposals  
made by the  
king to the  
mamal.

plurimum damnosam gratis inii, in qua etiam convenit, quod, nisi illa ex parte regis mihi <sup>1</sup> observaretur, omnia omnino ex parte mea essent in statu, in quo fuerunt ante dictam pacem initam, videlicet, quod ego essem extra homagium suum et diffidatus ab eo, sicut prius fui per dominum episcopum Meneensem; unde, cum fere in omnibus articulis in forma pacis contentis deficeret, licuit mihi, juxta conventionem meam, quod meum erat recuperare et posse suum modis omnibus debilitare, maxime cum ad meam destructionem et exhaerationem et corporis captionem anhelaret; et hoc pro certo didici, et, si necesse est, probare possum. Et, quod magis est, post pacem per dies quindecim antequam Walliam intrarem aut ab aliquo me defendarem, sine judicio spoliavit me ab officio marescalciæ, quod jure haereditario ad me pertinet et possedi, nec aliquo modo ad illud me restituere voluit requisitus; unde aperte didici, quod nullam pacem voluit mihi observare, cum post pacem deterius quam ante me pertractaret; unde homo suus non fui, sed ab ipsius homagio per ipsum absolutus, cum ad primam diffidationem redirem, juxta dictam conventionem, ut prædictum est. Quapropter licuit et licet me defendere, et malitiæ consiliatorum suorum modis omnibus obviare.' Item dicunt consiliarii regis, utile fore Marescallo, ut se supponat misericordiæ ejus, quia rex ditior et potentior est; et, si Marescallus confidit in auxilio alienigenarum, rex ad unum, quem ille adducet, poterit adducere septem; quia offerunt se quidam consanguinei regis alienigenæ, qui non sunt Scotti vel Gallici aut Wallenses, qui venient in Angliam et suppeditabunt omnes inimicos ejus,

<sup>1</sup> *Observeatur.]* 'Observatur' in MS., but marked as an error.

qui venient in tanta multitudine, quod coope- A.D. 1233.  
rient totam terram. Ad hæc dicit Marescallus, Proposals  
made by the  
king to the  
marshal.  
' Rex ditior me sit et potentior, verum est, sed non potentior est Deo, qui est ipsa justitia, in quem confido in conservatione et persecutione juris mei et regni; nec confido in alienigenis, nec ipsorum confederatorem appeto, nec auxilium invocabo, nisi, quod absit, inopinata et immutabili fuero necessitate compulsus. Et bene scio, quod rex potest septem contra unum adducere, quem ego adducere possum, et credo quod nimis cito tot adducet per consilium suum, quod non habet per quos ipse et regnum ipsius ab ipsis possit liberare; nam a viris fide dignis didici, quod Wintoniensis episcopus obligatus sit imperatori Romano, quod faciet totum Angliæ regnum ipsi subjugatum, et hoc a tempore quo cum ipso fuit in partibus transmarinis; et ideo guerram istam specialiter incepit, ut ex hoc sumpta occasione prius posse imperatoris, et postea ipsum imperatorem vocaret; et hoc probabile videtur, quia in discordia regis abscessit ab Anglia, et modo jurat, quod tot faciet venire in Angliam, quod cooperient totam terram.' Item dicunt consiliarii regis, tutum esse Marescallo, ut se supponat misericordiæ ejus, quia potest in regem confidere et consiliariis ejus; in regem, quia misericors et creditibilis est; in consiliariis, quia nunquam Marescallo malum procuraverunt, imo diligunt eum in veritate. Ad hæc respondens Marescallus dicit, quod 'bene potest esse quod rex misericors sit, sed seductus est consilio eorum per quos nos graviter læsos sentimus. Et quod rex sit creditibilis <sup>1</sup> patet quantum in se ipso; sed, quantum ad consilium ejus pertinet, dico,

<sup>1</sup> Patet quantum in se ipso.] 'Potest esse, quantum in se ipso' in C.

A.D. 1233.  
Proposals  
made by the  
king to the  
marshal.

quod nulla mihi promissio fuit hactenus obser-vata. Quod dicitur de consiliariis, quod nun-quam mihi malum procuraverunt, falsum est ; quia mala mea universa procuraverunt, et omnia eis principaliter imputo. Nec in hoc, quod dicunt se me diligere, credere non debeo, nisi cum opera videro, quæ nondum vidi ; nam plu-ra sacramenta corporaliter præstata violaverunt, videlicet contra comitem Cantœ, cui omnes tres plura sacramenta fecerunt, quæ omnino spreverunt et fregerunt, tam de forma provisa de prædicto comite, de qua similiter pejera-verunt, quam de sacramento libertatum in magna charta contentarum, quas infregerunt, propter quæ excommunicati sunt et perjuri. Per-juri sunt de fideli consilio, quod juraverunt do-mino regi præstituros, cum in omnibus ei con-silium contra justitiam impendant. Stephanus quoque de Segrave, qui juravit justas leges observare, et illas corrupit et inusitatas intro-ducit ; et propter alia multa, pro quibus Deus aut homo non debet ei fidem aut suis complici-bus adhibere, nonne tam ille quam illi excom-municati sunt ? Item dicunt consiliarii regis contra Marescallum, quod invasit corpus do-mini regis apud castellum de Grosmunt, ante-quam rex intrasset terram suam, et, si hoc fecit, injuriam regi fecit ; unde debet se subjicere mi-sericordiæ ejus, ut prædictum est, ut faciat ho-norem domino regi, ne alii habeant exemplum insurgendi contra ipsum. Ad hæc respondit Marescallus pro persona sua, quod falsum est quod interfuit illi invasioni ; et, forte aliqui de familia sua adfuerunt, familiam tantum regis in-vaserunt, et non corpus regis. ‘ Quod tamen si fecissent, non esset mirum, cum rex veniret cum exercitu suo in terram meam, ut me inva-

deret et, modis omnibus quibus posset, gravaret ; A.D. 1223.  
 quod omnibus liquere potest per tenorem litera- Proposals  
 rum suarum, quibus per Angliam generalem fecit made by the  
 convocationem in meum exitium. Et cum præ- king to the  
 dicta ab ipsis mihi imposta falsa sint, et verum  
 est quod rex se pejus habuit contra me tempore,  
 quo ipsius misericordiam exspectavi quam in  
 alio aliquo tempore, et adhuc utitur eodem con-  
 silio quo etiam tunc, et cum præcise nitatur sem-  
 per consiliis eorum in omnibus <sup>1</sup>utendum, de  
 quorum consilio sentio omnia prædicta grava-  
 mina mihi et meis illata, ejus nos subjicere mi-  
 sericordiæ non debemus. Nec hoc esset honor  
 regis, quod voluntati suæ consentirem, quæ non  
 esset ratione subnixa ; imo facerem sibi injuriam  
 et justitiæ, quam ipse in subditos exercere debet  
 et conservare. Et malum exemplum darem om-  
 nibus, videlicet deserendi justitiam et juris perse-  
 cutionem, propter voluntatem erroneam, contra  
 omnem justitiam et injuriam subditorum ; nam  
 ex hoc appareret nos diligere plus possessiones  
 nostras mundanas quam ipsam justitiam.' Item  
 proponunt contra Marescallum consiliarii regis,  
 quod confederatus est capitalibus inimicis ejus,  
 videlicet Francigenis, Scotis et Wallensibus, et  
 videtur eis hoc fecisse in odium et damnum do-  
 mini regis et regni. Ad hoc dicit Marescallus,  
 ' quod de Francigenis falsum est simpliciter.  
 Quod dictum est de Scotis et Wallensibus simi-  
 liter falsum est, præterquam de rege Scotiæ et  
 Loelino principe Norwalliæ, qui non inimici, sed  
 fideles ejus fuerunt, quoisque per injurias ipsis  
 a rege et ejus consiliariis illatas a fidelitate sua  
 inviti et coacti, sicut et ego, alienati sunt ; et  
 propter hoc cum illis confederatus sum, ut me-

---

<sup>1</sup> Utendum. ] Inserted in C., but the line is marked for correc-  
 tion.

A.D. 1233.  
Proposals  
made by the  
king to the  
marshal.

lius simul, quam separati, jura nostra perquiramus et defendamus, a quibus injuste privati sumus et in parte magna spoliati.' Item propo-nunt consiliarii regis, quod non debet Mares-callus confidere de confoederatis suis, quia rex sine aliquo dispendio terræ suæ poterit confoederatos Marescalli ab amicitia sua cum voluerit separare. Ad hoc dicit Marescallus, 'quod super hoc non dubitat; sed ex hoc maxime apparet iniquitas consiliariorum suorum, quod aliquo modo facerent regem dispendium subire erga eos, quos specialiter vocant capitales inimicos, in meam injuriam, qui semper fui ejus fidelis, quoisque per ipsum remaneret, et adhuc essem, si vellet mihi et meis amicis reddere jus nostrum.' Item dicunt consiliarii sæpe dicti, quod papa et ecclesia Romana specialiter diligunt regem et regnum, et excommunicabunt omnes ejus adversarios; et hoc videtur jam esse in januis, quia jam pro legato miserunt. 'Ad hoc, quod de papa et ecclesia Romana dicitur, placet mihi,' dicit Marescallus, 'quia, quanto plus regem et regnum diligunt, tanto plus desiderabunt, quod regnum suum et subditos suos secundum justitiam pertractet. Et placet mihi, quod adversarios regni excommunicet, quia illi sunt qui contra justitiam consilium regi impendunt, quos opera manifestant; quia justitia et pax osculatæ sunt, et propter hoc, ubi justitia corrumpitur, pax similiter violatur. Item de legato, placet quod veniat; quia, quanto plures justitiam nostram audierint, tanto vilius adversarii justitiæ confundentur. Et nunc, licet gravamina mea specialiter enumeraverim, idem dico de omnibus amicis meis et confoederatis; de quibus sicut de meipso conqueror, et sine quibus

nihil omnino facere possum, quod ad aliquam A.D. 1233.  
stabilem conventionem pertineat.'

*Quod rex Anglorum fuit apud Gloverniam ad  
Natale.*

Anno Domini MCCXXXIV., qui est annus regni A.D. 1234.  
Henrici, regis Anglorum, decimus octavus, idem Henry keeps  
rex ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Gloverniam cum parvo admodum comitatu, quia re- Christmas at  
cesserant ab eo magnates multi, qui spoliati Gloucester.  
erant paulo ante a rebus omnibus apud Grossmont castellum, sicut superius habetur expre-  
sum. Quo utique tempore cœpit terra gelu  
graviter constringi, ita quod fruges suffocaban-  
tur in agris, rādices herbarum in hortis, et quasi  
pedibus quatuor in humo infixas radices in po-  
meriis desiccavit, quod usque ad purificationem  
beatae Mariæ absque nive se continuans agri-  
culturam suspendit; secuta est autem eodem in  
anno tanta aeris et elementorum intemperies,  
quod sterilitatem rerum omnium de terra nas-  
centium mortalibus ministravit.

*Quod Marescallus multos ex hostiis peremit.*

In crastino quidem diei Dominicæ nativitatis Successes  
Johannes Monemutensis, vir nobilis, qui cum rege of the  
militabat in Wallia, copiosum collegit exercitum, marshal.  
ut furtivum faceret impetum in comitem Mares-  
callum; sed, cum hoc Marescallo esset intimatum,  
misit se in quadam silva, per quam hostes  
venturi erant, ut eos deluderet, qui illum deci-  
pere cogitabant. Cum igitur adversarii memo-  
rati ad locum insidiarum pervenissent, Mares-  
callus et exercitus ejus totus strepitum horri-  
bilem cum tubis emittentes et buccinis in hostes  
irruunt venientes et non præmunitos omnes illi-

A.D. 1234. co compulerunt in fugam, et fugientes insecuri interficiunt terga vertentes, ita quod, innumera ex eis multitudine perempta tam Pictavensium [quam aliorum], ipse Johannes vix per fugam evasit; et progrediens cum suis legionibus Marescallus villas ejus et aedificia, cum omnibus quae ipsius erant, ferro devastavit et flamma, atque ex divite fecit pauperem et mendicum, et sic cum spoliis impreiabilibus et armentis in sua sese Marescallus recepit.

*Quod exulati seditionem moverunt contra consiliarios regis.*

Opposition  
of Siward  
and others  
to the  
government.

In ipsis præterea diebus Natalitiis bellum contra regem et suos consiliarios graviter accenditur, nam Richardus Siward, conjunctis sibi cæteris exulatis,<sup>1</sup> terras Richardi comitis et fratris regis, non longe a Brehulle sitas, cum aedificiis et frugibus ac bobus in stabulis stantibus, incendio concremarunt; Segrave, natale solum Stephani, Angliæ justiciarii, per idem tempus cum domibus valde sumptuosis, et bobus atque frugibus, combusserunt, equos pretiosos plures cum spoliis et rebus aliis inde recedentes abduxerunt; villam quoque quandam episcopi Wintoniensis, non longe ab eadem villa sitam, igne consumpserunt et spolia diripuerunt, cum cæteris rebus inventis. Hanc autem laudabilem constituebant regulam generalem inter se bellatores isti, quod nemini quicquam mali fecerunt vel aliquem læserunt, præter iniquos regis consi-

<sup>1</sup> *Terras Richardi.*] ‘Maneria et averia Ricardi comitis Cornubiae et episcopi Wintoniensis et P. de Orivalle, et S. de Segrave, et R. Passeelewe, et aliorum æmulorum suorum; qui pro excu-

satione sua asserebant, hæc merito se fecisse, quia per prædictorum consilia eorum tenementa prius fuerint dissipata;’ Chron. Dunst. p. 220.

liarios, per quos erant in exilium pulsi; et quæ A.D. 1234.  
sua fuerant igne cremata nemora, et pomeria ra-  
dicitus extirpata.

*De equitatione facta apud Salopesberi.*

Deinde, infra octavas Epiphaniæ, comes Marescallus et princeps Norwalliæ Loelinus, collectis omnibus viribus quas habere poterant, terras regis longe ingressi ferro et incendio destruxerunt, ita quod a finibus Walliæ usque ad Salopesberi nihil omnino reliquerunt intactum; villam quoque Salopesberi igne combusserunt et pretiosa inde reversi spolia reportarunt. Rex autem Anglorum inter hæc omnia, quæ siebant ab hostibus suis, apud Gloverniam cum episcopo Wintonensi morabatur imbellis, quia vires non habuit militares, quibus auderet hostibus obviare, unde nimio rubore confusus versus Wintoniam profectus est, regionem illam adversariis depopulandam relinquens, sicut intuentibus apparuit evidenter; nam misabile viatoribus erat videre in provincia illa tot occisorum corpora, quorum non erat numerus, nuda per plateas et insepulta jacere, quæ bestiis esca fuere voracibus et volatilibus cæli rapacibus, ex quibus tantæ corruptionis foetor aërem circumquaque infecerat, quod etiam homines sanos mortui peremerunt. Induratum quidem adeo erat cor regis contra Marescallum per iniqum, quo utebatur, consilium, quod episcopis illum admonentibus, ut pacem cum eo faceret, qui pro justitia decertabat, responderet, se nunquam in pacem convenire cum illo, nisi laqueum in collo gerens et se proditorem esse recognoscens ejus misericordiam imploraret.

*De proditione quam contra Marescallum consiliarii regis egerunt.*

A.D. 1234.  
Plan of the  
government  
for the  
destruction  
of the  
marshal,

Circa dies istos Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, et filius ejus Petrus de Rivallis, et alii iniqui consiliarii regis, cum se victos ubique cernerent a comite Marescallo, et villas suas igne crematas irremediabiliter dolerent, cogitabant proditione saltem, quem armis non poterant, superare; siquidem, qui præter alia incommoda a suo desiderio defraudati turbam Pictavensium innumeram [in] finibus Walliæ viderent interfec-tam, literas composuerunt proditionis inauditæ, et, cum earundem tenorem literarum rex penitus ignoraret, compulerunt eum sigillum suum apponere, cum quo etiam et ipsi sua apponentes sigilla numero undecim, cruentum illud scriptum in Hiberniam transmiserunt. <sup>1</sup>Missa est autem hujus proditionis charta ad magnates Hiberniæ, Mauricium scilicet filium-Geroldi, qui vices justiciarii ibidem sub rege gerebat, ad Walterum et Hugonem de Lasceio, ad Richardum de Burgo, et Galfridum de Marisco, et ad alios homines ejusdem Marescalli jura-tos, sed infideles; quæ hanc iniquitatem, pro parte quæ sequitur, continebat. In primis signicaverunt magnatibus prædictis consiliarii me-morati, quod Richardus, quondam regis Angliæ Marescallus, propter proditionem manifestam per judicium curiæ ejusdem regis proscriptus erat de regno Angliæ, et terris illius, villis ejus et ædificiis igne crematis, parcis et pomeriis suc-cisis, stagnis cum piscariis destructis, et, quod his omnibus majus est, ab hæreditate paterna in perpetuum abjudicatus; et, cum a bonis omni-

<sup>1</sup> *Missa est . . . charta.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 219.

bus hoc ordine sit privatus, regem adhuc persequi A.D. 1234. non omittit, sed in incep*ta* contra eum malitia perseverat. ‘Significamus ergo vobis, ut fidelibus domini regis et juratis, quatenus, si casu in Hiberniam venerit, illum vel vivum vel mortuum comprehensum regi præsentare corporaliter studeatis; quod si facere curaveritis, totam hæreditatem ejus et possessiones de terra Hiberniæ, quæ nunc in voluntate domini regis sunt, concedet vobis inter vos dividendas et jure hæredario possidendas. Super hac domini regis promissione fideliter vobis tenenda nos omnes, quorum consilio rex et regnum regitur, fidejussores constituimus, si rem prætaxatam perducere curaveritis ad effectum. Valete.’

*Quod proceres Hiberniæ consensum regis consiliarii  
præbuere.*

Cum igitur audissent Hiberniæ proceres memorati tenorem literarum, concupiscentia subvertit singulorum corda, et conspirantes ad invicem nuntios clam cum literis ad præfatos regis consiliarios transmiserunt, significantes illis communiter sigillo secreti, quod, si promissio in literis contenta per chartam regis confirmaretur eisdem, ipsi rem prælocutam ad effectum perducere conarentur. Tunc consiliarii sæpe dicti per chartam regis magnatibus illis omnia Marescalli jura Hiberniæ inter se dividenda concesserunt, singulorum loca, possessiones et jura singulis exprimentes. Cumque tandem hoc damnabile scriptum<sup>1</sup> ad proditores nequissimos in Hiberniam pervenisset, confederati sunt protinus, interposito juramento, quod visa opportunitate rem detestabilem perpetrarent; et conflantes in in-

agreed to by  
the Irish  
nobles.

<sup>1</sup> *Scriptum.*] Paris adds, ‘sigillo regio communitum.’

A.D. 1234. vicem, ut perimerent innocentem, congregaverunt exercitum copiosum, et terras comitis Marescalli hostiliter ingressi quædam castella ejus ceperunt, prædas et spolia inter se diviserunt.

*Quod hæretici Albigenses in campestri prælio sunt perempti.*

The Albi-genses in Spain.

Hoc<sup>1</sup> quoque anno hæretici Albigenses in partibus Hispaniæ et illis regionibus ita invaluerunt, ut, ordinatis episcopis hæreticis, qui suam prædicarent abusionem, asserebant constanter fidem Christianam, et præcipue incarnationis mysterium, frivolum esse ac penitus abrogandum ; et congregantes exercitum copiosum ingressi sunt hostiliter fines Christianorum, comburentes ecclesiastas et homines Christianos cujuscumque sexus vel ætatis immisericorditer trucidantes. Sed, hoc tandem divulgato, compressa est eorum superstitionis præsumptio a fidelibus Christianis, qui ad mandatum Gregorii papæ ex diversis regionibus occidentis cruce signati advenerant ad defensionem fidei Christianæ. Perempti sunt autem ab eis in campestri prælio tempore vernali cum suis episcopis hæretici memorati, ita quod nec pes unus ex omnibus evasit ; Christiani quoque civitates eorum occupantes repleverunt eas fidelibus Christianis, et, ordinatis in eis episcopis catholicis, reversi sunt victores in patriam suam, et, qui pauperes advenerant a partibus remotis, singuli divites recesserunt.

*Consilium episcoporum regi datum pro perturbatione regni.*

The bishops remonstrate with the king.

Dum hæc in Hispania agerentur, rex Anglorum venit ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium

---

<sup>1</sup> *Hoc quoque anno.]* Compare Raynaldi ad an. 1233, § 60; and 1234, § 14.

in purificatione sanctæ Mariæ, in quo quosdam episcopos, et maxime Alexandrum, Cestrensem episcopum, graviter increpavit de nimia familiaritate comitis Marescalli et quod ipsum a regni solio depellere nitebantur; episcopus autem illè pontificalibus indutus, cum talia sibi objecta cognovisset, excommunicavit omnes, qui contra regem iniquitatem hujusmodi cogitabant, et sic, intervenientibus episcopis qui aderant, cum rege pacificatus est. Adfuit quidem huic colloquio magister Eadmundus, Cantuariensis electus, cum multis episcopis suffraganeis, qui omnes regis et regni desolationi condolentes venerunt ad regem et quasi uno corde, animo et ore dixerunt, ‘ Domine rex, dicimus vobis in Domino, ut fideles vestri, quia consilium, quod nunc habetis et quo utimini, non est sanum nec securum, sed crudele et periculosum vobis et regno Angliæ, Petri videlicet Wintoniensis episcopi et Petri de Rivallis. In primis, quia gentem Anglicanam odio habent, vocantes eos proditores et facientes omnes sic vocari, et avertentes animum vestrum a gente vestra et gentis vestræ a vobis, ut appareat in facto Marescalli, qui melior homo est terræ vestræ, et hæc per mala mendacia, quæ vobis dicunt de eis, omnia eorum dicta et facta pervertunt. Et per hoc idem consilium, scilicet per dictum episcopum, amisit pater vester rex Johannes primo corda gentis suæ, et post Normanniam et alias terras suas, et in fine totum thesaurum suum et fere dominium Angliæ, et nunquam postea pacem habuit. Per idem consilium turbatum fuit regnum et venit interdictum, et pater vester per tales angustias tandem mortem incurrit. Per idem consilium temporibus nostris contra vos detentum fuit castellum de Bedeford, propter quod Rupellam per-

A.D. 1234.  
Remon-  
strance of  
the bishops.

A.D. 1234.  
Remon-  
strance of  
the bishops.

didistis. Item, illa perturbatio, quæ nunc periculosa est in regno vestro, per eorum iniquum consilium accidit; quia, si per justitiam et rectum judicium terræ tractati fuissent homines vestri, non evenisset ista turbatio, et haberetis terras vestras non destructas et integrum thesaurum vestrum. Item, in fide dicimus, qua vobis tenemur, quia consilium vestrum non est pacis, sed perturbationis terræ; quia sic crescere volunt, qui per pacem non possunt, videlicet per regni perturbationem et aliorum exhaeredationem. Item, quia castella vestra et fortitudinem terræ vestræ habent in manu sua, quasi de gente vestra diffidere debeatis. Item, quia scaccarium vestrum et omnes custodias et exchaetas maximas habent in potestate sua, et, quomodo vobis respondebunt, scietis postea. Item, quia per sigillum vestrum vel præceptum, sine sigillo Petri de Rivallis vel præcepto, vix aliquod magnum negotium fit in regno, unde constat quod vos non habent pro rege. Item, per idem consilium naturales homines de regno vestro de curia vestra expulsi sunt, unde timendum est tam de vobis quam de regno, cum videamini magis esse in eorum potestate, quam ipsi in vestra, sicut per plurima constat exempla. Item, quia puerilam Britanniæ et sororem vestram habent sub potestate sua, et alias plures puellas nobiles et mulieres, cum wardis ac maritagiis, quas dant suis et disparagant. Item, quia legem terræ, juratam et confirmatam atque per excommunicationem roboratam, pariter et justitiam confundunt et pervertunt; unde timendum est, ne sint excommunicati, et vos communicando eis. Item, quia non observant alicui promissionem, fidem, vel juramentum, vel scripturam, nec timent excommunicationem; unde qui a veritate reces-

serunt sunt desperati, et qui remanent, in timore. Hæc autem fideliter vobis dicimus, et coram Deo et hominibus consulimus, rogamus et monemus, ut tale consilium amoveatis a vobis, et, sicut est in aliis regnis consuetudo, regnum vestrum tractetis per fideles homines vestros et juratos de regno vestro; denuntiamus enim vobis in veritate, quod, nisi infra breve temporis spatium ista correxeris, in vos et in omnes alias contradictores per censuram ecclesiasticam procedemus, nihil exspectantes nisi consecrationem venerabilis patris nostri electi Cantuariensis.<sup>A.D. 1234.  
Remonstrance of the bishops.</sup> Et, his ita dictis, rex humiliter breves postulavit inducias, dicens se non posse ita subito consilium suum amovere, donec de thesauro suo illis commisso ratiocinium audisset; et sic solutum est colloquium, recedentibus cunctis cum fiducia concordiae celeriter obtinendæ.

*Quod exulati ad vindictam proruperunt.*

Finito siquidem colloquio prædicto, cum rex gratia orationis apud Bromholm festinaret, transitum fecit per sanctum Eadmundum, ubi pietate motus concessit uxori Huberti de Burgo octo maneria de terris acquisitis a viro suo, quæ tunc fuerunt sub custodia Roberti Passeelewe ex mandato ipsius regis; ac deinde, expleto orationis voto, partes petuit occidentis. Et, cum venisset ad villam de Huntendona,<sup>1</sup> venit Richardus Siuard cum Gileberto Basset et cæteris exulatis ad Alcmondeberi, villam Stephani de Segrave, quæ vix duabus a rege distabat milliaribus, et, injecto igne in ædificiis dicti Stephani, omnia concremavit et spolia colligavit. Stephanus vero, qui cum rege erat, videns flamas ædificiorum suorum regio-

<sup>1</sup> *Venit Richardus Siuard.] Annal. Waverl. p. 192.*

A.D. 1224. nemque totam illustrantes, cum manu armata non modica festinavit in auxilium rerum suarum ; sed, cum a referentibus cognovisset Richardum Siuard hujus violentiæ fuisse auctorem, quasi telis obviantibus fræna retorsit et calcari bus non parcens ad regem cum summa celeritate refugit, unde ipsum regem et alios qui aderant ad risum commovit. Per idem etiam tempus ipse Richardus et socii ejus, quosdam milites in finibus Walliæ sibi adversantes juxta legem guerræ ceperunt et ad gravem redemptionem compulerunt.

Eodem anno in ecclesia Christi Cantuariæ consecratus est Eadmundus, ejusdem ecclesiæ electus, a Rogerio, Londinensi episcopo, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem Dominica, qua cantatur ‘*Lætare Hierusalem*,’ quæ tunc fuit quarto nonas Aprilis, præsente rege cum tredecim episcopis ; et eodem die missam <sup>1</sup> cum pallio solemniter celebravit.

*Quod rex Anglorum episcopum Wintoniensem et  
Pictavenses a suo consilio removerit.*

Fall of the  
bishop of  
Winchester.

Circa eosdem dies denique convenerunt ad colloquium Dominica prima in passione Domini, quæ tunc fuit quinto idus Aprilis, apud Westmonasterium, rex cum comitibus et baronibus, et archiepiscopus nuper consecratus cum suis suffraganeis, ut regno perturbato salubriter providerent. Archiepiscopus quidem, conjunctis sibi episcopis ac cæteris qui aderant prælatis, ad regem veniens ostendit ei consilium suum et episcoporum super desolatione regni et periculo imminenti, replicando suprascripta incommoda in colloquio superius habito sibi expressa. De-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Cum pallio.*] Paris adds, Simon de Legro, ejus ecclesiæ ‘ quod caute ei de curia Romana monachus, detulerat.’

nuntiavit etiam <sup>1</sup> ipsi regi audacter, quod, nisi A.D. 1234.  
celerius errorem dimitteret et cum fidelibus regni  
sui pacifice componeret, ipse incontinenti, cum  
omnibus qui aderant prælatis, in ipsum regem  
sententiam ferret excommunicationis et in om-  
nes alios hujus pacis contradictores et concordiæ  
perversores. Rex autem pius consilium audi-  
ens prælatorum humiliter respondit, quod consiliis  
eorum in omnibus adclinaret; unde post dies  
paucos, intelligens proprium errorem, poenitentia  
ductus præcepit Petro, Wintonensi episcopo, ut  
pergens ad episcopatum suum curis intenderet  
animarum et de cætero regiis negotiis nequa-  
quam interesset. Petro etiam de Rivallis im-  
mutabiliter jussit, cuius Anglia tota dispositio-  
nibus subjacebat, ut, redditis sibi castellis suis  
et ratiocinio de thesauris, incontinenti a curia  
recederet, affirmans cum juramento, quod, nisi  
beneficiatus et in sortem clericorum fuisset ad-  
missus, ipse ei ambos oculos eruere faceret.  
Pictavenses insuper omnes, tam de curia sua,  
quam de castrorum præsidiis, expellens remi-  
sit in patriam suam, præcipiens ut ultra faci-  
em ejus non viderent. Ac deinde rex, qui mo-  
dis omnibus pacem sitiebat, misit Eadmundum,  
Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, cum episcopis  
Cestrensi et Roffensi in Walliam ad Loelinum  
et Richardum comitem Marescallum, ut cum  
eis de pace tractarent. Et sic rex, dimissis in-  
iquis consiliariis suis, revocavit ad obsequium  
suum naturales homines de regno suo, subjici-  
ens se consilio archiepiscopi et episcoporum, per  
quos sperabat regnum perturbatum ad statum  
debitum revocare.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ipsi,*] wanting in C.

*Quod comes Marescallus in Hiberniam veniens  
guerram contra regem moverit.*

A.D. 1234.  
The marshal  
carries on  
the war in  
Ireland.

Hoc quoque tempore venerunt nuntii ad Riquidum comitem Marescallum referentes quomodo sæpedicti magnates Hiberniæ terram ejus hostiliter ingressi quædam ipsius castella ceperant et eam pervagantes rapinis et spoliis indulgebant. Marescallus autem, cum rex Anglorum post dies Natalios expeditiones bellicas in Walliis <sup>1</sup>dimisisset et australes Angliæ partes petisset, circa purificationem beatæ Mariæ cum quindecim tantum militibus in Hiberniam transfretavit, ut hostium suorum malitiam refrænaret; qui cum ibidem applicuisset, venit ad eum Gaufridus de Marisco, homo ejus ligius, sed infidelis, qui Mauricio justiciario, Hugoni de Lascio et Richardo de Burgo, ac cæteris inimicis ipsius Marescalli confœderatus erat, et adhærebat ei in dolo; consulens, ut contra hostes prædictos arma moveret et Hiberniam subjugaret. Marescallus vero per terram suam profectus congregavit exercitum copiosum, et hostes suos insecutus castella, quæ ceperant, pro parte revocavit; Lemeric quoque, famosam Hiberniæ civitatem, quatriuana obsidione cepit et ex civibus exegit fidelitatem; deinde hostiliter progrediens cepit tam regis castella quam aliorum inimicorum suorum, accipiens a custodibus juramentum, ne ejus propositum impedirent. Magnates autem prædicti illi occurrere non audentes fugerunt a facie ejus ad loca remotiora, ubi milites et equites bellatores cum turba peditum armatorum innumera congregantes ad campestre sese præli-

<sup>1</sup> *Dimisisset.*] ‘Dimissis’ in MS., it had been intended to write and the ‘et’ wanting, as though ‘expeditionibus bellicis.’

um præparabant ; hos omnes, datis regiis the- A.D. 1234.  
 sauris cum magnis promissionibus, ita in necem  
 Marescalli animaverant, ut, eo perempto, se di-  
 vites fieri aëstimarent. Quo facto, miserunt ad  
 Marescallum viros Templarios, mandantes quod  
 proditione nimis agebat contra dominum suum  
 regem Angliæ, quem sicut in Anglia ita jam in  
 Hibernia impugnabat ; addiderunt etiam, quod  
 ipsi, sub quorum custodia rex terram Hiberniæ  
 commiserat et cujus homines erant fideles et ju-  
 rati, non poterant sine prodictionis nota hanc in-  
 juriam sustinere ; postulaverunt ergo inducias  
 competentes, ut interim scirent a rege Anglorum  
 si velit Hiberniam defendere, quam si tueri con-  
 temneret et eam relinquendo deserere decerneret,  
 ipsi terram totam ei sine lite et effusione sanguini-  
 nis resignarent.

*Quod justum bellum idem comes contra regem  
 suscepérít.*

His igitur ita dictis, ad singula sibi proposita comes Marescallus respondit ; ‘ In primis re-  
 spondeo, quod proditione non egi contra regem ;  
 quia sine judicio parium meorum et injuste ab officio marescalciæ me spoliavit, exulem per totam Angliam denuntiari fecit, ædificia mea igne cremavit et terras meas destruxit. Semel et iterum me diffidavit, cum semper paratus essem in curia sua juri parere et stare judicio parium meorum ; unde homo suus non fui, sed ab ipsis homagio, non per me sed per ipsum, absolutus.’ De cæteris autem sibi objectis et de induciis concedendis significavit magnatibus prædictis per eosdem Templarios, ut in crastino venirent ad colloquium in quodam prato sibi designato de pace tractaturi, immutabiliter affirmans, quod licuit sibi de jure quod suum erat

The marshal  
defends his  
conduct.

A.D. 1234. repetere, et posse regis et consiliatorum ejus modis omnibus quibus poterat infirmare.

*De iniquo consilio Gaufridi de Marisco.*

Treacherous  
council of  
Geoffrey de  
Marsh.

Cumque verba comitis Marescalli magnatibus sœpe dictis a Templariis fuissent declarata, placuit eis vehementer ad colloquium venire, scientes se majores habere vires et armatorum copias quam Marescallus haberet; habuerunt enim in proposito, quod sine campestri prælio ad propria non redirent. Marescallus vero a militibus super dicto negotio consilium quærens dixit, ‘Sufhicere mihi debet, ut concedam proceribus istis inducias postulatas, quia justum mihi videtur et rationi subnixum quod petunt; unde timeo, si eis aequitatem facere negavero, ne deterius mihi contingat.’ Hoc cum audisset Gaufridus de Marisco, qui ei dolose adhærebat et conscious erat provisæ proditionis ac socius, prorupit in vocem blasphemiae adversus eum; quasi ex caritate loquens dixit ipsum non fuisse filium Wilhelmi magni Marescalli, qui consilio et prudenter, strenuitate pariter et audacia, omnes occidentalis imperii milites superabat. ‘Et tu modo timidus effectus regnum Hiberniæ, quod nunc subjugare vales, per ignaviam obtinere contemnis; induciæ siquidem, quas petunt inimici tui, frustratoriæ sunt, ut sic impediант progressum tuum. Noveris autem certissime, quod hostes tui omnes, cum te viderint armatum et ad pugnam licet cum paucis præparatum, terga vertentes per fugam evadere conabuntur.’ Erant præterea ibidem et alii milites quater viginti vel plures, qui de Marescallo in Hibernia terras tenebant, ab hostibus ejus corrupti, qui ei consuluerunt idipsum, proditiōse illum decipere cupientes.

*De colloquio habito inter proceres Hibernia et  
comitem Marescallum.*

Mane autem facta, venerunt ad colloquium in prato sibi designato Mauricius justiciarius, Hugo de Laceio et Richardus de Burgo, cum militibus septies viginti fortissimis et audacissimis, quos a tempore proditionis inchoatae elegerant ex toto Hiberniae regno, ut perimerent Marescallum, et ad hoc conduxerant magnis munib[us] et promissionibus, qui campestre prælium magis quam concordiam sitiebant. Marescallus vero cum suis armatis, qui omnes sibi ficte adhærebant, præter quindecim milites, quos de propria familia habebat, ad colloquium veniens per unum fere milliare ab hostibus divisus suam composuit stationem. Deinde, Templariis mediabantibus, qui inter utrumque exercitum verba conferabant, de pace tractare cœperunt. Sed tandem magnates Hiberniae, ut breviter dicatur, cum cognovissent quod Marescallus cum paucis advennerat, significaverunt ei immutabiliter et præcise, quod, nisi prædictas concederet inducias, diffidabant eum, ut continuo gladiis discurrentibus experirentur, quis ex illis in prælio fortior haberetur. Comes vero Marescallus, per consilium Galfridi de Marisco et aliorum hominum suorum, sed infidelium, invitus et coactus plane negavit eis treugas postulatas, petens constanter per internuntios memoratos, ut redderent sibi quædam castella sua, quæ injuste occupaverant et detinebant, quia injustum ei videbatur inducias concedere spoliatus; cumque illi id facere denegassent, dispositis aciebus ad pugnam contra Marescallum procedunt, quasi securi de victoria obtainenda. Quod videns Gaufridus de Marisco dixit ad Marescallum, ‘Consilium do tibi in

A.D. 1234.  
The mar-  
shal's con-  
ference with  
the Irish  
nobles.

A.D. 1234.

fide, ut concedatis magnatibus istis inducias pretitas; uxor enim mea soror est nobilis viri Hugonis de Lasceio, unde non possum in prælum contra ipsum tecum ire, cum quo consisto confederatus.' Ad quem Marescallus, 'O,' inquit, 'proditor nequissime, nonne modo denegavi eis inducias, contra voluntatem meam, per consilium tuum? Inconstantis hominis esset tam cito concedere, quod modo eis negavi, quia id magis timore<sup>1</sup> facere viderer, quam amore. Scio enim, quod hodierno die morti traditus sum; sed melius est mihi mori cum honore pro causa iustitiae, quam campum per fugam deserere et probra militiae in perpetuum obtinere.' Et respiciens Walterum fratrem suum, juvenem elegantissimum, dixit quibusdam ministris suis, 'Adducite fratrem meum,' inquit, 'ad castellum meum, quod prope est, nec in hoc certamine pereat omne genus meum; quia in ejus probitate confido, si annos exspectaverit legitimos strenue militiam exercendi.' Proceres autem Hiberniæ, audaciam Marescalli ac probitatem metuentes, arma sua militibus fortissimis tradiderant et ignotis, quos ad hoc conduxerant, ut perimerent innocentem; sic eum occidere cupientes, ut non occidisse viderentur.

*De prælio campœtri in quo captus fuit comes Marescallus.*

The marshal taken in battle.

Comes vero Marescallus hostes multos aciebus dispositis contra paucos venire considerans horretatur suos ad pugnam, quam pro causa iustitiae et legibus Anglicanæ gentis et oppressione Pictavensium assumpserat, sperans habere fidèles, quos habuit proditores. In medium hostium audacter prorupit, et, aciebus eorum potenter penetratis, militibus suis viam ferro aperuit,

<sup>1</sup> Timore.] 'Timore hoc' in MS.

quem solummodo quindecim milites de propria <sup>A.D. 1234.</sup> familia sequentes obstantium cohortes acierum dissipare cœperunt. Sed homines ejus jurati et milites, in quibus confidebat, sicut prius inter proditores erat provisum, hostibus sese Marescalli non coacti, non hastis percussi vel gladiis, ad vincula reddiderunt, quasi amici ad invicem congaudentes; quidam autem illorum absque sanguinis effusione ad ecclesias et abbatias fugientes Marescallum <sup>1</sup>cum quindecim tantum militibus reliquerunt. Quibus inæqualiter nimis contra septies viginti pugnantibus et sese viriliter defendantibus, pondus præliai versum est in comitem Marescallum, qui tunc primo de proditione in necem suam machinata advertit; et, sic undique adversariis impetum facientibus in eum, sex milites ex eis sese defendendo peremit. Indignatus autem, hoc viso, miles quidam ut gigas fortissimus, cui Richardus de Burgo arma sua tradiderat, ut Marescallum occideret, impetum fecit in eum, volens galeam de capite ejus elevare truculenter; quem videns Marescallus existimabat quod esset Richardus de Burgo, et ait, ‘Fuge, proditor nequissime, ne te interficiam.’ Cui ille, ‘Non a te fugiam,’ inquit, ‘sed propius accedam;’ et cum manus levasset, ut ipsum per cassidem arriperet, Marescallus interjecto gladio ambas manus ejus armatas uno ictu præcidit. Alius autem miles socium læsum vindicare cupiens rapido equi cursu ad eum venit, et omnibus utens viribus in capite galeato percussit, sed, obstantibus armis Marescalli, nihil profecit; at comes se ferientem cum gladio percutiens corpus

---

<sup>1</sup> Cum quindecim tantum militibus.] ‘Licit se solum et omni fidelis consortio destitutum non ignoraret, campestris prelio se contra inimicos et etiam innumerabiles exponere non formidavit;’ Annal. Waverl. p. 195.

A.D. 1234.  
The mar-  
shal taken  
prisoner.

ejus totum usque ad umbilicum in duas partes divisit, unde post in multo diei spatio nullus ad eum accedere ausus fuit. Sed hostes ejus principales animo consternati compulerunt vulgi multitudinem, qui cum lanceis, furcis ferreis, securibus advenerant et bipennibus, ut illum circumdantes opprimerent et equum ejus eviscerantes ad terram prosternerent; qui protinus Marescallum circumvallantes equum ejus multis vulneribus confossum exsanguem fecerunt, et, cum sic eum ex equo dejicere non potuissent, pedes ipsius equi cum securibus præciderunt; cumque equus cum Marescallo, jam in certamine ab hora diei prima usque ad horam undecimam fatigato, corruisset in terram, <sup>1</sup> ipsi accurrentes percusserunt eum in posteriora loricam levantes et lethaliter vulneraverunt. Magnates autem cognoscentes quod vulneratus fuisse ad mortem, qui quasi examinis jacebat in terra, duxerunt illum, vix palpitante in eo spiritu vitali, ad castellum suum, quod Mauricius justiciarius paulo ante ceperat et captum detinebat, ubi sub arcta servatus custodia cum uno tantum juvne de suis inter hostes remansit. Actum est autem hoc prælium primo die mensis Aprilis, in sabbato.

*De morte et sepultura comitis Marescalli.*

Death of the  
marshal.

Et, his ita gestis, post triduum ita convaluit comes Marescallus, quod manducare potuit et bibere, ad aleas ludere, et huc atque illuc ire in thalamo ubi infirmatus jacebat; quod videntes inimici ejus petierunt ex parte regis Angliæ, ut redderet

<sup>1</sup> *Ipsi accurrentes.*] ‘Quidam feriore corporis regione, quo numaligno spiritu agitatus eum a posteriori parte latenter aggrediens, eidem ex improviso in in-

dum et inerme recognovit, lethale vulnus infixit;’ Annal. Waverl. p. 195.

omnia castella sua et terras Hiberniae, cuius cor- A.D. 1234.  
 pus in voluntate ejus erat ac potestate, quacum- Death of  
 que voluerit morte etiam turpissima puniendum,  
 ut qui per judicium curiae suae primo exulatus  
 ac postea diffidatus, et nunc in campestri prælio  
 contra eum commisso captus; ‘Utile tibi erit ut  
 haec facias sine contradictione et ab eo miseri-  
 cordiam consequaris.’ Ostenderunt præterea illi  
 literas regis patentes, in quibus eis præceptum  
 erat, quod, si casu veniret in Hiberniam, ipsi illum  
 caperent et vivum sibi aut mortuum præsenta-  
 rent. Marescallus autem videns quia in potes-  
 tate erat inimicorum suorum præcepit continuo  
 per literas suas, ut omnia castella sua regi red-  
 derentur, nesciens quod concessa erant magnati-  
 bus illis per cartam regis inter se dividenda et  
 jure hæreditario possidenda. Cœperunt deinde  
 vulnera ejus dolere graviter et tumere, unde præ  
 nimio cruciatu auxilium medici postulavit. Tunc  
 Mauricius justiciarius, sub cuius custodia erat,  
 medicum vocavit, magis, ut dicitur, in exitium  
 quam auxilium; sed Marescallus, ut fidelissi-  
 mus Christianus, ante omnem medicinam carna-  
 lem, in confessione et viatico ac legitimo testa-  
 mento exitum suum munivit et suæ mortis cau-  
 sam Domino commendavit. Medicus autem ad  
 eum accedens cum ferro longo et ignito vulnera  
 ejus aperuit, et tam sæpe et profunde ferrum  
 demersit, quod ex vulneribus sanguinem elicuit.  
 Marescallus vero pro nimia doloris angustia in  
 febrem acutam decidens <sup>1</sup>sexto decimo die post-  
 quam in prælio vulneratus fuerat in Domino ob-  
 dormivit decimo sexto kalendas Maii; in cras-

<sup>1</sup> *Sexto decimo die.]* ‘Per quin- rex certioratus diu gemuit, sicut  
 decim dies sequentes languens rex David super morte Saulis et  
 et poenitentiam agens diem clau- Jonathæ;’ Chron. Dunst. p. 219.  
 sit extremum. Super cuius morte ‘In castellum deputaverunt, ubi

A.D. 1224. tino autem sepultus est apud Kilkenni in oratorio fratrum de ordine Minorum, ubi ipse adhuc vivus elegerat sepulturam. Occubuit siquidem ob causam supra scriptam comes Marescallus, miles egregius, in literali scientia sufficienter eruditus, moribus decenter et virtutibus ornatus, in die Palmarum, ut palmam a Domino acciperet in cælestibus pro mercede, qui inter filios hominum adeo enituit forma speciosus, ut in compositione corporis ipsius visa sit natura cum virtutibus contendisse.

*De ultiō exulatorum contra consiliatores regis.*

Destruction  
of the mi-  
nisters'  
property.

Hæc autem, quæ facta erant de comite Marescallo in Hibernia, nondum nota fuerunt in Anglia, unde Richardus Siuard cum cæteris exulatis de consiliatoribus regis, per quos exterminati fuerant, ultiōnem quærentes feria quarta in hebdomada Paschæ combusserunt ædificia Roberti Pas selewe in Suaneburne cum frugibus et animalibus et aliis rebus inventis, quæ ei damnosa fuerunt; et post dies paucos combusserunt horrea ejusdem Roberti cum frugibus et rebus aliis prope villam de Stanes sexto kalendas Maii. Item, sexto nonas Maii inter Radingum et Wallingeford in quadam silva ceperunt sex summarios Stephani de Segrave oneratos, cum equo quodam pretioso, et omnia quæ domini regis erant dimiserunt in pace; Ivingeho quoque villam Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, cum domibus et rebus cunctis episcopo damnosis concremarunt quarto idus Maii. Et eodem tempore proceres Hibernenses castella Marescalli et jura Hiberniæ oc-

curis medicinalibus plagis ad- hibitis, quindecim diebus, quos ei Deus ad poenitentiam provi- cione, veraque confessione, sacro-	sancta Dominici corporis et san- guinis . . . communione, debitum humanae naturæ persolvit; An- nal. Waverl. p. 196.
---	---

cupantes inter se divisorunt, sicut eis per car- A.D. 1234.  
tam regis fuerant confirmata, possessionibus in-  
cumbentes.

*Quod omnes exulati ad pacem regis venerunt.*

Per idem etiam tempus, post Paschalem solen- The opposi-  
nitatem, cum rex Anglorum versus Gloverniam tion received  
tenderet cupiens obviare archiepiscopo et epi- into favour.  
scopis, quos in Walliam miserat, ut supradictum est, venit apud Wodestoke manerium suum, ut pernoctaret ibidem. Venerunt autem ibi ad eum nuntii ex Hibernia, casum ei referentes de morte comitis Marescalli; unde rex, admirantibus cunctis qui aderant, in fletum prorumpens conquestus est de morte tanti militis, asserens constanter, quod nullum sibi parem in regno moriens reliquisset; et continuo vocatis presbyteris de capella sua, fecit solenniter decantari obsequium defunctorum pro anima ipsius, et in crastino, completis missarum solemniis, largas pauperibus eleemosynas erogabat. Beatus ergo rex talis, qui novit inimicos diligere, et cum lachrymis <sup>1</sup> potest pro suis persecutoribus Dominum exorare. Cumque rex inde profectus ad Gloverniam pervenisset, venit ad eum ibi Eadmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, cum episcopis, qui cum ipso ad Loelinum fuerant destinati, denuntiantes ei, quod cum Loelino de <sup>2</sup> quadam forma pacis tractaverant, ita tamen, quod ante omnia regi reconciliarentur viri nobiles de regno, quibus confoederatus erat idem Loelinus, qui per pravum consilium fuerant ab Anglia exulati; quo rite peracto, præfata concordia plenius firmaretur. Tunc rex,

<sup>1</sup> *Potest.*] ‘Potest’ is marked terms of the treaty, to continue for correction, probably to be ex- for two years from the feast of S. punged.

<sup>2</sup> *Quadum forma pacis.*] The James (25 July), are printed in Rymer, i. p. 213, dated West-

minster, June 30.

A.D. 1234. qui ut pax fieret modis omnibus suspirabat, fecit convocare per literas suas exulatos omnes, ut venirent apud Gloverniam Dominica proxima ante ascensionem Domini, quarto scilicet kalendas Junii, ad colloquium, recepturi plenam gratiam ipsius cum haereditatibus suis; et hoc facerent omni suspicione remota, sub salvo archiepiscopi et episcoporum<sup>1</sup> conductu. Venerunt ergo<sup>2</sup> ad pacem regis, mediantibus archiepiscopo et episcopis, Hubertus de Burgo, Angliae quondam<sup>3</sup> justiciarius, Gilbertus Basset et fratres ejus, Richardus Siuard, cum omnibus qui cum eis et pro eis in exilium fuerant pulsi, quos rex in osculo pacis recipiens reddidit eis omnia jura sua, quinto kalendas Junii. Et in eodem colloquio venit ad regem Gilebertus, frater Richardi comitis Marescalli, protestans mortem fratris sui, et postulavit ab eo, ut ipsum in haereditate sua reciperet, offerens homagium suum regi et quicquid ei ut domino facere tenebatur. Tunc rex, cum consilio archiepiscopi, reddidit ei haereditatem suam totam tam in Anglia quam in Hibernia, et homagium ejus recepit; atque post hæc, in die Pentecostes, apud Wigorniam eundem Gilebertum cingulo militari donavit, tradens ei virgam marescalciæ curiæ suæ, sicut eam antecessores melius et liberius habuerunt. Hu-

<sup>1</sup> *Conductu.*] At this point the Cotton. MS. of Matt. Paris, collated by Wals., has 'Dominus Rogerus de Wendover, prior aliquando de Beluvoir, huc usque chronicus sua hæc digestus.' The Wendover MS. however, collated by that editor, continues to the same period with our own.

<sup>2</sup> *Ad pacem regis.*] The king's letters to Llewellyn, informing him that, through the mediation of the archbishop of Canterbury, he had

become reconciled to his disaffected nobles and restored them their property, at the same time urging him to confer with the archbishop and bishops respecting peace, are in Rymer, i. p. 212.

<sup>3</sup> *Justiciarius.*] Paris inserts a more lengthened account of the king's meeting with Hubert de Burgh, with the details of a vision of a crucifix that had formerly appeared to him.

bertum quoque de Burgo, Gilebertum Basset et A.D. 1234.  
 Richardum Siuard inter domesticos et familiares  
 consiliarios admisit, tunc plene intelligens, quod  
 priorum fuerat consiliatorum astutia seductus,  
 qui se modo cauteriatam habentes conscientiam  
 a regis præsentia subtrahebant.

*Quod rex ratiocinium exegit a Petro de Rivallis et  
 Stephano de Segrave et Roberto Passelewe.*

In eodem autem colloquio Eadmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, fecit recitari exemplar Peter de  
 literarum de proditione Richardi comitis Marescalli coram rege et universo conventu episcoporum, comitum pariter ac baronum, qui adfuerunt, quæ a consiliariis regis missæ fuerant ad magnates Hiberniæ; unde rex ipse et alii omnes, qui eas audiebant, contristati sunt valde et usque ad lachrymarum effusionem compuncti. Rex autem confessus est in veritate, quod compulsus ab episcopo Wintoniensi et Petro de Rivallis et aliis consiliariis suis jusserset sigillum suum apponi in quibusdam literis sibi præsentatis, sed tenorem illarum se nunquam audisse cum juramento affirmavit. Ad hoc respondens archiepiscopus dixit, ‘Scrutamini, rex, conscientiam vestram, quia omnes illi, qui literas illas mitti procuraverunt et hujus proditionis consciæ fuerunt, rei sunt de morte Marescalli, ac si illum propriis manibus occidissent.’ Tunc rex, habito consilio, fecit vocare per literas episcopum Wintoniensem, Petrum de Rivallis,<sup>1</sup> Stephanum de Segrave et Robertum Passelewe, ut venirent ad festum sancti Johannis ratiocinium

Peter de  
 Rivaulex,  
 Stephen de  
 Segrave,  
 and Robert  
 Passelewe  
 called to  
 account.

<sup>1</sup> *Stephanum de Segrave.*] See Alkmundbury, Huntingdonshire, in the Archæologia, xv. p. 209, granted to Stephen de Segrave a copy of an original charter of only on the 2nd March previous exemption from forest laws in to this summons.

A.D. 1234.

reddituri de thesauris suis receptis pariter et expensis, sed et de sigillo suo, quod male tractaverant, ipso penitus ignorante, mandavit, ut tunc venirent responsuri et juri parituri; sed illi, proprias conscientias habentes suspectas in omnibus, ex una parte regem, ex altera vero fratres et amicos metuebant Marescalli, cuius necem procuraverant. Unde ad pacem ecclesiæ confugientes episcopus et Petrus de Rivallis in ecclesia cathedrali apud Wintoniam latitabant, a conspectu hominum sese penitus subtrahentes; Stephanus vero de Segrave in ecclesia sanctæ Mariæ apud Legecestriam delituit, et, qui prius a clericatu ad militiam confugit, nunc e contrario ad clericatus officium reversus coronam, quam reliquerat inconsulto episcopo, renovavit; Robertus quoque Passeelewe ad latibulum divertit ignotum, ita quod illum Romam petiisse multi contendebant; nec etiam ad mandatum regis limina ecclesiæ ausi sunt egredi, inde argumentum suspicionis trahentes, quod inimici eorum, qui villas suas et ædificia cum horreis fragibus plenis et cætera quæque sibi damnosa concremaverant, non parcerent corporibus suis, si nocendi opportunitatem haberent.

*Quod rex exegit ratiocinium a Petro de Rivallis.*

Peter de  
Rivaux  
appears  
before the  
king.

Tandem Eadmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui pacis mediator erat hujus dissidii, impetravit a rege, ut sub salvo conductu ipsius et episcoporum possent ad diem certum coram illo venire responsuri super exactionibus prædictis, ut omnis in regno dissensionis occasio sopiretur. Statuit igitur illis diem rex pridie idus Julii apud Westmonasterium, ut breviter dicatur, ubi sub protectione archiepiscopi et episcoporum ad regis præsentiam sunt perducti;

inter quos Petrus de Rivallis primus in causam A.D. 1234.  
vocatus apparuit coram rege in habitu clericali  
cum tonsura et lata corona, quem reverenter  
salutavit, cum justiciariis in banco sedentem.  
Quem rex torvo respiciens oculo, ‘O proditor,’  
inquit, ‘per iniquum consilium tuum sigillum  
meum ignorans apposui in literis de proditione  
comitis Marescalli; per vestrum etiam pravum  
consilium ipsum et alios de regno meo homines  
naturales exulavi et eorum animos a me pariter  
et amorem averti; per pravum consilium ves-  
trum guerram contra illos movi, per quam the-  
saurum meum et hominum meorum divitias con-  
sumpsi.’ Exegit ab eo præterea rex ratiocinium  
de thesauro suo et custodiis puerorum nobilium  
et eschaetarum, cum aliis proventibus multis,  
quæ ad coronam spectabant. Cumque hæc et  
alia multa rex ab eo sub proditionis nomine exe-  
gisset, nihil omnino de objectis sibi criminibus  
negavit, sed coram rege in terram corruens per  
hæc verba ejus misericordiam imploravit; ‘Do-  
mine rex,’ inquit, ‘nutritus sum a vobis et in  
bonis temporalibus dives factus, ne confundas  
hominem quem creasti; sed concede saltem tem-  
pus deliberandi, ut de rebus exactis competenter  
vobis valeam reddere rationem.’ Cui rex, ‘Mit-  
tam te in turrim Londoniarum, ut ibi deliberes,  
donec mihi satisfacias competenter.’ Ad hæc  
Petrus, ‘Domine, clericus sum,’ inquit, ‘nec de-  
beo incarcерari vel sub laicorum custodia depu-  
tari.’ Respondit rex, ‘Ecce præsens est archi-  
episcopus, qui si pro te fidejubere voluerit, tra-  
dam te illi, ut mihi satisfaciat de exactionibus  
supradictis.’ Ut igitur breviter dicatur, misit  
eum rex in turri memorata, accipiens in manu  
sua omnes laicas possessiones ejus, quia sub  
habitu clericali lorica erat armatus, quod cleri-

A.D. 1234. cum non decebat. Fuit autem in turri Londoniarum die Jovis et sequenti die Veneris, et tunc ab archiepiscopo liberatus apud Wintoniam perductus est et in ecclesia cathedrali dimissus.

*Quod Stephanus de Segrave apparuit coram rege.*

Stephen de  
Segrave  
answers  
before the  
king.

Apparuit autem eodem die in regis præsentia Stephanus de Segrave, veniens sub protectione archiepiscopi, de rebus sibi impositis responsurus; qui cum staret in judicio juri paritrus, increpavit eum rex sub nomine nequissimi proditoris de omnibus articulis, quibus increpaverat Petrum de Rivallis, hoc etiam adjiciens, quod consilium dederat ei, ut Hubertum de Burgo ab officio justiciarri amoveret, incarceraret, patibulo suspenderet, et nobiles de regno homines exularet. Cumque hæc et alia multa ei imposuisset flagitia, exegit ab eo ratiocinium ab officio justiciarii, quod sub eo administraverat post Hubertum de Burgo, de rebus perceptis pariter et expensis. Super his autem archiepiscopus et quidam episcopi impetrarunt inducias a rege usque ad festum sancti Michaelis, ut deliberandi tempus haberet. De pravis quoque consiliis sibi imputatis hoc regi respondit, quod, cum plures haberet consiliarios, quod male gestum fuerat sibi soli non debuit imputari. Robertus vero Passeelewe, qui post Walterum Karleolensem <sup>1</sup> officium thesaurarii administraverat, abscondit se nec repertus fuit a quærentibus animam ejus.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Officium thesaurarii.*] Hugh de Pateshulle, was appointed to de Pateshulle, clerk, son of Simeon succeed him in the office; Paris.

*Quod comes Britanniæ a rege Anglorum recessit.*

Eodem anno, instantे nativitate sancti Jo-<sup>A.D. 1234.</sup>  
hannis Baptiste, quo tempore erant exspirandæ  
treuge in Britannia inter reges Francorum et  
Anglorum, rex Anglorum <sup>War in</sup><sup>Britannia.</sup> misit comiti Britan-  
niæ milites sexaginta et Wallenses duo millia,  
qui terræ illius infirmiora communirent. Rex  
autem Francorum, treugis evolutis, congregavit  
exercitum copiosum ex omnibus viribus suis, et  
quoddam castellum comitis Britanniæ obsidione  
vallavit. Milites quidem regis Anglorum et Wal-  
lenses venientibus Francigenis occurrentes equos  
quorundam hostium suorum peremerunt, ex equi-  
tibus pedites multos fecerunt, bigas et vehicula,  
quibus victualia deferebantur et arma, invaden-  
tes ceperunt, equos et spolia rapuerunt, et damna  
eis non modica inferentes absque sui læsione ad  
propria sunt reversi. At rex Francorum, ex  
damno sibi illato perturbatus, divisis agminibus,  
undique Britanniam invasit et Britanos gravi  
afflictione contrivit. Comes autem in arco po-  
situs treugas usque ad festum Omnium sancto-  
rum sub tali forma postulans impetravit, ut sci-  
ret interim si rex Anglorum, cui confoederatus  
erat, corporaliter vellet in ejus succursum ve-  
nire; pro his siquidem treugis obtainendis sub  
tali forma tradidit regi Francorum tria castella  
optima, quod, si rex Anglorum infra terminum  
memoratum ad liberationem terræ suæ non veni-  
ret corporaliter, ipse tunc regi Francorum terram  
Britanniæ totam cum castellis et urbibus ex in-  
tegro resignaret. Treugis autem in hunc modum  
confirmatis, comes Britanniæ milites regis An-

---

<sup>1</sup> *Misit comiti Britanniæ.]* In | niæ ferendo,' dated the 20th of  
Rymer, i. p. 211, seq. are two | April and 15th of May.  
writs, 'de auxilio comiti Britan-

A.D. 1224.  
War in  
Brittany.

gliæ et Wallenses remisit in Angliam, a quibus rex præmunitus est, ne ultra thesauros regni effunderet pro defensione comitis Britanniæ, quia jam foedus iniit cum rege Francorum, ut, dif fugio a rege Anglorum facto, ad ejus pacem veniret, nihil exspectans nisi ut thesauros Angliæ exhausisset. Ipse siquidem comes, parvo post emenso temporis spatio, in Angliam veniens regi suggestit, quod pro treugis a rege Francorum obtinendis quicquid in auro habuit vel argento effuderat, petens sibi restitutionem fieri quindecim millium marcarum, quas consumperat pro defensione terræ suæ et Anglorum regis honore. Ad hæc respondens rex dixit, quod per eum treugæ non erant obtentæ vel confirmatae, adjiciens insuper, quod ad defensionem Britanniæ non sufficiebant Angliæ thesauri, quod jam per triennium comprobavit, nec voluit tam laboriosis expensis amplius fatigari; sed, si comes Britanniæ hoc sufficere crederet, ipse mitteret quatuor comites de regno Angliæ cum tot militibus et viris armatis, qui sufficerent ad defensionem terræ illius contra regem Francorum. Hæc audiens comes Britanniæ iratus a rege recessit, et transiens in terram suam continuo ad regem Francorum confugit; et, ut proditionem contra regem factam sub qualicumque schemate palliaret, venit ad regem Francorum laqueum in collo gerens, et proditorem se esse recognoscens reddidit ei Britanniæ totam cum municipiis et castellis. Cui rex Francorum dicitur respondisse, ‘Licet, proditor nequissime, mortem promerueris turpissimam, parcam tamen tuæ nobilitati ut vivas, et dabo Britanniæ filio tuo ad vitam suam, ita ut post mortem ejus reges Francorum terræ illius hæredes existant.’ Comes autem rebus omnibus ut proditor spoliatus

per internuntios regi Anglorum reddidit homa- A.D. 1234  
gium suum, quod ei pridem fecerat; et rex e  
converso cepit in manu sua omnia jura comitis  
Britanniæ in Anglia, et honores ad illum spec-  
tantes.

*Miraculum de avaritia cuiusdam episcopi.*

Hoc denique anno, qui tertius erat sterilium Legend.  
annorum, exitialis mortalitas crudeliter ubique  
sæviebat et fames; quæ pestilentiae, tam exigentibus  
peccatis, quam ex præcedente aeris intem-  
perie et agrorum generali sterilitate, absque du-  
bio pervenerunt. Pauperes vero diversis in locis  
ob inediā tabescentes moriebantur, non invenientes  
Samaritanum, qui eos stabulario pascen-  
dos committeret vel vulnera mortalitatis curaret.  
Eleemosyna quidem, quæ etiam divitias augere  
solet, ubique deserta languebat; dum divites, qui  
in omnibus bonis temporalibus abundabant, tanta  
cæcitate percussi erant, quod homines Christianos  
ad imaginem Dei creatos mori ex alimen-  
torum inopia permiserunt. Cæci quidem fue-  
runt, qui non ex dono Dei, sed propria industria,  
jactant se divitias acquisivisse. Et, si hoc quo-  
que turpe fuit omnibus generaliter Christianis,  
turpissimum tamen exstitit episcopis et ecclesia-  
rum prælatis, unde inter primos ex vito ava-  
ritiæ notabiles Walterum, Eboracensem archiepi-  
scopum, pono cæteris in exemplum; ad quem  
cum venissent plurimorum maneriorum præpositi  
pariter et ministri ostendentes, quod in locis di-  
versis multum habuit bladum quinquennali jam  
tempore inveteratum, quod nimis habebant sus-  
pectum, ut vel a soricibus esset corrosum vel  
corruptione aliqua putrefactum, archiepiscopus  
autem, non habens in tanta necessitate nec ad  
Dominum nec ad pauperes respectum, præcepit

A.D. 1234.  
Legend.

ministris suis ac præpositis, ut traderent frumentum vetus rusticis de maneris suis, qui pro veteri novum sibi redderent post autumnum. Contigit ergo cum præpositus ejusdem archiepiscopi in villa de Ripun bladum circuiret, extra horrea positum illud trituraret, apparuerunt ubique in garbis capita vermium, serpentium scilicet, colubrum, et bufonum terribilium; unde ministri, qui cum præposito ad hoc spectaculum convenerant, fugientes timuerunt ne a vermis laederentur. Cumque hæc omnia archiepiscopo fuerant intimata, misit senescallos suos nimio rubore confusus, ut viderent, quid facere opus esset. At illi venientes ad locum, non obstante vermium multitudine, scalas applicaverunt ad bladum, et rusticos quosdam compulerunt, ut ascenderent et frumentum detegerent; qui cum ad summitatem pervenissent, exivit de blado fumus nigerrimus et foetor quidam infernalis et intolerabilis, unde cum festinatione descendentes, ut periculum mortis evaderent, testificati sunt se nunquam antea talem sensisse foetorem; vocem etiam audierunt sibi dicentem, ne ad bladum manus apponerent, quia archiepiscopus et omnia quæ habebat diaconi possessio erat. Videns autem senescallus, et alii qui cum illo erant, ex vermium multitudine grave periculum imminere, fecerunt murum altum in circuitu bladi diabolici et ignem adhibentes in gyrum omnia combusserunt, ne vermes exeuntes totam inficerent regionem.

*Item miraculum de avaritia cuiusdam presbyteri.*

Legend.

Erat in eadem Eboracensi provincia sacerdos quidam et vicarius dives valde et in officio prædicationis sanctæ magnus, sed tamen avarus, qui in hac æstate mortaliter infirmabatur secundum judicium præsentium medicorum. Venerunt au-

tem ad eum visitandum propter famam religionis, A.D. 1234.  
Legend. quam juxta opinionem totius regionis habebat, vicini ejus abbates et priores, ignorantibus cunctis, quod lupus esset in fabula et anguis esset in herba. Cum autem æger ille prælatos ad se venientes reverenter salutaret, nullam tamen de salute animæ suæ fecit mentionem, nisi ob hoc, quod prælatos illos diligens legavit illis bladum non modicum, quod in curia sua extra horrea positum habebat, dividens illud singulis, prout sibi melius competere videbatur. Cumque abbes illi et priores ad præceptum ægrotantis exirent, ut bladum sibi legatum viderent, conspexerunt juxta congeries illas quandam hominem stantem, vicario, quem in domo reliquerant lethaliter ægrotantem, in indumentis et forma corporis per omnia similem, qui sibi nimis acerbe loquens dicebat, ‘Quid hic,’ inquit, ‘quæritis? Sciatis certissime quod bladum hoc totum, et ille, cuius esse videtur, possessio mea est; quia vicarius, qui illud vobis legavit, homo meus est et omnia quæ habet mea sunt, ut qui junctis manibus mihi homagium fecit. Et novaritis indubitanter, quod die quarto morte morietur, et tunc plene recuperabo quod meum est, et quem divitem feci cum pauper esset.’ Auditentes autem hoc abbes et qui cum eis erant, nimio terrore percussi, reversi sunt ad vicarium, quem invenerunt jam in extremis laborantem, cui omnia quæ audierant et viderant per ordinem referebant. Et cum hæc coram illo replicascent, quod homo diaboli esset, respondit vicarius, ‘Verum,’ inquit, ‘dicit, quia jam elapsis viginti annis, cum pauper essem, pro dignitate terrena et lucro temporali homagium diabolo feci, qui vobiscum locutus est.’ Et continuo ad lamenta pœnitentiæ et confessionis remedium

A.D. 1234.  
Legend.

confugiens diabolo abrenuntiavit et omnibus operibus ejus et pompis, et confestim, miseratione divina illum respiciente, ab omni corporali molestia sanus effectus est, ut congruum haberet spatum pœnitendi; unde manifeste constat, quod non vult Deus mortem peccatoris, sed ut magis convertatur et vivat.

*De miraculo valde laudabili, quod hoc anno contigit.*

Legend.

Licet<sup>1</sup> in suprascriptis duobus capitulis sit evidenter expressum in quantum avaritiae vitium omnibus Christianis detestandum existat, adjiciam adhuc et tertium, ut in ore duorum vel trium testium stet omne verbum. Cum hic annus, de quo prædiximus, pauperibus crudelis et sævus in diebus suis usque ad Julium mensem processisset, pauperes, quos diurna fames afflixerat, ad agros proruunt fructiferos catervatim, ubi spicas frugum, licet nondum maturas, carpentes et manibus illas tremulis confricantes infelicem vitam, quæ vix in eorum peccatoribus palpitabat, protrahere satagebant; nec id multum erat in pauperibus reprehensibile, cum legatur in apostolorum actibus Christi discipulos hoc fecisse. Sed rustici quarundam villarum, qui ex avaritia inopiam semper habent suspectam, per agros suos transeuntes, cum hoc pium et necessarium deprehendissent furtum, perturbati sunt valde; unde contigit, quod homines villæ, quæ Alboldeslea dicitur et in Cantebregensi provincia sita est, cum sequenti die Dominica, quæ tunc fuit decimo septimo kalendas Augusti, ad ecclesiam convenissent, presbyterum tumultuosis clamoribus rogabant, ut incontinenti omnes illos, qui spicas in agro carpentes bladum furati fuerant,

<sup>1</sup> *Licet.*] Raynaldi has inserted this and the previous accounts in his Annals, ii. p. 106.

anathematis sententia innodaret. Et, cum ad hoc <sup>A.D. 1234.</sup>  
 rusticī omnes vehementer instarent, vir quidam <sup>Legend.</sup>  
 ex eadem villa religiosus et pius, cum videret  
 presbyterum ad ferendam sententiam paratum,  
 surrexit, et ex parte Dei omnipotentis et sanc-  
 torum omnium presbyterum adjuravit, ut ip-  
 sum, et omnes quas habuit in campo fruges, ab  
 illa sententia sequestraret; addidit etiam, quod  
 bene placuit sibi quicquid pauperes inedia com-  
 pulsī de suis ceperant frugibus, et quod resid-  
 dum erat Domino commendavit. Quid ergo?  
 Instantibus pertinaciter cæteris in stulto pro-  
 posito suo, cum presbyter compulsus ferre sen-  
 tentiam inchoasset, tanta subito exorta est in  
 aere tempestas, tonitruī scilicet ac fulminis con-  
 cussio, ventorum ac turbinum conflatio, pluvia-  
 rum et grandinum inundatio, quod, quasi in  
 momento turbine flatu diabolico agitata, fruges  
 in agris, armenta cum arboribus ac cæteris qui-  
 busque crescentibus et avibus in campis, ita op-  
 primendo contrivit, quod velut in curribus et in  
 equis conculcata et in terra demersa videbantur.  
 Visi sunt autem in aere sursum angeli <sup>1</sup>Sathanæ  
 volitantes, qui hujus tempestatis ministri fuisse  
 credebantur. Sed, cum justis ac piis stabilis sem-  
 per sit inventa divina benignitas, vir ille simplex  
 et justus, cum, peracta tempestate omnibus vicinis  
 suis nimis damnsa, visitare pergeret agros suos,  
 invenit prædia sua et jugera, licet inter terras  
 aliorum permixta, ita ab omni tempestate intac-  
 ta et illæsa, ut nullum in eis læsonis vesti-  
 gium appareret; unde omni luce clarius constat,  
 quod sicut Deo gloria in excelsis canitur ab  
 angelis, ita et in terra pax est hominibus bona  
 voluntatis. Inchoavit autem hæc tempestas in

---

<sup>1</sup> *Sathanæ volitantes.]* ‘In modum nigrorum satyrorum;’ Paris.

A.D. 1234.

finibus Bedefordiæ, et sic per insulam Eliensem et Norfolk ad orientem tendens in mare descendit. Sæviebant siquidem hoc anno multæ consimiles tempestates in locis diversis, quæ multis tam terribiles quam damnosæ fuerunt; sed et hoc similiter notabile videtur, quod reliquiae frugum, quæ tempestate completa in agris remanserant, ita foetidæ erant inventæ, quod non equus vel asinus, non bos aut porcus, non auca vel gallina comedere illas voluerunt, cum sæpe eis fuissent ad comedendum oblatæ.

*De discordia inter dominum papam et Romanos exorta.*

Dissensions  
at Rome  
between the  
Pope and the  
citizens.

Eodem<sup>1</sup> anno exorta est Romæ gravis dissensio inter dominum papam et cives Romanos his de causis. Usurpant sibi cives memorati ex antiquo jure, quod Romanus pontifex non potest aliquem ex civibus excommunicare, vel urbem pro quolibet excessu supponere interdicto. Ad hoc dicit summus pontifex, quod minor est Deo et major hominibus, ergo major civibus<sup>2</sup> Romanis; et, cum eorum sit pater spiritualis, debet et de jure potest filios corrigere delinquentes, ut sibi in fide Christi subjectos, unde de jure potest rationabilibus de causis eos excommunicare et civitatem interdicere. Item, potestates urbis et senatores annum tributum exigunt ab ecclesia Romana, quod eis, tam ex novo quam ex antiquo jure, Romani pontifices persolvebant, de quo etiam semper usque ad istius papæ tempora in possessione fuerunt. Ad hoc dicit papa, quod si ecclesia Romana temporibus persecutionis, pro defensione sua et pro bono pacis, aliquando maiores civitatis in donis gratuitis liberaliter re-

<sup>1</sup> Eodem anno.] Raynaldi, An- | <sup>2</sup> Romanis.] ‘Vel etiam rege  
nal. ii. p. 117. | vel imperatore;’ Paris.

spexit, non debet hoc in consuetudinem trahi, A.D. 1234.  
Dissensions at Rome. quia illa sola consuetudo tenenda est, quæ jure constat et ratione subnixa; et, quod his omnibus majus est, Christus in cruce suo sanguine ita liberam fecit illam, quod nec portæ inferæ prævalebunt adversus eam. His igitur et aliis de causis inter dominum papam et cives Romanos lite contestata, idem papa cum suis cardinalibus exivit ab urbe et apud urbem Perusium moram facturus divertit. At Romani contra eum invalescentes quædam ipsius aedificia in civitate prostraverunt, unde a papa excommunicati fuerunt; qui etiam, ipsum imperatorem cum in sui favorem attraxerat, congregavit exercitum copiosum, ut impetum reprimeret Romanorum. Tunc<sup>1</sup> exercitus imperatoris et exercitus summi pontificis simul convenientes casalia eorumdem Romanorum per gyrum urbis posita numero octodecim prostraverunt et vineas succiderunt, unde cives ipsi perturbati exierunt ab urbe octavo idus Octobris, viri ut dicitur armati centum millia, ut civitatem Viterpii, quæ ad jus domini papæ spectabat, spoliarent et igne spoliatam concremarent; sed, cum irrationalib[ile] vulgus civitatis absque disciplina militari exirent et agminibus incederent dissolutis, acies militares ipsius papæ et imperatoris ab insidiis prorumpentes irruunt in Romanos et ex eis magnam stragem, non tamen sine suorum læsione, fecerunt. Ceciderunt autem hinc inde ad triginta millia armatorum; sed Romani tamen majorem perpessi sunt stragem, ut qui agminibus diss-

<sup>1</sup> *Tunc exercitus imperatoris.*] | lide vocavit ad exercitum suum Paris here reads, 'Tunc exercitus summi pontificis, cui præ- regendum, tum propter thesauri abundantiam, tum propter mili- erat comes Tholosanus, quærens tandi peritiam;' see below, p. gratiam, et episcopus Wintoniensis, quem dominus papa cal- 327.

A.D. 1234. patis ad suam civitatem præcipites confugerunt. Exasperatum est quidem cor eorundem Romanorum nimis adversus dominum papam, quia in illo conflictu de civitate multi nobiles corruerunt. Duravit diu ista dissensio inter eos, sed Romani tamen cives semper aleam Martis sibi contrariam invenerunt. Eodem tempore obiit Hugo Foliot, Herefordensis antistes, et successit ei magister Radulphus de Maidenestan, vir in literali doctrina famosus, qui ab Eadmundo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus consecrationis suscepit.

*De Judæis, qui puerum Christianum circumcidorunt.*

A.D. 1235.  
Outrage of  
the Jews at  
Norwich.

Anno Domini MCCXXXV. rex Anglorum Henricus anno regni sui decimo nono ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Westmonasterium, præsentibus episcopis et principibus regni; et eodem tempore septem Judæi adducti sunt coram rege apud Westmonasterium, qui in Norwico puerum quendam, quem furatum jam per annum a conspectu Christianorum absconderant, circumcididerunt, <sup>1</sup> volentes eum crucifigere in solennitate Paschali; sed super hoc facto convicti in regis præsentia confessi sunt rei veritatem, et sic de vita sua et membris in ipsius voluntate sub carcerali custodia remanserunt. Eodem tempore obiit Hugo, Lincolnensis episcopus, omnium virorum religiosorum inimicus, septimo idus Februarii, et sepultus est apud Lincolniam in ecclesia cathedrali quarto idus ejusdem; cui successit magister Robertus Grosseteste, vir ho-

<sup>1</sup> *Volentes cum crucifigere.*] was done at Lincoln, when the Holinshed relates the same thing of them, as happening in the same town in 1145; Paris also says, that four Jews were hanged in Norwich for the same offence in 1240. In 1255 the same thing

Jew, in whose house the body of the victim was discovered, confessed that almost every year they sacrificed a child in a similar manner; Tyrrell, ii. p. 972.

nestus et religiosus atque in lege divina sufficienter eruditus, qui apud Radingum ab Ead-mundo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus consecrationis suscepit tertio nonas Junii, reclamantibus monachis Cantuariensibus ne alibi consecraretur quam in ecclesia Cantuariensi, sed id tandem fieri hac vice permiserunt, ita tamen quod non ad consuetudinem de cætero trahe-retur. Per idem tempus, post purificationem beatæ Mariæ, concordati sunt cum rege Stephanus de Segrave et Robertus Passeelewe, datis mille marcis; nec tamen in pristinam regis gratiam sunt recepti. Circa eosdem dies Henricus de Sandfort, Roffensis antistes, diem clausit extreum sexto kalendas Martii; post cujus obitum monachi Roffenses elegerunt magistrum Richardum<sup>1</sup> de Wendene, virum in liberali scien-tia eruditum; qui Eadmundo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ad electionem confirmandam, a præfatis monachis præsentatus non fuit admissus, unde monachi domini papæ præsentiam appellarent.

*De morte Willelmi abbatis et de successione J. sancti Albani [abbatis] XXIII.*

Eodem anno, in <sup>2</sup>crastino sancti Matthiæ apostoli, obiit Willelmus, abbas ecclesiæ beati Albani, postquam eandem rexerat ecclesiam annis viginti et mensibus fere tribus, et sepultus est tertio kalendas Martii in capitulo <sup>3</sup>monachorum. Deinde conventus, impetrata a rege licentia ab-

<sup>1</sup> *De Wendene.*] ‘De Wende’ in C.

<sup>2</sup> *Crastino sancti Matthiæ.*] 24th of February.

<sup>3</sup> *Monachorum.*] Paris adds, that three monks were then sent to the king for leave to proceed

Election of John, abbot of S. Alban's.  
to a new election, and that ‘obtinuerunt etiam fratres a domino rege gratiam habendi totam dominum suam in manu sua, exceptis eschaetis et ecclesiis donationibus, a die obitus predicti abbatis usque in annum completum.’

A.D. 1225. batem eligendi, in crastino annunciationis beatæ Mariæ elegerunt solenniter Johannem, priorem de Hertford, monachum suum professum, in pastorem animarum suarum, qui regi præsentatus ab eo favorabiliter receptus est Dominica in ramis palmarum; et tunc missi sunt monachi ecclesiæ ejusdem et clerici ad curiam Romanam, ad quam immediate spectat, ut electionem rite factam impetrarent a sede apostolica confirmari, ubi sine difficultate <sup>1</sup> electione confirmata cum benedictione apostolica reversi sunt in regionem suam.<sup>2</sup> Post hæc autem idem electus in crastino nativitatis beatæ Mariæ, in Dominica die, a Rogerio, Londoniensi episcopo, benedictionem abbatis suscepit; medio autem tempore, quo hæc omnia facta sunt, remansit abbatia cum omnibus pertinentiis sub custodia conventus ex beneficio regis, hospitalitate integra remanente. Eodem anno Judæi privilegium impetraverunt a pontifice Romano, ne a regibus aut principibus pro exactione pecuniae turpiter tractarentur vel in carcere ponerentur.

<sup>1</sup> *Electione confirmata.*] Gregory's letter to the bishops of Ely and London is printed in the collection of Councils, e Typ. Reg. xxviii. p. 288.

<sup>2</sup> *Suam.*] The mode of election is thus described by Paris: 'Confessores scilicet tres vel quatuor jubentur districte in virtute Spiritus Sancti, utpote qui cognoscunt corda et renes singulorum, ut ipsi eligant duodecim de convento fratres electos, scilicet fideles et peritos, ut ipsi vel de seipais, vel de ipso conventu ecclesiæ, vel de cellis, unum idoneum eligant in abbatem. Ut autem eorum electio et labor deliberationis super hoc negotio irritus non habeatur, litteras ha-

bent de conventu penes se sigillo conventus roboratas, ut ipse conventus illum, quem ipsi duodecim eligent in abbatem, sine contradictione unanimiter suscipiant et gratanter. Unde series negoti sic prosecuta a summo pontifice et omnibus audientibus cum admiratione est commendata, et, facta examinatione, auctoritate apostolica confirmata. Veruntamen, quia de persona electi papæ non constabat, dedit summus pontifex in mandatis Eliensi et Londoniensi episcopis, ut, rite facta ex persona electi examinatione, eundem in abbatem confirmatum benedicenter, plene in omnem tam spiritualium quam temporalium administrationem instituentes.'

Per idem tempus Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, ad mandatum domini papæ<sup>1</sup> Romam profectus est, instante solennitate Paschali, ut guer-<sup>A.D. 1235.  
The bishop of Winchester goes to Rome.</sup> ram ejus jam diu contra Romanos accensam ordinaret; erat enim juvenis in obsequio Richardi magnifici bellatoris atque Johannis regum Angliæ, cum quibus prius didicerat usum loricæ quam pontificalis planetæ, et acies castrorum disponere quam verbum fidei prædicare.

*De prædicatione crucis.*

Hoc denique anno, qui est annus octavus post-<sup>Preaching in behalf of a crusade.</sup> quam constitutæ sunt treugæ decennales in terra promissionis inter Romanum imperatorem Fredericum et Babyloniam Soldanum, facta est<sup>2</sup> prædicatio crucis per orbem universum Christiana fide insignitum, ad commonitionem et instantiam domini papæ Gregorii, qui literas in diversas orbis partes sub hac forma direxit;

*Authenticum papæ.*

‘Gregorius<sup>3</sup> episcopus, servus servorum Dei, in universis Domini nostri Iesu Christi fidelibus per regnum Angliæ constitutis, ad quos literæ istæ pervenerint, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Rachel [suum] videns in veræ fidei cognitione principium accrescentium in salutem, et filiorum dexteræ pia mater sancta Romana ecclesia, cuius magna est quasi mare de suæ prolis internecione contritio, vocem lamentationis, fletus et luctus emisit hactenus et emitittit, quam audiri cu-

<sup>1</sup> *Romam profectus est.*] ‘In cuius auxilium Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, grandem executionem (exercitum) de militibus et balistariis usque ad Perusium perduxit;’ Chron. Dunst. p. 228.

<sup>2</sup> *Prædicatio.*] For the preach-

ing of John of Vicenza, see Fleury, Hist. Eccl. xvii.

<sup>3</sup> *Gregorius.*] Compare the letter printed in the collection of Councils, xxviii. p. 309; see also Michaud, tom. iv. p. 51, seqq.

A.D. 1235.  
The pope's  
letter on the  
crusade.

pimus in excelso, ut per diem et noctem fidelium oculi doloris lachrymam deducentes non taceant, et, donec misereatur Dominus, non quiescant. Lamentatur autem, quia domus cælestis panis, mons Syon, unde lex exiit, civitas Regis magni, de qua dicta sunt multa gloria, terra quam Dei Filius fuso pro nobis suo sanguine consecravit, regni robur et pulchritudinem perdidit. Flet, quia quondam libera sub impiæ tyrannidis jugo servit. Luget, quia, ubi pacem multitudo militiæ cælestis cecinit, ibi pressura gentis immundissimæ scandala, simultates et schismata suscitavit, ac innovans exordia præliorum misit ad desiderabilia manum suam, sacerdotii et sa- crorum ordinum pias leges et ipsius naturæ jura relegans a templo Domini, diversis ibi spurciis et abominationibus introductis; et ideo Hierusalem in suis derisa sabbatis obsorduit, quasi polluta menstruis inter hostes. Nam licet dudum carissimo in Christo filio nostro Frederico, Romanorum imperatori, semper augusto, Hierusalem et Siciliæ regi illustri, civitas eadem, præter templum Domini, fuerit restituta, tamen, quia Deus omnipotens tunc magnificentius agere cum populo Christiano non adjecit, imperator prædictus treugas iniit cum Soldano, quarum terminus adeo est vicinus, quod tempus medium præparationi vix sufficere creditur, nisi ad quæque necessaria per promptitudinem, spem et fervorem fidei festinetur. Ad ejus ergo succursum nullum tædeat peregrinari, et pro patria certare cum spe victoriae, pro corona mori, pro vita, pro Illo sustinere ad tempus dura et tristia, qui, confusione contempta, sputo conspersus, colaphis cæsus, flagellis afflictus, spinis coronatus, coram Pilato sisti, tanquam multorum criminum reus, pertulit, ad ultimum crucifixus

A.D. 1235.  
The pope's  
letter on the  
crusade.

et felle potatus, lancea perforatus, emittens cum clamore valido spiritum, pro conditionis humanæ viribus reparandis, cursum præsentis vitæ saturatus injuriis consummavit. Hic est autem, ut altius repetamus, qui de Paternæ solo gloriæ, cælis mirabiliter inclinatis, ad nostræ mortalitatis ima descendens non dignatus est Deus homo, Creator creature fieri, suscipere Dominus formam servi, ut, qui non poteramus per nostram justitiam sperare veniam, consecuti per hæc gratiam inauditam, hæredes Dei, cohæredes autem Christi, divinitatis consortium, felicitatis æternæ participium sortiremur. Et, licet per gratiam adoptati quotidie causas ingratitudinis cumulemus, Ipse tamen abundat in divitiis bonitatis, dum propter diversitatem voluntatum, virium facultatem, delinquentibus diversa pro tempore satisfaciendi genera contulit, varia medendi languoribus remedia suscitavit; dum terram, in qua nasci, mori et resurgere voluit, tamdiu ad exercitatem fidelium ab infidelibus detineri permittit, cum non sit abbreviata manus Domini, nec virtus ejus in aliquo diminuta, quin etiam, sicut fecit cuncta de nihilo, liberare valeat in momento. Sed illas compassionis et dilectionis gratias exquirit ab homine, quibus, ad omnis consummationis finem legisque plenitudinem ostendendam, Ipse prior homini perduto et damnato voluit miseratus adesse, qui nullatenus permisisset manus impias contra pios usque adeo roborari, nisi et suam vindicari de nostra confusione providisset injuriam et servari nostram de sua victoria disciplinam. Sub hac autem occasione delicti plurimi, satisfacere pro modo criminum aliter non valentes, velut in profundo malorum penitus desperas-

<sup>1</sup> *Dilectionis.*] ‘Dilationis’ in MS. | <sup>2</sup> *Pios.*] ‘Impios’ in MS.

A.D. 1228.  
The pope's  
letter on the  
crusade.

sent, nisi occurrisset eis hæc tabula; nisi per hoc compendium, suis positis pro Christo animabus, consummati brevitate multorum temporum spatia complevissent. Multi enim, invenire locum ubi steterunt pedes Domini cupientes, prius ad bravium sine cursu, et primo ad coronam sine gladio pervenerunt; Illo suum remunerante militem, qui solam in oblatione considerat voluntatem. Nos autem, de omnipotentis Dei misericordia et beatorum Petri et Pauli apostolorum ejus auctoritate confisi, ex illa quam nobis, licet indignis, Deus ligandi atque solvendi contulit potestatem, omnibus, qui laborem istum in propriis personis et sumptibus subierint, vel qui viros idoneos cum suis expensis pro se destinarerint, sed et illis, qui in alienis expensis in propriis personis accesserint, vel qui de bonis suis ad subventionem terræ sanctæ congrue ministraverint, aut qui circa prædicta negotia consilium vel auxilium opportunum impenderint, plenam suorum peccaminum, de quibus veraciter fuerint corde contriti et ore confessi, veniam indulgemus. Statuimus etiam, ut omnes, sive clerici sive laici, post crucem assumptam sub beati Petri ac nostra protectione securi et eorum bona omnia permaneant, necnon sub archiepiscoporum, episcoporum et omnium ecclesiæ prælatorum defensione consistant, donec de ipsorum obitu vel reditu certissime cognoscatur; in quo utique termino nullus cruce siguatus, sive a Judæis sive a Christianis, ad præstationem usurrum compellatur. Datum Spoleti, secundo nonas Septembbris, pontificatus nostri anno octavo.' Assignati sunt autem prædicatores a domino papa in opus crucis per orbem universum fratres de ordine Minorum ac Prædicatorum, cum magistris in theologia perfectis, qui in opus evangelii

profecti prædicaverunt, ubique Domino coope- A.D. 1235.  
rante et sermonem confirmante sequentibus sig-  
nis ; habuerunt siquidem ex mandato aposto-  
lico provinciarum archidiaconos et decanos, qui  
in locis singulis parochianos, viros et mulieres,  
convenire fecerunt, ita ut nullus remaneret, sub  
poena anathematis, quin eorum prædicationibus  
interesset.

*Miraculum de muliere contracta.*

Contigit autem hoc anno, tertio idus Junii, in <sup>Legend.</sup> villa de Clare, ubi magister Rogerus de <sup>1</sup> Lawes, frater quidam de ordine Minorum, pro negotio crucis evangelium in Dominica prædicavit, ut mulier quædam omni membrorum officio jam per triennium destituta, poenam metuens excommunicationis, paucum quod habuit argentum cuidam viro sibi vicino contulit, qui eam in humeris suis ad locum prædicationis portaret ; ubi cum gemens jaceret et lugens quousque vir Dei prædicationem complevisset, motus compassione super gemitibus mulieris, quam lugentem jacere conspexit, accessit ad eam atque causam ad quid illuc venisset inquisivit. Quæ cum diceret, quod metu excommunicationis ad locum prædicationis delata fuisset, præcepit ut iret in domum suam, nesciens quod membris omnibus esset dissoluta. Sed cum adstantes vicini ejus testarentur, quod omnium erat usu membrorum jam elapso triennio privata, interrogabat si crederet quod Deus potens erat ut sibi, si vellet, redderet sanitatem ; cui illa, ‘Credo, domine.’ Tunc vir Dei mulierem inter brachia complectens levavit eam fiducialiter et ait, ‘Sanet te Deus omnipotens, in quem credis.’ Et, cum mulier ad vocem jubentis

---

<sup>1</sup> Lawes.] ‘Lewes’ in Paris.

A.D. 1235.

se erigeret confidens in Domino, cœperunt ossa ejus et nervi dum surgeret ita subito crepitare, ut visum sit adstantibus, quod omnia ossa ejus in frusta comminuta fuissent; et sic mulier sanitati pristinæ restituta abiit in domum suam exultans et magnificans Deum, qui talem servo suo contulit <sup>1</sup> potestatem.

*Quod imperator sororem regis Angliae postulavit.*

The emperor  
asks the  
princess  
Isabella in  
marriage.

Eodem anno, mense Februario, venerunt apud Westmonasterium duo Templarii cum militibus et aliis nuntiis solemnibus ab imperatore Frederico ad regem Anglorum missi, ferentes <sup>2</sup> literas ipsius auro bullatas, in quibus postulavit Isabel sororem regis sibi matrimonio copulandam. Venientes autem septimo kalendas Martii ad regem petierunt literarum et suæ postulationis responsum sibi dari, ut regis voluntatem domino imperatori possent celeriter nuntiare. Rex autem Anglorum super dicto negotio sollicitus cum episcopis et regni sui magnatibus cœpit tractare per triduum, qui rem diligenter examinantes in hoc unanimiter consenserunt, ut puella imperatori daretur; et sic tertio kalendas Martii <sup>3</sup> respondens matrimonium petitum concessit. At nuntii cum postulassent, ut sibi liceret puellam videre, misit rex legatos fide dignos pro sorore sua ad turrim Londoniarum, ubi sub vigilianti custodia servabatur; quam reverenter apud Westmonasterium perducentes in præsentia regis, puellam, vicesimum primum ætatis agentem

<sup>1</sup> *Potestatem.*] Here follows in Paris a more full account of the election of the abbot of S. Alban's, containing the correspondence with the pope upon the subject.

<sup>2</sup> *Litteras ipsius.*] They are

printed in Rymer, i. p. 220, with a recommendation from the pope in the emperor's behalf.

<sup>3</sup> *Respondens.*] *Ibid.* i. p. 221; see also the marriage contract at length, p. 223.

annum, speciosam, flore virginitatis insignitam, A.D. 1235. indumentis et moribus regiis decenter ornatam, nuntiis imperialibus exhibebant. At illi, cum in virginis inspectione visum aliquandiu recreassent et eam imperiali thoro dignissimam in omnibus judicassent, confirmaverunt matrimonium in animam imperatoris interposito juramento, offerentes ei ex parte ipsius imperatoris annulum sponsalem; quem cum in ejus digito posuissent, pronuntiaverunt eam imperatricem esse Romani imperii, communiter dicentes, ‘Vivat imperatrix, vivat!’ Deinde cum legati ea, quæ facta fuerant, sub omni festinatione imperatori per fideles internuntios intimassent, post Paschalem solennitatem misit<sup>1</sup> archiepiscopum Coloniensem et Lovaniæ ducem cum virorum nobilium multo comitatu in Angliam, qui imperatricem ad ipsum honorifice perducentes matrimonium jam initiatum et ratum procurarent, ut in cognitione carnali fieret consummatum.

*De ornatu nuptiali imperatricis et nobili apparatu.*

Erat autem istarum tantus apparatus nup-  
tiarum, quod quasi regias excedere divitias vi-  
debatur; nam ad ipsius imperatricis dignitatem  
fabricata est corona opere subtilissimo ex auro  
purissimo et gemmis pretiosis, in qua sculpti  
fuerunt reges quatuor Anglorum martyres et  
confessores, qui a rege ad suæ sororis animæ  
custodiam sunt specialiter assignati. In annu-  
lis siquidem et monilibus aureis cum gemmis  
pretiosis decenter ornatis, ac cæteris ornamentis  
lubricis, peplis sericis et lineis, et rebus consi-  
milibus, quæ oculos intuentium et animos rapere

Preparations  
for the depa-  
ture of the  
princess.

<sup>1</sup> *Archiepiscopum Coloniensem.* mendaret ad imperatorem deducendam;’ Rymer, i. p. 225.  
‘Littera regis archiepiscopo Coloniensi, quod sororem ei com-

A.D. 1225. solent in concupiscentiam mulierum, ita decorata resplenduit, ut quasi impretiabilia viderentur. In indumentis autem festivis, tam sericis quam laneis vel lineis diversi coloris et imperatrici dignissimis, adeo induta enituit, ut vix sciret ex multis qui eligeret quibus in sui amorem imperatoris animum inclinaret. Lectus quoque ipsius in opertoriis et culcitris sericis diversi coloris, cum varia supellectili et lintheaminibus ex sindone munda paratis, tam sumptuosus extitit, ut sua mollitie in se quiescentes ad somnum delectabilem invitaret. Vasa etiam omnia, tam viaria quam fercularia, ex argento erant et auro purissimo; et, quod omnibus superfluum videbatur, ollæ omnes coquinæ majores pariter, minores, ex argento fuere purissimo. Ad quorum omnium administrationem et custodiam tales deputati sunt ministri curiales, qui ipsi imperatrici et illius familie more regio ministrarent. Talibus autem et aliis multis puella a rege fratre suffulta honoribus et dotata muneribus remansit in custodia episcopi Exoniensis et Radulphi filii Nicolai, regis senescalli, et aliorum virorum nobilium de domestica illius familia, comitantibus matronis nobilibus et pueris generosis, qui omnes curialiter eruditi ad imperatricis sufficiebant obsequium et conductum. Et, his in hunc modum dispositis, rex in die sancti Johannis ante portam Latinam apud Westmonasterium tenuit solenne festum cum archiepiscopo Coloniensi et cæteris nuntiis imperatoris; et in crastino omnes apud Derteford burgum iter arripiunt, rege comite, cum magno comitum ac baronum conductu. Equos autem tot ei et tales rex procuravit variis coloribus distinctos et suaviter portantes, qui sufficiebant ad imperatricis honorem, dum sessores suos sine pedum offensione quadam delectabili

Departure of  
the princess  
Isabella.

suavitate ferebant; phalerarum quidem tot eis A.D. 1235. erant varietates in sellis deauratis et subtiliter sculptis, cum frænis deauratis et loris artificiose compositis, ut tam equos quam equites mirabili- ter decorarent. Cumque per Roffensem civitatem ad abbatiam de Feveresham convenissent, inde apud Cantuariam profecti ad sanctum Thomam archipræsulem et martyrem orationis gratia per- venerunt; ubi completo devotionis obsequio, ad portum Sandwicense quasi tria equitum millia convenerunt. Imperatrix autem et archiepisco- pus Coloniensis, cum cæteris viris nobilibus et matronis ad conductum ejus assignatis, quinto idus Maii <sup>1</sup> naves ingressi velis patentibus sese pelago commiserunt; nec lachrymæ defuerunt cum frater a sorore, rex ab imperatrice, discessit.

*Quomodo imperatrix apud Coloniam venit.*

Navigantibus autem illis, post tres dies et to- Her arrival  
at Cologne; tidem noctes ostium Rheni fluminis intraverunt, et, completo unius diei et noctis cursu, apud An- evers applicuerunt, in terra scilicet juri imperi- ali subjecta. Quibus applicantibus occurrit in- numera multitudo nobilium armatorum ad cus- todiam imperatricis ab imperatore transmissa, quæ diebus ac noctibus circa corpus ejus dili- gentes excubias celebraret; erant enim quidam ex hostibus imperatoris regi Francorum confœde- rati, ut dicebatur, qui imperatricem rapere mo- liebantur, ut matrimonium impedirent. Occur- runt etiam presbyteri omnes et clerici ex regio- nibus circumpositis cum processione solenni cam-

<sup>1</sup> *Naves.*] From the writs in Rymer to the sheriff and bailiffs of the sea-ports of Norfolk and Suffolk, to prepare ten ships for the passage of the empress, it appears that Orwell, in Suffolk,

<small>was intended to have been the port at which she should embark, and the 9th of April (die Lunæ in crastino instantis Paschæ) the day fixed for the departure; i. p. 225.</small>
--

A.D. 1235. panas pulsantes et cantica lætitiae modulantes, inter quos siquidem convenerunt omnes artifices, et magistri cujuscumque generis musicæ artis cum suis instrumentis, qui in omni lætitia nuptiali per viam quinque dierum imperatricem apud Coloniam conduxerunt; ubi cognito ipsius adventu, exierunt ab urbe in occursum ejus ad decem millia civium cum floribus et palmis ac festivis indumentis, qui in equis sedentes Hispanicis ad agilem eos cursum urgebant, dum hastas et arundines, quas ferebant in manibus, in alterutrum confregerunt. Talibus igitur imperatricem comitata tripudiis, conduxerunt eam per principales plateas civitatis contra ipsius adventum multipliciter adornatas; sed cum illa cognovisset quod omnes, et præcipue nobiles matronæ quæ in solariis sedentes, faciem ejus videre cupiebant, capellum ex capite demisit et peplum, ut universi liberum ipsius haberent aspectum, qui, oculis in ejus inspectione aliquamdiu recreatis, laudaverunt eam multum ex hoc facto, pulchritudinem illius pariter et humilitatem plurimum commendantes. Hospitata est autem imperatrix extra muros civitatis propter tumultum ejus, imperatoris ibi mandatum exspectans.

*Quod imperator imperatricem apud Warmesiam desponsavit.*

is married at Wormes.

Tempore quo imperatrix apud Coloniam venit, imperator erat bellicis expeditionibus implicatus contra filium suum sibi rebellem, sed pater contra eum tam copiosum conduxit exercitum, ut simul et semel castra decem obsidione vallaret; in quorum uno fortissimo cum filium obsedisset, ille patris severitatem metuens exivit de castro et, corruens in terram coram ipso, ejus misericordiam imploravit; sed ille sine misericordia vin-

culis filium constringi jubens, duxit eum secum A.D. 1235. apud Warmesiam, ubi cum illum sub arcta custodia commendasset, misit pro imperatrice ut ad eum veniret ibidem, postquam apud Coloniam per sex hebdomadas moram protraxisset. Archiepiscopus autem Coloniensis et episcopus Exoniensis, cum cæteris ad imperatricis conductum assignatis, iter cum ipsa aggredientes ad imperatorem eam in omni pompa ac nuptiali lætitia septem dierum itinere perduxerunt; quo cum pervenissent, suscepit eos imperator in magna lætitia et honore, quia supra modum sibi placuit decoris inspectio puellæ, quam natura speciali quodam studio decoravit. <sup>1</sup> Desponsavit ergo pueram ibidem solenniter imperator decimo tertio kalendas Augusti, in Dominica; quæ, si multum ei placuit in specie corporali, multo melius placuit in experientia thori, quam virginali puritate signatam invenit. Nuptiis igitur diebus quatuor continuis magnifice celebratis, episcopus Exoniensis et cæteri, qui cum imperatrice advenerant, ab imperatore licentia impetrata, ad Angliam cum gaudio sunt reversi. Misit ergo imperator regi Anglorum <sup>2</sup> tres leopardos, cum aliis donariis pretiosis, quibus regiones non abundant occidentales; cui etiam contra regem Francorum consilium promisit et auxilium opportunum.

<sup>1</sup> *Desponsavit.*] ‘Accipiens pro dote triginta millia marcarum; pro quibus petitum et concessum fuit generale scutagium duarum marcarum per totam Angliam, non solum de feodis habitis in capite de rege, sed etiam de aliis cultis;’ Chron. Dunst.—That this tax was a scutage, and not a carriage, as Paris calls it, being laid upon all ecclesiastical as well as lay fees, see the prior of Coventry’s plea, in the office of the king’s remembrancer, inter commun. de term. S. Hilar. 17 Edw. III.; Tyrrell, ii. p. 891. Respecting the payment of the empress’s dower, see two letters of the king to the pope in Rymer, i. p. 226; also two letters to the emperor, apologizing for the want of punctuality in making the payment, p. 228.

<sup>2</sup> *Tres leopardos.*] Paris adds, ‘in signum regalis clypei, in quo tres leopardi transeuntes figurantur.’

*De generis nobilitate hujus imperatricis.*

A.D. 1225.  
Pedigree of  
the empress.

Erant autem multi in imperio Romano quibus nimis videbatur indignum, quod imperator tam potens et in omnibus divitiis pollens, qui quasi dominus et moderator exstitit totius orbis, <sup>1</sup>sororem duxerit regis Anglorum. Sed cum omnibus sit notissimum, quia major dignitas est esse generis nobilem quam divitem, sciendum est, hujus imperatricis patrem fuisse regem Anglorum Jo-hannem; Henricum regem, qui nunc regnat in Anglia, fratrem; avunculos reges magnificos Henricum et Richardum, ac Britanniæ comitem Galfridum: hii autem reges generositate illustres dominabantur in Anglia et Hibernia, unde reges fuerunt; in Normannia et Aquitania, unde duces; in Pictavia et Andegavia, unde comites; præter Turonicam et Cenomanniam, Berri et Averniam, quæ ad eorum proprietatem spectare tenentur. In his quoque regionibus septem archiepiscopos habuerunt, cum regibus Scotiæ et Walliæ, Hiberniæ et Moniæ insulæ, subjectos; atque, præter istos, tot episcopos, totque comites, barones ac milites, quod quasi innumerabiles reputantur. Mater autem hujus imperatricis istarum omnium terrarum regina fuit; et duæ sorores illius, una regina Scotorum, et altera Penbroc comitissa. Amitæ quidem ipsius erant quinque, quarum primam duxit rex Hispaniæ Alphonsus, de qua nata est Blanca Francorum regina, et ejus filius, qui regnat in Gallia Lodowicus; alteram duxit rex Siciliæ Rogerus; et tertiam dux Saxoniarum Henricus, de qua natus est Otho post-

<sup>1</sup> *Sororem duxerit.]* She was II.; Rymer, i. p. 233,) titular the third wife of the emperor king of Jerusalem. She died in Frederic, and was the mother of December 1241. Henry, (so called after Henry

ea Romanorum imperator, et frater ejus Hen- A.D. 1235.  
ricus Saxonie dux et rex tandem terræ sanctæ;  
quartam duxit comes Tholosanus Reimundus,  
et quintam comes Rotrodus Perticensis. His  
igitur et consimilibus imperatrix, ‘atavis edita  
regibus,’ patrem, ut dictum est, habuit regem  
Johannem, qui fuit filius magnifici regis Henrici,  
qui fuit filius Matildis quondam imperatricis,  
quæ fuit filia regis Anglorum Henrici senioris et  
Matildis reginæ. Hæc Matildis filia fuit Mal-  
colmi regis Scotorum et sanctæ Margaretae re-  
ginæ. Margareta filia fuit Eadwardi, quam ge-  
nuerat ex Agatha sorore Henrici Romani impe-  
ratoris. Iste Eadwardus filius fuit Eadmundi re-  
gis Anglorum, qui Latus-ferreum dicebatur, cu-  
jus pater fuit rex Ethelredus, cuius pater rex  
Eadgarus Pacificus, cuius pater rex Eadmundus,  
cuius pater rex Eadwardus primus, cuius pater  
fuit illustris rex Anglorum Alfredus. Hujus  
genealogia in Anglorum historiis perducitur us-  
que ad Adam primum parentem. Talibus au-  
tem imperatrix genitoribus procreata imperiali-  
bus nuptiis in omnibus dignissima judicatur.

Huc<sup>1</sup> usque scripsit cronica dominus Rogerus  
de Wendovre.

Cernis completas · hic nostro tempore metas,  
Si plus forte petas · tibi <sup>2</sup>postea nuntiet ætas.

<sup>1</sup> *Huc usque.*] The same lines | editor has noticed that on the  
precisely, with the colophon, as | margin is written, ‘Huc usque  
above, occur in the Cotton. MS. | e vetusto libro.’  
as collated by Wats. In the | <sup>2</sup> *Postea.*] An error probably  
MS. of Matthew Paris the same | of the scribe for ‘postera.’



## I N D E X.

---

### A.

Abgar, king of Edessa, his apocryphal letter, ii. 234.  
Abingdon, H. abbot of, ordered to excommunicate the confederated barons by name, iii. 354; excommunicates the London clergy and the French invaders, 361, *seq.*  
Abissa, a Saxon, his arrival in Britain, i. 13.  
Abrincis (or Avranches), Richard de, earl of Chester, drowned, ii. 201.  
Absimarus Tiberius deposes, mutilates, and imprisons Leontius, i. 190; is put to death by Justinian II., 200.  
Acca, bishop of Dunwich, i. 164.  
Acca, a priest of Wilfrid, succeeds him in the see of Hagustald, i. 205; expelled, 224.  
Acca, daughter of Ella of Deira, married to Aethelfrith of Bernicia, i. 93; becomes mother of S. Oswald, 139.  
Accianus, governor of Antioch, ii. 92; slain, 110.  
Acephali, i. 19, 67, *seq.*  
Acre, surrender of, iii. 41.  
Acre, [Jacobus de Vitriaco?] bishop of, accompanies the crusaders against Damietta, iv. 36; baptizes the children taken there, 60; dissatisfied with the truce made with the Turks, 79.  
Adamnanus, abbot of Iona, renounces his error respecting Easter, and convinces the people of Ireland, i. 196; writes on sacred topography, *ib.*  
Adda, son of Ida, becomes king of Bernicia, i. 81; his death, 83.  
Adela, third daughter of the Conqueror and wife of Stephen earl of Blois, takes the veil on becoming a widow, ii. 26.  
Adelais, sister of Philip II. of France, ii. 437; affianced to Richard earl of Poitou, 442; the match broken off, iii. 28.  
Adeliza, daughter of the duke of Lorraine, married to king Henry I., ii. 201, and subsequently to William d'Albini, 227.  
Adeodatus or Deusdedit II., pope, i. 161.  
Adrian I., pope, (*read Stephen III.*) i. 237 and *note*; makes Lichfield an archbishopric, 238 and *note*; death of Stephen III. and accession of Adrian I., 240; he sends a mission to England to confirm the faith, 246; his death, 260.  
Adrian II., pope, i. 298.  
Adrian IV., pope, ii. 272; grants Ireland to Henry II., 282; makes peace with the king of Sicily, 284; dies, 288.  
Aegelberht succeeds Birinus in the see of Dorchester, i. 144; goes to France, and receives the bishopric of Paris, 157.  
Aegelric, bishop of Durham, vacates his see and retires to Peterborough, i. 496; is imprisoned for treason to the Conqueror, ii. 6.  
Aegelwine, bishop of Durham, raises the body of S. Oswini, i. 506; is banished for treason to the Conqueror, ii. 6; excommunicates the invaders of ecclesiastical property, 7, *seq.*; is taken, and dies in prison, 9.  
Aelfeah, bishop of Winchester, i. 391; dies, 399, *seq.*; punishment of a ribald who presumed to jest with him, 401; his prophecy respecting three monks, *ib.*  
Aelfeah (abbot of Bath), made bishop of Winchester, i. 424; baptizes Anlaf of Norway, 429; is translated

to Canterbury, 437 ; taken by the Danes, 439 ; his martyrdom, 440 ; is buried at London, *ib.*, and translated to Canterbury by Cnut, 466.

Aelfeah, earl of Southampton, dies, i. 413.

Aelfleda, niece of king Aethelstan, entertains him at Glastonbury, i. 387 ; miraculous multiplication of her mead, 388.

Aelfleda, daughter of Offa of Mercia, married to Aethelred of Northumbria, i. 249.

Aelfred (the Great), son of Aethelwulf of Wessex, born, i. 284 ; his boyhood, 319 ; piety, 320 ; is crowned at Rome, 290, 318 ; marries Alswitha, 299 ; assists Burgred against the Danes, 300 ; joins his brother Aethelred, and commands a division of his army at Asdown, 316 ; they are victorious at Basing, but defeated at Merton, 317 ; accession of Aelfred, 318 ; his genealogy, *ib.* ; his children, 321 ; his encouragement of the arts, affability to foreigners, and affection for his nobility, 322, *seq.* ; he is defeated at Wilton, 323 ; invites men of learning to his court, 324 ; takes a Danish vessel, 326 ; pursues the Danes to Exeter, 327 ; builds ships, besieges Exeter, and gains a naval victory, *ib.* 328 ; is expelled by Guthrum, 329 ; takes refuge with a swineherd in Athelney, 330 ; his adventure with the swineherd's wife, *ib.* ; is encouraged personally by S. Neot, and in a dream by S. Cuthbert, 331, *seq.* ; leaves his retreat, and re-assembles his followers, 332 ; overcomes Guthrum, becomes his sponsor, and gives him East-Anglia, 333 ; builds a large town, 334 and note ; gains a great victory at sea, 335 ; receives presents from pope Marinus, 336 ; sends alms to S. Thomas in India, *ib.* ; gives an asylum to Johannes Scotus, 339 ; drives the Danes from before Rochester, *ib.* ; captures sixteen Danish ships, *ib.* ; takes London, and makes his son-in-law, Aethelred, governor, 345 ; sends two eleemosinary missions to Rome, 352, 354 ; founds a monastery in Athelney, and a nunnery at Shaftesbury, 352 ; his appropriation of his revenues, *ib.* ; his strictness with his judges, 353 ; three Irish hermits presented to him, 355 ; he institutes hundreds and tithings, 356 ; orders golden bracelets to be suspended on the highways, 357 ; invests Hasting's fortress at Milton, *ib.* ; becomes sponsor for one of Hasting's sons, *ib.* ; defeats a Danish army at Farnham, *ib.* ; expels the Danes from Devon, 360 ; orders the captured wife and sons of Hasting to be set at liberty, *ib.* ; is victorious in Mercia, 361 ; burns a fleet at the mouth of the Leigh, 362, *seq.* ; appoints guardians of the kingdom and a marine coast-guard, 363 ; frustrates a piratical descent, 365 ; passes the remainder of his life in pious acts and in perfecting his laws, 366 ; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 367.

Aelfred, bishop of Selsey, i. 409 ; dies, 413.

Aelfred, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 396.

Aelfred, son of Eadulf, is expelled Bamborough castle by Aethelstan, and makes his submission, i. 386.

Aelfred, son of Aethelred II., i. 427 ; is sent for safety to Normandy, 448 ; remains there during the reign of Cnut, 462 ; returns, and is betrayed to Harold, 474 ; is deprived of sight, and dies at Ely, 475.

Aelfric, archbishop of Canterbury, (translated from Abingdon abbey,) i. 426 ; his death, *ib.*

Aelfric, archbishop of York, i. 467, 470 ; accuses the murderers of Aelfred, 478 ; assists at the coronation of Edward the Confessor, 482 ; his death, 487.

Aelfric, bishop of Elmham, dies, i. 476, 483.

Aelfric, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495.

Aelfric, earl of Mercia, (son of Elfere,) banished, i. 424.

Aelfric, one of Aethelred's admirals, deserts to the Danes, i. 428 ; his son deprived of sight for his offence, 429.

Aelfsius, abbot of Medeshamstede, attends queen Emma to Normandy, i. 448.

Aelfwine, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 484.

Aelfwold, bishop of Crediton, i. 403, 419.

**Aesc**, (Osric,) son of Hengest, present in the battle of Wypeda-Fleot, i. 36; succeeds his father in Kent, 42.

**Aescwini**, king of Wessex, i. 162; his death and parentage, 167.

**Aescwini**, brother of Ecgfrith of Northumbria, slain at the battle of the Trent, i. 170; his wergild paid by archbishop Theodore, *ib.*

**Aescwini**, a Saxon admiral, i. 428.

**Aekynges**, who so called, and why, i. 43.

**Aethelbald** of Mercia, his genealogy, i. 212; takes the castle of Somerton, 219; extends his dominion to the Humber, 220; harasses Cuthred of Wessex, 227; they become reconciled, and conjointly defeat the Welch, 227, *seq.*; unites with archbishop Cuthbert in holding the council of Clovesho, 231; again quarrels with Cuthred, and sustains a severe defeat, 232; falls in the battle of Seckington, 233.

**Aethelbald**, son of Aethelwulf of Wessex, assists his father against the Danes, i. 285; conspires against him on account of his foreign marriage, 290; is appeased by receiving a moiety of Wessex, 291; obtains the whole at his father's death, 294; his incest, *ib.*, and penitence, 295; dies prematurely, and is buried at Sherborne, *ib.*

**Aethelbald**, bishop of Sherborne, i. 382.

**Aethelberht**, king of Kent, i. 81; extends his dominion to the Humber, 83; is defeated by Ceawlin, *ib.*; his interview with St. Augustine, 97; permits him to preach, 98; his baptism, 99; his death and burial, 113.

**Aethelberht** of Kent, i. 214 and *note*, 224, 231; his death, 236.

**Aethelberht** of Kent dies, i. 261.

**Aethelberht** of East-Anglia, son of Aethelred and Leofrona, i. 224; visits Offa of Mercia to obtain one of his daughters in marriage, 249; murdered during the night by the orders of the queen, *ib.*; his body buried in Hereford cathedral, 251.

**Aethelberht**, bishop of Hagustaldt, dies, i. 264.

**Aethelberht**, bishop of Whiterne, i. 242.

**Aethelberht**, son of Eormenred, his martyrdom, i. 150.

**Aethelberht** (second son of Aethelwulf of Wessex, i. 279, 294) becomes king of Kent and Sussex, 294, and of Wessex and Essex at his brother's death, 295; his death, 297.

**Aethelhaeda**, daughter of king Aelfred and wife of Aethelred earl of Mercia, i. 322; on becoming a widow she retains Mercia, with the exception of London and Oxford, 375; towns and fortresses built and restored by her, 379, 380 and *note*, 381; takes Derby, and destroys part of the garrison, 382 and *note*; her death and burial, *ib.*, 383.

**Aethelfrith** of Northumbria (at first king of Bernicia only) marries Acca, daughter of Ella of Deira, i. 93; names of his seven sons, 94; seizes Deira, and expels Eadwin, 96; massacres the monks of Bangor, 100 and *note*, 104; his pride and ambition, 110; is slain by Reodwald of East-Anglia, 116.

**Aethelgar** (or Algar, i. 403,) bishop of Crediton, 388; his death, 403, 419.

**Aethelgar**, abbot of Hyde, i. 411; becomes bishop of Winchester, afterwards of Selsey, and is finally translated to Canterbury, 426; his death, *ib.*

**Aethelgiva**, daughter of Aelfred the Great, becomes a nun, i. 322; is made abbess of Shaftesbury by her father, 352.

**Aethelhard** of Wessex succeeds his kinsman Ini, i. 215; quells the insurrection of Oswald the Aetheling, 217; his death, 226.

**Aethelhard**, bishop of Winchester, translated to Canterbury, i. 251; petitions Ecgfrith of Mercia to restore the jurisdiction of his province, 263; obtains it from Cœnulf, *ib.*; his death, 270.

**Aethelheah**, bishop of Sherborne, i. 318.

**Aethelhelm**, earl of Dorset, defeats the Danes, but is slain through indiscretion in the pursuit, i. 280.

**Aethelhilda**, daughter of Eadward the Elder, a nun, buried at Wilton, i. 369.

**Aethelhun**, a nobleman of Wessex, rebels against Cuthred, and is se-

verely wounded, i. 231 ; his death, 232 and *note*.  
**Aethelwulf**, bishop of Sherborne, his jurisdiction, i. 372.  
**Aethelnoth**, or *Agelnoth*, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 463, 470 ; dedicates Bury S. Edmund's abbey, 471 ; his death, 476.  
**Aethelred** (third son of Aethelwulf of Wessex, i. 279), his accession, 297 ; assists Burged against the Danes, 300 ; is joined by his brother Aelfred, 316 ; his piety at the battle of Ashdown, *ib.* ; gains a victory at Basing, and is defeated at Merton, 317 ; his death and burial, 318.  
**Aethelred II.**, son of Eadgar and Aelfrida, i. 410 ; his person, 421 ; his coronation, *ib.* ; extorts a hundred pounds from the bishop of Rochester, 423 ; pays Danegeal, 424 ; ill-treats his wife, and quarrels with her father, 427 ; is reconciled to him by the pope, *ib.* ; defeats a Danish fleet, 428 ; purchases the forbearance of Sweyn and Anlaf, 429 ; becomes Anlaf's sponsor, *ib.* ; conquers the Isle of Man, 434 ; again pays Danegeal, 435 ; orders the sons of Eadric to be blinded for a murder committed by their father, 437 ; purchases a temporary peace, *ib.* ; builds ships, 438 ; pays a further sum to the Danes, and allows them to settle in the country, 440 ; orders a simultaneous massacre of the Danes, 444 ; retires to London on the death of Sweyn, 447 ; sends his family to Normandy, and goes thither himself, *ib.* ; is recalled, 449 ; defeats Cnut, 450 ; dies, and is buried at S. Paul's, London, 453.  
**Aethelred of East-Anglia**, i. 224.  
**Aethelred of Northumbria**, i. 240 ; his expulsion and death, 243.  
**Aethelred**, son of Aethelwald Mull, obtains the Northumbrian throne on the expulsion of Osred, i. 248 ; marries Aelfeda, daughter of Offa, 249 ; is slain by his subjects for bigamy, 261.  
**Aethelred of Northumbria** succeeds his father Eanred, i. 281 ; is expelled, restored, and slain, 283.  
**Aethelred of South Mercia** succeeds his brother Wulferi, i. 167 ; marries Ostritha, sister of Ecgfrith of Northumbria, *ib.* ; fights with Ecgfrith near the Trent, 170 ; becomes an abbot, and consents to the restoration of archbishop Wilfrid, 187 ; his death and burial, 199.  
**Aethelred**, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 312 ; consecrates Herefrith, bishop of Worcester, 324 ; his death, 324.  
**Aethelred**, earl of Mercia, marries Aethelsaæd, daughter of Aelfred the Great, i. 322 ; becomes sponsor for one of Hasting's sons, 360 ; presents Hasting's wife and sons as prisoners to Aelfred, *ib.* ; is appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 363 ; rebuilds Leicester, 373 ; his death, 375.  
**Aethelred**, son of Eormenred, his martyrdom, i. 150.  
**Aethelred**, nephew of Sweyn, murdered, i. 445.  
**Aethelric**, bishop of Selsey, i. 463 ; his death, 476.  
**Aethelstan**, natural son of Aethelwulf of Wessex, made king of the territories conquered by Ecgberht, i. 279 and *note* ; takes nine Danish ships, 283.  
**Aethelstan**, illegitimate son of Eadward the Elder, i. 368 and *note* ; legendary account of his birth, 389 ; is crowned at Kingston, 385 ; gives his sister Eadgitha to Sihtric of Northumbria, *ib.* and *note* ; obtains that kingdom, 386 ; his conquests, *ib.* ; gives another sister to Hugh, count of Paris, *ib.* and *note* ; his amity with Rollo, or Robert, of Normandy, 387 and *note* ; visits Glastonbury, and is entertained by his niece Aelfeda, 387 ; invades Scotland, and receives the king's son as a hostage, 389 ; forces his brother Eadwin to sea in an open boat, 390 ; his penance for the crime, and punishment of the instigator, *ib.* ; defeats Anlaf of Ireland, and Constantine of Scotland, 392 ; builds the monasteries of Middleton and Michelney, 393 ; dies at Gloucester, and is buried at Malmesbury, *ib.*  
**Aethelstan**, bishop of Hereford, one of the tutors of king Aelfred, i. 324.  
**Aethelstan**, bishop of Hereford, dies, i. 495.  
**Aethelstan**, bishop of Sherborne, sent by Ecgberht of Wessex to subdue Kent, i. 276.

Aethelstan, bishop of Wilton, (or Ramsbury, i. 495,) dies, 383.  
 Aethelstan, abbot of Ramsey, assassinated, i. 483.  
 Aethelstan, earl, murdered at the instigation of Eadric Streona, i. 437.  
 Aethelstan, brother-in-law of Aethelred II., defeated by the Danes, i. 438.  
 Aethelswitha, daughter of Aethelwulf of Wessex, married to Burghred of Mercia, i. 286; dies at Pavia, 355.  
 Aethelwulf (or Adulf, i. 279), son of Egberht of Wessex, is sent by him to subdue Kent, i. 276; his accession, 279; his family, *ib.*; distribution of his kingdom, *ib.* and note; is defeated by the Danes, 282; defeats them with the aid of his son Aethelwald, 285; conquers the Welch, 288; his charter to the church, 289; goes to Rome with his son Aelfred, whom he procures to be crowned, 290; marries Judith, daughter of Charles le Chauve, *ib.*; his subjects dissatisfied, *ib.*; reconciles his son Aethelwald by giving him a moiety of Wessex, 291; his will, 293; his death, 294; is said to have been ordained bishop of Winchester, 293.  
 Aethelwald of East-Anglia, his death, i. 231.  
 Aethelwald, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 224; his death, 226.  
 Aethelwald, bishop of Sherborne, i. 278, 366.  
 Aethelwald, Mulf of Northumbria, i. 234; kills earl Oswin in battle, 236, *seq.*; marries Etheldreds, 236; his death, 237.  
 Aethelwald, (or Aethelward, i. 384,) youngest son of Aelfred the Great, educated with the young nobility, i. 322; buried at Winchester, 384.  
 Aethelwald, cousin of Eadward the Elder, rebels against him, and marries a nun, i. 367, *seq.*; flies to the Northumbrian Danes, and becomes their king, 368; goes to France for aid, *ib.*; ravages Mercia, 369; is slain by Eadward, 370.  
 Aethelwald, *v.* Aethelwold.  
 Aethelward, second son of Eadward the Elder, i. 368; his death, 390.  
 Aethelward, earl, banished by Cnut, i. 463.  
 Aethelwine, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168.  
 Aethelwine, the officer sent by Oswin to kill king Oswin, i. 145.  
 Aethelwold, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 294.  
 Aethelwold, (a pupil of Dunstan, and abbot of Abingdon,) made bishop of Winchester, i. 410; gives benediction to Aethelgar, abbot of Hyde, 426; his vision, 411; translates the body of S. Swithune, 413; his death, 424.  
 Aethelwold, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 452.  
 Aethelwold and Hereberht rebel against Aethelred of Northumbria, and kill three of his generals, i. 242; they expel Aethelred, and make Aifwold king, 243.  
 Aethelwold, earl of the East-Angles, and first husband of queen Alfrida, i. 410.  
 Aethelwold, earl, conducts Anlaf to Aethelred II., i. 429.  
 Affridus, king of Bernicia, i. 92.  
 Africa, a miracle respecting some orthodox bishops of, i. 69.  
 Aganippus, king of the Franks, marries Cordeilla, daughter of king Leir, *Pref. x.*; restores Leir to his kingdom, xi.  
 Agapetus, pope, i. 66; deposes Anthymus, the heretical bishop of Constantinople, 78.  
 Agatha, a Hungarian princess, and wife of Eadward Aetheling, i. 462; is, with her family, driven to Scotland by a storm, ii. 2.  
 Agatho, pope, i. 168.  
 Ageric, bishop of Verdun, becomes famous for sanctity, i. 78.  
 Agnellus, a Minorite, carries the proposals of Henry III. to Richard, earl marshal, iv. 282.  
 Agricola, a disciple of Pelagius, confuted by Germanus and Lupus, *Pref. xxvi.*  
 Aidan invited from Scotland by Oswald of Northumbria, i. 134; made bishop of Lindisfarne, *ib.*; anecdote of his charity, 146; consecrates Hilda abbeas at Hertesey, 171; his death, 148.  
 Aidulf, a Northumbrian commander, slain by rebels, i. 242.  
 Aigle, Richer de l', his fortress burnt by Henry of Normandy, ii. 249.

Aigulf, a monk of Fleury, brings the remains of S. Benedict and his sister from Monte Casino, i. 173.

Ailnoth, bishop of Lincoln, i. 409.

Ailward, father of S. Godric, ii. 341.

Aimar, bishop of Puy, assumes the cross, ii. 61; his march, and rescue from a band of Bulgarians, 77; orders a three days' fast during the famine before Antioch, 95; administers an oath against desertion, 114; is one of the leaders in the great sally from Antioch, 120; his death, 126; his spirit said to have been seen on the taking of Jerusalem, 144.

Aimeric, chancellor of the Roman see, ii. 238.

Aix-la-Chapelle, council of, i. 273.

Alamundarus, a Christian king of the Saracens, his device to prove two natures in Christ, i. 56.

Alan, earl, present in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 228.

Alaric the Goth, his death, i. 35.

Alban (S.), history of, *Pref. xiv. seqq.*; his body found in the time of Offa, and placed in a costly shrine, i. 253.

Albano, Walter bishop of, brings Anselm his pall, and reconciles Urban II. and Rufus, ii. 48.

— Henry bishop of, and legate, preaches a crusade in the Empire, ii. 426.

— Alban bishop of, consecrates Savary bishop of Bath, iii. 70.

Alban's, S., battle of, i. 59; British church there thrown down by the Saxons, i. 91, 253; monastery of, founded, i. 257; its privileges, 258; dedicated, ii. 193; council at, iii. 262; list of abbots of, 295; ecclesiastical court (respecting a divorce) held at, iv. 231.

Alban's, S., abbots of:

- Paul, his reforms, ii. 18; sends monks to Tynemouth priory, 39; his death, 44.
- Richard Essay, Lessay, or d'Albiny (ii. 200), ii. 99; translates the relics of S. Oswin, 187; entertains the king, etc. at the dedication of his abbey, 193; dies, 200.
- Geoffrey de Gorham, ii. 200; dies, 237.
- Ralph Gubiun, ii. 237; appoints a proctor during his illness, 245; dies, 250.

Alban's, S., abbots of, continued.

- Robert de Gorham, proctor of the preceding, ii. 245; elected, 249; his final concord with the see of Lincoln, 293; dies, 315.
- Simon, receives benediction, ii. 321; translates the relics of S. Amphibalus, 391, *seqq.*; dies, 410.
- Warine, prior, elected, ii. 410; dies, iii. 89.
- John, iii. 89; dies, 285.
- William [Trumpington], receives benediction, iii. 295; plundered by prince Louis, iv. 6, and by Faulkes de Breaute, 11; dies, 325.
- John, prior of Hertford, receives benediction, iv. 326.

Albemarle, (or Aumale,) Stephen count of, a crusader, ii. 62, 79, 120.

Albemarle, William earl of, a commander in the battle of the Standard, ii. 222; his actions in the battle of Lincoln, 229; surrenders to the French king, 372.

Albemarle, earl of, v. *Fortibus*.

Alberht, bishop of Hereford, i. 294.

Albert, one of the legates who absolve Henry II., ii. 368; persuades him to permit elections to the vacant sees, 370.

Albert, v. Hunbeanna.

Albigenses, crusade against, iii. 266, *seqq.*; they elect an antipope, iv. 87; are totally destroyed in Spain, 294.

Albinus carries back to Charlemagne a heterodox book sent by him to England, together with an epistle of his own condemnatory of the same, i. 249.

Albion, duke of Saxony, baptized, i. 244.

Albuinus, king of Lombardy, kills king Cunimund in battle, i. 77; marries his daughter, *ib.*; is slain at her instigation, 85.

Alcaçar do Sal taken from the Moors, iv. 34.

Alcifeda, daughter of Oswiu and wife of Peada, i. 144; murders her husband, 154.

Alchad, governor of Silves, surrenders it to the king of Portugal, ii. 441.

Alcher, earl, fights with king Aethelstan against the Danes, i. 283.

Alcmund, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 239; his death, 244.

Alcmund, son of king Ealred, put to death by Eardulf of Northumbria, i. 266.

Aldegis, a king of Frisia baptized by Wilfrid, i. 168.

Aldhelm, abbot of Thetford, murdered, i. 403.

Aldhelm, bishop of Sherborne, i. 199; extent of his jurisdiction, *ib.*, 199; his death, and writings, 202.

Aldbun, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 426.

Alditha, daughter of earl Orm and wife of king Anlaf, i. 395.

Aldred, bishop of Leicester, i. 296; deposed, 325.

Aldred, bishop of Worcester, i. 484; sent to Hungary for Eadward son of Eadmund, 496; translated to York, 502; consecrates Wlstan bishop of Worcester, 503, ii. 51; retains a portion of the possessions of that see, 55; crowns William the Conqueror, ii. 1.

Aldroenus, king of Britanny, refuses the sovereignty of Britain, *Pref.* xxii.

Aldulf, archbishop of York, translated from the monastery of Medeshamstede, i. 428; places the relics of S. Oswald in a shrine, 435; his death, *ib.*

Aldulf, bishop of Dorchester, i. 246.

Aldulf, bishop of Lincoln, dies, i. 237.

Aldwin, bishop of Lichfield, i. 219; his death, 225.

Alexander II., pope, clears himself from a charge of simony, ii. 5.

Alexander III., pope, ii. 288; confirms the concord between the churches of S. Alban's and Lincoln, 295; sanctions the translation of bishop Gilbert from Hereford to London, 296; holds the council of Tours, 298; absolves Becket for subscribing the Constitutions of Clarendon, 303; is visited by him, 306; his sentence, 311; his letter to Becket, 321; to the bishop of London, 324; to king Henry, and to Becket, 330; sends legates to effect a reconciliation, 333; prohibits Becket from excommunicating Henry or his subjects, 336; forbids the coronation of prince Henry without the acquiescence of Becket, 354; congratulates Becket on his restoration, 356; suspends the archbishop of York and others, 357; his proceeding upon the murder of Becket, 364; canonizes him, 371; holds the third Lateran council, 398; orders the archbishop of Sens to extirpate the heresy of Peter Lombard, 400; his letter to Prester John, 408; dies, 409.

Alexander I. of Scotland, (son of Malcolm III., ii. 2,) his accession, 184; death, 205.

Alexander II. of Scotland knighted, iii. 238; reduces Northumberland to the power of Louis, 379; does homage to him, 382; treats with Henry III. for the hand of his sister, iv. 64; visits him at York, 207.

Alexander (bishops), *v.* Lincoln, and Coventry.

Alexius I., emperor, allows Sans-avoir to encamp near Constantinople, ii. 66; orders Peter the Hermit to pass into Bithynia, 68; rescues the remnant of Peter's army, 70; releases Hugh the Great, 75; is offended with Godfrey, *ib.*; his munificence to Robert of Normandy, 81; receives the surrender of Nice, 86; is deterred from relieving Antioch, 114; his treachery to an army of crusaders, 173; makes oath to assist pilgrims, 186.

Alexius, son of the emperor Manuel, dethrones and mutilates the emperor Isaac, iii. 85.

Alexandria, bishops of:

- Dioscorus, his heresy condemned, i. 12.
- Protherius, killed by the citizens, i. 39.
- Timotheus, allows himself to be made bishop, i. 39.
- Cyrus, preaches Monothelite doctrines, i. 121, 129.

Alfeda, daughter of earl Elfelm, and wife of Eadward the Elder, i. 368.

Alfeda Enede, daughter of duke Ordmar, and first wife of king Eadgar, i. 410.

Alfrida, daughter of Ordgar, relict of earl Aethelwold, and second wife of king Eadgar, i. 409; intrigues to procure the succession of her son Aethelred, 417; circumvents Eadward, and usurps the royal powers, 419; causes him to be murdered, *ib.*; her severe penance, 420.

Alfritha, wife of Cœnulf of Mercia, and mother of S. Cœnelm, i. 263.  
 Alfi (or Mildred, i. 426), bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 412 and *note*; conducts Kenneth III. to the presence of Edgar, 416; his death, 426.  
 Alfius (or Leofsius, i. 471), bishop of Winchester, 452; dies, 471.  
 Alfwine, bishop of Wells, i. 431.  
 Alfwold of Northumbria raised to the throne by rebels, i. 243; sends for a pall for his archbishop, 244; is murdered, 247.  
 Alfwold of Northumbria, i. 270; his death, 271.  
 Algar, bishop of Elmham, dies, i. 465.  
 Algar, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495.  
 Algar, son of Aelfric, deprived of sight for the treason of his father, i. 428.  
 Algar, earl, banished by Eadward III., i. 494; joins Griffin of Wales, *ib.*; makes his peace with Eadward, *ib.*  
 Algiva, daughter of Eadward the Elder, and wife of Hugh count of Paris, i. 369, 386 and *note*.  
 Algiva, or Alwina, lady of Mercia, (daughter of earl Aethelred,) brought into Wessex by order of king Eadward, i. 383.  
 Algiva, wife of king Eadmund, gives birth to Eadgar, i. 396; builds a nunnery, 334; her grave miraculously revealed, 415.  
 Algiva persecutes Dunstan, i. 405; plunders his monastery and procures his banishment, *ib.*; divorced from Eadwy, 407.  
 Algiva, widow of earl Sigeforth of Northumbria, married by Eadmund Iron-side, i. 451.  
 Algiva, daughter of earl Elfelm and first wife of Cnut, dies, i. 462.  
 Alhfrid, a natural son of Osƿiū of Northumbria (i. 177), persuades Peada to be baptized, 144; fights against Penda, 152; present at the council of Streneshalh, 157; succeeds Ecgfrith, 177; his great knowledge of the Scriptures, *ib.*; expels Wilfrid, 186; his death, 187, 199.  
 Alhna (or Alcwine, i. 300, 324), bishop of Worcester, i. 283; builds S. Andrew's oratory at Kenessey; 300; his death, 324.  
 Almar, abbot of S. Augustine's and archdeacon of Canterbury, his treachery, i. 439.  
 Almar, earl of Devon, makes his submission to Sweyn, i. 447.  
 Almaric, master of the Templars in England, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302.  
 Alfonso III. of Castille marries Eleanor, daughter of Henry II. of England, ii. 332; his dispute with the king of Navarre, 386.  
 Alfonso of Galicia expels the Spanish Arabs, ii. 31.  
 Alswitha, wife of Aelfred the Great, i. 300; founds a nunnery at Winchester, 371; dies, *ib.*  
 Alwine, bishop of Elmham, i. 465.  
 Amalric, son of Alaric the Goth, escapes from Clovis I., i. 35.  
 Amand, S. translation of, i. 271.  
 Amauen, Amanen, or Amane, William, a crusader, ii. 62, 77, 120.  
 Amphibalus (S.), history of, *Pref. xv. seqq.*; legend respecting, ii. 389, *seqq.*  
 Anacletus, antipope, chosen in opposition to Innocent II., ii. 211.  
 Anagnia, John cardinal of, sent to reconcile the English and French kings, ii. 435; again sent to decide between the archbishop of Canterbury and his monks, iii. 13; relaxes the interdict upon the lands of John earl of Mortain, 15.  
 Anastasius II., pope, i. 52.  
 Anastasius III., pope, i. 374.  
 Anastasius IV., pope, ii. 253; restores William archbishop of York, and consecrates Hugh bishop of Durham, 271; dies, 272.  
 Anastasius, emperor, duration of his reign, i. 49; wishes to restore Acacius, the heretical bishop of Constantinople, but is opposed by the Romans, 50; confers the consulate and a golden crown upon Clovis I., 58.  
 Anastasius, emperor, deprives Philipicus of sight, i. 211.  
 Anastasius, the pseudo-patriarch of Constantinople, encourages Constantinus IV. in persecuting the orthodox Christians, i. 228; dies of the plague, 229.  
 Anceis (? Ancenis), Theodoric de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 Andredes-wode, battle near, i. 38.  
 Anjou, Foulques of, joins Louis VI. against Henry I., ii. 194; goes to the Holy Land, and marries a

daughter of Baldwin II., 208; becomes king, 212; gains a victory over the Turks, 213; his death and burial, 233.

Anjou, Geoffrey Plantagenet count of, (son of Foulques,) marries the empress Maud, ii. 208; seizes several castles in Normandy, 219; flies before king Stephen, 220; takes Hiesmes and Bayeux, and besieges Falaise, 225; makes peace with the earl of Meulant, 230; sends his son Henry to England, 231; becomes duke of Normandy, 236; gives that duchy to Henry, 244; dies, 245.

Anlaf of Ireland defeated at Brunenburg, i. 392.

Anlaf, a Norwegian, who had been expelled Northumbria, marches upon York, i. 395; fights with Eadmund, and receives half the kingdom as the condition of peace, *ib.*; marries Alditha, daughter of earl Orm, *ib.* and *note*; his death, 396.

Anlaf, son of Sihtric, expelled Northumbria by king Eadmund, i. 396; becomes his godson, 397.

Anlaf, king of Norway, ravages England, i. 429; receives tribute from Aethelred II., *ib.*; becomes his godson, *ib.*, and returns to Norway, 430.

Anna, daughter of Uther-pendragon and Igerna, i. 54; becomes the wife of Dubritius, and mother of Hoel, both kings of Britanny, 62.

Anna, son of Eni, becomes king of East-Anglia, i. 148; gives his daughter Sexburga to Earconberht of Kent, 137; is slain by Penda, 149.

Anselm, the papal legate, consecrates Ralph archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 192.

Anselm (archbishop), *v.* Canterbury.

Anselm, chaplain of Richard I., iii. 66.

Ansian, the swineherd of Cumbra, avenges the murder of his master, i. 234.

Anthony (S.) the monk, his body discovered, i. 69.

Anthropomorphy, heresy of the, i. 402.

Antioch taken by the infidels, ii. 20; history of, 92; besieged by the Christians, 93; taken, 107; besieged by the Turks, 112, *seqq.*

Antioch, Gregory, bishop of, i. 96.

Anxa, Robert de, a crusader, ii. 76.

Aquitaine, William duke of, a crusader, ii. 173.

Arabs kill and wound 5,000 pilgrims, ii. 5.

Arabs, Spanish, defeated by the Christians, ii. 412, *seq.*

Arator Ligurenais writes the Acts of the Apostles in hexameter verse, i. 82.

Argenton, Giles de, (son of Richard,) taken prisoner by the Welch, iv. 223.

Argenton, Roger de, assists the escape of Richard I., iii. 67.

Armenia converted, i. 84.

Armesbach, Reginald de, a crusader, dies of the plague, ii. 126.

Arnulph, emperor, i. 355.

Arnulph (bishop), *v.* Rochester.

Arnulph, son of Geoffrey earl of Mandeville, banished, ii. 235.

Arragon, [? Peter II.] king of, confederates with the Albigeuses, iii. 271; slain, 273, *seq.*

Arras, Nevelon d', marshal of France, excommunicated, iii. 362; marches to the relief of Montsorel, iv. 16; reconnoitres the royal army near Lincoln, 21; escapes to London, 26.

Arras, the castellan of, sent by prince Louis to the aid of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362; escapes from the battle of Lincoln, iv. 26.

Artaud, archbishop of Rheims, crowns Louis d'Outremer, i. 391.

Arthur, son of Uther-pendragon by Igerna, i. 54; his coronation, 61; defeats Colgrin at the Duglass, and besieges him in York, 62; is joined by Hoel, king of Britanny, 63; destroys 6000 Saxons at Lincoln, *ib.*; gains the victory of Banneston Hill, and sends Cador in pursuit, 65; his successes over the Picts and Scots, and clemency towards them, 66; appoints Pirannus archbishop of York, and restores the churches, *ib.*; marries Guenhamara, 67; celebrity of his court, *ib.*; his conquests in Ireland, Iceland, etc., *ib.*; establishes Loth on the throne of Norway, 70; goes to Normandy, and leaves the queen and Modred as regents, 71; his conquests in France, *ib.*; routs and kills the consul Lu-

Barbara, S., William de, dean of York, *v.* Durham.

Bardolph, Hugh, one of the guardians of the realm during the absence of Richard I., *iii.* 15; ordered to act independently of the chancellor, 49.

Barking, Mary, sister of archbishop Becket, made abbess of, *ii.* 371.

Barnabas the apostle, discovery of his body and of a Gospel of S. Matthew written by his hand, *i.* 38.

Barneville, Roger de, a crusader, *ii.* 62, 80; slain, 112.

Barre, R., one of the embassy to Rome against Becket, *ii.* 336.

Bartholomew (bishop), *v.* Exeter.

Bartholomew, official of Hubert Walter, appeals against the election of Geoffrey to the archbishopric of York, *iii.* 4.

Bartholomew, antipope of the Albigenses, *iv.* 87.

Basil, Peter, the soldier who mortally wounded Richard I., *iii.* 135.

Basing, battle of, *i.* 317.

Basset, Alan, attends king John to Runnymede, *iii.* 302.

Basset, Gilbert, deprived of a manor by Henry III., *iv.* 269; joins a confederacy against him, 271; lies in wait for his foraging parties, 282; assists in the destruction of Aclundenbury, 297; restored to favour, 310.

Basset, Thomas, adheres to king John against the pope, *iii.* 236, and against the barons, 301; is present at Runnymede, 302; marches to the relief of Lincoln, *iv.* 19.

Bassingbourne, John de, an adherent of king John, *iii.* 237, 301.

Bath, bishops of:

- Godfrey, *ii.* 203.
- Reginald, *v.* Salisbury.
- Savary, archdeacon of Northampton, elected, *iii.* 69.
- Jocelyn, of Wells, consecrated, *iii.* 188; withdraws from England during the interdict, 222; present at the concession of Magna Charta, 302; assists at the consecration of bishop Bingham of Salisbury, *iv.* 203.

Baugency, Ralph de, a crusader, *ii.* 62.

Bavaria, [Louis I.] duke of, (the emperor's deputy in the crusade,) is one of the hostages for the restoration of Damietta, *iv.* 76.

Bayonne, Bernard [de Lescarre], bishop of, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, *iii.* 24.

Beauchamp, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, *iii.* 297; entertains the insurgents at Bedford, 299; loses his castle there, 349; excommunicated, 355; taken prisoner, *iv.* 24; receives again the town of Bedford, 99; escapes from the battle of Grosmont, 279.

Beaulieu, —, abbot of, sent to Rome to accuse archbishop Langton, *iii.* 344.

Beaumeis, Richard de, (bishop,) *v.* London.

Beaumeis, castellan of, excommunicated, *iii.* 362.

Beaumont, [?Ralph] viscount of, taken prisoner by the Turks, *iv.* 54.

Beaumont, Roger de, a French prisoner, *iii.* 132.

Beaumont, W. de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, *iii.* 360; excommunicated, 362.

Beauvais, bishops of:

- [Philip de Dreux,] a crusader, *iii.* 21; bribed by Saladin, 23; taken prisoner by the English, 96; terms of his release, 143.
- [Milo de Chatillon], bishop elect, taken prisoner by the Turks, *iv.* 54.

Beauvais, Reginald de, a crusader, *ii.* 120.

Bec, abbots of:

- Theobald, *v.* Canterbury.
- Robert, renounces his election to the see of Canterbury, *ii.* 369.

Becket, Thomas, archdeacon of Canterbury, etc., becomes chancellor of Henry II., *ii.* 281; is sent to Paris for the princess Margaret, 288; does homage to prince Henry, 292; becomes archbishop of Canterbury, and resigns the office of chancellor, *ib.*; his previous history, 293; present at the concord between S. Alban's and the church of Lincoln, 294; causes of his dissension with the king, 295; his seat in the council of Tours, 298; repents his subscription to the Constitutions of Clarendon, and is absolved by the pope, 303; opposes the subjection of the clergy to lay jurisdiction, 304; charges against him, 305; flies to the pope, 306; his appeal, 310;

excommunicates the observers of the 'consuetudines avitæ,' 313; refuses to plead until restored to his temporalities, 314; receives a maintenance from the king of France, *ib.*; his letter to king Henry, 315; letter of his suffragans and his reply, 316, *seqq.*; orders the bishop of London to restore their benefices to the deprived clergy, 320; is confirmed in the archbishopric by the pope, 321; excommunicates the bishop of London, 331, *seqq.*; his mental sufferings, 337; his terms of reconciliation, 338; offends the king by his reservations, 355; is restored, *ib.*; returns with papal letters excommunicating the archbishop of York and others, 356, *seqq.*; refuses to absolve them, 359; is murdered, 360, *seqq.*; reputed miracles at his tomb, 365; is canonized, 370; a chapel dedicated to him at Acre, iii. 22; legend of his apparition, 28; his body translated, iv. 65.

Beda, the Venerable, educated at Jarrow, under Benedict Biscop and Ceolfrith, i. 220; his prayer on concluding his history, 221; dedicates it to king Cœlulf, 214; is invited to Rome, 221; his death, 223; buried at Jarrow, but afterwards translated to Durham, 223.

Bederi, Bediers, or 'Biternensis,' Gastus de, a crusader, ii. 62, 77, 120.

Bedford, the castle of, besieged, iv. 95, *seqq.*; razed, 99.

Bedford, John, archdeacon of, spokesman for the clergy in the council at Westminster, iv. 115.

Bedwin, bishop of Elmham, i. 164.

Belesme, Robert de, succeeds to the earldom of Salop, ii. 128; is banished, 170; escapes from the battle of Tinchebri, 182.

Benedict I., pope, i. 85; his intended mission of Gregory to England frustrated by the populace, *ib.*; he promotes Gregory, *ib.*

Benedict II., pope, i. 176.

Benedict III., pope, i. 292, 294.

Benedict IV., pope, i. 370.

Benedict V., pope, i. 410.

Benedict VII., pope, i. 418.

Benedict IX., pope, i. 471.

Benedict Biscop, his noble birth and military education, i. 196; studies VOL. IV.

at Rome, and becomes a monk, 197; builds a monastery at Wermouth, and appoints abbots to that and the one at Jarrow, *ib.*; is said to have visited Rome five times, 198; his death, *ib.*

Benet (S.), the younger, miracle respecting, i. 72; time of his death, according to some, 71; his monastery at Monte Casino destroyed by the Lombards, 173; his remains translated to Fleury, 174; futile attempt to re-convey them to Monte Casino, 229; again translated during the Danish invasion, 335.

Bensington, battle of, i. 243.

Beorhferth, son of Beorhtuulf of Mercia, murders his kinsman Wulstan, i. 284.

Beorhthelm, bishop of London, dies, i. 406.

Beorhthelm, bishop of Wells, translated to Canterbury, but returned to his see for indecision of character, i. 408.

Beorhthelm, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 410.

Beorhtic, son of Cyneulf, succeeds him in Wessex, i. 246; marries Eadburh (268) daughter of Offa of Mercia, and drives Ecgberht into exile, 247; is poisoned by his wife, 268.

Beorhtric, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 438.

Beorhtric, brother of Eadric Streona, accuses Wlnoth falsely, i. 438.

Beorhtuulf of Mercia expelled by the Danes, i. 285; his death, *ib.*

Beorn, a relative of Eadward III., murdered by earl Sweyn, i. 491.

Beormraed of Mercia, i. 233; expelled for tyranny, 234; burns the town of Cattrick, 239; perishes by fire, *ib.*

Beormraed, bishop of Rochester, dies, i. 270.

Beornuulf of Mercia, i. 275; defeated by Ecgberht of Wessex, and slain by the East-Angles, *ib.*

Berctuuald (abbot of Reculver) elected archbishop of Canterbury, i. 185; votes for the restoration of archbishop Wilfrid, 187; is consecrated by Godwin, archbishop of Lyons, 188 and *note*; his death, 219.

Berengaria, daughter of Sancho VI. of Navarre, is carried to Richard I.

by his mother, iii. 27, and espoused by him, 38.

Berengarius, archbishop of Tours, his heresy and repentance, ii. 27, *seq.*

Berenguin (or Bregwin), archbishop of Canterbury, his prudence and scholarship, i. 236 ; his death, *ib.*

Berkeley, or Brackley, R. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 356.

Berkhampstead castle besieged and taken, iv. 5.

Bern, huntsman of Edmund of East-Anglia, murders Lothbroc through envy, i. 305 ; his sentence and its consequences, 306, *seq.* ; advises Hinguar and Hubba to cast Edmund's head into the wood where Lothbroc had been murdered, 312.

Bernard, king of Italy, deposed, blinded, and put to death for treason to the emperor, i. 273.

Bernard (bishop), *v.* David's, S.

Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux, persuades Louis VII. to submit to the pope, ii. 238 ; preaches a crusade, 239 ; dies, 254.

Bersabea rebuilt, ii. 213.

Bertha, a French princess, the wife of Aethelberht of Kent, i. 98.

Berthege, bishop of Chichester, i. 372.

Berthun, with Audun, expels Ceadwalla, and obtains the government of Sussex, i. 182.

Bertoldi, Walter, assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, iv. 54.

Bertulph, son of Florus, educated by S. Maurus, i. 79.

Besançon, [Thierry de Montfaucon] archbishop of, a crusader, iii. 21.

Bethun, bishop of Leicester, *dies*, i. 296.

Bethun, Baldwin de, accompanies Richard I. on his route through Germany, iii. 66.

Beuna of East-Anglia succeeds Ethelwald, i. 185.

Beziers besieged and taken, iii. 268, *seq.*

Bigod, Hugh, conspires against Rufus, and plunders Norwich, ii. 33.

Bigod, Roger, witnesses a charter of Henry I., ii. 164.

Bigod, Hugh, seneschal of Henry I., swears that Henry had disinherited the empress, and appointed Stephen his successor, ii. 217 ; seizes the castle of Norwich, 219 ; is present in the battle of Lincoln, 228 ; surrenders his castles to Henry II., 287 ; purchases a truce from the English barons, 375 ; joins the Flemish invaders, 376 ; submits to the king, 380.

Bigod, Roger, earl, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 355 ; his lands wasted by the king, 381.

Bigod, Hugh, (son of Roger,) excommunicated, iii. 355 ; *dies*, iv. 104.

Bigod, Hugh, earl of Norfolk, escapes from the battle of Grosmont, iv. 279.

Biham castle, siege of, iv. 66, *seq.*

Binard, William, banished, ii. 187.

Bingham, Robert de, (bishop,) *v.* Salisbury.

Birds, battles of, i. 162 ; ii. 211.

Birinus sent by pope Honorius to preach in Wessex, i. 135 ; consecrated by Asterius, bishop of Genoa, *ib.* and *note* ; baptizes Cynegilis, and receives the see of Dorchester, *ib.* ; his body buried there, but afterwards translated to Winchester, 140.

Birstan, bishop of Winchester, i. 388 ; *dies*, 391.

Bisi, bishop of the East-Angles, present at the council of Hertford, i. 162 ; deposed on account of ill-health, 163.

Blanche of Castille married to prince Louis of France, iii. 147 ; sends a fleet to facilitate his escape from England, iv. 28 ; causes her son Louis IX. to be crowned, 135 ; imputations upon her character, 213 ; takes an oath to administer justice to the barons, 216.

Blecca, prefect of Lincoln, baptized by Paulinus, i. 128.

Bleda, a son of Port, i. 55.

Bloet, Robert, (bishop,) *v.* Lincoln.

Blois, Theobald IV. of, (elder brother of king Stephen, ii. 216,) invited by the Norman barons to take possession of the duchy, 220 ; receives an annuity from Stephen, *ib.*

Blois, Theobald V. count of, a crusader, iii. 21 ; *dies*, 36.

Blois, Stephen de, *dies before Acre*, iii. 36.

Blois, William de, (bishop,) *v.* Lincoln.

Blundus, John, elected archbishop of Canterbury, iv. 248; rejected by the pope, 267.

Blundville, Thomas de, (bishop,) v. Norwich.

Boby, Osbert de, conspires against king John, iii. 297; is taken prisoner, 335; excommunicated, 357.

Bocland, Hugh de, sheriff of Hertfordshire, ii. 161 and *note*.

Boetius joins his father-in-law Symmachus in translating from the Greek, i. 55; writes his book 'de consolatione Philosophiae,' 64; his death, 65.

Bohemond, (I. of Antioch,) prince of Tarento, son of Robert Guiscard of Apulia, ii. 27; assumes the cross, 62; his march, 78; reaches Nice, 81; assists in repulsing Solyman, 83; is attacked by him, 87; his actions before Antioch, 94, and ruse to rid the camp of spies, 96; is sent with others to conduct the Genoese to the camp, 101; his negotiations with Emyfer, 105; takes Antioch, 107, *seqq.*; loses 200 men in a sally, 112; administers an oath against desertion, 114, 118; commands the reserve in the great sortie, 120; is again attacked by Solyman, 122; becomes prince of Antioch, 125; quarrels with Raymond, 128; is captured by the Turks, 168, and redeemed, 178; effects of his jealousy of count Baldwin, 179; his expedition against Alexius, and death, 186.

Bohemond II., son of the preceding, ii. 186; receives Antioch, and one of his daughters, from Baldwin II., 208; is slain by the Turks, 211.

Bohemond III., taken prisoner by the Turks, ii. 313.

Bohun, Henry de, earl of Hereford, excommunicated, iii. 355; taken prisoner, iv. 23.

Boniface II., pope, i. 63.

Boniface III., pope, i. 109.

Boniface IV., pope, i. 109 and *note*; prevails on Phocas to acknowledge his spiritual supremacy, *ib.*; consecrates the Pantheon, 110; calls a council in Italy, *ib.*

Boniface V., pope, i. 120.

Boniface VI., pope, i. 363.

Boniface (or Winfrid), bishop of Mâcon, his martyrdom, i. 232.

Boniface, bishop of Dunwich, i. 144.

Bordeaux, archbishops of:

- [Elie de Malmort,] pays a large sum to Rome to be cleared from the accusation of his clerks, iii. 27; marries the dauphin Louis and Blanche of Castile, 147.
- [Gerald de Malmort,] sent by the barons of Gascony, etc. to invite Henry III., iv. 179.

Borsequin, a Turkish prince, defeated, ii. 206.

Bosa (a monk of Streneshalh, i. 172), one of the substitute bishops for archbishop Wilfrid, 168.

Bosel, bishop of Worcester, i. 205.

Botulph builds the church of Ycanno, i. 152.

Boulogne, Reginald count of, is banished by Philip II., and receives a grant of land from king John, iii. 236; undertakes that John will observe his compact with the pope, 249; is a witness of his submission, 254; accompanies the fleet sent against the French, 257; quarrels with Hugh de Boves, 288; unhorses the French king in the battle of Bovines, 290; taken prisoner, 291; his release demanded by the French peers, iv. 136.

Boulogne, Philip, son of Philip II., of France, receives from his father the earldom of, and the daughter of the banished earl Reginald, iii. 236; confederates against the count of Champagne, iv. 212; is one of the commissioners to negotiate a truce with England, 224.

Bourges, council at, iv. 118, *seqq.*

Bourges, Peter archbishop of, rejected by Louis VII., ii. 238.

Boves, Hugh de, (an auxiliary of king John against the French,) his character, iii. 287; his quarrel with the earl of Boulogne, 288; put to flight in the battle of Bovines, 291; sent by John to engage foreign mercenaries, 320; is shipwrecked, and drowned, 332.

Bovines, battle of, iii. 287, *seqq.*

Brabant, Mercadeus prince of, assists prince John of England in harassing the French, iii. 96, and the queen-mother in taking Angers, 138.

Brabant and Louvaine, [Henry] duke of, assists king John against the French, iii. 287.

Brai, Gilbert and Jokenus de, French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 Brantefeld, Elias de, a monk of Canterbury, sent on a mission to Rome, iii. 186; refuses to join in the election of Stephen de Langton, 213.  
 Braose, Philip de, banished, ii. 187.  
 Braose, William de, his treachery to the Welch, ii. 384; his castle besieged by them, iii. 129; flies to Ireland from king John, 225; dies in France, 237.  
 Braose, William de, son of the preceding, cast into prison by king John, and starved to death, iii. 234, seq.  
 Braose, Reginald de, his castle besieged by the Welch, iv. 72.  
 Braose, William de, taken prisoner by the Welch, iv. 173; hanged, 209.  
 Braybroke, Robert de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.  
 Braybroke, Henry de, son of Robert, supports king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; excommunicated, 356; defends the castle of Montsorel, iv. 14; is seized by Faulkes de Breauté, 94; released, 98.  
 Breauté, Faulkes de, one of those left by king John to observe the barons, iii. 347; takes Hantslope and Bedford castles, 349; receives the custody of Oxford castle, etc., 353; plunders S. Alban's, iv. 10; present at the siege of Montsorel, 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; is taken prisoner, and rescued, 22; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; encourages the insurrection of the earl of Albemarle, 66; hangs three citizens of London, 81; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93; seizes one of his justices in eyre, 95; escapes to Wales, 96; throws himself upon the king's mercy, 98; is banished, 103; dies, 137; anecdote respecting, ib.  
 Breauté, William de, defends Bedford castle against Henry III., iv. 95; hanged, 97.  
 Breis, Reginald de, a crusader, slain, ii. 69.  
 Brendan (S.), flourishes in Scotland, i. 81; his seven years voyage, ib.  
 Brenville, battle of, ii. 198.  
 Bretel, Baldwin, sent by prince Louis to the aid of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.  
 Breton, Richard le, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.  
 Breton, Ralph le, treasurer of Henry III., dismissed from his office and fined, iv. 244.  
 Breun [? Brienne], Theobald de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 ? Brewer, v. Briwer.  
 Bridget (S.), her death, i. 63.  
 Brien, nephew of king Cadwallo, assassinates king Eadwin's astrologer, i. 131; escapes to Exeter, where he is besieged by Penda, ib.  
 Brienne, John de, king of Jerusalem, his march, iv. 7, seq.; repulsed at Mount Thabor, 9; strengthens the castle of Caesarea, 12; marches against Damietta, 36; opposes a general engagement with the Turks, 53; covers the retreat of the Christians, 54; is favourable to the Sultan's terms, 58; is one of the hostages for the restoration of Damietta, 76; invades Germany, and assumes the title of emperor, 182, seq.; endeavours to intercept Frederic II. on his return from the crusade, 207; flies to France, 209.  
 Britain, why so called, i. 93; its name changed to 'England' on the expulsion of the Britons, ib.; Saxon kings contemporary with that event, with a specification of their dominions, 92.  
 Britanny, Hoel earl of, expelled, ii. 283.  
 Britanny, Conan earl of, dies, ii. 329.  
 Britanny, Geoffrey earl of, (son of king Henry II.,) born, ii. 287; his marriage, 329; fealty sworn to him at Nantes, 340; joins the rebellion of his brother Henry, 369; does homage to his father, 382; knighted, 389; does homage to his brother Henry, 410; dies, 419.  
 Britanny, Arthur earl of, (posthumous son of the preceding,) ii. 419; declared by Richard I. his heir, iii. 27; placed under the safeguard of Philip II., 138; is knighted by him, and does him homage, 141; leaves his protection, and returns, 142; does homage to his uncle John, 148; besieges queen Eleanor in the castle of Mirabeau, 168; is made

prisoner, 169; his interview with John, and death, 170.

Britanny, Henry earl of (*v.* iv. 205, *note*), absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., iv. 136; is reconciled to him, 141; recommends Henry III. to defer his expedition into France, 205; surrenders his fortresses to him, 210; negotiates a truce with the French king, and comes to England, 224; dissuades Henry from marrying the sister of the Scottish king, 227; is attacked by Louis, 315; being refused money by Henry, he submits unconditionally to Louis, 316.

Brithegus, bishop of Worcester, i. 471; dies, 476.

Brithmar, bishop of Lichfield, dies, i. 476.

Brithnoth, earl of Essex, slain by the Danes, i. 427.

Brithric, *v.* Beorhtric.

Brithulf, earl, guardian of the realm in Essex, i. 363.

Brithwold, bishop of Ramsbury, dies, i. 483; his vision respecting Edward the Confessor, 495.

Britons, sufferings of, under Caretius, i. 90.

Briwer, Foulques de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238.

Briwer, William, one of the guardians of the realm during the absence of Richard I., iii. 16; ordered to act independently of the chancellor, 49; becomes an adviser of king John, 238, and is a witness of his submission to the pope, 254; adheres to him against the barons, 301; is one of the commanders of the force appointed to observe London, 347; excuses Henry III. in refusing the confirmation of Magna Charta, iv. 84.

Broc, Philip de, canon of Bedford, deprived, and banished, ii. 305.

Broc, Robert de, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 360.

Brocmael, a British general appointed to protect the monks in the battle of Bangor, allows them, through his cowardice, to be massacred, i. 104.

Bruilun, Geoffrey de, taken prisoner by the French, ii. 439.

Brun, Hugh le, earl of La Marche, attacked by the Griffons, iii. 32;

deprived of his intended wife by king John, 148; joins prince Arthur, 168; does homage to king John, etc., 281; goes to the Holy Land, iv. 44; is surprised and routed by Richard earl of Cornwall, 102.

Brunai, Ferri de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Bruning, an auxiliary of Modred, slain by king Arthur, i. 75.

Brus, Peter de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; assists in reducing Yorkahire, 379.

Buck, Walter, one of king John's foreign mercenaries, iii. 331; commands the auxiliaries from Brabant, 347; wastes the isle of Ely, 358.

Burgenilda, daughter of Cœnulf of Mercia, i. 263.

Burgh, Geoffrey de, (bishop,) *v.* Ely.

Burgh, Baldwin de, a crusader, ii. 62, 74, 120.

Burgh, Hubert de, (seneschal of Poitou,) settles a truce with the French commissioners, iii. 293; present at the granting of Magna Charta, 302; is left in charge of Dover castle, 368; defends it against Louis, 380; refuses his overtures, iv. 4; punishes, as justiciary, some London rioters, 81; is accused of injustice by the barons, 88; procures the grant of a fifteenth for the king, 99; obtains the royal consent to the marriage of his nephew with the countess of Salisbury, on the supposition of her husband's death, 113; begs pardon of the earl, 116; becomes sole adviser of Henry III., 139; created earl of Kent, 141; advises Henry to seize his brother Richard, 142; recommends the building of a castle, called in derision 'Hubert's Folly,' 173, *seqq.*; advises the king to decline the overtures of the foreign barons, 179; is assaulted by him, and restored to favour, 204, *seqq.*; opposes the invasion of Normandy, 215; receives the custody of the possessions of the late earl of Gloucester, 217; orders some Welch prisoners to be beheaded, 221; accused of conniving at the spoliation of the Italian clergy, 242; removed from his office, 245; charges against him, 246, *seqq.*; flies to Merton priory, 248; apprehended in Bois

sars church, 251 ; replaced therein, 252 ; surrenders himself, 253 ; gives up his treasure to the king, 257 ; placed in free custody at Devizes, 258 ; escapes to a neighbouring church, 274 ; is dragged thence, and again placed therein, 275 ; is rescued by the insurgent barons, 277 , and restored to favour, 310.

Burgh, John de, son of the preceding, knighted, iv. 204.

Burgh, Richard de, assists in suppressing an insurrection in Ireland, iv. 214 ; joins in a conspiracy against the earl-marshal, 292, *seq.* ; meets him in a conference, 303 ; lends his armour to a powerful knight, 305.

Burgred of Mercia marries Aethelwiftha, daughter of Aethelwulf of Wessex, i. 285 ; joins his father-in-law's expedition against the Welch, 288 ; marches with Aethelred and Aelfred against the Danes, 300 ; makes a truce with them, *ib.*, and obtains another by a pecuniary payment, 323 ; affords an asylum to Ecgberht of Northumbria and to archbishop Wulfer, 324 ; is expelled by the Danes, and dies at Rome, 325.

Burgundy, Stephen count of, arrives in the Holy Land, ii. 173 ; is slain at Rama, 177.

Burgundy, Hugh III. duke of, one of the mediators between kings Henry II. and Philip II., ii. 442 ; becomes commander of the French crusaders, iii. 45 ; refuses to march on Jerusalem, 55, *seq.* ; his treachery, 56 ; withdraws the French, 57 ; dies mad, 59.

Burgundy, Eudes III. duke of, one of the leaders of the crusade against the Albigenses, iii. 267 ; continues the war after the secession of the greater portion of the army, 270.

Burgundy, Henry duke of, absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., iv. 136 ; confederates against the count of Champagne, 212.

Buteville, Geoffrey de, one of king John's Poitevin mercenaries, iii. 331 ; receives the custody of Belvoir castle, 350.

Buteville, Oliver de, brother of the preceding, iii. 331 ; associated with him in the aforesaid custody, 350.

Cadalo convicted of simony, ii. 5.

Cadisan, lady of Corazin, the wife of Mahomet the impostor, i. 122.

Cador, duke of Cornwall, frustrates a threatened night-attack upon king Arthur, i. 62 ; conducts the pursuit at Banneton Hill, 65 ; follows the fugitives into Thanet, slays Cedric, and receives the surrender of the rest, *ib.*

Cadwallan, prince of Wales, murdered, ii. 404.

Cadwallo, the British king, flies to Ireland, after his defeat by Eadwin, i. 130 ; returns, and arrives at Exeter, *ib.* ; takes Penda prisoner, 132 ; they ravage Northumbria, and kill Eadwin, *ib.* ; Cadwallo's cruelty to the vanquished, 133 ; marries a sister of Penda, 166 ; kills Osric and Eanfrid, the successors of Eadwin, 133, *seq.* ; his death, 165.

'Clementarius,' Alexander, encourages king John in his opposition to the pope, etc., iii. 231, *seq.*

Cessarea, P. archbishop of, joins with other prelates in a letter from the Holy Land, iv. 146 ; is one of the leaders of the crusaders, 175.

Calderon, Baldwin, a crusader, slain, ii. 84.

'Caliburn,' king Arthur's sword so called, i. 64.

Calixtus II., pope, ii. 196 ; visits king Henry I., 200 ; makes the antipope Maurice a monk, 202.

Cambray, archbishop of:

- [Roger de Warin], a crusader, iii. 21.
- Peter de Douai, imprisoned and released, iii. 143.

Cambridge taken by the barons, iii. 380.

Camelec, bishop, redeemed from the Danes, i. 380.

Camville, Richard de, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24, 30.

Cantelo, v. Cantilupe.

Canterbury (Kaerkeint) built, *Pref.* xii. ; burnt by the Danes, i. 439 ; precedence of the see of, established, ii. 12 ; again disputed, 191 ; state of cathedral after the death of Becket, 366 ; monks of, expelled by king John, iii. 214.

**Canterbury, archbishops of:**

[For those before the Conquest, *v. Augustine, Lawrence, Mellitus, Justus, Honorius, Deusdedit, Theodore, Berctuuald, Tatwin, Nothelm, Cuthbert, Berenguin or Bregwin, Jaenberht, Aethelhard, Wilfrid, Ceolnoth, Aethelred, Plegmund, Athelm, Wulshelm, Odo, Elfsi, Beorhthelm, Dunstan, Aethelgar, Aelfric, Sircius, Living, Aethelnoth or Agelnoth, Eadsius, Robert, Stigand.]*

— Lanfranc, ii. 8 ; dedicates S. Mary's at Bec, 20 ; his advice to the Conqueror respecting Odo, 32 ; attempts to degrade Wistan, 52 ; crowns William Rufus, 31 ; his death, 36.

— Anselm, ii. 41 ; consecrated, 44 ; refuses to pay Rufus for his appointment, 47 ; persists in going to Rome, 49 ; his return prohibited, *ib.* ; is restored by Henry I., 165 ; officiates at his marriage, 169 ; degrades the prelates who had received investiture from laymen, 171 ; goes with them to Rome, and procures their restoration, 172 ; his return again interdicted, 176 ; is restored, and consecrates five bishops, 183 ; claims the submission of the archbishop of York, 184 ; his death, 185.

— Ralph, *v. Rochester.*

— William de Corbolio, (prior of Chicche,) elected, ii. 203 ; goes to Rome for his pall, 204 ; disputes precedence with archbishop Turstan, 205 ; consecrates Gilbert the Universal, 207 ; crowns Stephen, 216 ; dies, 220.

— Theobald, (abbot of Bec,) elected, ii. 225 ; consecrates Robert bishop of Lincoln, 244 ; reconciles king Stephen and duke Henry, 255 ; crowns Henry, 273 ; dies, 289.

— Thomas Becket, *v. Becket.*

— Richard, prior of Canterbury, elected, ii. 370 ; goes to Rome, 375 ; consecrates four bishops, 381 ; appoints three archdeacons to his province, 384 ; consecrates Walter bishop of Lincoln, 410 ; dies, 411.

— Baldwin, *v. Worcester.*

— Reginald, *v. Salisbury.*

— Hubert Walter, *v. Walter.*

— Stephen de Langton, (cardinal of S. Chrysostom,) consecrated, iii. 212, *seq.* ; procures a relaxation of the interdict, 226 ; goes to Rome with complaints against king John, 241 ; carries the pope's sentence to Philip II., 243 ; returns to England, 260 ; directed to advise the guardians of the realm during the king's absence, 261 ; prevents John from proceeding against the barons, 262 ; still farther relaxes the interdict, and urges the barons to claim the laws of Henry II., 263 ; attends councils respecting the compensation due to the clergy, 275, *seq.* ; appeals against the conduct of cardinal Nicholas, 278 ; becomes a surety for John to his barons, 296 ; is sent to inquire their claims, 298 ; attends the king at Runnymede, 302 ; the custody of Rochester castle and of the Tower of London restored to him, 319 ; is suspended for refusing to excommunicate the barons, 340 ; the sentence confirmed by the pope, 345 ; relaxed, 360 ; crowns Henry III. at Canterbury, iv. 63 ; appointed to inquire respecting the miracles ascribed to Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 64 ; translates the body of Becket, 65 ; demands the confirmation of Magna Charta, 83 ; is sent on an embassy to France, 86 ; excommunicates the earl of Chester and his colleagues, 92 ; his act against the concubines of the clergy, 104 ; procures the recall of the legate Otho, 123 ; lays the pope's demands before the council at Westminster, *ib.* ; is ordered to publish the excommunication of the emperor, 165 ; dies, 170.

— Richard, chancellor of Lincoln, appointed by the pope, iv. 185 ; consecrated, 204 ; refuses to pay scutage, 219 ; excommunicates all who withhold from him Tunbridge castle, etc. and appeals to Rome, 220 ; his charges against Henry III., and death, 226.

— Edmund Riche, canon of Salisbury, offered by the pope to the monks, iv. 267 ; consecrated, 298 ; threatens to excommunicate Henry III., *ib.* ; is sent to make peace with Llewellyn and the earl-marshall, 299 ; returns with Llewellyn's terms, 309 ;

causes a copy of the letters issued against the earl-marshal to be read in parliament, 311 ; obtains a safe-conduct for the late ministers, 312 ; releases Peter de Rivaux from the Tower, and replaces him in Winchester cathedral, 314 ; refuses to consecrate Richard de Wendene to Rochester, 325.

**Canterbury, archdeacons of:**

- Almer, i. 439.
- Geoffrey Ridel, *v. Ely.*
- Savary, ii. 384.
- Nicholas, ii. 384.
- Herbert Poore, *v. Salisbury.*

**Canterbury, Clarenbald abbot elect of S. Augustine's, endeavours to avoid canonical subjection to Becket, ii. 296.**

**Canterbury, priors of:**

- Jeremiah, ii. 225.
- Walter, *v. Coventry.*
- Richard, *v. among the archbishops.*
- Roger, deposed, and made abbot of Evesham, iii. 13.
- John, elected archbishop, iv. 234 ; is persuaded by the pope to renounce his election, 243.

**Canterbury, Reginald sub-prior of, privately elected archbishop by the junior monks, iii. 183 ; rejected by them for betraying their secret, 184 ; his election annulled at Rome, 211.**

**Cantilupe, Foulques de, sent to expel the monks from Canterbury, iii. 214 ; adheres to king John in his quarrel with the pope, 237.**

**Cantilupe, Roger de, sent to Rome by Henry III. to oppose the appeal of the archbishop of Canterbury, iv. 220 ; fails in his mission, 226.**

**Cantilupe, William de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301 ; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14 ; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19 ; is one of the confederacy against Hubert de Burgh, 93.**

**Cantilupe, William de, the younger, supports king John against the pope, iii. 237 ; marches to the relief of Lincoln, iv. 19 ; confederates against Hubert de Burgh, 93.**

**Canute, *v. Cnut.***

**Capus, Peter cardinal of, reconciles Richard I. and Philip II., iii. 133, *seq.* ; lays France under an interdict, and orders king John to release the bishop of Beauvais, 143.**

**Carcassonne, city of, taken from the Albigenes, iii. 269, *seq.***

**Caretius (the successor of Maglocun), a general union of the Saxons formed against him, i. 89 ; is driven into Wales and Cornwall, *ib.***

**Carlisle rebuilt, ii. 42 ; made an episcopal see, 212.**

**Carlisle, bishop of:**

- Athelwulf, prior of S. Oswald's and confessor of Henry I., consecrated, ii. 212.
- Walter Mauler, iv. 85 ; returns from a mission to France, 140 ; removed from the office of treasurer, and fined, etc., 264 ; prevented from complaining to the court of Rome, 272.

**Carloman (brother of Charlemagne) invades Saxony, i. 239 ; dies suddenly, 240.**

**Carthusians, Hugh, prior of the, *v. Lincoln.***

**Carvi, Herman de, a crusader, ii. 76.**

**Castan, bishop of Sherborne, i. 244 and note.**

**Castel, Thomas and Puncard de, French prisoners, iii. 132.**

**Castel-Sarazin, battle of, iv. 169.**

**Castello, Hugh de, a prisoner of Henry II., ii. 380.**

**Castillon, Reginald de, plunders the mother of Saladin, ii. 421.**

**Catigern, second son of Wyrtgeorne, i. 11 ; slain by Hors, 15.**

**Ceadwalla (or Cadwallador), son of Cadwallo, becomes king of the Welch, i. 166 ; succeeds Centwini in Wessex, 181 ; discrepancy between the Saxon and Welch writers respecting his paternity, *ib.* 182 ; ravages Kent, subdues the Isle of Wight, and puts Athelwold of Sussex to death, 182 ; is expelled Sussex by Berthun and Audun, *ib.* ; abdicates, goes to Rome, and is baptized by the pope, 183 ; his death, *ib.*, and epitaph, 184.**

**Ceawlin, son of Cynric, succeeds to the throne of Wessex, i. 80 ; defeats Aethelberht of Kent, 83 ; his magnificent conquests, 86 ; is defeated by the Britons, 88 ; obtains**

Sussex on the death of Cissa, 94 ; dies, 95.

Cecilia, a daughter of the Conqueror, takes the veil, ii. 16 ; becomes abbess of Caen, 26.

Cedd sent by Oswiu to preach in Essex, i. 143 ; consecrated bishop of the East-Saxons, and baptizes Swithelm, *ib.*

Cedd, bishop of Hereford, dies, i. 294.

Cedda (brother of Cedd) consecrated uncanonically archbishop of York, i. 159 ; deposed by archbishop Theodore, and receives the see of Lichfield, 155, 161 ; was present in the council of Streneshalb, 157.

Celdric arrives in Scotland, i. 62 ; leaves the country, returns, and is defeated at Banneston Hill, 64, *seq.* ; slain in the Isle of Thanet, 65.

Celestine I., pope, sends Palladius to the Scots, and afterwards S. Patric, i. 47.

Celestine II., pope, ii. 234.

Celestine III., pope, iii. 37 ; consecrates Henry VI. of Germany, 38 ; appoints archbishop Hubert legate of England, 90 ; reproves Philip II. for his divorce, *ib.* ; his bull on behalf of the Holy Land, 91 ; consecrates Philip bishop of Durham, 123 ; dies, 124.

Celidon Wood, battle of, i. 63.

Céneelm of Mercia (S.), son of Cœnulf, his passion, i. 273.

Centwini, son of Cynegilis, succeeds Aescwini in Weasex, i. 167 ; gains a victory over the Welch, 175 ; dies, 181.

Ceolfrith, abbot, succeeds Benedict Biscop, i. 198 ; letter of pope Sergius to him, 221.

Ceolmund, bishop of Hereford, i. 344.

Ceolmund, guardian of the realm in Kent, i. 363.

Ceolnoth, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 277 ; dies, 312.

Ceolraed, son of Aethelred of South Mercia, i. 167 ; succeeds Cœnraed, 203 ; fights a dubious battle with Ini, 211 ; dies, and is buried at Lichfield, 212.

Ceolraed, bishop of Leicester, i. 325.

Ceolric succeeds Ceawlin in Weasex, i. 95 ; his death, 108.

Cœoluulf of Mercia succeeds his nephew Céneelm, i. 274 ; is deposed, 275.

Cœoluulf of Mercia holds the kingdom during the pleasure of the Danes, i. 326.

Cœoluulf of Northumbria, his genealogy, i. 218, and learning, 219 ; receives the tonsure, *ib.* ; dies, 226.

Cœoluulf of Weasex, i. 108 ; dies, 110.

Cœoluulf, bishop of Dorchester, dies, i. 246.

Cœoluulf, bishop of Lincoln, i. 237, 252.

Ceorl, a kinsman of Wibba, succeeds him in Mercia, i. 96.

Cerdic, a Saxon, arrives in Britain, i. 13.

Cerdic and his son Cynric arrive in Britain, i. 50 ; Cerdic founds the kingdom of Weasex, *ib.* ; they gain a victory over the Britons, and kill Nataneleod, 57 ; great increase of Cerdic's power, 60 ; they subdue the Isle of Wight, 68 ; death of Cerdic, 70.

Cerni, John de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Certichesore, the place so named where Cerdic landed, i. 60.

Chainedut, Ralph, taken prisoner in the battle of Lincoln, iv. 24.

Chaisneio, Robert de, (bishop,) v. Lincoln.

Chalcedon, council of, i. 12.

Chalchuthe, council of, i. 246.

Chalons, [William II.] count of, a crusader, iii. 21.

Chaluz, siege of, iii. 135.

Champagne, Odo count of, banished, ii. 46.

Champagne, Henry I. count of, joins Louis VII. against Henry of Normandy, ii. 248.

Champagne, Henry II. count of, (son of Henry V. of Saxony, ii. 410 ; iv. 339,) his station before Acre, iii. 21 ; marches with his uncle Richard I., 45 ; is made king of Jerusalem, and marries the marchioness of Mont-Ferrat, 46 ; killed by a fall from a window, 117.

Champagne, Theobald IV. count of, one of the French commanders in the battle of Bovines, iii. 291 ; persists in leaving the army before Avignon, iv. 132 ; absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., 136 ; defeated by the confederated barons, 212.

Champagne, Frumentin de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Charles (Martel), king of the Franks, deposes the bishops of Rheims and Arles for closing the gates of their cities against him, i. 214.

Charlemagne obtains, upon Carlemann's death, the whole of his father's possessions, i. 240; takes Pavia, and subjugates all Italy, *ib.*; makes a treaty with Offa, and sends him presents, 242; transmits a heterodox book to England, 249; visits Rome and destroys the enemies of Leo III., 266, by whom he is crowned, 267; accepts the empire of the East, *ib.*; orders five councils to be held, 271; his death, 272.

Charles le Chauve patronizes Johannes Scotus, i. 337; orders him to translate the ‘Hierarchia’ of Dionysius the Areopagite, 338.

Charles le Gros, emperor, i. 334; his vision, 340.

Charles le Simple, i. 366; marries Eadhilda, daughter of Eadward the Elder, 369; makes peace with Rollo, and gives him his daughter Gilla, 377.

Charmouth, battle of, i. 282.

Charnelet, Hugh de, associated with Nicholas d'Albiney in the defence of Belvoir castle, iii. 350.

Charta de foresta, iii. 311, *seqq.*

Chartres, Ivo bishop of, dies, ii. 194.

Chartres and Blois, Stephen count of, (husband of Adela, daughter of the Conqueror, ii. 26), assumes the cross, 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 79; deserts at Antioch, 105; deters Alexius from attempting its relief, 114; returns, 173; is slain at Ramla, 177.

Chartres, Boëlis de, a crusader, ii. 76.

Chartres, William de, [son of Milo III. count of Bar-sur-Seine,] arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.

Châtellerault, the vicomte de, a crusader, iii. 22.

Chaumont, Galo de, a crusader, ii. 63, 120.

Chaumont, Hugh de, his capture by the English and escape, iii. 95.

Chaurua, Robert de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 336.

Chazares, emperor, i. 242.

Cheldric, a Saxon, slain by king Arthur, i. 75.

Chertsey, [Martin] abbot of, sent by Richard I. on a mission to the pope, iii. 134.

Chester, Dubritius archbishop of, *v.* Dubritius.

Chester, Robert Peccam, bishop of, ii. 27; dies, 213.

Chester, see of, transferred to Coventry, ii. 213.

Chester, constables of, *v.* Lacy.

Chester, earls of, *v.* Abrincis, Mescines, and Soot.

Chichester, bishops of:

- Bertheg, i. 372.
- Ralph, assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, ii. 185.
- Sifred (abbot of Glaston) consecrated, ii. 205.
- Hilary, ii. 294.
- John, dean of Chichester, elected, ii. 370; consecrated, 381.
- Richard [Poore], dean of Salisbury, consecrated, iii. 293; ordered, as bishop of Salisbury, to inquire into the bishop of Durham's conduct, iv. 69; is translated to Durham, 156; appointed to inquire respecting the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241; procures Hubert de Burgh to be restored to the church from which he had been taken, 275.
- Ralph de Neville (chancellor of Henry III.), elected archbishop of Canterbury, iv. 227; rejected by the pope, 228; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, 278.

Childebert, king of the Franks, his death, i. 100.

Chilperic succeeds his father Clotaire I., i. 82.

‘Chorea Gigantum,’ what, i. 44.

Chori, Gerard de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

Christiana, grand-daughter of Eadmund Iron-side, i. 462, 496; becomes a nun, ii. 2.

Christopher, pope, i. 370.

Cincio (a native of Rome), canon of S. Paul's, seized by insurgents, iv. 231.

Cineferth (or Cyneberht, i. 324), bishop of Lichfield, 297; his death, 324.

Cinque Ports, barons of, ordered to

watch the coasts, and intercept the fleet of prince Louis, iv. 28.  
 Cirencester, battle of, i. 128.  
 Cissa, third son of Ella, arrives in Britain, i. 38; succeeds his father in Sussex, 60, 92; was founder of Chichester, 60.  
 Cistercians, extension of the order of, prohibited, ii. 250; when first taxed in England, iii. 73.  
 Clare, Roger earl of, refuses homage to Becket for the castle of Tunbridge, ii. 298.  
 Clare, Richard earl of, submits to Henry II., ii. 380.  
 Clare, Henry earl of, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.  
 Clare, Richard earl of, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; loses Tunbridge castle, 349; excommunicated, 355.  
 Clarendon, Constitutions of, ii. 298, *seqq.*  
 Claudian, a priest of Vienne, his controversial skill, i. 37.  
 Clement II., pope, i. 484.  
 Clement III., pope, ii. 426; sends a cardinal to reconcile the kings of England and France, 435; makes the bishop of Ely legate, iii. 18, and confirms the election of the archbishop of York, 20; dies, 37.  
 Clement (S.), first bishop of Metz, invention of, ii. 40.  
 Clere, Matthew de, sheriff of Kent, apprehends Geoffrey, archbishop of York, iii. 38; is excommunicated, 75.  
 Clergy subjected to lay jurisdiction, ii. 304; concubines of, prohibited, i. 37; ii. 205, 210; act respecting, iv. 104.  
 Clerks, secular, expelled from the old monastery at Winchester, i. 410; general ordinance against them, 413; restored, 417, *seq.*; again expelled, 418.  
 Clermont, council of, ii. 56.  
 Clermont, [Ralph] count of, a crusader, iii. 21.  
 Clifford, Walter de, joins a confederacy against Henry III., iv. 271.  
 Clodesuïda of Metz receives the veil from an angel, i. 112.  
 Clotaire I., king of the Franks, besieges Saragossa, i. 75; dies, 82.  
 Clotaire II., i. 93.  
 Clotaire III., i. 157.  
 Clovis I. subdues Alaric the Goth, i. 35; expels the Arian Goths from Thoulouse, etc., 36; obtains a miraculous victory, 37; is baptized by S. Remigius, 38; kills his kinsman Regnacarius, 39; his bounty to the church of Rheims, 55; receives the consulate and a jewelled crown from the emperor Anastasius, 58.  
 Clovis II., king of the Franks, i. 141; is visited by S. Fursey, 142; struck with madness for his irreverence, 155.  
 Clovis III., king of the Franks, i. 188.  
 Clugny, Hugh abbot of, his vision respecting Rufus, ii. 159.  
 Cnut, son of Sweyn, left by his father in charge of the fleet, i. 446; made king by the Danes, 449; defeated by Aethelred II., 450; mutilates his hostages, and departs for Denmark, *ib.*; returns, and receives the submission of Wessex, 452; ravages Mercia, *ib.*, and Northumbria, 453; chosen king by the majority of the Saxons, *ib.*; put to flight by Eadmund Iron-side, *ib.*; fights two drawn battles with him in Worcestershire, 454; twice defeated in Wessex, 455; gains the sixth battle through the treachery of Eadric Streona, 456; fights a single combat with Eadmund, 458, and obtains half the kingdom, 459; succeeds to the remainder on Eadmund's death, 460; puts Eadric to death, *ib.*; banishes the family of the late king, 461; on the death of his wife, he marries Emma, relict of Aethelred II., 463; sends home his fleet, and winters in Denmark, *ib.*; places monks in Bury S. Edmund's, and enriches the place, 464; builds churches where his battles were fought, *ib.*; banishes Turketel and Yric, 465; confirms the laws of Eadward the Elder, *ib.*; translates the body of S. Aelfeah, 466; conquers the Swedes, *ib.*; his bounty to Winchester, and offerings to S. Eadmund, 467; seizes upon Norway, 468; banishes earl Hacon, *ib.*; visits Rome, 469; his letter home to his subjects, 470; defeats Malcolm II., 471; makes his son Sweyn king of Norway, and Hardacnut king of Denmark, 472;

his death, *ib.*; the anecdote respecting his command to the sea, *ib.*

Cænt, son of king Sweyn, attempts an invasion of England, ii. 15; is murdered, when king, by his subjects, 31.

'Coat without a seam,' our Lord's, discovered, i. 94; ii. 283.

Coellic, bishop of Lichfield, retires to Scotland, i. 154.

Cœnraed of Mercia, i. 200; vision and awful death of one of his household, *ib.* 201; abdicates, visits Rome, and becomes a monk, 203.

Cœnraed of Northumbria, i. 211; his death, 212.

Cœnulf of Mercia, son of Cuthberht, his piety and valour, i. 263; restores the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 264; takes Eadberht Pren prisoner, and makes Cuthred king of Kent, *ib.*; releases his prisoner at the dedication of his church of Winchelcombe, *ib.*; is buried in the same, 273.

Cœnulf, bishop of Dorchester, i. 372.

Cognano, Alberde de, and Humphrey his son, crusaders, ii. 76.

Coinage, new, ii. 287; old called in, and new issued, 409.

Colchester, Ralph de Hauterive, archdeacon of, iii. 36.

Colgrin subdues the country between the Humber and Caithness, i. 62; is defeated at the Duglass, and driven into York, *ib.*; leaves the country, but returns, 64, and is slain at Banneston Hill, 65.

Colla, second bishop of Selsey, i. 205 and note.

Colman, bishop of Lindisfarne, his arguments in the council of Strencethalh, i. 157; goes to Scotland, 158.

Cologne, phenomena in the province of, iv. 13.

Cologne, archbishops of:

- Annon, ii. 5.
- Reginald, comes to England for the princess Matilda, ii. 312; letter to him from Henry II., 322.
- Philip, visits Becket's tomb, ii. 412.
- [Henry de Molenare,] sent to England by Frederic II. for the princess Isabella, iv. 333.

Colonna, John cardinal of, appointed to examine John archbishop elect of Canterbury, iv. 243.

Columbanus (S.), arrives in Britain, i. 83; his death, 99.

Colville, Roger de, excommunicated, iii. 357; taken prisoner, iv. 11.

Colville, William de, deprived of Biham castle by king John, iii. 353; excommunicated, 357; taken prisoner, iv. 24.

Comets: i. 73, 167, 218, 300, 355, 372, 418, 521; ii. 182, 188, 191, 237.

Comminges, [Bernard IV.] count of, an ally of the Albigenses, iii. 272.

Conan, a noble crusader from Britanny, ii. 80.

Conan, earl, v. Britanny.

Conanus, Aurelius, of Britany, imprisons his uncle Constantine, murders his cousins, and usurps the throne, i. 76; his death, 86.

Conon, pope, i. 178.

Conrad, emperor, i. 379.

Conrad II., emperor, i. 467; gives presents to Cnut at Rome, 470.

Conrad III., emperor, ii. 221; assumes the cross, 239; the greater portion of his army destroyed by the Turks, 240; arrives at Jerusalem, 241; his feast before Damascus, 243; leaves the Holy Land in disgust, *ib.*; dies, 251; legend respecting, *ib.*

Cons, Dodo de, a crusader, ii. 74.

Constance, second daughter of the Conqueror, and wife of Alan earl of Britanny, ii. 26.

Constance, daughter of Philip I. of France, and wife of Bohemond I. of Antioch, ii. 186.

Constance, sister of Louis VII., married, firstly, to prince Eustace of England, ii. 226, and secondly, to the earl of Thoulouse, 228.

Constance, daughter of Alphonso king of Castile, married to Louis VII., ii. 281.

Constance, a Scottish princess, wife of Conan earl of Britanny, ii. 329.

Constance, daughter of Conan earl of Britanny, wife of prince Geoffrey of England, and mother of prince Arthur, ii. 419; places her son under the protection of Philip II., iii. 138.

Constans, eldest son of Constantine

of Britain, becomes a monk at Winchester, *Pref.* xxiii. ; is crowned by Wyrgeorne, and assassinated by his Pictish body-guard, xxiv.

Constans, emperor, the senate mutilate the usurpers of his throne, and place them at his disposal, i. 138 ; duration of his reign, and his acts, 140 ; his wish to transfer the government to Rome resisted by the Constantinopolitans, 160 ; strips Rome of its public ornaments, *ib.* ; his death, 161.

Constantius, Walter de, archdeacon of Oxford, *v.* Lincoln.

Constantine, pope, i. 200 ; grants privileges to a monastery at Worcester, 205 ; rejects the heretical letters of the emperor Philippicus, 206.

Constantine III., emperor, puts to death the murderers of his father, i. 161 ; restores the churches, and labours to subvert the Monothelite heresy, *ib.* ; his death, 181.

Constantine IV., emperor, i. 227 ; his cruelty to the orthodox Christians, 228 ; dies, 242.

Constantine V., emperor, i. 243, 249 ; his atrocities towards the orthodox, 260.

Constantine III. of Scotland conquered by Aethelstan, i. 386 ; breaks a treaty, and is compelled to give his son as a hostage, 389 ; is assisted by Anlaf of Ireland, and defeated at Brunenburg, 392.

Constantine, brother of Aldroenus of Britanny, sent by him into Britain with archbishop Guithelinus, *Pref.* xxii. ; is chosen king, marries, and is stabbed by a Pict, xxiii.

Constantine, son of Cador, succeeds his kinsman king Arthur, i. 75 ; quells the rebellion of the sons of Modred, and puts them to death, 76 ; his death and burial, *ib.*

Constantine, uncle and nephew, (both citizens of London,) hanged for a riot, iv. 81.

Constantinople, [Robert de Courtenay] emperor of, dies, iv. 157.

Constantinople, council of, (fifth general.) i. 78.

Constantinople, bishops and patriarchs of:

- Acatius, a heretic, his death, i. 50.
- Constantinople, bishops and patriarchs of, *continued.*
- Deuterius, an Arian, legend of, i. 56.
- Anthymus, deposed by Agapetus for heresy, i. 78.
- Eutychius, his heresy respecting the resuscitated human body, i. 87.
- John, i. 96.
- John, assumes the title of universal patriarch, i. 100 ; his sudden death, *ib.*
- Sergius, adheres to the Monothelite heresy, i. 121, 129.
- Paul, condemned by the Lateran council for favouring the Monothelites, i. 149.
- Cyrus, banished by Philippicus, i. 206.
- John, an heretical monk, appointed by Philippicus, i. 206.
- Anastasius, pseudo-patriarch, *v.* Anastasius.

Coradin, second son of Saphadin, and sultan of Damascus and Jerusalem, iii. 76 ; destroys the latter city, iv. 42 ; harasses the defenders of Acre, etc., 74 ; assists his brother in cutting off the retreat of the Christians, 76 ; engages in civil war with his neighbours, 147.

Corbolio, William de, prior of Chicche, *v.* Canterbury.

Corbolio, D. de, one of prince Louis' ambassadors to Rome, iii. 372.

Cordeilla, daughter of king Leir, her history, *Pref.* x. *seqq.*

Cornhill, Henry de, sheriff of Kent, attends William bishop of Ely to Dover, iii. 52 ; sent to expel the monks from Canterbury, 214 ; adheres to king John against the pope, 237, and against the barons, 301.

Cornwall, bishops of, *v.* Herstan, Living, Leofric.

Cornwall, Henry earl of, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 300.

Cosdroa, king of Persia, takes Damascus and destroys Jerusalem, i. 116 ; his conquests in Africa, and death, 117.

Courgon, Robert de, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 43.

Courcy, Ingelram de, one of the confederacy against the count of Champagne, iv. 212.

Courtenay, Robert de, confederates against the count of Champagne, iv. 212.

Coutance, Geoffrey bishop of, conspires against William Rufus, ii. 32.

Coventry (or Chester), bishops of:

- Roger, ii. 213 ; dies, 237.
- Walter (prior of Canterbury), consecrated, ii. 237 ; suspended, 358.
- Richard, ii. 294.
- Gerard, (surnamed 'Puella,') his consecration and death, ii. 411.
- Hugh de Nouant, suspended for acting as a sheriff, iii. 18 ; robbed, 75 ; his death-bed penitence, 125.
- Geoffrey de Muchamp, iii. 128 ; dies, 220.
- William, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302.
- Alexander, protects Faulkes de Breaute in his access to the king, iv. 98 ; sent to Rome to oppose an election made by the monks of Durham, 129, and one made by those of Canterbury, 171 ; assists at the consecration of bishop Bingham of Salisbury, 203 ; excommunicates the persons who had traduced him to the king, 295 ; is sent to make peace with the earl-marshall, 299.

Coventry, dispute between the monks of, and canons of Lichfield, decided, iv. 156, *seq.*

Craddoc, son of Griffin of Wales, kills some workmen of earl Harold, i. 507.

Cracumbe, Godfrey de, one of the accusers at Rome of archbishop Langton, iii. 344 ; returns to England, 346 ; seized Hubert de Burgh in Boisars church, iv. 251 ; replaces him therein, 252.

Credda, first king of Mercia, i. 88 ; his death, 94.

Crediton, bishops of, v. Werstan, Eadulf, Aethelgar or Algar, Aelfwold, Living, Leofric.

Crema, John cardinal of, holds a council in London, ii. 205.

Crepin, William, constable of Eu, surrenders his castles to Richard I., iii. 121.

Cresay, Gerald de, a crusader, ii. 62.

Cresay, Roger de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 355 ; his lands wasted by the king, 381 ; is taken prisoner, iv. 24.

Cresay, John de, (son of Roger,) excommunicated, iii. 355.

Croxton, [Adam] abbot of, confesses king John, and administers to him the eucharist, iii. 385.

Cuichelm, brother of Ceawlin, his death, i. 95.

Cuichelm, son of Cynegils, admitted by his father to a share in the government, i. 112 ; sends an assassin to murder Eadwin of Northumbria, 125 ; is slain in battle by the latter, 126.

Culeworthe, William de, a collector of taxes, iv. 254.

Cumbria, a nobleman put to death by Sigeberht of Weasex for expostulating on behalf of the people, i. 233.

Cunimund, king of the Gepidae, slain in battle by Albuinus, i. 77.

Cuthard, bishop of Lindisfarne, dies, i. 380.

Cuthbald, abbot of 'Indalum,' i. 187.

Cuthbert (S.), bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 176 ; endeavours to dissuade Ecgfrith from invading the Picts, 177 ; returns to his cell, 179 ; his death and burial, *ib.* ; miracle at his tomb, *ib.* ; his body found entire eleven years after his death, 180, 189, and twice translated, 326, 430 ; privileges of his shrine, 336.

Cuthbert, archbishop of Canterbury, consecrates Dun bishop of Rochester, i. 227 ; holds the council of Clovesho, 231 ; his death, 236.

Cuthburga, sister of Ini, i. 216 ; separates from her husband, Ecgfrith of Northumbria, and founds Wimborne abbey, 212, 367.

Cuthfrith, bishop of Lichfield, i. 237.

Cuthred, son of Cuichelm, receives large possessions from Cynewealh, i. 141, *seq.*

Cuthred of Weasex succeeds his brother Aethelhard, i. 226 ; is harassed by Aethelbald of Mercia, 227 ; they make peace, and conjointly defeat the Welch, *ib.* 228 ; Cuthred quells the insurrection of Aethelhun, 231 ; again quarrels with Aethelbald, and gains a victory, 232 ; kills him in the battle of Seckington, 233 ; his own death, *ib.*

Cuthred made king of Kent by Coenulf of Mercia, i. 264 ; his death, 270.

Cuthred, son of Hardacnut, redeemed from slavery and raised to the throne, i. 335.  
 Cuthwine, brother of Ceawlin, slain in the battle of Fretherne, i. 88.  
 Cuulcu, the master of S. Patric when a slave, i. 47.  
 Cymen, eldest son of Ella, the place of their landing (*Cimens-hore*) called after him, i. 38.  
 Cyneberht, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168, 224.  
 Cyneburga, daughter of Penda and wife of Aelfred son of Oswiu, i. 144.  
 Cyngils, his accession to the throne of Wessex, i. 110; shares the kingdom with his son Cuichelm, 112; kills in battle the sons of Sebert of Essex, 124; fights with Penda at Cirencester, 128; is baptized by Birinus, 135; dies, 138.  
 Cynehard, bishop of Winchester, i. 234.  
 Cynehard, brother of Sigeberht of Wessex, banished by Cyneulf, i. 244; conspires against and murders him, 245; is buried at Repton, 246.  
 Cynesius, bishop, a kinsman of Dunstan, sent with him to bring Eadwy back to his coronation banquet, i. 404.  
 Cyneulf elected king of Wessex, i. 233; defeated by Offa of Mercia, 243; killed by conspirators, and buried at Winchester, 245.  
 Cyneulf, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 226; imprisoned by king Eadberht, 231; his death, 243.  
 Cyneulf, a Northumbrian general, slain by rebels, i. 242.  
 Cynewald, bishop of Wells, dies, i. 424.  
 Cyneward, abbot of Middleton, i. 411.  
 Cynewealh, king of Wessex, i. 138; repudiates his wife, the sister of Penda, by whom he is expelled his kingdom, 141; on his restoration, he gives large possessions to Cuthred son of Cuichelm, *ib.*; defeats the Welch at Pen, 155; is himself defeated by Wulferi, *ib.*; expels Wina from his bishopric, 159; dies, 162.  
 Cynewold, bishop of Worcester, i. 388; dies, 406.  
 Cynoth, king of the Picts, gives an asylum to Aethelred of Northumbria, i. 243.  
 Cynric, his arrival in Britain, i. 50; his reign and death, 80.  
 Cynric, son of Cuthred of Sussex, slain, i. 231.  
 Cyprus, Isaac (or Cursac) emperor of, imprisoned by Richard I. for ill-treating some shipwrecked Englishmen, iii. 37; becomes emperor of Constantinople, and is dethroned, etc. by the son of his predecessor, 85.  
 Cyprus, [Hugh] king of, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7; dies, 12.

## D.

Dagobert, king of France, i. 136.  
 D'Albeyn, William, his valour in the battle of Tinchebri, ii. 182; having married the widow of Henry I., he receives the empress Maud at Arundel castle, 227.  
 D'Albeyn, William, earl of Arundel, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302; deserts to Louis, 369; his lands wasted by John, 381; makes his submission to Henry III., iv. 12; arrives in the Holy Land, 44.  
 D'Albeyn, William, the younger, excommunicated, iii. 355; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, iv. 279.  
 D'Albeyn, Odinel, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 355.  
 D'Albeyn, William, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 300; is invited by them to a tournament, 321; takes the command of Rochester castle, 329; is taken prisoner by the king, 335; excommunicated, 355; is released, and does homage to Henry III., iv. 5; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19.  
 D'Albeyn, Nicholas, son of William, (a clerk,) surrenders Belvoir castle to king John, iii. 350.  
 D'Albeyn, Philip, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301; attends him to Runnymede, 302, and on his northern expedition, 348; is present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; ordered

to intercept the French fleet, 28 ; sends news of his victory to the king, 30 ; his letter from the Holy Land, 75 ; accompanies prince Richard into Gascony, 101 ; is sent to treat with the French malecontents, 136 ; returns, 140.

D'Albiney, Richard, (abbot) v. Al-  
ban's, S.

Dafinus, archbishop of Leyden, or-  
dains Wilfrid, i. 156.

Damascus, siege of, ii. 242.

Damasus II., pope, i. 484.

Damieta, tower near, besieged and  
taken, iv. 37, seq. ; the city besieged,  
45, seqq. ; state of the inhabitants,  
56 ; capture of the city, and its  
spoils, 59, seq.

Dampiere, Guy, a crusader, iii. 21 ;  
bribed by Saladin, 23.

Damaiva, the Turk who captured Bo-  
hemond I., ii. 168.

Danegeld, payments of, i. 424, 427,  
429, 435, 437 ; remitted, 437 ; abo-  
lished, ii. 218.

Daniel, bishop of Winchester, i. 198,  
204 ; extent of his jurisdiction,  
198 ; present at the consecration  
of archbishop Tatwin, 219 ; dies,  
228.

Daubeney, s. D'Albiney.

David I. of Scotland, son of Malcolm  
III., ii. 2 ; anecdote of him and his  
sister, 180 ; his accession, 205 ;  
his alliance with Stephen, 218 ; ra-  
vages Northumberland, 221 ; de-  
feated in the battle of the Standard,  
222, seqq. ; knights Henry duke of  
Normandy, 244 ; dies, 264.

David's, S., bishops of :  
— Bernard, ii. 192.  
— [Anselm le Gros,] carries the  
defiance of Henry III. to the earl-  
marshal, iv. 273.

Delaval, G., one of the confederacy  
against king John, iii. 297.

Demetia, the ancient name of South  
Wales, i. 91.

Deneberht, bishop of Worcester, i.  
205 ; made a suffragan of Lichfield,  
238.

Denmark, ancient law of, enforcing  
emigration, i. 364.

Desiderius, king of Lombardy, taken  
prisoner by Charlemagne, i. 240.

Deusdedit, pope, his regulation re-  
pecting the spiritual affinity of  
sponsors, i. 112.

Deusdedit succeeds Honorius in the  
see of Canterbury, i. 141, 149.

Diceto, Ralph de, dean of London,  
iii. 22.

Dié, Ysoard count of, a crusader, ii.  
62, 120.

Dioctletian persecutes the Christians  
of the East, *Pref.* xiii.

Dionotus, abbot of Bangor, i. 102.

Dionysius Exiguus, the cycle of, i. 69.

Diuma, bishop of Lichfield, i. 154.

Diva, William de, a retainer of the  
bishop of Lincoln, slain at Newark,  
iv. 35.

Dodo, the murderer of S. Lambert,  
his miserable death, i. 190.

Doldequin, king of Damascus, de-  
feated, ii. 206.

Domedart, Walter de, a crusader, ii.  
120.

Domesday-book, origin of, ii. 22.

Dominicans, or Friars Preachers,  
their origin and rule, iii. 124.

Domnus, pope, i. 414.

Don, battle of the, i. 42.

Donald VII. of Scotland expelled by  
his nephew Duncan and William  
Rufus, ii. 42.

Donus, pope, i. 167.

Dorchester, bishops of :  
[For those before the Conquest,  
s. Birinus, Aegelberht, Hilda,  
Ceolwulf, Aldulf, Halard, Cen-  
wulf, Eadnoth, Eadric, Eadnoth,  
Ulf.]  
— Remigius, removes his see to  
Lincoln, ii. 24 ; is prevented from  
dedicating his church by the arch-  
bishop of York, 40 ; his death, ib.

Dorylaum, battle of, ii. 86.

Dover, affray of the men of, with the  
suite of Eustace II. of Boulogne,  
i. 488 ; the castle besieged, iii.  
380 ; siege raised, iv. 4.

Dragon, origin of, as a royal standard,  
i. 53.

Drepinges, Geoffrey de, precentor of  
Lincoln, his loss in the plunder of  
that city, iv. 25.

Dreux, Robert count of, a crusader,  
iii. 21 ; bribed by Saladin, 23 ; his  
son taken prisoner by king John,  
286.

Dreux, [Robert III.] count of, confe-  
derates against the count of Cham-  
pagne, iv. 212.

Drichthelm's vision of purgatory, i.  
190.

Dublin, archbishops of :  
 — Henry, witnesses king John's charter of submission to the pope, iii. 254, and the granting of Magna Charta, 302.  
 — Luke, intercedes with Henry III. for Hubert de Burgh, iv. 247, *seq.*; obtains time for him to make his answer, 250; again interposes on his behalf, 253.

Dubritius, king of Britanny, brother-in-law of king Arthur, i. 62.

Dubritius, archbishop of Chester, i. 45 and note, 57.

Du Chêne, *v.* Chaisneio.

Duduc, bishop of Wells, dies, i. 502.

Duglass, battle of the, i. 62.

Dummail of Cumberland deprived of his kingdom, and his two sons of their sight, by king Eadmund, i. 398 and note.

Dun, bishop of Rochester, his consecration, i. 227.

Dunberht, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 334.

Duncan II., son of Malcolm III., gains the throne of Scotland by the aid of Rufus, ii. 42.

Dunewulf (or Bertulf, i. 363), bishop of Winchester, said to have been the swineherd who gave shelter to Aelfred, 334; appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 363.

Dunstan (S.), his birth, i. 385; ordained by S. Aelfeah, 400; called by king Eadmund to his councils, 393; traduced and dismissed, *ib.*; restored, and made abbot of Glastonbury, 394; hears heavenly greetings on the birth of Eadgar, 396; becomes king Eadred's treasurer, 399; refuses the see of Winchester, 400; his vision, *ib.*; Eadred's death revealed to him, 404; he performs his obsequies, *ib.*; incurs the hatred of Algiva by forcibly taking king Eadwy from her company, 405; banished, *ib.*; restored by Eadgar, and made bishop of Worcester, 406; translated to London, *ib.*; builds a monastery at Westminster, and makes Wlstan abbot, *ib.*; is translated to Canterbury, 408; receives his pall at Rome, 409; consecrates Oswald bishop of Worcester, *ib.*; calls two synods respecting secular clerks, 418; his miraculous escape from the falling refectory at Caine, *ib.*; his prophecy respecting Aethelred, 421; rebukes his avarice, 423; his death, 425; legendary anecdotes respecting him, *ib.*

Dunwich, bishops of, *v.* Thomas, Boniface, Acca, Athelac, Tidferth, Weremund.

Dunwich, see of, incorporated with that of Elmham, i. 315.

Durand, a Templar, sent with cardinal Pandulph to negotiate with king John, iii. 236.

Durham, bishops of :  
 [For those before the Conquest,  
*v.* Halchun, Eadmund, Eadred,  
 Aegelric, Aegelwine.]  
 — Walcher, killed for his extortions, ii. 17.  
 — William, joins the conspiracy against Rufus, ii. 32; is taken, liberated, and goes to Normandy, 34.  
 — Ralph [Flambard], ii. 157; imprisoned by Henry I., 165; assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, 185, and at the dedication of S. Alban's, 193; permits S. Godric to build a hermitage, 346; dies, 209.  
 — Geoffrey, ii. 214.  
 — William de S. Barbara, (dean of York,) ii. 237; dies, 250.  
 — Hugh de Pudsey, nephew of king Stephen, consecrated, ii. 272; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, 294, and at the council of Tours, 298; purchases the earldom of Northumberland, and an exemption from joining the crusade, iii. 9, *seq.*; appointed one of the guardians of the realm during the absence of Richard I., 15.  
 — Philip, (the clerk and companion of Richard I. in his pilgrimage, iii. 66,) sent on an embassy to Rome by the king, iii. 118; consecrated by the pope, 123; protests against the coronation of king John in the absence of his metropolitan, 139; dies, 220; is stated to have countenanced John's opposition to the pope, 237.  
 — Richard de Marsh, *v.* Marsh.

Dusual, king of South Wales, i. 415.

Duval, Guy, deserts from Henry II. of England to his son Richard, ii. 443.

## E.

Eabbi, a supporter of Wulferi against Oswiū, i. 155.  
 Eadbold of Kent succeeds his father Aethelberht, i. 113; his apostacy and incest, *ib.*; is brought to repentance by Lawrence, 115; recalls Mellitus and Justus, *ib.*; gives his sister to Eadwin on condition of his becoming a Christian, 125; dies, 136.  
 Eadberht of Kent, his death, i. 231 and *note*.  
 Eadberht, king of Kent, i. 236 and *note*.  
 Eadberht (Pren, i. 264), of Kent, 261; deposed by Cœnulf of Mercia, 264.  
 Eadberht of Northumbria succeeds Cœlulf, i. 226; imprisons bishop Cyneulf, 231; abdicates, and becomes a monk, 234.  
 Eadberht, bishop of Elmham, i. 224.  
 Eadberht, bishop of Hægulf, i. 266.  
 Eadberht, second bishop of Leicester, i. 239.  
 Eadberht, bishop of London, i. 165; his death, 269.  
 Eadberht, bishop of Lindisfarne, translates the body of S. Cuthbert, i. 180, 189.  
 Eadberht, abbot of Selsey, made bishop there, i. 204.  
 Eadberht, bishop of Worcester, dies, i. 283.  
 Eadberht, an insurgent against Oswiū, i. 155.  
 Eadberht slain in Sussex by Ini for seizing his castle of Taunton, i. 213.  
 Eadburga, mother-in-law of king Alfred, i. 300.  
 Eadburh, daughter of Offa, poisons her husband, Beorhtric of Wessex, i. 268; flies to France, *ib.*; is made an abbess by Charlemagne, but expelled for incontinence, 269.  
 Eadelm, bishop of Selsey, i. 413.  
 Eadfedra, daughter of Eadward the Elder, a nun, buried at Wilton, i. 369.  
 Edgar (the Pacific, i. 410), son of Eadmund, born, 396; is chosen king by the Mercians, 406; restores Dunstan, *ib.*; sells the see of Canterbury to bishop Elfsi, 407; obtains the whole kingdom at his brother's death, 408; his family, 410; places nuns in Rumsey and monks at Exeter, 412; orders a general expulsion of the secular clerks, *ib.*; directs New Minster to be dedicated, 414; his coronation, *ib.* and *note*; punishes plunderers in the Isle of Thanet, 415; receives the fealty of eight kings, and steers a vessel which they row, *ib.*; his fleet, and its stations, *ib.*; his diligent supervision of his judges, 416; orders a new coinage, *ib.*; his munificence to Kenneth III., *ib.*; is buried at Glastonbury, 417.  
 Edgar Aetheling, grandson of Eadmund Iron-side, i. 462; comes to England with his family, 496; they fly from the Normans, and are driven upon the Scottish coast, ii. 2; Edgar joins the Danish invaders, 6; submits to the Conqueror, 7; again flies to Scotland, and again makes his peace with William, 8.  
 Edgar, king of Scotland, (son of Malcolm III., ii. 2,) dies, 184.  
 Eadgar, bishop of London, i. 165, 269.  
 Eadgar, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168.  
 Eadgitha, second wife of Eadward the Elder, i. 369; endeavours to persuade Dunstan to accept the see of Winchester, 400.  
 Eadgitha, daughter of Eadward the Elder, married to Siðfric of Northumbria, 369 and *note*, as also 385 and *note*; see also *note* 2, p. 368: is repudiated, 385, and dies a nun, 386.  
 Eadhed, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168.  
 Eadhilda, daughter of Eadward the Elder, married to Charles le Simple, i. 369.  
 Eadmund of East-Anglia, his repugnance to be made king, i. 292; causes of his martyrdom, 303; his reply to the message of Hinguar, 309; fights with him at Thetford, 310; is taken at prayers in a church, 311; his cruel death, *ib.*; his head thrown into a wood, 312, and discovered, 313; a small church built on the spot of his martyrdom, *ib.*; translation of his body, 314.  
 Eadmund (king), son of Eadward the Elder, i. 369; assists his half-bro-

ther Aethelstan in the battle of Brunenburg, 392; his accession, 393; makes Dunstan one of his councillors, *ib.*; his subsequent treatment of him, 394; fights with Anlaf the Norwegian, and agrees to give him half his kingdom, 395; recovers it on Anlaf's death, 396; becomes sponsor for Anlaf son of Sihtric, and Reginald, 397; his offering to S. Eadmund, *ib.*; takes Cumberland from Dummail, and gives it to Malcolm, 398 and *note*; is murdered at a banquet, and buried at Glastonbury, 399.

Eadmund, son of king Edgar and Alfrida, i. 410; dies, 413.

Eadmund Iron-side born, i. 422; marries the widow of earl Sigeferth, and obtains his possessions and those of his brother, 451; retreats before Cnut, 452; is made king, 453; defeats Cnut in Dorsetshire, *ib.*; fights twice with him in Worcestershire, 454; follows him into Wessex, where he twice defeats him, 455; loses his sixth battle through the treachery of Eadric Streona, 456; his single combat with Cnut, 458; shares the kingdom with him, 459; is assassinated, and buried at Glastonbury, 460.

Eadmund, son of Eadmund Iron-side, i. 459; is sent into Sweden to be put to death, 461, but is brought up by the king of Hungary, 462.

Eadmund, grandson of Eadmund Iron-side, born in Hungary, i. 462.

Eadmund, bishop of Durham, singular circumstances of his election, i. 463, *seq.*; his death, 486.

Eadmund, bishop of Winchester, i. 278.

Eadmund, an unattached monk, discovers the body of S. Oswin, i. 505.

Eadnoth, bishop of Dorchester, slain by the Danes, i. 456.

Eadnoth, bishop of Dorchester, i. 472; dies, 486.

Eadred (son of Eadward the Elder, i. 369) crowned, 399; receives the submission of the North, and gives two large bells to York cathedral, *ib.*; makes Dunstan his treasurer, *ib.*; offers him the see of Winchester, 400; interprets Dunstan's dream, *ib.*; reduces a rebellion in Northumbria, 402; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 404.

Eadred, bishop of Durham, i. 486.

Eadred, bishop of Hagustaldt, consecrated, i. 264; his death, 266.

Eadred, abbot of Lindisfarne, his vision respecting Cuthred son of Hardacnut, i. 335.

Eadric, son of Ecgberht, fights against his uncle Hlôðheri, i. 179; succeeds him in Kent, *ib.*; his death, 181.

Eadric, bishop of Dorchester, dies, i. 472.

Eadric Streona, earl of Mercia, his unprincipled character, i. 436; procures the murder of earl Aethelstan, 437; beheads princess Gunnhilda, and murders her husband and son, 445; causes earls Sigeferth and Mercher to be treacherously put to death, 450; plots against Eadmund Iron-side, and deserts to Cnut, 452; returns to Eadmund, 455; deserts him at Ashdown, and gives the victory to Cnut, 456; recommends a single combat between the kings, 457; causes his son to murder Eadmund, 459; upbraids Cnut with ingratitude, and is smothered by his orders, 460; another account of his death, 461.

Eadric, cousin of Aethelred II., attends queen Emma during her sojourn in Normandy, i. 448.

Eadsius, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 476; crowns Hardacnut, 477, and Eadward the Confessor, 482; appoints himself a vicar, 483; his death, 486.

Eadulf, bishop of Crediton, dies, i. 388.

Eadulf, bishop of Sidnacester, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.

Eadulf, bishop of Wells, his jurisdiction, i. 372.

Eadulf, guardian of the realm in Sussex, i. 363.

Eadulf, earl, one of those who conducted Kenneth III. to king Eadgar, i. 416.

Eadwald (son of Ethelher) succeeds Eadwulf in East-Anglia, i. 154.

Eadward (the Elder, i. 380, 384), son of Aelfred the Great, 322; his accession, 367; expels his cousin Aethelwald, and rescues the nun he had forcibly married, 368; re-

pairs the ruined towns, *ib.*; his family, *ib.*; slays Aethelwald, and makes peace with the Danes, 370; subdues a domestic rebellion, *ib.*; calls a council to appoint bishops, 371; overcomes the Danes in Essex, East-Anglia, Mercia, and Northumbria, and receives the submission of the Scots, Cumbrians, and people of Galloway, 373; reconquers Northumbria, *ib.*; is victorious at Wodensfeld, 375; builds towns and fortresses, *ib.* 380, 381, 384; redeems bishop Camelec from the Danes, 380; destroys a great army of Danes, and makes subsequent conquests, 382; dies, and is buried at Winchester, *ib.*

Eadward II. (the Martyr), son of Edgar and Alfedea, i. 410; his accession, 417; retains the name of king, but allows his stepmother to perform the functions, 419; is stabbed by her orders, *ib.*, and buried privately at Wareham, 420; miracles at his grave, *ib.*; his body honourably translated to Shaftesbury, *ib.* 422.

Eadward III. (the Confessor), son of Aethelred II., i. 427; is sent to Normandy for safety, 448; comes to England on a mission, 449; returns to avoid Cnut, 462; his honourable reception by Hardacnut, 479; succeeds him, 482; his genealogy, *ib.*; deprives his mother of her property, but allows her a maintenance, *ib.*; marries Editha, daughter of earl Godwin, 483; equips a fleet, *ib.*; remits Dane-geld, 487; is visited by William of Normandy, *ib.*; banishes Godwin and his family, 489, and repudiates Editha, 490; is compelled to restore them, 491; the head of Rhesus presented to him, 492; he makes Harold earl of Kent, and Malcolm king of Scotland, 493; receives the head of Griffin, 504; orders S. Peter's, Westminster, to be dedicated, 509; his visions, *ib.* 511; chastity, 512; death, 510; was last of the royal line of Wessex, 511.

Eadward Aetheling, son of Eadmund Iron-side, i. 459; is sent by Cnut to the king of Sweden, to be put to death, 461, and sent by him to the king of Hungary, whose sister-in-law he marries, 462; dies in England, 496.

Eadwenna, mother of S. Godric, ii. 341.

Eadwi, earl, defeated by the Danes, i. 438.

Eadwin, son of Ella, on his expulsion from Deira, takes refuge with Reodwald, i. 96; his vision, 127; his valour in the battle of the Idle, 116; is restored to the kingdom of Northumbria, *ib.*; marries Athelburga of Kent, 125; his life attempted, *ib.*; permits his daughter Eanfled to be baptized, 126; kills Cuichelm in battle, *ib.*; his own baptism, 127; builds a church of stone at York, and procures the conversion of his subjects, *ib.*; his measures for the security and convenience of travellers, 128; induces Eorpwald to become a Christian, 129; defeats Cadwallo, and ravages Wales, 130; is slain by him in the battle of Hatfield, 132; his head buried at S. Peter's, York, *ib.*

Eadwin, third son of Eadward the Elder, i. 369; is forced to sea in an open boat by his brother, 390; drowns himself in despair, *ib.*

Eadwin, uterine brother of Eadmund Iron-side, is delivered to Aethelward to be put to death, but is concealed by him in a monastery, i. 461.

Eadwin, *v. Morchar.*

Eadwulf (son of Ethelher), king of East-Anglia, i. 154; the council of Heathfield held in his reign, 172.

Eadwy (son of Eadmund, i. 399) crowned, 404; leaves the coronation banquet to join his mistress, *ib.*; is brought back forcibly by Dunstan, whom he banishes, 405; is rejected by the Mercians, 406; divorced from Algiva, 407; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 408.

Eahlstan, bishop of Sherborne, defeats the Danes, i. 283; orders weekly prayers to be said for king Aethelwulf and the other parties to the royal charter, 289; conspires against the king on account of his foreign marriage, 290; dies, 299; summary of his martial acts, *ib.*

Ealdulph, archbishop of Lichfield, receives his pall, i. 238.

Ealdulph, bishop of Rochester, i. 214;

present at the consecration of archbishop Tatwin, 219 ; his death, 227.

Ealferth, bishop of Winchester, i. 297.

Ealmar, bishop of Selsey, dies, i. 463.

Ealred (or Alcred, i. 266) of Northumbria succeeds Aethelwald Mull, 237 ; his death, 240.

Eanbald, archbishop of York, i. 238 ; consecrates Baldulph bishop of Whiterne, i. 251 ; his death, 261.

Eanbald, archbishop of York, succeeds the preceding, i. 261 ; co-operates with archbishop Aethelhard in restoring the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 238, 263 ; consecrates Eadred bishop of [Hagustaldt], 264 ; holds the second council of Finchale, 265.

Eanberht, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 283 ; dies, 288.

Eanred of Northumbria, i. 271 ; made tributary by Ecgberht of Wessex, 277 ; his death, 281.

Eanfled, daughter of Eadwin of Northumbria, baptized, i. 126 ; is carried into Kent upon the death of her father, 133 ; becomes the wife of Oswiu, 177.

Eanfrith, son of king Aethelfrith, succeeds Eadwin in Bernicia, i. 133 ; his baptism and apostacy, *ib.* ; is killed by Cadwallo, 134.

Eanwulf, earl of Somerset, conspires against Aethelwulf of Wessex, i. 290.

Earconberht of Kent, son of Eanbald, supplants his elder brother in the kingdom, i. 137 ; destroys the idols, and orders Lent to be observed, *ib.* ; his children by Sexburga, *ib.* ; his death, 149, 158.

Earconwald (founder of the monasteries of Chertsey and Barking), bishop of London, i. 164 ; his miraculous powers, *ib.* ; his death, 165.

Earconwine, king of Essex, i. 92 ; his death, 93.

Eardulf of Northumbria, i. 261 ; suppresses the insurrection of Wade, 265 ; puts to death Alcmund, son of Ealred, 266 ; is expelled by Alfwold, 270.

Eardulf, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 288 ; translates the body of S. Cuthbert, 326.

Earmenred, elder son of Eanbald of Kent, supplanted in the kingdom by his younger brother, i. 137 ; his sons, *ib.*

Earnulf, earl of Somerset, defeats the Danes, i. 283.

Earthquakes, i. 275, 415 ; ii. 21, 191, 194.

East-Anglia settled by the Saxons, i. 68.

Eastan, bishop of London, i. 165 ; dies, 365.

Easter, dispute as to the proper time for celebrating, i. 84.

Easterwine made abbot by Benedict Biscop, i. 197.

Eatta, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 168 ; removes to Lindisfarne, *ib.* ; his death, 178.

Ebba, aunt of Ecgfrith of Northumbria, abbess at 'Coludesburgh,' i. 171 and *note*.

Ebba, abbes of Coldingham, her desperate expedient to save the honour of her convent, i. 301 ; her heroic death, 302.

Ebroin, an apostate monk, the murderer of S. Leodegar, i. 188.

Ecgberht, son of Earconberht, succeeds him in Kent, i. 149, 158 ; connives at the murder of his two cousins, 150 ; his repentance, *ib.*, and reparation, 151.

Ecgberht of Wessex banished by Beorhtric, i. 247 ; succeeds him in the kingdom, 269 ; subdues Cornwall and ravages North Wales, 271 ; defeats Beornuulf of Mercia, 275 ; conquers Kent and Sussex, and receives the submission of East-Anglia, 276 ; expels Wiglaf of Mercia and Suuithraed of Essex, *ib.* ; makes Northumbria tributary, 277 ; subjects the Welch kings to his power, *ib.* ; is defeated by the Danes, 278 ; defeats a confederacy of them and the Welch, *ib.* ; is again victorious, *ib.* ; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 279.

Ecgberht of Northumbria acts as vice-roy of the Danes, i. 299 ; is expelled, and takes refuge with Burgred of Mercia, 323 ; dies, 325.

Ecgberht of Northumbria, i. 327.

Ecgberht, archbishop of York, his skill in sacred literature, i. 227 ; recovers the pall of his see from Rochester, 228 ; dies, 238.

Ecgberht, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 270 ; dies, 276.

Ecgbiht, an abettor of Modred, slain by king Arthur, i. 75.

Ecgfrith, son of Oswiu, succeeds him in Bernicia, i. 162; expels Wilfrid, and appoints three bishops in his stead, 167; strips Wulfric of Lichfield, 168; fights with Aethelred of Mercia, but is reconciled to him by archbishop Theodore, 170; permits his wife Etheldrith to take the veil, 171; ravages Ireland, 176; invades the country of the Picts, and is slain by them, 177; his ancestry, *ib.*

Ecgfrith, son of Offa of Mercia, crowned in the council of Chalchuthe, and admitted by his father to a share in his government, i. 247; his liberality to S. Alban's and other monasteries, 262; is prevented by death from restoring the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 263.

Ecgfrith (in MS. 'Earduulf') bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 276; dies, 283.

Egwni, third bishop of Worcester, i. 205; visits Rome, and obtains privileges for a monastery of his foundation, *ib.*

Eclipses, solar, i. 72, 159, 180, 189, 220, 284; iii. 40; iv. 211; lunar, i. 180, 232, 236, 335; ii. 192, 215; iii. 220; iv. 37, 218.

Editha (S.), natural daughter of king Eadgar, i. 410.

Editha, daughter of earl Godwin, married by Eadward the Confessor, i. 483; repudiated, 490, and restored, 491; her attainments, 513; buried with her husband by the Conqueror, ii. 16.

Edmund's, S., abbots of:  
— Hugh Norwold, *v.* Ely.  
— [Richard de Insula, or Ely,] ordered to excommunicate the insurgents against the Italian clergy, iv. 241.

Eggen, a Northumbrian general, slain by rebels, i. 242.

Eggiva (or Elgiva, i. 392) daughter of Eadward the Elder, married to the emperor Otho, i. 369, 392.

Egric of East-Anglia succeeds his kinsman Sigeberht, i. 136; is slain by Penda, 148.

Egwinna, concubine of Eadward the Elder, and mother of Aethelstan, i. 368 and *note*; her legendary history, 389.

Eiglaf, a Swedish king, slain by earl Godwin, i. 466.

Elafdalius, an Armenian renegade, his futile expedition against Jerusalem, ii. 147, *seqq.*

Elaflus slain by king Arthur, i. 75.

Eldad (brother of Eldol), bishop of Claudiocestria (Gloucester), his speech against Hengest, i. 42.

Elder-tree, a remarkable one in Italy, i. 78.

Eldol, consul of Claudiocestria (Gloucester), escapes from the massacre of the British nobles, i. 18; takes Hengest at the battle of the Don, and beheads him, 42.

Eleanor, daughter of the duke of Aquitaine and wife of Louis VII., ii. 221; accompanies her husband to the crusade, 242; is divorced, 247; marries Henry II. when duke of Normandy, 248; given birth to William, 255, Henry, 279, Matilda, 284, Richard and Geoffrey, 287, Eleanor, 291, Joan, 312, and John, 315; is said to have encouraged the rebellion of her sons against their father, 367, 369; released from prison by her son Richard, and appointed regent, iii. 2, *seq.*; prohibits the cardinal of Anagnia from coming beyond Dover, 13; receives her dowry, etc. from Richard, 14; visits him while on his way to the Holy Land, and leaves Berengaria with him, 27; goes to Germany to him, 80; assists her son John in taking Le Mans, 138; takes Angers, *ib.*; is sent to Blanche of Castile, 147; is besieged by Arthur in the castle of Mirabeau, 168.

Eleanor, daughter of Henry II., born, ii. 292; married to the king of Castile, 332.

Elfeh, bishop of Wells, i. 385.

Elfelm, earl, father-in-law of Eadward the Elder, i. 368.

Elfelm, earl, father of Cnut's first wife, i. 462.

Elfere, earl, destroys many monasteries in Mercia, i. 418; repents, and translates the body of Eadward the Martyr, 420, 422; his miserable death, 421.

Elfsi, or Elsfainus, bishop of Winchester, i. 401; purchases the see of Canterbury, 407; his flagitious conduct at the tomb of archbishop Odo,

*ib.*; his prophetic dream, and death on the Alps, *ib.*  
 Elfsius, bishop of Winchester, i. 437.  
 Ella and his three sons land at Cimens-bore, and defeat the Britons, i. 38; they are themselves defeated at Mercredesburne, 40; Ella sends home for reinforcements, *ib.*; besieges and takes Andred-ceaster, 48; founds the kingdom of Sussex, 49; his death, 60.  
 Ella, son of Yffa, i. 81; marries his daughter Acca to Aethelfrith of Bernicia, 93; his death, 96 and *note*.  
 Ella of Northumbria made king in the place of Osberht, i. 298; is assisted by him against the Danes, and falls at York, *ib.*  
 Ellandune, battle of, i. 275.  
 Elle, bishop of Lichfield, i. 387.  
 Elmar, bishop of Sherborne, i. 438.  
 Elmham, bishops of, v. Bedwin, Eadberht, Hyrald, Humberht, Wilred, [also the names at i. 315,] Algar, Alwine, Aelfric, Grinketel, Stigand.  
 Elstan, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495.  
 Elstan, a Saxon admiral, i. 428.  
 Ely, bishops of:  
   — Hervey, ii. 185; dies, 214.  
   — Nigel, ii. 214; banished, 227.  
   — Geoffrey Ridel (archdeacon of Canterbury, ii. 296), elected, 370; consecrated, 381; dies intestate, iii. 4.  
   — William de Longchamp, elected, iii. 9; appointed, as chancellor, one of the guardians of the realm during king Richard's absence, 15; consecrated, 16; obtains the office of legate, 17; levies horses for the king's use, 20; receives letters patent in aid of his office, 24; price paid by him for the office of legate, 27; holds a council at Westminster, 32; his overbearing conduct, 35; orders the apprehension of the archbishop of York, 38; consecrates Robert, bishop of Worcester, 49; his fall, 50; flight and disguise, 53; obtains a hearing for king Richard before the emperor, 71; returns to England for the king's ransom, 73; dies during his embassy to Rome, 118.  
   — Eustace, (dean of Salisbury,) consecrated, iii. 128; delegated with others to expostulate with king John, 220; joins in interdicting the land, and leaves the country, 222; ordered to excommunicate the king, 228; accompanies his metropolitan to Rome, 241, and to the king of France, 243; returns to England, 260; gives benediction to William abbot of S. Alban's, 294; becomes surety to the barons for king John, 296; dies, *ib.*  
   — John of Fountains, *v.* Fountains.  
   — Geoffrey de Burgh, (archdeacon of Norwich,) iv. 102; dies, 179.  
   — Hugh Norwold, (abbot of S. Edmund's,) elected, iv. 179; consecrated, 204.  
 Ely, Richard, abbot of, degraded, ii. 171; restored, 172; dies, 185.  
 Emico, a German count, persecutes the Jews, ii. 72.  
 Emma, daughter of Richard I. of Normandy and wife of Aethelred II., is ill-treated by her husband, and complains to her father, i. 427; is sent with her family to Normandy for safety, 448; on becoming a widow, she is married to Cnut, 463; recommends him to send home his fleet, *ib.*, and reconciles him to his subjects, 466; deprived of her property and banished by her stepson Harold, 473; takes refuge with Baldwin V. of Flanders, *ib.*; visited by her son Hardacnut, 476; her property again invaded by her son Eadward, 482; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 490.  
 Enmo, bishop of Noyon, killed by the Danes, i. 349.  
 Emyer, notary of Accianus, betrays Antioch, ii. 105, *seqq.*  
 Engelram, son of Hugh de S. Paul, a crusader, ii. 74, 120.  
 England, first so called on the expulsion of the Britons, i. 93; state of, at the death of Beda, 224; the national sins, the cause of the Danish invasion, 280, and of the Norman conquest, ii. 3; catalogue of the various kings of, i. 345—349; its state under the Conqueror, ii. 23.  
 Eni, father of Anna of East-Anglia, i. 148.  
 Eopa, the Saxon who poisoned Aurelius Ambrosius, i. 51.

**Eopa**, sent by Athelwald to convert the Isle of Wight, i. 156.  
**Eormenurga**, daughter of Earmenred and wife of Merewald of West Mercia, her children by him, i. 167; separates from him, and founds a nunnery, 151, *seq.*  
**Eormenric**, father of Aethelberht of Kent, i. 83.  
**Eorpwald**, (son of Reedwald,) king of East-Anglia, i. 100, 124; his conversion, 129; is killed by Regberht, *ib.*  
**Eosa**, a kinsman of Hengest, flies to the town of Alclud after the battle of the Don, i. 42; *v. Octa.*  
**Erchenwine** believed to have been the first king of Essex, i. 68 and *note*; his pedigree, *ib.*  
**Ercongota**, daughter of Earconberht of Kent, takes the veil at Bruges, i. 137; celestial apparition at her death, 138.  
**Ermenhilda**, daughter of Earconberht of Kent, wife of Wulfheri of Mercia, and mother of S. Werburgh, i. 166.  
**Euchans**, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.  
**Euse**, bishop of Hereford, i. 344.  
**Espec**, Walter, a commander in the battle of the Standard, ii. 222.  
**Espinay**, William d', hanged for permitting the escape of his prisoner, iii. 96.  
**Essex**, kingdom of, founded, i. 68.  
**Essex**, Henry de, hereditary standard-bearer, is defeated in a trial by battle, and becomes a monk, ii. 296.  
**Essex**, earl of, *v. Mandeville.*  
**Etheildreda**, wife of Aethelwald Mull, i. 236.  
**Etheldrith** (S.), daughter of Anna of East-Anglia, i. 166; twice married, but preserves her celibacy, 170; takes the veil at 'Coludeaburh,' 171; becomes abbess at Ely, where she dies, *ib.*; her body found uncorrupted, *ib.*  
**Ethelher**, brother of Anna, succeeds him in East-Anglia, i. 149; is slain by Oswiu, 153.  
**Ethelhun** (abbot of Berkeley) made bishop of Worcester, i. 380; his death, 384.  
**Ethelwald**, brother of Ethelher, succeeds him in East-Anglia, i. 153; becomes sponsor for Swithelm, 143.  
**Eu**, William count of, deprived of sight, ii. 46.  
**Eu**, Denebert d', a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
**Eudes**, his heresy condemned, ii. 239.  
**Eugenius I.**, pope, i. 155.  
**Eugenius II.**, pope, i. 275.  
**Eugenius III.**, pope, ii. 236; excommunicates Louis VII., 238; holds a council at Rheims, 239; dies, 253.  
**Eumer**, an assassin, cut to pieces by the attendants of Edwin, i. 125.  
**Eustace II.** of Boulogne, brother-in-law of the Confessor, affray between his suite and the men of Dover, i. 488.  
**Eustace of Bouillon**, brother of Godfrey, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 79; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 120.  
**Eustace**, son of king Stephen, does homage to Louis VI., ii. 220; marries his daughter Constance, 226; joins Louis VII. against Geoffrey of Anjou, 245, and against Henry of Normandy, 248; his death and burial, 254.  
**Eustace (bishops)**, *v. Ely*, and London.  
**Eutherius**, bishop of Arles, deposed by Charles of France, i. 214.  
**Eutyches**, abbot of Constantinople, his heresy condemned, i. 12.  
**Evesham**, Roger abbot of, iii. 13.  
**Evreux**, William Crispin, count of, wounds Henry I. and is made prisoner, ii. 199.  
**Exeter**, bishops of:  
  — William, consecrated, ii. 183; dies, 220.  
  — Robert, dies, ii. 280.  
  — Robert (dean of Salisbury), consecrated, ii. 280.  
  — Bartholomew, legend respecting, ii. 289; present at the concord between S. Alban's and Lincoln, 294; suspended by the pope, 358; his text upon re-opening Canterbury cathedral, 367.  
  — John (precentor of Exeter) made bishop, ii. 419.  
  — William, goes to the crusade, iv. 145; is one of the leaders, 175; besieged in his house by the emperor, 199; appointed to conduct the princess Isabella to the emperor, 334; fulfills his mission, 337.

Eynsford, William patron of the church of, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 297.  
 Eynsford, W. de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 335.

F.

Faie, Ralph de, great-uncle of prince Henry, incites him against his father (Henry II.), ii. 367.  
 Famines, i. 418, 436; ii. 43; iv. 289, 317.  
 Felix II., pope, i. 40.  
 Felix IV., pope, orders the separation of the clergy from the laity in churches, i. 60.  
 Felix, a Burgundian, preaches to the East-Angles, i. 129; converts Eorpwald, *ib.*; holds the see of Dommoc (or Dunwich) seventeen years, *ib.*  
 Ferrey, J. de, excommunicated, iii. 356.  
 Fergand, a noble crusader from Brittany, ii. 80.  
 Feria, Thomas de, a crusader, persecutes the Jews, ii. 72; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 120.  
 Ferrers, Robert earl of, makes his peace with Henry II., ii. 380; dies at Acre, iii. 36.  
 Ferrers, William earl of, undertakes that king John will observe his compact with the pope, iii. 249; is a witness of his submission, 254; present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1, and at the siege of Merton, 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; confederates against the king, 143; becomes a surety for Hubert de Burgh, 258; attends a council at Westminster, 270.  
 Ferrers, Walkelin de, a crusader, iii. 21.  
 Fersi, Biset de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.  
 Finan, bishop, baptizes Sigebert II., i. 143, and Peada, 144; succeeds Aidan in Lindisfarne, 148.  
 Finchale, council of, i. 248; second council of, 265.  
 Fitz-Alan, John, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.  
 Fitz-Alan, Osbert, one of the confede-

racy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.  
 Fitz-Alan, William, violently deprived of the castle of Salop by king Stephen, ii. 222.  
 Fitz-Earl, Brien, supports the empress Maud, ii. 227; receives the custody of William Martel, 231; affords a refuge to the empress, 232.  
 Fitz-Gerald, Warine, one of the witnesses of king John's submission to the pope, iii. 254, and present at the granting of Magna Charta, 302.  
 Fitz-Gerald, Maurice, justiciary of Ireland, consents to a plan for the destruction of Richard the earl-marshal, iv. 292, *seq.*; meets him in a conference, 303; sends a surgeon to dress his wound, 307.  
 Fitz-Gerard, Robert, a crusader, ii. 120.  
 Fitz-Gervase, Hugh, taken prisoner by the English, ii. 204.  
 Fitz-Godfrey, Ralph, a crusader, ii. 120.  
 Fitz-Hamon, Robert, one of the courtiers of Rufus, ii. 158.  
 Fitz-Herbert, Matthew, attends king John to Runnymede, iii. 302.  
 Fitz-Herbert, Peter, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238; is a witness of his submission, 254; supports him against the barons, 301, and is present at Runnymede, 302.  
 Fitz-Hugh, John, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301.  
 Fitz-John, Eustace, holds Melton castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.  
 Fitz-John, Peter, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.  
 Fitz-John, Philip, excommunicated, iii. 356.  
 Fitz-Nicholas, Ralph, seneschal of Henry III., appointed to conduct the princess Isabella to the emperor Frederic II., iv. 334.  
 Fitz-Osbert (or Longbeard), William, goes to the crusade, iii. 29; his sedition in London, and execution, 94, *seq.*  
 Fitz-Ours, Reginald, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.  
 Fitz-Piers, Geoffrey, ordered by Richard I. to act independently of the chancellor, iii. 49; appointed justiciary of England, 129; gains a

victory over the Welch, *ib.*; associated with others to receive the fealty of the nobles to king John, 137; his severity in exacting the taxes, 173; adheres to John against the pope, 237; is a witness of his submission, 254; appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 261; present in the council at St. Alban's, 262; dies, 271.

Fitz-Radulph, Humphrey, a crusader, ii. 76.

Fitz-Richard, Roger, becomes prince of Antioch during the minority of Bohemond II., ii. 190; is summoned by Baldwin I. to his aid, 191; is slain by the Turks, 200.

Fitz-Robert, John, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.

Fitz-Robert, Ralph, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.

Fitz-Turstan, Robert, a crusader, ii. 76.

Fitz-Walter, Robert, delivers the castle of Ruil to Philip II. and is imprisoned by him, iii. 172; flies to France from king John, 240; joins the barons confederated against him, 297; appointed marshal of their army, 299; invites William d'Albini to a tournament, 321; is excommunicated, 355; sent to offer the crown to prince Louis, 359; subdues Essex and Suffolk, 371; is refused the custody of Hertford castle, iv. 5; marches to the relief of Montsorel, 15; reconnoitres the royal army, 20; is taken prisoner, 24; arrives in the Holy Land, 44.

Fitz-Warine, Foulques, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.

Fitz-William, Adam, a collector of taxes, iv. 254.

Flambard, Ralph, (bishop,) *v.* Durham.

Flanders, Arnulph earl of, procures the assassination of William I. of Normandy, i. 397.

Flanders, Robert earl of, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 79; assists in rescuing Raymond, 83; his valour in a foraging expedition, 94; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 119; returns home, 151; his death, 189.

Flanders, Baldwin VII. earl of, ii. 190; joins Louis VI. against Henry I., 194; is mortally wounded in the battle of Brenville, 199.

Flanders, Charles, son of king Cnut, becomes earl of, ii. 200; is murdered, 207.

Flanders, Philip earl of, deserts the expedition of Louis VII., ii. 372; swears to conquer England for prince Henry, 376; is one of the besiegers of Rouen, 381; makes peace with Henry II., *ib.*; sends him an embassy, 387; visits Becket's tomb, 412; takes the cross, 426, *seq.*; is one of the mediators between England and France, 442; accompanies Richard I. into Normandy, iii. 15; dies in the Holy Land, 38.

Flanders, Baldwin earl of, bribed by Richard I., iii. 121; compels Philip II. to come to terms, 122.

Flanders, Philip earl of, refuses to join the French king in his invasion of England, iii. 256; sends to king John for aid, 257.

Flanders, Ferrand earl of, joins king John against the French, iii. 287; is one of the leaders in the battle of Bovines, 289; is taken prisoner, 291; his release demanded by the French peers, iv. 136.

Flaye, Eustace abbot of, preaches respecting the observance of the Lord's day, iii. 151, *seq.*

Floods, i. 266, 450; ii. 24, 43; iv. 45.

Florus, a French nobleman, gives land to S. Maurus, and entrusts him with the education of his son, i. 79.

Florus, a writer against Johannes Scotus, i. 338.

Foillanus, a brother of S. Fursey, builds the monastery in France, in which he suffered martyrdom, i. 142.

Foix, Raymond Roger count of, an ally of the Albigenses, iii. 272.

Foliot, Gilbert and Hugh, (bishops,) *v.* Hereford.

Fougères, Ralph de, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375; deserts to the king's son Richard, 443; dies at Acre, iii. 36.

Foulques, king of Jerusalem, *v.* Anjou, Foulques of.

Ford, Baldwin abbot of, *v.* Worcester.

Forenza, John of, a papal legate, holds a council at Reading, iii. 187.  
 Forez, or Foreis, William count of, a crusader, ii. 62; marches with Raymond, 77; is slain, 84.  
 Forez, William de, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24, 30.  
 Forli, [John] bishop of, sent to Thoulouse to demand the Albigenses, iii. 271.  
 Formous, pope, i. 360.  
 Forther, bishop of Sherborne, his skill in sacred literature, i. 203; visits Rome with queen Fredegitha, 225.  
 Fortibus, William de, earl of Albemarle, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 300; marches with him towards the north, 348; appointed governor of Rockingham castle, etc., 353; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; the castle of Rockingham taken from him by Henry III., 65; seizes Fotheringay castle, 67; is reconciled to the king, *ib.*; surrenders the custody of his castles to him, 93; appointed one of the commanders of the army in Britanny, 217.  
 Fortunatus becomes bishop of Poitiers, i. 82.  
 Fountains, John abbot of, one of the commissioners to investigate the miracles ascribed to Hugh bishop of Lincoln, iv. 64; named subsequently, as bishop of Ely, to inquire into the bishop of Durham's conduct, 69; dies, 102.  
 Francis (S.), life and death of, iv. 149, *seqq.*  
 Franco, archbishop of Rouen, baptizes Rollo or Robert I., i. 377.  
 Frane, a treacherous Saxon general, i. 429.  
 Franks defeated by the Bohemians, i. 285.  
 Frea, a Saxon goddess, wife of Woden, i. 235; Friday dedicated to her, 8, 235, 346.  
 Fredegitha, queen of Wessex, visits Rome with bishop Forther, i. 225.  
 Frederic I., emperor, ii. 253; sends an embassy to Henry II., 387; takes the cross, 426; his letter to Saladin, 428; sets out upon his pilgrimage, 443; is drowned, iii. 28.  
 Frederic II., emperor, harassed when king of Sicily by Otho IV., iii. 232; embarks for the Holy Land, but turns back, iv. 148; is excommunicated by the pope, 157; states his case to the princes of Christendom, 165; makes war upon the pope, 166; arrives at Acre, 174; recovers the Holy Land, 188; his letter to Henry III., 189, *seqq.*; wears the crown in Jerusalem, 192; his conduct to the clergy, etc., 198, *seq.*; returns to Germany, 207; expels his enemies, and makes a truce with the pope, 209; is absolved, 216; assists the pope against the Roman citizens, 323; asks the English princess Isabella in marriage, 332; crushes the rebellion of his son, and marries the princess, 336; sends presents to king Henry, 337.  
 Frescati, Nicholas bishop of, and papal legate, sent to England respecting the compensation to be made by king John to the clergy, iii. 274; receives the king's submission, 275; favours him, and postpones the settlement, 276; his arbitrary conduct with respect to the vacant churches, 277, *seq.*; defeats the archbishop of Canterbury's appeal to Rome, 279; is ordered to remove the interdict, 281; requires an account of the payments made to the clergy, 283; removes the interdict, 284; refers the minor claimants to the pope, *ib.*  
 Fretherne, battle of, i. 88.  
 Frithwlf, king of Bernicia, i. 84; his death, 86.  
 Frideswithe (S.), legend of, ii. 188.  
 Frison, Robert le, one of the captains of the second division in the great sortie from Antioch, ii. 119.  
 Fritheberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 224, 226; his death, 238.  
 Frithegist, a treacherous Saxon general, i. 429.  
 Frithewold, bishop of Whiterne, dies, i. 236.  
 Frithstan, bishop of Winchester, i. 372; his jurisdiction, *ib.*; ordains his successor, abdicates, and embraces a life of poverty, 388; his

charity to the souls of the departed, and death, 389.

Frost, severe, iii. 182 ; iv. 289.

Furnes, Thomas de, (nephew of Robert de Turnham,) delivers the city of Angers, &c. to Arthur of Brittany, iii. 138.

Furnival, G. de, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301.

Furseus (S.) becomes celebrated in Ireland, i. 142 ; visits Clovis II., and founds the monastery of Lagney, *ib.*

G.

Gallinicus, patriarch, blinded and sent to Rome by Justinian II., i. 200.

Galloway, Alan de, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302.

Gamius, a Moorish king, slain at Santarem, ii. 412, *seq.*

Gant, Baldwin de, a crusader, slain, iii. 84.

Gant, Gilbert de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; created earl of Lincoln by prince Louis, 379 ; flies before John, 382 ; besieges Lincoln, iv. 17 ; is taken prisoner, 23.

Gant, Maurice de, confederates against king John, iii. 297 ; is excommunicated, 356.

Garlandia, Guy de, a crusader, ii. 63.

Gaugy, Robert de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238 ; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14 ; defends Newark against the royal army, 35 ; restores it to the bishop of Lincoln, on being remunerated for the stores, 36.

Gawaine, or Walwyn, nephew of king Arthur, educated and knighted by pope Vigilius, i. 70 ; is slain at Sandwich, 74 ; his tomb discovered, ii. 28.

Gelasius, pope, i. 50.

Gelasius, antipope, ii. 194 ; dies, 196.

Généviève (S.), her death, i. 59.

Gennadius of Marseilles finishes his book 'de Viris Illustribus,' i. 45.

Geoffrey, second son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Maud, born, ii. 214 ; sides with Louis VII. against his brother Henry, 248 ; is forced to make peace, 249 ; his second quarrel and reconcilia-

tion with his brother, 283 ; dies, 288.

Geoffrey, earl of Britanny, *v.* Britanny.

Geoffrey (bishop), *v.* Asaph, S., Durham, and Lincoln.

Geoffrey, a London crier, hanged for making a seditious proclamation, iv. 81.

Gerard (bishop), *v.* York, Coventry, and Hereford.

Gerloc, daughter of Rollo I., i. 376.

Germanus (S.), bishop of Auxerre, comes to Britain to put down the Pelagian heresy, *Pref.* xxv. ; his controversy with Agricola, xxvi. ; deposits relics in the grave of S. Alban, *ib.* ; his second visit to assist the Britons against the Picts and Scots, i. 6 ; again recalled to confute the Pelagians, 9 ; his death and burial, 11 ; singular fulfilment of his promise to the priest Severus, *ib.*

Germanus (S.), bishop of Paris, dies, i. 86.

Gernon, William, sent by king John to hire foreign mercenaries, iii. 320.

Gertrude (a noble virgin) assists Foilanus to build his monastery, i. 142.

Geruntius, king of the Welch, defeated by Ini, i. 202.

Geta, a Saxon god, i. 235, 319.

Giffard, Walter, (earl,) witnesses a charter of Henry I., ii. 164.

Giffard, Osbert, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 335 ; excommunicated, 357.

Giffard, Richard, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 336.

Giffard, William, (bishop,) *v.* Winchester.

Gilbert, earl, the guardian of William of Normandy, i. 469.

Gilbert, son of Richard earl of Clare and Gloucester, excommunicated, iii. 355 ; espouses the cause of the earl of Cornwall, iv. 143 ; dies, 217.

Gilbert (bishop), *v.* London.

Gilernallis (? Jaulnais), Foulques de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

Gilla, daughter of Charles le Simple and wife of Rollo, or Robert I., i. 377.

Gillamurius, or Gillomaur, an Irish king, made prisoner by king Arthur, i. 67.

Gillomannius, or Gillomaur, an Irish

king, resists the removal of the 'Chorea Gigantum,' i. 44; lands at S. David's with Pascentius, 51; slain by Uther, 52.

Gisa, bishop of Wells, consecrated at Rome, i. 502.

Glamorgan, Urban bishop of, consecrated, ii. 183.

Glantville, Ralph de, justiciary of England, dismissed from his office, and fined, iii. 9; lands at Tyre, 30; dies, 36.

Glantville, Gilbert de, (bishop,) v. Rochester.

Glappa, king of Bernicia, i. 83; his death, 84.

Glastonbury abbey rebuilt, i. 216.

Glastonbury, Sifred abbot of, v. Chester.

Gloucester, Robert earl of, (natural son of Henry I., ii. 222,) surrenders Falaise to Theobald IV. of Blois, 220; holds Ledes castle and Bristol against king Stephen, 222; brings the empress Maud to England, 226; commands the third division in the battle of Lincoln, 228; taken prisoner, and exchanged for the king, 230; goes to Geoffrey Plantagenet for aid, 231; is driven from Faringdon, 236.

Gloucester, William earl of, submits to Henry II., ii. 380; adopts prince John as his heir, 385.

Gloucester, Milo de, an adherent of the empress Maud, ii. 227.

Gloucester, Gilbert Foliot, abbot of, v. Hereford.

'Gloria in excelsis' directed to be sung on Sundays and on the anniversaries of martyrs, i. 56.

Goda, sister of Eadward the Confessor, and wife of Eustace II. of Boulogne, i. 488.

Godarville, Walter de, receives the custody of Hertford castle from king John, iii. 353; compelled to render it to prince Louis, iv. 4; is deceived by the Welch, while governor of Montgomery castle, 222.

Godbald, king of the Orcades, slain in the battle of Hatfield, i. 132.

Godeschal, a priest, his disastrous expedition, ii. 70.

Godeschal, one of king John's foreign mercenaries, iii. 331; accompanies him on his northern expedition, 348.

Godfrey of Bouillon assumes the cross, ii. 62; his march and companions, 73; liberates the Christian prisoners at Constantinople, 75; offends Alexius, 76; reaches Nice, 81; assists in rescuing the division of Raymond, 83; kills an insolent Turk, 85; his combat with a bear, 97;feat performed by him before Antioch, 103; leads the seventh division in the great sortie, 120; rescues Bohemond, 122; marches upon Jerusalem, 129; liberates Guenemer of Boulogne, 130; his conduct at the siege of Jerusalem, 140; is chosen king, 146; gains the battle of Ascalon, 150; anecdote of his great strength, 166; his death, 167.

Godfrey (bishops), v. Asaph's, S., and Bath.

Godiva, countess of Chester, anecdote of, i. 497.

Godmund (or Gebmund), bishop of Rochester, i. 188.

Godric (S.) becomes a hermit, ii. 188; life of, 340, *seqq.*; fulfilment of his prophecy respecting the bishop of Durham, iii. 10.

Godwin, earl of Kent, his exploit in the Swedish expedition, i. 466, and intrigues on the death of Cnut, 473; betrays Aelfred, son of Aethelred II., 474; swears that he had no part in his death, and propitiates Hardacnut by a costly present, 478; becomes father-in-law of Eadward the Confessor, 483; sides with the men of Dover against Eustace of Boulogne, 489; is banished, and takes refuge in Flanders, *ib.*; plunders the south of England, and is joined by malecontents, 491; is restored to favour, *ib.*; his death, 492.

Godwin, bishop of Rochester, made prisoner by the Danes, i. 439.

Godwin, a treacherous Saxon general, i. 429.

Godwin, the murderer of earl Aethelstan, i. 437.

Gontran, king of the Franks, vision of, i. 93.

Gordian, a Roman senator, father of Gregory the Great, i. 80.

Gorlois, duke of Cornwall, attends a great festival held at Easter by Uther-pendragon, i. 54; the consequences to himself, *ib.*

Gournay, Hugh de, his castle burnt by Henry of Normandy, ii. 249; present at the siege of Acre, iii. 21; submits to Philip II., 79, and delivers to him the castle of Montfort, 172.

Granges, John de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Grantemenil, Alberic de, deserts from Antioch, ii. 113.

Grantemenil, Hugh de, one of Odo's conspiracy, plunders Leicester, ii. 33.

Grantemenil, William de, deserts from Antioch, ii. 113 and note; detains Alexius from attempting its relief, 114.

Gratian, one of the legates sent to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, ii. 333.

Gray, Walter de, made chancellor by king John, iii. 231; becomes bishop of Worcester, 293; present at the granting of Magna Charta, 302; sent to engage foreign mercenaries, 320; elected archbishop of York at Rome, 346; affords the earl of Albemarle safe conduct to Henry III., iv. 67; consecrates Walter bishop of Carlisle, 85; is sent to treat with the French malecontents, 136; returns, 140; commissioned by the pope to inquire respecting the spoliation of the Italian clergy, 241; anecdote of his avarice, 317.

Gray, John de, (bishop) *v.* Norwich.

Gregory the Great, son of Gordian, i. 80; founds seven monasteries, serves the office of city prætor, and becomes a monk, *ib.*; prevented by the Roman populace from visiting England, 85; promoted by pope Benedict, *ib.*; orders a sevensfold litany to be recited during the plague, 95; becomes pope, *ib.*; composes a book of antiphons, etc., *ib.*; sends St. Augustine to England, 97; transmits him a pall, 100; his intercession for the soul of Trajan, and his death, 106; was the first who styled himself 'servus servorum Dei,' and used the greeting 'salutem,' 108.

Gregory II., pope, i. 211; reproves the emperor Leo III. for breaking sacred images, 215; permits Iñi to build the English School at Rome, *ib.*; absolves Rome, Italy, and Spain from their allegiance to the emperor, 217.

Gregory III., pope, i. 218.

Gregory IV., pope, i. 277; builds San Leone, 279.

Gregory V., pope, i. 430.

Gregory VI., pope, i. 484.

Gregory VII. (Hildebrand), pope, his edict against married priests, ii. 13, and dispute with the emperor, 19; his ambiguous prophecy, 21; is deposed by the Romans, 22; his confession and death, 26.

Gregory VIII., pope, ii. 426.

Gregory IX., pope, iv. 140; his letter reciting one from the patriarch of Jerusalem, 145; excommunicates the emperor Frederic II., 157, *seqq.*; his letter to the French legate respecting him, 166; is driven from Rome by the citizens, 169; appoints a day for considering the election of Walter de Heynesham to the see of Canterbury, 171; makes war upon the emperor, 182; annuls the election of Heynesham, 184, and appoints Richard, chancellor of Lincoln, archbishop of Canterbury, 186; his causes of complaint against the emperor, 198; sends large sums of money to John de Brienne, 203; absolves and entertains the emperor, 216; annuls the election of Ralph de Neville as archbishop of Canterbury, 228; orders Henry III. to punish the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241; persuades the prior of Canterbury to renounce his election to the archbishopric, 243; his bull for a general visitation of monasteries, 258, and directions to the visitors, 261; cancels the election of John Blundus to the see of Canterbury, 267; orders a crusade against the Albigenses, 294; his dissension with the citizens of Rome, 322, *seqq.*; grants the Jews generally a protection from unjust spoliation, 326; sends for the bishop of Winchester to conduct his war against the Romans, 327; his letter on the crusade, *ib.*

Grenet, Eustace, appointed procurator of Jerusalem during the captivity of the king, ii. 203.

Gres, Garner count de, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 74; is sent with others to

conduct the Genoese to the camp, 101 ; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 120 ; is retained by king Godfrey, 151.

Gresley, Robert de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 356.

Griffin of Wales ravages Hereford, i. 490 ; in conjunction with earl Algar, he defeats the Saxons, and kills seven canons of Hereford, 494, and the bishop, 496 ; they fly before Harold, 494 ; Griffin is expelled, 503, and put to death, 504.

Grimbald, a learned French monk, invited to England by king Aelfred, i. 324 ; dies, 371.

Grinketel, bishop of Selsey, i. 476 ; purchases the additional see of Elmham, *ib.* ; is expelled, *ib.* ; dies, 484.

Grosmont, battle of, iv. 278.

Grosseteste, Robert, (bishop,) *v.* Lincoln.

Gubiun, Ralph, (abbot,) *v.* Alban's, S.

Guelders, the count of, a crusader, iii. 21 ; bribed by Saladin, 23.

Guelph, a Burgundian crusader, takes Adama, ii. 90.

Guenemer of Boulogne, a crusader, liberated, ii. 130.

Guenhamara married by king Arthur, i. 67 ; is left joint regent with Modred during the absence of her husband, 71 ; is seduced by Modred, 73 ; on the return of Arthur, she flies to Chester, and takes the veil, 74.

Guibert, bishop of Ravenna, antipope, ii. 20 ; is accepted by the Romans under the name of Clement III., 22.

Guisard, [Robert,] duke of Apulia, dies, ii. 27.

Guisnes, Baldwin de, governor of Monmouth, takes Richard the earl-marshall prisoner, iv. 280 ; is severely wounded, 281.

Guithelinus (archbishop), *v.* London.

Gundulf (bishop), *v.* Rochester.

Gunhilda, sister of king Sweyn, put to death, with her husband and son, in the great massacre of the Danes, i. 445.

Gunhilda, daughter of Cnut and Emma, married to the emperor Henry III., i. 479 ; accused of adultery, and cleared in a duel by her page, 480 ; refuses to be reconciled to the emperor, *ib.*

Gurth, son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489 ; restored, 491 ; his prudent advice to Harold, 518.

Guthard, bishop of Selsey, dies, i. 409.

Guthferth, son of Sihtric, expelled Northumbria by Aethelstan, i. 386.

Guthlac, S., (a monk of Croyland,) life of, i. 206.

Guthrum, a Danish king, joins Hinguar and Hubba, i. 313 ; overruns Wessex and expels Aelfred, 329 ; is defeated by him, and becomes his godson, 333 ; his name changed to Aethelstan, *ib.* ; receives East-Anglia from Aelfred, *ib.* ; his death, 354.

Gyva, wife of Godwin earl of Kent, i. 489 ; buries the body of her son Harold, 521.

H.

Hacon, a Danish noble banished by Cnut through fear of his family connections, i. 468 ; his death, 469.

Hacon, a Danish admiral, ii. 15.

Hadrian, *v.* Adrian.

Haenclurt, Oliver de, taken prisoner in the battle of Lincoln, iv. 24.

Hagustaldt, bishops of, *v.* Eatta, Tunberht, John, Acca, Fritheberht, Alcmund, Tilberht, Aethelberht, Eadred, Eadberht.

Hagustaldt, functions of the see of, cease on account of the ravages of the Danes, i. 336.

Halarb, bishop of Dorchester, one of the guardians of the realm, i. 363.

Halchun, bishop of Durham, attends queen Emma to Normandy, i. 448 and note.

Haldene, a Danish king, subdues Northumbria, i. 326, and appor-tions it among his followers, 327 ; is slain in Devonshire, 329.

Ham, Odo de, a crusader, iii. 21.

'Hamauci,' Baldwin count of the, assumes the cross, ii. 62, 74.

Hamund, a Danish king, i. 326.

Hamund, bishop of Sherborne, slain in the battle of Merton, i. 317.

Harcourt, William de, receives the custody of Peter [of Pontefract], iii. 240 ; arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.

Hardacnut, son of Cnut and Emma, made king of Denmark by his father, i. 472 ; visits his mother in Flanders, 476 ; is elected king, and exhumes the body of Harold, 477 ; punishes the murderers of Aelfred, 478 ; burns Worcester for killing two of his tax-collectors, 479 ; gives his brother Eadward an honourable maintenance, and marries his sister to the emperor Henry III., *ib.* ; is struck with death at a wedding, and is buried at Winchester, 482.

Harold I., son of Cnut, i. 462 ; his accession, 473 ; banishes his stepmother Emma, and confiscates her property, *ib.* ; orders Aelfred, son of Aethelred II., to be deprived of sight, 475 ; dies at Oxford, and is buried at Westminster, 477 ; his body exhumed, decapitated, and cast into the Thames, *ib.* ; the head found by a fisherman, and interred in the Danish cemetery, *ib.*

Harold (II.), son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489 ; plunders Wessex, 490 ; is restored, 491 ; receives the earldom of Kent, 493 ; fortifies Hereford, 494 ; is cast on the coast of Ponthieu, and treated as a spy, 501 ; is released by William of Normandy, whom he promises to assist in obtaining England, and whose daughter he espouses, *ib.* ; another version of the matter, 502 ; expels Griffin from Wales, 503 ; builds a royal hunting-lodge there, 507 ; is assaulted by his brother Tosti, *ib.* ; seizes the crown, 513 ; slays Tosti and Harold Harvagre at Standford Bridge, 514 ; his excuses for his conduct to duke William, 515 ; sends spies into his camp, 517, and rejects his proposals, 518 ; his conduct in the battle, 520 ; his body buried at Waltham, 521.

Harold, a Danish king, baptized, i. 412.

Harold Harvagre of Norway slain at the battle of Standford Bridge, i. 514.

Hasting the Dane, places destroyed by him in France, i. 349 ; his cruel stratagem to take Limoges, 351 ; makes peace with king Charles, and receives the city of Chartres, *ib.* ; sails up the Thames, and fortifies himself at Milton, 356 ; promises to leave the country, and allows two of his sons to be baptized, 357, *seq.* ; breaks his word, and fortifies Benfleet, 359 ; his wife and sons made prisoners there, 360.

Hastings, battle of, i. 519.

Hastfield, battle of, i. 132.

Hauterive, Ralph de, archdeacon of Colchester, dies at Acre, iii. 36.

Hawise, daughter of William earl of Gloucester, married to John earl of Mortain, iii. 4 ; divorced, 148.

Hawk, anecdote of a, iii. 53.

Haye, Ralph de, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375 ; invades England with the Flemings, 376 ; returns, 380.

Hecca, bishop of Selsey, i. 484.

Hedda, first bishop of Winchester, translates the body of Birinus, i. 140.

Hedda, a monk of Streneashalb, becomes bishop of Dorchester, i. 172 ; his death noticed as of a bishop of Winchester, i. 198 ; his see divided after his death, *ib.*

Hefensfeld, battle of, i. 134.

Helias, count of Maine, expelled by Rufus, ii. 157 ; put to death by Henry I., 187.

Hemeli, bishop of Lichfield, dies, i. 237.

Hengest, his arrival in Britain, i. 7 ; his origin and religion, 8 ; his compact with Wyrgeorne, 9 ; defeats the Picts and Scots, 10 ; his influence over Wyrgeorne, 11 ; is defeated by Wortemer, 15 ; becomes king of Kent on the death of Hors, *ib.* ; is compelled to leave Britain, *ib.* ; returns with a large force, 17 ; massacres the British nobles, and makes Wyrgeorne prisoner, 18 ; compels him to abdicate, *ib.* ; fights a doubtful battle at Wypeds-Fleet, 37 ; is routed at Maisbely, 40 ; is taken in the battle of the Don, and beheaded, 42.

Henry (l'Oiseleur), emperor, i. 383.

Henry III., emperor, marries Gunhilda, daughter of Cnut, i. 479 ; legend respecting him, 480.

Henry IV., emperor, his dispute with Gregory VII., ii. 19 ; defeats his rival Rodolph, and makes Guibert pope, 20 ; slays Rodolph, 21 ; is acknowledged by the Romans, 22.

Henry V., emperor, ii. 170 ; marries

princess Matilda of England, 185; his contention with pope Paschal, 190; makes Maurice pope, 202; dies, 206.

Henry VI., emperor, consecrated, iii. 38; purchases Richard I. from the duke of Austria, 70; his charges against him, 71; subdues Apulia and Sicily, 89.

Henry I. of England born, ii. 5; knighted, 23; satisfies the claimant of the ground in which his father was to be buried, 30; is sent by Rufus to continue the war in Normandy, 45 and *note*; his coronation and charter, 161; gives the bishopric of Winchester to William Giffard, 164; restores archbishop Anselm, and imprisons Ralph Flambard, 165; marries Matilda of Scotland, 169; buys off the claims of his brother Robert, 170; banishes Robert de Belesme, *ib.*; quarrels with Anselm, 171; invades Normandy, 175; prohibits the return of Anselm, 176; receives the submission of the Norman barons, 180; takes his brother Robert at Tinchebri, 181; restores Anselm, 183; gives his daughter Matilda to the emperor Henry V., 185; banishes Philip de Braose and others, 187; wastes Anjou, 188; gives the archbishopric of Canterbury to Ralph bishop of London, 191 and *note*; subdues the Welch, 191; causes the barons to swear allegiance to prince William, 192; maintains the preendency of Canterbury, 193; attends the dedication of S. Alban's, *ib.*; assists Theobald of Blois against the French, 194; gains the battle of Brenville, 199; is visited by Calixtus II., 200; his second marriage, 201; fortifies the tower of Rouen, etc., 203; appoints three bishops, and punishes debasers of the coin, 205; his expedition into France, 208; circumvents the clergy, 210; espouses the cause of Innocent II., 211; marries his daughter the empress to Geoffrey of Anjou, *ib.*; appoints her his successor, 213; goes into Normandy, 214; his death and burial, 215, *seq.*

Henry II. of England (son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Maud) born, ii. 212; is sent to England

VOL. IV.

with the earl of Gloucester, 231; returns to Normandy, 236; knighted, 244; receives Normandy from his father, *ib.*; his marriage with queen Eleanor, and its consequences, 248; invades England, 254; his composition with king Stephen, 255; quells a rebellion in Aquitaine, and makes peace with France, 272; his acts on his accession, 273; his pedigree, 279; banishes William Peverel, and obliges the barons to swear fealty to his sons, 280; receives the pope's permission to subdue Ireland, 282; takes the castle of Mirabeau, etc., 283; his terms with Malcolm IV. and with William earl of Mortain, 286; subjugates the Welch, 287; abandons the use of his crown, *ib.*; visits the French king, 288; besieges Thoulouse, *ib.*; offends Louis, 289; makes peace with him, 291; causes the nobility to do homage to prince Henry, 292; is present at the concord between the churches of S. Alban's and Lincoln, 294; his quarrel with Becket, 296; receives the homage of Malcolm IV. and of the various Welch princes, 298; subjects the clergy to lay jurisdiction, 304; sends ambassadors to Rome, to state his case against Becket, 306; his measures against Becket's family and adherents, 308, *seq.*; visits Normandy, 313; meets Becket in the presence of the legates, 314; quarrels with France, 322; his letter to the archbishop of Cologne, *ib.*; his defence of his conduct, 327; condoles with the excommunicated bishop of London, 332; his letter to the pope, 334; offers to refer the dispute to the arbitration of the French church, 339; fealty sworn to him at Nantes, 340; causes prince Henry to be crowned, 354; his second interview with Becket, *ib.*; orders him to absolve the excommunicated bishops, 359; his conduct upon the murder of the archbishop, 363; attends the death-bed of the bishop of Winchester, 365; visits Ireland, *ib.*; his transactions there, 367; terms of his absolution, 368; allows elections to be made to the vacant sees, 370; orders the French king to

evacuate Normandy, 372 ; refuses Northumberland to the Scottish king, 373 ; his success in Britanny, 374 ; recovers Saintes, 376 ; returns to England, 377 ; his penance at Canterbury, 378 ; his success in England, 379 ; raises the siege of Rouen, 380 ; is reconciled to his sons, 381 ; again visits Becket's tomb, 384 ; rases Leicester castle, and appoints justiciaries, *ib.* ; his concessions to the papal legate, 385 ; decides the controversy between the kings of Castile and Navarre, 386 ; his concord with the French king, 388 ; knights his son Geoffrey, 389 ; meets the French king at Dover, 397 ; his convention with Philip II., 404 ; receives from him the disposition of France, 407 ; his grant to the Holy Land, 409, *seq.* ; requires his sons Geoffrey and Richard to do homage to their brother Henry, 410 ; refuses the kingdom of Jerusalem, 417 ; knights his son John, and visits the French king, 418 ; gives the earldom of Huntingdon to the king of Scotland, *ib.* ; takes the cross, 426 ; quarrels with king Philip, and ravages his territory, 428 ; is harassed by him and by his own son Richard, 435 ; refuses Philip's terms, 438 ; is besieged in Le Mans, and escapes to Tours, 439, *seq.* ; terms forced upon him there by the French king, 442 ; his death and burial, 444.

Henry III. of England born, iii. 219 ; crowned at the age of ten, iv. 2 ; placed under the tutelage of William Marshal earl of Pembroke, 3 ; makes a truce with Louis, 11 ; concludes a peace with him and with the insurgent barons, 31 ; is removed to the guardianship of Peter bishop of Winchester, 46 ; crowned again, at Canterbury, 63 ; consents to the marriage of his sister with the Scottish king, 64 ; seizes two castles belonging to the earl of Albemarle, 65 ; present at the translation of Becket, *ib.* ; is reconciled to the earl of Albemarle, 67 ; represses an insurrection in Wales, and builds the castle of Montgomery, 71, *seq.* ; deposes the magistrates of London, 82 ; orders an inquisition respecting the liberties of the kingdom, 84 ; demands the restoration of Normandy, etc. from Louis, 86 ; declared of age by the pope, 88 ; demands the custody of their castles from the barons, 92 ; his proceedings against Faulkes de Breaute, 94, *seqq.* ; obtains a grant of carucage, 99 ; confirms the great charter, 100 ; sends an expedition into Gascony, 101 ; banishes de Breaute, 103, and refuses to recall him, 108 ; consents to a marriage between the nephew of Hugh de Burgh and the countess of Salisbury, 113 ; falls ill, 114 ; his answer to the pope's demands, 124 ; defers his expedition to France, 126 ; sends to Rome against the bishop elect of Durham, 129 ; makes overtures to the French barons, 136 ; extorts money from the Londoners and others, 138 ; dismisses the bishop of Winchester, and revokes the forest liberties, 139 ; orders the clergy to purchase a renewal of their charters, 140 ; his quarrel with his brother Richard, 141, and reconciliation, 143 ; orders a revision of the measures of grain, etc., 155 ; marches to the relief of Montgomery castle, etc., 172, *seqq.* ; refuses the invitation of the Norman and French barons, 179 ; knights John de Burgh, 204 ; his quarrel with Hubert de Burgh, and reconciliation, *ib. seq.* ; entertains the Scottish king at York, 207 ; lays heavy taxes upon his subjects, 209 ; passes into Britanny, 210 ; receives the homage of the Gascons and Poitevins, and takes Mirabeau castle, 215 ; returns to England, 217 ; demands scutage from all his baronial tenants, 218 ; opposes the archbishop of Canterbury's appeal at Rome, 220 ; collects an army against the Welch, 221 ; orders Matilda castle to be rebuilt, 223 ; makes a truce with France, 224 ; his treatment of Richard Marshal, 225 ; is dissuaded from marrying the sister of the Scottish king, 227 ; demands an aid from the laity and clergy, 233 ; is ordered by the pope to punish the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241 ; requires an account from his sheriffs, etc., and fines defaulters, 244 ;

removes Hubert de Burgh, 245; his charges against him, 246; encourages the Londoners to accuse him, 248; receives the grant of a fortieth, 249; orders the mayor of London to apprehend Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; countermands his order, and sends a knight to seize him, 250, *seqq.*; directs him to be replaced in sanctuary, and the church to be watched, 252; confines him in the Tower of London, 253; his writ for collecting the fortieth, *ib. seqq.*; seizes Hubert's treasure, but refuses to put him to death, 256, *seqq.*; removes his other ministers, and introduces Poitevins, 263; orders his barons to meet him at Oxford, 268; his proceedings upon their refusal, 269; summons his military tenants to meet him at Gloucester, 271; marches to the city of Hereford, 272; prevents the bishop of Carlisle from laying his complaints before the pope, *ib.*; deceives the earl-marshal into the surrender of one of his castles, 273; directs a church to be watched, into which Hubert had a second time escaped, 275; orders another muster at Gloucester, 277; is defeated before Grosmunt, 278; his proposals to the earl-marshal, 282, *seqq.*, and reply to the remonstrant bishops, 291; seals letters for the destruction of the marshal, 292; accuses the bishop of Coventry of countenancing the insurgents, 295; his answer to the second remonstrance of the bishops, 297; restores eight manors to Hubert's wife, *ib.*; present at the consecration of archbishop Riche, 298; dismisses the Poitevins, and makes overtures to the earl-marshal, 299; his grief on learning his death, 309; recalls the exiled nobles, 310; calls the late ministers to account, 311; reproaches Peter de Rivaulx, and commits him to the Tower, 313; sends military aid to the earl of Britanny, 315; refuses him money, and breaks the alliance, 316; imprisons seven Jews for an outrage at Norwich, 324; gives his sister Isabella in marriage to the emperor Frederic, 332; accompanies her to Sandwich, 335.

Henry I. of France, supervisor of the guardian of William of Normandy, i. 469.

Henry, son of king Yric, murdered, i. 403.

Henry, son of David of Scotland, a hostage to king Stephen, is rescued by him at Ludlow, ii. 226.

Henry, second son of Henry II. of England, born, ii. 279; espouses princess Margaret of France, 289; receives the homage of the nobility, 292, and of Malcolm IV. of Scotland, and the prince of South Wales, 298; is crowned, 354; is ordered to restore Becket's temporalities, and those of his adherents, 365; becomes dissatisfied with his father, 367; joins him in his oath to the legates, 368; rebels, 369; takes the castle of Gournay, 371; his invasion of England prevented by a storm, 378, *seqq.*; joins the king of France in besieging Rouen, 381; submits to his father, 382; receives the homage of the Scottish king William, 383; visits Becket's tomb, 384; amuses himself with tournaments, 397; receives the control of Normandy, 407; dies during an expedition against his brother Richard, 411.

Henry, son of Theobald of Flanders, marries a daughter of Louis VII., ii. 221.

Henry, abbot of Glastonbury, *v. Winchester.*

Heptarchy, names of the component states, and of the chief cities of each, i. 88.

Heraclius, emperor, procures the murder of his predecessor, i. 111; his ambassadors treated contemptuously by Cosdroa, 117; crowns his son Constantinus, and gives him the title of 'Augustus,' *ib.*; conquers Cosdroa, and takes him prisoner, *ib.*; his empire ravaged by the Saracens, 121; he falls into the Monothelite heresy, 129; his death, 138.

Heraclius Constantinus, son of the preceding, crowned by his father, i. 117; poisoned by his stepmother, 138.

Heraclonas placed by his mother on the throne of Heraclius Constantinus, i. 138; mutilated by order of

the senate, and sent prisoner to Constans, *ib.*

Herbert, earl, defeated and slain by the Danes, i. 281.

Herbert, bishop of Cologne, legendary anecdote of, i. 442.

Herculanus, bishop of Perugia, beheaded by Totila, i. 76.

Herdinton, Adam de, one of king John's messengers to Rome respecting the interdict, iii. 282.

Herdinton, Thomas de, sent to Rome by king John respecting the interdict, iii. 282; his second mission to accuse archbishop Langton, 344; returns, 346.

Hereberht, *v. Aethelwold and Hereberht.*

Hereford, bishops of:  
 [For those before the Conquest, *v. Wastold, Wulward, Cedd, Alberht, Aethelstan, Esne, Ceolmund, Aethelstan, Leofgar, Walter.*]  
 — Robert, ii. 56.  
 — Gerard, ii. 164.  
 — Reinelm, invested uncanonically by Henry I., ii. 170; returns him the bishopric, 171; is consecrated, 183.  
 — Richard, dies, ii. 208.  
 — Robert, ii. 210; dies, 237.  
 — Gilbert Foliot (abbot of Gloucester) consecrated, ii. 237; present at the concord between the churches of S. Alban's and Lincoln, 294; translated to London, 296; absolves Alan de Neville, 314; prays to be exonerated from the custody of the churches of Becket's clergy, 320; gives benediction to Simon, abbot of S. Alban's, 321; legend respecting him, 323; his answer to the pope's letter, 324; is excommunicated by Becket, 331; visits the king, 334; is absolved, 340; suspended by the pope, 358; restored, 369; preaches in exculpation of the king, 378; appoints a prior to Waltham abbey, 387; dies, 426.  
 — Robert de Melun, or Maldon, ii. 325, *seq.*  
 — Robert (archdeacon of Oxford) elected, ii. 370; consecrated, 381.  
 — William de Vere, ii. 419.  
 — Giles, withdraws from England during the interdict, iii. 222; returns, 260.  
 — Hugh Foliot, dies, iv. 324.

Hereford, Ralph de Maidstone, bishop of, consecrated, iv. 324.

Hereford, W. archdeacon of, excommunicated, iii. 356.

[Hereford], Roger earl of, conspires against the Conqueror, ii. 14; is imprisoned by him, 15.

Hereford, Henry de, slain by the Welch, ii. 384.

Hereford, Henry earl of, [*? Humphrey de Bohun,*] supports the earl of Cornwall against Henry III., iv. 143.

Hereford, earl of, *v. Bohun.*

Herefrith, bishop of Winchester, slain by the Danes, i. 278.

Herefrith (or Werefrith, i. 380), bishop of Worcester, 324; translates Gregory's Dialogues into Saxon, *ib.*; assists king Aelfred in his studies, *ib.*; his death, 380.

Herewitha, sister of S. Hilda and mother of Aldulph of East-Anglia, becomes a nun at Chelles, i. 171.

Hereward, earl, his escape from Ely, and enmity to the Conqueror, ii. 9.

Herlewin, abbot of Bec, dies, ii. 19.

Herman, count, a crusader, persecutes the German Jews, ii. 72; constructs, with Henry de Ascha, a machine used at the siege of Nice, 84.

Herman, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 483; vacates his see, 495; returns, receives Sherborne in addition, and removes his episcopal throne to Salisbury, *ib.*

Hernostus (bishop), *v. Rochester.*

Hersi, Giles de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.

Herstan, bishop of Cornwall, i. 372; Padstow, the head of his diocese, *ib.* and note.

Hertford, council of, i. 162.

Hertford castle besieged and taken, iv. 4.

Hervey (bishop), *v. Ely.*

Hewald (SS.), two English priests, suffer martyrdom in Frisia, and are buried at Cologne, i. 188, *seq.*

Heynesham, Walter de, a monk of Canterbury, elected archbishop, but opposed by the king, iv. 170; his election declared void by the pope, 184.

Higbald, a nobleman of Wessex, slain by the Welch, i. 202.

Higbald, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 243; assists at the consecration of Eadred, bishop of [Hagustaldt], 264; his death, 269.

Higerberht, archbishop of Lichfield, i. 259.

Hilary I., pope, directs Victorinus to write the Paschal cycle of 532 years, i. 22; prohibits the clerical habit to laymen, and concubines to the clergy, 37.

Hilary, bishop of Arles, his character, i. 36.

Hilary (bishop), v. Chichester.

Hilda (S.), a descendant of king Eadwin, is prevented by Aidan from going to Chelles, and is made abbess of Hertesey, i. 171; is removed to her foundation at Streneashall, 172; present in the council held there, 157; her mother's vision, and her own long illness and death, 172.

Hildebert III. king of the Franks, i. 189.

Hinguar and Hubba, sons of Lothbroc, i. 304; invade England to avenge their father's murder, 307; their cruelty, 301; Hinguar's message to Eadmund of East-Anglia, 308; he is defeated at Thetford, 310; is reinforced by Hubba, 311; they capture Eadmund, and put him to death, *ib.*; are joined by Guthrum, 313; Hinguar and Hubba slain, 329.

Hlôðheri of Kent dies of a wound, i. 178.

Hoel, king of Britanny, comes to the aid of king Arthur, i. 63; is besieged in Alclud during an illness by the Picts and Scots, 66.

Hoel (earl), v. Britanny.

Holland, William duke of, accompanies king John's expedition to Flanders, iii. 257; is present at the battle of Bovines, 287; his station there, 289; takes Alcaçar do Sal in Portugal, iv. 34; assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, 54.

Holy Land, taxes in aid of, ii. 314; iii. 16, 167.

Honorius, an Arian king of the Vandals, banishes 303 bishops from Africa, closes the churches, and persecutes the laity, i. 39.

Honorius I., pope, i. 123; sends Birinus to preach in Wessex, 135.

Honorius II., pope, ii. 210; dies, 211.

Honorius III., pope, iv. 27; canonizes Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 64; orders an inquiry into the bishop of Durham's conduct, 69; upon appeal, he remits the cause for decision in England, 71; declares Henry III. to be of age, 88; his demands upon the English church, 114, and upon that of France, 121; orders Henry to refrain from attacking Louis during his crusade against the Albigeuses, 126; dies, 140.

Honorius, bishop of Lincoln, and subsequently archbishop of Canterbury, i. 128.

Horinges (Origny or Alderney), Reinbald count of, a crusader, ii. 120.

Hormisda, pope, i. 57.

Hors, brother of Hengest, arrives in Britain, i. 7; his origin and religion, 8; receives Kent from Wyrgeorne, and is called king by the Saxons, 14; kills Catigern in battle, and is himself slain by Wortemer, 15.

Houton, John de, archdeacon of Bedford, sent by Henry III. to Rome, to oppose the election of Walter de Heynesham, iv. 171; promises the pope, in the king's name, a tenth of all the moveables in England and Ireland, 184.

Howbridge, Gervase de, precentor of S. Paul's, London, excommunicated, iii. 370; excepted from the amnesty, and sent to Rome, iv. 32.

Howbridge, W. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.

Howel, a Welch king, i. 415.

Hubba, v. Hinguar.

Hubert, papal legate, holds a council at Windsor, ii. 12.

Hugh, count of Paris, marries Algiva, daughter of Eadward the Elder, i. 369 and *note*<sup>2</sup>, 386; sends to England for Louis d'Outremer, 391.

Hugh, a Norman adviser of Eadward III., takes refuge in Scotland, i. 492.

Hugh the Great, brother of Philip I. of France, assumes the cross, ii. 62; is imprisoned by the Greeks, 74; liberated by Godfrey, 75; leads the van in the great sortie from Antioch, 119; deserts, 126; returns to the

Holy Land, 173 ; dies, and is buried at Tarsus, 174.  
 Hugh (bishops), *v.* Lincoln.  
 Humberht, bishop of Elmham, consecrates Eadmund of East-Anglia, i. 292 ; his advice to him when beset by the Danes, 309 ; suffers martyrdom with him, 312.  
 Humberht, bishop of Winchester, i. 294 ; dies, 297.  
 Humphrey, bishop of Winchester, i. 228 ; dies, 234.  
 Huna, commander of the army, prevails on Aethelred II. to order the massacre of the Danes, i. 444.  
 Hunbeanna and Albert divide East-Anglia between them, i. 231 and *note*.  
 Hunberht (or Berthun), archbishop of Lichfield, i. 239, 252 ; dies, 259.  
 Hungary, [Andrew] king of, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7 ; returns home, and is excommunicated, 12.  
 Huntingdon, earldom of, given to William king of Scotland, ii. 418.  
 Huntingfield, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 356 ; assists in subduing Essex and Suffolk, 371 ; his lands wasted by the king, 381.  
 Hunwal (or Howel) of Wales, conquered by Aethelstan, i. 386.  
 Hunwald, the traitor who betrayed Oswin to Oswiu, i. 145.  
 Hyrald, bishop of Elmham, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.

## I.

Iba, an heretical epistle so called, condemned, i. 78 and *note*.  
 Iconoclasts, acts of, i. 214, 215, 260.  
 Ida, first king of Northumbria, i. 77 ; names of his sons, legitimate and illegitimate, *ib.* ; builds Bamborough castle, 78 ; dies, 81.  
 Idatius, bishop, extant of his Chronicles, i. 45.  
 Idle, battle of the, i. 115.  
 Igerna, duchess of Cornwall, her great beauty, i. 54 ; married by Utherpendragon, *ib.* ; her children by him, *ib.*  
 Immin, an adherent of Wulferi, i. 155.  
 Ingald (Jugwald, i. 165), bishop of London, i. 219.  
 Ingelburga (erroneously called Beldis, iii. 148), sister of Cnut VI. married by Philip II. and divorced, iii. 79.  
 Ingleis, brother of Ini, i. 216 ; dies, 212.  
 Ini of Wessex, his genealogy, i. 184 ; receives pecuniary compensation for the death of Mulf, 187 ; his successes against the Welch, 202 ; conquers part of Sussex, 204 ; fights a doubtful battle with Ceolraed, 211 ; enters Sussex, and kills Eadberht, 213 and *note* ; makes Aethelhard his successor, and goes to Rome, 215 ; his buildings there, 216 ; he rebuilt Glastonbury abbey, *ib.* ; his family, *ib.*  
 Innocent II., pope, dies to France, where he crowns Louis VII., ii. 211 ; dies, 234.  
 Innocent III., pope, iii. 124 ; condemns the heresy of abbot Joachim, ii. 402 ; restores the monks in Coventry, iii. 126 ; orders Richard I. to dismiss the archbishop of Canterbury from the office of justiciary, 129 ; mediates between Richard and the French king, 133 ; orders the archbishop of Canterbury to take down his new church at Lambeth, 134 ; decides the controversy between the churches of Tours and Dol, 143 ; sends missionaries to preach a better observance of the Lord's day, 151 ; settles the right of electing the archbishop of Canterbury, 188 ; annuls two elections to that dignity, and consecrates Stephen Langton, 211, *seqq.* ; writes in his favour to king John, and to the monks of Canterbury, 213 ; his second letter to John, 216, *seqq.* ; threatens him with an interdict, 220 ; consecrates Otho IV., 227 ; orders John to be excommunicated, 228 ; excommunicates Otho, 232 ; absolves John's subjects from their allegiance, 237 ; orders a crusade against him, 241, and another against the Albigenses, 267 ; directs cardinal Nicholas to fill up the vacant English sees, 277 ; orders the interdict to be removed, 281 ; summons the fourth Lateran council, 322 ; annuls Magna Charta, 323, *seqq.* ; his letter to the barons, 327 ; excommunicates them, 336 ; cancels the election of

Simon Langton to the see of York, 339, 346; his oration respecting the crusade against the Turks, 342; confirms the suspension of archbishop Stephen, 345, and the election of Walter de Gray to the see of York, 346; orders the barons to be individually excommunicated, 353; his answer to the ambassadors of prince Louis, 372, *seqq.*; dies, iv. 27.

Ireland granted to Henry II., ii. 281; English laws and coinage introduced into, iii. 233, *seqq.*; disturbances in, iv. 213.

Irene, empress, reigns jointly with her son Constantine V., i. 243; rules alone, 265.

Isaac, emperor of Cyprus, v. Cyprus.

Isabella of Angoulême affianced to Hugh le Brun, count of La Marche, but married by king John, iii. 148; crowned at Westminster, 155, and at Canterbury, 165; accompanies the king to Paris, 166; gives birth to Henry, 219, and Richard, 220.

Isabella, sister of Henry III. of England, asked in marriage by the emperor Frederic II., iv. 332; her jewels and bridal appointments, 333; progress to Cologne, 335; marriage at Wormes, 336; pedigree, 338.

Iserinus, a fellow-labourer with S. Patric, i. 48.

Issoudun, the lord of, a crusader, iii. 21.

Italian clergy in England, disturbances on account of, iv. 228, *seqq.*, 240; inquiry respecting, instituted by command of the pope, 242.

Ithamar succeeds Paulinus in the see of Rochester, i. 142.

Ivo of Beauvais consecrated to the see of Chartres, ii. 43.

J.

Jaenberht, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 236; despoiled of the greater part of his province, 238; gives a formal assent to the spoliation, 246; his death, 251, 261.

James, king of Galloway, i. 415.

Jarrow, monastery at, founded, i. 173; endowed by Ecgfrith, 197.

Jaruman, bishop of Lichfield, i. 155.

Jerusalem besieged by the Christians, ii. 133; the city, its holy places, and religious institutions described, 152, *seqq.*; taken by Saladin, 424; destroyed by Coradin, iv. 42.

Jerusalem, patriarchs of:

- Thomas, i. 96.
- Zacharias, expelled by Cosdroas, i. 116.
- Simeon, ii. 63.
- Arnulph, ii. 146.
- Daibert, late bishop of Piss, elected, ii. 146; crowns Baldwin I., 168.
- Heraclius, sent to offer the kingdom to Henry II. of England, ii. 415.
- Gerold, bears the cross into the Christian camp, iv. 7; accompanies the army against Damietta, 36; prays for the success of the Christians, 40; endeavours to rally the fugitives, 54; opposes the Sultan's terms, 58; his letter respecting the crusade, 145; is one of the leaders of the army, 175; performs lustrations in the churches of Jerusalem, 197; besieged in his house by the emperor, 199.

Jews, German, massacred by crusaders, ii. 72.

- English, persecuted, iii. 7, *seqq.*; 19, *seqq.*; plundered and tortured by king John, 231; pay a tax of one-third to Henry III., iv. 209; outrage of, at Norwich, 324.
- of Christendom obtain a protection from the pope against arbitrary extortions, iv. 326.

Joachim, abbot of Flore, his book against Peter Lombard condemned, ii. 402.

Joan, daughter of Henry II., born, ii. 313; married to the king of Sicily, 385; receives a fortified place in Calabria from her brother Richard I., iii. 31; returns with him from Palestine, 65.

Jocelyn, cousin of Baldwin II., taken prisoner by the Turks, ii. 180; released, 187; again made prisoner, 202.

Jocelyn (bishop), v. Salisbury.

Johannes Eleemosynarius, anecdote of his liberality, i. 111; becomes patriarch of Alexandria, 119; an altar dedicated to him at Jerusalem, *ib.*

Johannes Scotus, anecdotes of his wit,

i. 337 ; he translates into Latin the *Hierarchia* of Dionysius the Areopagite, and composes another book, 338 ; being suspected of heresy, he leaves France and comes over to Aelfred, *ib.* ; is appointed master of the school at Meldon, 339 ; is stabbed by the boys with their writing-stiles, and dies, *ib.* ; his body buried humbly at first, but afterwards honourably translated, *ib.*

John the Baptist, discovery of his head, i. 16 ; the head translated to Edessa, 236.

John I., pope, i. 59.

John II., pope, i. 65.

John III., pope, i. 83.

John IV., pope, i. 136.

John V., pope, i. 177.

John VI., pope, i. 196.

John VII., pope, i. 200.

John VIII., pope, i. 325.

John IX., pope, i. 366.

John X., pope, i. 379.

John XI., pope, i. 388.

John XII., pope, i. 405 ; gives Dunstan his pall, 409.

John XIII., pope, i. 411.

John XIV., pope, i. 424.

John XV., pope, i. 424.

John XVI., pope, i. 431, and *note*.

John XVII., pope, i. 436.

John XVIII., pope, i. 465 ; forbids extortions, 470.

John (surnamed Sans-terre, ii. 369) born, 315 ; betrothed, 369 ; becomes heir of the earl of Gloucester, 385 ; is knighted, and goes to Ireland, 418 ; confirmed in his possessions and in the earldom of Mortain by his brother, Richard I., iii. 2 ; espouses Hawise daughter of the earl of Gloucester, 4 ; receives Cornwall, Devon, Somerset, and Dorset, 14 ; appeals against the archbishop of Canterbury, 15 ; his proceedings with respect to the bishop of Ely, 50, *seq.* ; makes attempts upon the crown, 78 ; is pardoned by Richard, 82 ; joins the prince of Brabant in harassing the French, 96 ; his accession, 137 ; his proceedings against the adherents of Arthur, 138 ; is invested with the sword of Normandy, *ib.* ; crowned at Westminster, 139 ; returns to Normandy, and makes a truce with his opponents, 140 ; his interview with Philip II., 141 ; is promised aid by the emperor, 142 ; his concord with Philip, 146 ; does him homage, and receives the homage of the dauphin, 147 ; divorces Hawise, and marries Isabella of Angoulême, 148 ; orders the property of archbishop Geoffrey to be seized, 154 ; is crowned with his queen, and reconciled to Geoffrey, 155 ; receives the homage of the Scottish king, 161 ; assists in carrying the corpse of Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 162 ; crowned at Canterbury, 165 ; visits the French king, 166 ; rescues his mother at Mirabeau, and takes prince Arthur prisoner, 168 ; his interview with him, 170 ; is accused of his murder, 171 ; deserted in Normandy by many of his barons, *ib.* ; comes to England for money, 173 ; scutage granted to him at Oxford, 175 ; loses his foreign possessions, 181 ; embarks with the intention of crossing the seas, but returns, 182 ; sends to Rome in favour of John de Gray, archbishop elect of Canterbury, 186 ; takes the castle of Montauban, 187 ; makes a truce with France, 188 ; takes a thirteenth from his subjects, 209 ; gives 5000 marks of silver to the emperor Otho, 210 ; his proceedings upon the election of archbishop Langton, 213, *seq.* ; his answer to the pope's threatenings, 215, and reply to the threat of an interdict, 221 ; confiscates the property of the clergy, 223 ; takes hostages from the barons, 224 ; prohibits fowling, 225 ; makes a treaty with Scotland, and receives the homage of the Welch, 226, *seq.* ; excommunicated, 228 ; dismisses his chancellor, 231 ; plunders the Jews, *ib.* ; his transactions in Ireland, 233, *seq.* ; extorts money from the English clergy, 234 ; takes hostages from the Welch, 235 ; refuses the pope's terms, 236 ; knights prince Alexander of Scotland, 238 ; marches towards Wales, but, being warned of treachery, returns, 239 ; imprisons Peter of Pontefract, 240 ; deposed by the pope, 241 ; his preparations to meet the French, 244 ; is visited by Pandulph, 246 ; re-

sons of his submission, 247 ; his charter, 248 ; resigns his crown to the pope, 252 ; form of his homage to him, 254 ; orders the execution of Peter of Pontefract, 255 ; his preparations against France, 259 ; his meeting with the exiled bishops, 260 ; on the refusal of the barons to follow him, he puts to sea with his household, 261 ; is prevented by archbishop Langton from proceeding against them, 262 ; resigns his crown to cardinal Nicholas, 275 ; agrees to refer his dispute with the clergy to the decision of four barons, 276 ; sends money to his troops in Flanders, and an embassy to Rome, 279, *seq.* ; his letter from Poitou, 280, *seq.* ; gives letters patent respecting the compensation due to the clergy, 284 ; invades Britanny, 285 ; is deserted by the Poitevin barons, 286 ; his exclamation on hearing of his defeat at Bovines, 292 ; makes a truce with France, and returns to England, 293 ; promises to consider the complaints of his barons, 296 ; his conduct on learning their claims, 298 ; is deserted by most of his adherents, 301 ; meets the barons at Runnymede, *ib.* ; grants Magna Charta, 302, and the *Charta de foresta*, 311 ; promises to dismiss the foreigners, 317 ; sends letters patent to the sheriffs, etc., 318 ; retires to the Isle of Wight, 319 ; complains to the pope, and sends abroad for mercenaries, 320 ; besieges Rochester castle, 331 ; his rage on hearing of the loss of Hugh de Boves and wreck of his fleet, 334 ; takes Rochester castle, 335 ; prevails on the pope to cancel the election of Simon de Langton to the see of York, 338 ; leaves an army to observe London, while he ravages the north, 347, *seq.* ; takes Belvoir castle, 350 ; flees before Louis, 368 ; is deserted by many of the foreigners, 370 ; garrisons Wallingford castle, etc., 371 ; wastes the possessions of the barons, 381, *seq.* ; loses his baggage, 384 ; his illness, last will, and death, 385 ; his epitaph, 386 ; legend of his apparition, iv. 127.

John of Beverley (S.), his death, i. 213 ; wild bulls lose their ferocity at his burial-place, *ib.*

John, a monk of Streneshalh, i. 172, becomes bishop of Hagustaldt, 178.

John (bishops), *v.* Chichester, Exeter, Man, Norwich, Rochester, and Worcester.

John, a learned monk, invited by king Alfred to his court, i. 324 and *note*.

John, first abbot of Athelney, i. 352.

Joibert, prior of Daventry, Wenlock, Coventry, and Bermondsey, iii. 128.

Joppa, siege of, iii. 59 ; battle near, 61.

Jornandes finishes his history, i. 78.

Judith, daughter of Charles le Chauve, married to Aethelwulf of Wessex, i. 290 ; commits incest, 294.

Judith, daughter of Baldwin of Flanders, and wife of Tostig, i. 489 ; her test of the sanctity of S. Oswin, 506.

Jukil, king of Westmoreland, i. 415.

Justin, emperor, i. 64.

Justin II., emperor, i. 82.

Justinian, emperor, i. 68 ; his digest of the Roman laws, 70 ; institutes the festival of the Purification, 73 ; banishes pope Vigilius, 77 ; sends for him again, and commands him to restore Anthymus, 78.

Justinian II. emperor, i. 181 ; is deposed, mutilated, and exiled by Leontius, 189 ; restored, 200 ; his savage treatment of his enemies, *ib.* 206 ; is, with his son Tiberius, slain by Philippicus, 205, *seq.*

Justus, first bishop of Rochester, i. 105 ; retires to France on the restoration of idolatry, 114 ; is recalled by Eadbald, 115 ; succeeds Mellitus in the see of Canterbury, 120 ; his death, 128.

## K.

Kaercaradec, the ancient name of Salisbury, i. 43.

Kaerlindcoit, the ancient name of Lincoln, i. 63.

Kenneth III. of Scotland, one of the kings who rowed king Eadgar, i. 415 ; receives Lothian from him, on condition of attending his principal festivals, 416.

Kent, earls of, *v. Godwin, Harold (II.), and Burgh, Hubert de.*  
 Kerboga, a Persian prince, besieges Antioch, ii. 111, *seq.*; names of his emirs, 121; is attacked and put to flight by the garrison, 122, *seq.*  
 Kime, S. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.  
 Kinesdrida, daughter of Penda, a nun of great sanctity, i. 199.  
 Kingils, *v. Cynegils.*  
 Kinsius, archbishop of York, i. 487; dies, 502; he held also the see of Hereford, *ib.*  
 Kyneswitha, a daughter of Penda, betrothed to Offa of Essex, persuades him to adopt a life of celibacy, i. 199.

L.

Lacy, Gilbert de, a commander in the battle of the Standard, ii. 222.  
 Lacy, John de, constable of Chester, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; goes to the Holy Land, iv. 44; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93; succeeds to the earldom of Lincoln, 266; meets Henry III. at Westminster, 270; deserts the earl-marshal, 271.  
 Lacy, Hugh de, lord of Meath, slain, ii. 418.  
 Lacy, Hugh de, joins a conspiracy against Richard earl-marshal, iv. 292, *seq.*; comes to a conference with him, 303.  
 Lacy, Roger de, constable of Chester, holds the castle of Roche-Andely against Philip II., iii. 172; is taken prisoner, and placed in free custody, 180; dies, 236.  
 Lacy, Walter de, (earl of Ulster,) flies before king John, iii. 234; assists in quelling an insurrection of the Irish, iv. 214; consents to the destruction of the earl-marshal, 292, *seq.*  
 Lambert, pupil of S. Laudo, i. 136, made bishop of Utrecht, 185; reproves Pepin for adultery, and is murdered by Dodo, 190.  
 Lancaster, W. de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 335.  
 Landslip, a destructive one in France, i. 82.

Lanfranc (archbishop), *v. Canterbury.*  
 Langton, Stephen de, (archbishop,) *v. Canterbury.*  
 Langton, Simon de, (brother of archbishop Stephen,) prosecutes his brother's appeal at Rome, iii. 279; is elected archbishop of York, 338; rejected by the pope, 339; becomes the chancellor of prince Louis, 369; excommunicated, 370; excepted from the amnesty, and sent to Rome, iv. 32; procures the election of Ralph de Neville to the archbishopric of Canterbury to be annulled, 228.  
 Lanthonby, [John] prior of, sent to Rome to oppose an election made by the monks of Durham, iv. 129.  
 Lanvaley, W. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.  
 Lateran council, the third, ii. 398; the fourth, iii. 341.  
 Latonia, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 Laudo, pope, i. 381.  
 Laudo (S.), the instructor of Lambert, bishop and martyr, i. 136.  
 Lawes, Roger de, a preacher of the crusade, legend respecting, iv. 331.  
 Lawrence elected pope concurrently with Symmachus, i. 55.  
 Lawrence, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 109; scoured by S. Peter for attempting to desert his charge, 114; converts Eanbald, 115; his death, 120.  
 Legends:  
     of a Jewish boy who received the sacrament, i. 79.  
     of a Jew who persecuted a crucifix, i. 81.  
     of bread changed into stones by the imprecation of a beggar, i. 108.  
     of a woman who desired a relic of S. John the Baptist, i. 111, *seq.*  
     of two brothers, Imma and Tunna, i. 177.  
     of a worldly-minded monk, i. 217.  
     a girl who had fasted three years, i. 275.  
     the witch of Berkeley, i. 286.  
     of Gerbert, *v. Silvester II.*  
     of a disobedient party compelled to dance for a year, i. 441.  
     of Herbert, archbishop of Cologne, *v. Herbert.*

**Legends, continued.**

- metamorphoses performed by two witches at Rome, i. 485.
- of an unchaste priest, who ventured to celebrate mass, i. 487.
- respecting a bridegroom and the priest Palumbus, i. 498.
- the double woman of Normandy, i. 503.
- the two clerks of Nantes, ii. 10.
- of a man devoured by mice, ii. 35.
- the niggardly cellarar of Fulde, ii. 40.
- a clerk cured by the Virgin, ii. 214.
- the entranced maid of Gascony, ii. 251.
- the voluntary eunuch, ii. 284.
- vision of a monk of Evesham, iii. 97, *seqq.*
- miraculous image of the Virgin, iii. 175, *seqq.*
- Turhill's vision of purgatory and paradise, iii. 190, *seqq.*
- of a soldier who stole a crucifix, iv. 16.
- miracles at Bromholm, iv. 89.
- temptations of the noble maid of Burgundy, iv. 108, *seqq.*
- the fasting nun of Leicester, iv. 113.
- a prophecy substituted for the psalm 'Exsurgat Deus' in a hermit's psalter, iv. 143.
- the wandering Jew, iv. 176, *seqq.*
- respecting avarice, iv. 317, *seqq.*
- miraculous cure of a paralytic woman, iv. 331.
- Leicester, from whom it derives its name, i. 239; siege of, ii. 372.
- Leicester, bishops of, *v.* Totta, Eadberht, Wereberht, Unwona, Bethun, Aldred, Wereberht, Ceolraed.
- Leicester, Robert de Chaisneio, arch-deacon of, *v.* Lincoln.
- Leicester, Robert earl of, justiciary of England, present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, ii. 294; refuses to salute the archbishop of Cologne, 312.
- Leicester, Robert earl of, deserts to the young king, ii. 371; is taken prisoner, 373, *seq.*; sent in chains to England, 377; carried back to Normandy, 388; dies before Acre, iii. 36.
- Leicester (Robert Fitz-Parnell), earl of, repulses Philip II. from Rouen, iii. 79.
- Leicester, earl of, *v.* Montfort.
- Leini [<sup>?</sup> Lagny], Arnulph de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
- Leir, king of Britain, his story, *Pref.* x., *seq.*; buried at Leicester (Leurcestria), xii.
- Leisani, Baldwin de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
- Lemberg, Peter landgrave of, present in a battle near Antioch, iii. 11; his station before Acre, 21; bribed by Saladin, 23.
- Lemberg, Theobald prefect of, present in a battle near Antioch, iii. 11.
- Leo the Great, pope, calls the council of Chalcedon, i. 12.
- Leo II., pope, i. 176.
- Leo III., pope, i. 260, restores the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 264; his sufferings from the Romans, 265; is released by Charlemagne, 266, whom he crowns, 267; crowns also Louis le Débonnaire, 272; his death, *ib.*
- Leo IV., pope, i. 283; crowns king Alfred, 290; his death, 292.
- Leo V., pope, i. 370.
- Leo VI., pope, i. 387.
- Leo VIII., pope, i. 411.
- Leo IX., pope, i. 484.
- Leo the Great, and Leo the Less, emperors, i. 16.
- Leo III. emperor, i. 212; orders sacred images to be broken, 215; is excommunicated, 217.
- Leo, son of the emperor Zeno, escapes from the cruelty of his father, and takes holy orders, i. 38.
- Leo, bishop of Trèves, reconciles Richard I. of Normandy and Aethelred II., i. 427.
- Leo, the legate, concessions made to him by Henry II., ii. 384.
- Leodegar, bishop of Autun, his martyrdom, i. 186.
- Leof, the murderer of king Edmund, is cut to pieces by his attendants, i. 398.
- Leofgar, bishop of Hereford, killed by the Welch, i. 496.
- Leofric, bishop of Crediton and Cornwall, i. 484.
- Leofric, earl of Chester, and founder of several monasteries, dies, i. 496; story of him and his wife Godiva, 497.

Leofrona, wife of Aethelred of East-Anglia, i. 224.  
 Leofrona, abbess of S. Mildred, made prisoner by the Danes, i. 439.  
 Leofsius, bishop of Worcester, i. 436, 462 and *note*; his death, 471.  
 Leofwin, son of earl Godwin, flies to Ireland with Harold, i. 490; joins him in ravaging Wessex, *ib.*; is pardoned, 491.  
 Leofwine, bishop of Lincoln, dies, i. 409.  
 Leontius (or Leo) deposes, mutilates, and banishes Justinian II., i. 189; is himself mutilated and imprisoned by Absimarus Tiberius, 190.  
 Leontius, bishop of Saintes, his celebrity, i. 81.  
 Leopold, *v. Austria*.  
 Leutherius, bishop of the West-Saxons, present in the council of Hertford, i. 162.  
 Lichfield, bishops of, *v. Cedda, Diuma, Coelac, Tunher, Jaruman, Wifrid, Aldwin, Wicta, Hemeli, Cuthfrith, Ealdulph (abp.), Hunberht or Berthun (abp.), Higberht (abp.), Cineferth or Cyneberht, Tunberht or Tunfrith, Elle, Brithmar, Wlaius*. Lichfield made an archiepiscopal see, i. 237; list of its suffragans, 238.  
 Lilla, an attendant of Eadwin, slain by the assassin who attempted his master's life, i. 125.  
 Limburg, [Henry IV.] duke of, lieutenant of the emperor in the Holy Land, iv. 146.  
 Limerick besieged and taken by Richard earl-marshal, iv. 304.  
 Limeth, G., one of prince Louis' ambassadors to Rome, iii. 372.  
 Lincoln besieged, ii. 227, *seqq.*; again besieged, 235; battle of, iv. 21, *seq.*; plunder of the city, 24.  
 Lincoln, earl of, *v. Lacy*.  
 Lincoln, bishops of:  
   [For those before the Conquest, *v. Eadhead, Aethelwine, Eadgar, Cyneberht, Aldulf, Céoluulf, Leofwine, Ailnoth, Asowine or Ascwine.*]  
   — Alexander, flies to Scotland, ii. 7.  
   — Remigius, *v. Dorchester*.  
   — Robert Bloet, gives Rufus 500 pounds for the liberties of his church, ii. 41, *seq.*; dedicates S. Alban's abbey, 193; dies, 202.  
 Lincoln, bishops of, continued.  
   — Alexander, ii. 203, 210 *note*; imprisoned by king Stephen, and deprived of his castles, 226.  
   — Robert de Chaisneio (or de Querceto), archdeacon of Leicester, consecrated, ii. 243; his final concord with the abbot of S. Alban's, 293; dies, 321.  
   — Geoffrey (natural son of Henry II.), archdeacon of Lincoln, elected, iii. 370; takes the castle of Malesart, 379; sets out for Rome, 381; resigns the bishopric, 409; elected archbishop of York, iii. 4; prohibited by the archbishop of Canterbury from being consecrated by any but himself, 9; his election confirmed, 20; receives consecration abroad, 38; is maltreated and imprisoned on his return, 39; joins in excommunicating his persecutors, 50; reconciled to his brother, Richard I., 128; stripped of his temporalities by king John, 154; reconciled to him, 155; assists at the burial of the bishop of Lincoln, 162; withdraws from England, and excommunicates the collectors of the thirteenth in his province, 210; dies, 242.  
   — Walter de Constantiis, archdeacon of Oxford, consecrated, ii. 410; enthroned, 411; translated to Rouen, 412; is one of the umpires between the kings of England and France, 435; invests Richard I. with the sword of Normandy, iii. 2; assists at his coronation, 5; receives a letter from him while in Palestine, 46; appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 49; joins in excommunicating the malcontents of the archbishop of York, 50; is summoned to Germany by king Richard, 80; lays Normandy under an interdict, 95; his convention with Richard, 119; invests John with the sword of Normandy, 138.  
   — Hugh, prior of the Carthusians, consecrated, ii. 419; his life, miracles, death, and burial, iii. 155, *seqq.*; canonized, iv. 64.  
   — William of Blois, precentor of Lincoln, consecrated, iii. 174; dies, 188.  
   — Hugh, archdeacon of Wells, and chancellor of king John, elected,

iii. 228 ; consecrated by archbishop Langton, and dismissed from his office by the king, 231 ; returns to England, 260 ; is present at Runnymede, 302 ; makes fine for having countenanced the insurgent barons, iv. 33 ; obtains his castle of Newark, on paying for the stores, 36, *seqq.* ; dies, 324.

Lincoln, Robert Grosseteste consecrated bishop of, iv. 324.

Lincoln, Robert canon of, v. Worcester.

Lincoln, Adam de, excommunicated, iii. 356.

Lincoln, Robert de, holds Wareham castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.

Lincoln, Thomas de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 336.

Lindis, a rivulet in Lindisfarne, i. 260.

Lindisfarne, bishops of, *v.* Aidan, Finan, Colman, Tuda, Eatta, Cuthbert, Eadberht, Aethelwald, Cyneulf, Higbald, Egberht, Ecgfrith, Eanberht, Eardulf, Cuthard, Miled or Tilred, Witred, Alfa or Mildred, Aldhun.

Lindisfarne, see of, translated to Chester, 335, and enlarged, 336.

Lisieux, [William de Rupière] bishop of, one of an embassy sent to Rome by king Richard, iii. 118.

L'Isle, Brian de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301 ; appointed one of the governors of Yorkshire, 353 ; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14 ; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19 ; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34 ; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93 ; appoints inspectors of the forests, 103.

L'Isle, Galo de, a crusader, slain, ii. 84.

Lismore, council of, ii. 367.

Living, archbishop of Canterbury, dies, i. 463.

Living, bishop of Worcester, translated from Crediton, i. 476 ; is deposed by Hardacnut, 478 ; he held the sees of Worcester, Crediton, and Cornwall at his death, 484.

Llandaff, [Urban] bishop of, dies, ii. 214 and *note*.

Llewellyn of South Wales assists Edmund in conquering Cumberland, i. 398 and *note*.

Llewellyn, king of Wales, besieges Builth castle, and is put to flight by Henry III., iv. 71 ; seizes two castles belonging to the earl of Pembroke, and beheads the garrison, 85 ; besieges Montgomery castle, and makes a truce with king Henry, 172, *seqq.* ; hangs William de Braose, 209 ; ravages his lands, and those of others upon the border, 220 ; is excommunicated by the English prelates, 221 ; his ruse against the garrison of Montgomery castle, 222 ; again ravages the border, 243 ; in conjunction with the earl-marshal, he burns Shrewsbury, 291 ; terms of peace insisted on by him, 309.

London, councils at, ii. 205, 210, 232 ; iii. 263, 275, 283 ; the city delivered up to the barons, 299 ; its inhabitants excommunicated, 355 ; besieged by the earl of Pembroke, iv. 30 ; riots in, 79, *seqq.*

London, archbishops of:

- Guithelinus offers the sovereignty of Britain to Aldroenus king of Britanny, *Pref.* xxi. ; educates Aurelius Ambrosius and Uther-pendragon, xxiii.
- Theoneus forced to take refuge with his countrymen in Wales, i. 90.

London, bishops of:

- [For those before the Conquest, *v.* Mellitus, Wina, Earconwald, (also the names at i. 165,) Eadberht, Edgar, Eastan, Theodore, Dunstan, Beorthelm, Robert, William.]
- Maurice, ii. 27, 164 ; dies, 184.
- Richard de Beaumeis, ii. 184 ; consecrates Thomas, archbishop of York, 185 ; assists at the dedication of S. Alban's, 193 ; dies, 204.
- Gilbert the Universal, ii. 207 ; dies, 214.
- Robert 'de Sigillo,' ii. 230.
- Richard de Beaumeis (II.), ordained deacon, ii. 225 ; consecrated bishop, 253 ; dies, 292.
- Gilbert Foliot, *v.* Hereford.
- Richard, archdeacon of Ely, elected, iii. 9 ; consecrated, 16 ; appointed one of the judges in the bishop of Coventry's case, 18 ; procures the release of the archbishop of York, 39 ; gives benediction to John abbot of S. Alban's, 90 ; dies, 130.

**London, bishops of, continued.**

- William, canon of S. Paul's, consecrated, iii. 139; consecrates William bishop of Ely, 174, and Jocelyn bishop of Bath, 188; appointed with others to expostulate with king John, 220; lays an interdict on England and leaves the country, 222; ordered to excommunicate John, 228; accompanies his metropolitan to Rome, 241, and to the French king, 243; returns to England, 260; is present at the concession of Magna Charta, 302.
- Eustace, receives custody of the person and property of Faulkes de Breaute, iv. 98; dies, 178.
- Roger Niger, canon of London, elected, iv. 178; consecrated, 204; his conduct in a thunderstorm which occurred during the celebration of mass, 208; excommunicates the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 233; procures Hubert de Burgh to be replaced in sanctuary, 251; goes to Rome to answer a charge of conniving at the plunder of the Italians, 263; excommunicates all who had shown violence to the bishop of Carlisle, 272; joins the bishop of Salisbury in again procuring Hubert de Burgh's restoration to sanctuary, 275; consecrates archbishop Riche, 298, and gives benediction to John abbot of S. Alban's, 326.
- London, Ralph de Diceto, dean of,** iii. 22.
- London, Gervase chancellor of, excommunicated,** iii. 355, 357.
- Longbeard, William, v. Fitz-Osbert.**
- Longchamp, William de, (bishop,) v. Ely.**
- Longchamp, Henry and Osbert de, hostages for their brother the bishop of Ely, iii. 51.
- Longespee, William, (natural son of Henry II.) earl of Salisbury, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237; undertakes that John will observe his compact with him, 249; present at his submission, 254; destroys a French fleet, 257, seq.; appointed marshal of the army in Flanders, 287; is a leader of the van in the battle of Bovines, 289; is taken prisoner, 291; supports John against the barons, 300; is present at Runnymede, 302; ap-
- pointed with others to observe the barons in London, 347; wastes the isle of Ely, 358; deserts to Louis, 369; returns to his allegiance, iv. 12; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, 54; accompanies the expedition into Gascony, 101; is wrecked in returning, 105, seq.; his arrival and death, 116.
- Longespee, William, earl of Salisbury, escapes from the battle of Gros-mont,** iv. 279.
- Lord's day, letter respecting the observance of the,** iii. 148, seqq.; miracles consequent upon its infliction, 153, seq.
- Losina, Herbert, (bishop,) v. Norwich.**
- Loth, a British general, defeated by Octa and Eosa,** i. 57.
- Loth, brother-in-law of king Arthur, appointed by his uncle Sichelin his successor on the throne of Norway,** i. 70; is established thereon by Arthur, *ib.*
- Lothair, emperor, subdues a rebellion in Saxony,** i. 282; his death, 292.
- Lothair II., emperor,** ii. 206.
- Lothair, v. Hloðsken.**
- Lothbroc, a Dane of royal descent, cast on the English coast, and presented to Eadmund of East-Anglia,** i. 304; grows in favour with him, 305; is murdered by Bern, *ib.*; his body discovered, 306; punishment of the murderer, *ib.*
- Louis II., emperor,** i. 292.
- Louis III., emperor,** i. 334.
- Louis le Débonnaire, his accession and coronation,** i. 272; expels Seloamir from his kingdom, *ib.*; calls the council of Aix-la-Chapelle, 273; his death, 282.
- Louis d'Outremer leaves England, and is crowned at Laon,** i. 391.
- Louis VI., his accession,** ii. 184, 187; his war with Theobald of Blois and Henry I., 194; loses the battle of Brenville, 199; receives the homage of prince Eustace, 220; dies, 221.
- Louis VII. (le Jeune),** ii. 211, 221; excommunicated and absolved, 238; goes to the crusade, 239; defeats the Turks, 241; is himself defeated, and arrives at Jerusalem, 242; returns home in disgust, 243; is

divorced from his wife, 247; makes war upon Henry of Normandy for marrying her, 248; marries Constance, daughter of Alphonso of Castile, 281; entertains Henry when king of England, 288; quarrels with him for precipitating the marriage of their children, 289; becomes reconciled, 291; affords Becket an asylum, 314; again quarrels with Henry, 322; mediates between him and Becket, 338; is present at their concord, 355; invades Normandy, 372; is compelled to raise the siege of Rouen, 381; his concord with Henry, 388; visits Becket's tomb, 397; his death and burial, 405.

Louis (VIII.) does homage, when dauphin, to John of England, and marries Blanche of Castile, iii. 147; knighted, 226; his territory ravaged by John, 280; advanced to the relief of Roche-au-Moine, and then retreats, 286 and note; chosen king of England by the barons, 359; appoints a day for his arrival, 363; his reply to the expostulations of the legate, 365, seq.; sends messengers to defend his claim at Rome, 367; lands at Sandwich, 368; receives the homage of the barons, etc., 369; is excommunicated, 370; reduces the south of England, *ib.*; receives a letter from his ambassadors at Rome, 371; his progress in the eastern and northern counties, 378, seq.; besieges Dover castle, 380; his interview with the governor, iv. 4; takes Hertford and Berkhamstead castles, *ib.* seq.; levies a contribution on S. Alban's abbey, 6; places the castles in the hands of foreigners, 10; makes a truce with Henry III. and leaves the country, 11, seq.; returns, and sends a force to the relief of Montsorel, 15; reproaches the fugitives from the battle of Lincoln, 26; sends to France for means of escape, 27; makes peace with Henry, 30, seq.; is absolved, 32; besieges Thoulouse, and is repulsed, 62, seq.; becomes king of France, 86; his answer to the demands of the English king, *ib.*; obtains possession of Rochelle, 93; sends a force to seize Richard earl of Cornwall, 102; assumes the cross against the Albigenses, 125; besieges Avignon, 129; orders his slain to be cast into the Rhone, 132; prohibits the earl of Champagne from leaving the army, 133; dies, *ib.*

Louis IX. of France crowned in the tenth year of his age, iv. 135; reconciled to his nobility, 140; sends an expedition against the earl of Thoulouse, 169; collects an army to oppose Henry III., 210; confiscates the estates of some Norman deserters, 215; makes peace with his barons, 216; loses his baggage, and makes a truce with England, 224; attacks the earl of Brittany upon its expiry, 315; his conduct to the earl upon his submission, 316.

Louth, in Ireland, Gervase abbot of, receives land whereon to build a monastery, ii. 270.

Louvaine, [rather probably Lorraine, Matthew II.] duke of, sent to England by Frederic II. for the princess Isabella, iv. 333.

Louviers, Alard de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Lovel, William, holds Castle-Cary against king Stephen, ii. 222.

Lucius, a Roman consul, slain by king Arthur, i. 72.

Lucius II., pope, attempts to erect Winchester into an archbishopric, ii. 234; dies, 235.

Lucius III., pope, ii. 409; urges Henry II. of England to accept the kingdom of Jerusalem, 416; dies, 419.

Lucy, Godfrey de, (bishop,) v. Winchester.

Lucy, Geoffrey de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; appointed one of the governors of Yorkshire, 353; marches to the relief of Lincoln, iv. 19.

Lucy, Richard de, (justiciary of England,) excommunicated by Becket, ii. 314; lays the first stone of Westwood abbey, 388.

Ludeca of Mercia, i. 275; slain by Egberht of Wessex, 276.

Ludolphe, duke of Saxony, translates the body of pope Innocent, i. 295.

Luke, chaplain of Henry III., rejected as bishop by the monks of Durham, iv. 128.

Lupus, bishop of Troyes, assists Germanus against Agricola, *Pref.* xxv., and against the Picts and Scots, i. 6.

Lusignan, Geoffrey de, deprived of his castle by Richard duke of Aquitaine, ii. 405; murders one of the duke's friends, and is again vanquished, 427; surrenders, with his sons, to king John, iii. 281.

Lusignan, Guy de, count of Joppa and Ascalon, and brother-in-law of Baldwin IV., appointed administrator of the kingdom, and deposed, ii. 414; made king by his wife, 421; summons the strength of the kingdom against Saladin, 422; taken prisoner, 423; sent to Damascus, 424; released, 432; besieges Acre, 433; defeated near Antioch, iii. 11; present with the army before Acre, 21; acquiesces in the election of the earl of Champagne as king, and receives Cyprus, 46.

Lasus nature, ii. 185.

Lynne subjected to a heavy ransom by prince Louis, iii. 379.

M.

Macbeth of Scotland expelled by earl Siward, i. 493.

Macemunt (Joseph Amiral-mumenin), emperor of the Moors, slain, ii. 412, *seqq.*

Machutus (S.), a disciple of S. Brendan, i. 81; curses the Britons and goes to France, *ib.*; returns, and absolves them, 82.

Maco, the murderer of king Yric, i. 403.

Maco, king of Man, i. 415.

Macon, [John de Braine] count of, confederates against the count of Champagne, iv. 212.

Magla, a son of Port, i. 55.

Maglocun succeeds the British king Vortipore, i. 87.

Magna Charta, confederacy of the barons to obtain, iii. 293, *seqq.*; the charter, 302, *seqq.*; twenty-five barons appointed to carry out its provisions, 315.

Mahomet, history of, i. 121, *seqq.*

Maidstone, Ralph de, (bishop,) r. Hereford.

Maidul, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Maisbely, battle of, i. 40.

Malcolm I. of Scotland receives Cumberland on condition of defending the north of England, i. 398 and note.

Malcolm III. (son of the king of Cumberland) made king, i. 493; marries Margaret, sister of Eadgar Aetheling, ii. 2; harbours the Saxon exiles, and harasses the border, 4; makes his submission to William I., *ib.*; ravages England in the time of Rufus, 37; is again compelled to submit, *ib.*; his magnanimity towards a traitor, 38; is slain with his son in a border foray, 42.

Malcolm IV. of Scotland, ii. 254; his composition with Henry II., 286; does homage to him and to prince Henry, 298.

Malcolm, king of Cumberland, i. 415.

Maldon, Geoffrey, constable of, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.

Malet, William, banished, ii. 187.

Malet, William, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.

Malger (bishop), v. Worcester.

Malmebury, William of, completes his history, ii. 234.

Malta, Henry count of, dissatisfied at the restoration of Damietta to the Turks, iv. 79.

Malveain, what, ii. 46.

Mamertus (S.), bishop of Vienna, miracle of, i. 15.

Mamistra destroyed by an earthquake, ii. 191.

Man, bishops of:

- John, ii. 250.
- Wimund, ii. 250.

Mandeville, William de, taken prisoner by king Stephen, ii. 233.

Mandeville, Geoffrey earl of, slain, ii. 235.

Mandeville, William de, dies, iii. 11.

Mandeville, Geoffrey de, earl of Essex, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; mortally wounded in a tournament, 363.

Mandeville, William de, (brother and successor of Geoffrey,) one of the

confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; assists in reducing Essex and Suffolk, 371; loses his standard, iv. 5; dies, 138.

Mandeville, R. de, excommunicated, iii. 356.

Mans, Le, siege of, ii. 439.

Mans, Le, price paid to Rome for the consecration of a bishop of, iii. 27.

Manuel, emperor, visited by Conrad III. and Louis VII., ii. 239; his treachery to Conrad, 240; sends an embassy to Henry II., 387.

Marc, or Marçay, Philip, castellan of Nottingham, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; encourages the earl of Albemarle against Henry III., 66; surrenders the custody of his castles to the king, 93.

Marcellinus and Peter (SS.), translation of, i. 275.

Marche, La, Hugh count of, v. Brun.

Marcher, brother of Sigeferth, put to death by Eadric Streona, i. 451.

Marcian, the emperor, death of, i. 16.

Maresfelth, battle of, i. 140.

Margaret, grand-daughter of Edmund Iron-side, i. 462, 496; married by Malcolm III., ii. 2; her family by him, *ib.*; dies of grief for the loss of her husband and son, 42.

Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., married to prince Henry of England, ii. 289; crowned, 369; brought to England by Henry II., 377.

Margaret, first wife of Philip II. of France, ii. 409.

Marianus Scotus, i. 468; labours to correct the chronology of Dionysius, ii. 21.

Marines, Albert de, excommunicated, iii. 50.

Marinus, pope, frees the English School at Rome from tribute, and sends presents to Aelfred, i. 336.

Marmion, Robert, slain, ii. 235.

Marsh, Richard de, chancellor of king John, adheres to him against the pope, iii. 237; is sent to hire foreign mercenaries, 320; consecrated bishop of Durham, iv. 46; his dissension with his monks, 66, *seqq.*; dies suddenly, 126.

Marsh, Robert de, archdeacon of Nor-

VOL. IV.

thumberland, one of king John's embassy to Rome respecting the interdict, iii. 282.

Marsh, Geoffrey de, justiciar of Ireland, represses an insurrection there, iv. 213; joins a conspiracy against the earl-marshal, 292, *seq.*; his insidious advice to him, 300, 302; throws off the mask, 303.

Marshal, John le, claims a manor in the possession of Becket, ii. 305.

Marshal, John le, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301; attends him at Runnymede, 302, and in his northern expedition, 348; is present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; ordered to intercept the French fleet, 28; is the bearer of a royal message to the council at Westminster, 116.

Marshal, William, earl of Pembroke, is surety for Richard I. that he will go to the crusade, iii. 12; ordered to act independently of the chancellor, and to receive the archbishop of Rouen as an associate, 49; sent by king John to receive the fealty of the barons, 137; is his surety respecting compensation to the clergy, 283; acts for him in a council held at London, *ib.*; becomes his surety to the barons, 296; is sent to inquire their claims, 298; and to signify the king's acquiescence, 301; is present at Runnymede, 302; attends the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; issues letters on Henry's behalf to the sheriffs, 3; orders the castle of Montsorel to be besieged, 14; collects an army for the relief of Lincoln, 18; carries the news of his victory to the king, 25, *seq.*; takes measures to intercept the French fleet, 28; assists in promoting a peace, 30, *seq.*; besieges Newark, 35; dies, 46.

Marshal, William, earl of Pembroke, (son of the preceding,) joins the confederacy against king John, iii. 279; excommunicated, 355; joins prince Louis, 369; makes his submission to Henry III., iv. 12; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; recovers two of his castles from the Welch, and ravages their country, 85; confederates with the

earl of Cornwall against the king, 143 ; accompanies the king to Brittany, 213 ; is left there as one of the commanders of the army, 217 ; dies, 220.

Marshal, Richard, (brother and heir of the preceding,) compels Henry III. to grant him his inheritance, iv. 225 ; becomes one of the sureties for Hubert de Burgh, 258 ; is offended at the dismissal of his deputy, 264 ; remonstrates against the employment of foreigners, 265 ; is warned of an intrigue against him, 270 ; confederates with Llewellyn, 271 ; is deceived into the surrender of one of his castles to the king, 273 ; recovers it by force, 275 ; is taken prisoner, 279 ; rescued, 281 ; his answers to the king's proposals, 282, *seqq.* ; routs John of Monmouth, and wastes his lands, 289 ; in company with Llewellyn, he burns Shrewsbury, 291 ; carries on the war in Ireland, 300 ; defends his conduct, 302 ; confers with the Irish nobles, 303 ; reproaches Geoffrey de Marsh with his treachery, 304 ; is wounded and taken prisoner, 306 ; his death and burial, 307, *seq.*

Marshal, Gilbert, (brother of the preceding,) knighted, and created earl-marshal, iv. 310.

Marshal, Walter, a younger brother of the preceding, iv. 304.

Martel, William, butler of king Stephen, taken prisoner, ii. 231.

Martel, A., deputy-preceptor of Henry III., iv. 77.

Martin I., pope, i. 142 ; calls the council of the Lateran, 148 ; is banished by Constantus to the Chersonesus, 149.

Martin III., pope, i. 397.

Martina poisons her step-son Heraclius Constantinus, and places her own son Heraclonas on the throne, i. 138 ; is mutilated by order of the senate, and sent prisoner to Constantia, *ib.*

Mascon, Louis de, a crusader, ii. 120.

Mategrifun, a castle so called, iii. 32.

Matilda, daughter of Baldwin of Flanders, and wife of the Conqueror, buried at Caen, ii. 21.

Matilda, daughter of Malcolm III. and wife of Henry I. of England, ii. 169 ; anecdote of her humility, 180 ; attends the dedication of S. Alban's, 193 ; dies, 194.

Matilda, or Maud, daughter of Henry I., married to the emperor Henry V., ii. 185 ; becomes a widow, 206 ; receives the homage of the English and Norman barons, 207 ; marries Geoffrey of Anjou, 208 ; gives birth to Henry II., 212, Geoffrey, 214, and William, 220 ; arrives at Arundel castle, 226 ; is acknowledged as 'Domina,' 229 ; receives Sherborne castle for the liberation of William Martel, 231 ; escapes from Oxford castle, 232.

Matilda, wife of king Stephen, takes Dover castle, ii. 222 ; maintains her husband's cause in Kent, 229 ; captures the earl of Gloucester, 230 ; dies, 250.

Matilda, daughter of Henry II. of England, born, ii. 284 ; married to Henry V. of Saxony, 312 ; gives birth to a son, 412 ; dies, 445.

Matilda, wife of William de Braose, refuses to give her children as hostages to king John, iii. 225 ; is imprisoned, and starved to death, 234, *seq.*

Matthew, the archbishop who ordained S. Patric, i. 48 and *note*.

Mauclerc, Walter, (bishop,) v. Carlisle.

Maudut, William, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; loses his castle of Hanslope, 349 ; excommunicated, 356 ; taken prisoner, iv. 24.

Mauleon, Peter de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238 ; encourages the insurrection of the earl of Albemarle against Henry III., iv. 66 ; surrenders the custody of his castles to the king, 93.

Mauleon, Savary de, employed by king John against his barons, iii. 331 ; prevents him from hanging the garrison of Rochester castle, 335 ; commands the Poitevin auxiliaries, 347 ; wastes the Isle of Ely, 358 ; arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 55 ; employed to guard the French coast, 106, *seq.*

Maurice, the emperor, i. 88 ; his prayer, 105, and vision, 106 ; put to death with his family by order of Phocas, *ib.*

Maurice, antipope, made a monk by Calixtus II., ii. 202.  
 Maurice (bishop), *v. London.*  
 Maurienne, Hubert earl of, his eldest daughter betrothed to prince John of England, ii. 369.  
 Maurus (S.) builds a monastery in France, and educates many of the young nobility, i. 79.  
 Maximianus Hercules, his persecution in the West, *Pref.* xiii.  
 Mayenne, Geoffrey de, a partisan of Richard earl of Poitou, ii. 443.  
 Medardus, bishop of Nîmesque, his death, i. 70; buried at Soissons, 80.  
 'Medeshamstede,' the Saxon name of Peterborough, i. 199.  
 Medo, abbot of Fleury, i. 230.  
 Melealim (Malek-el-Kamel), eldest son of Saphadin, and sultan of Cairo, iii. 76; put to flight at Damietta, iv. 48, *seqq.*; makes three assaults upon the camp of the Christians, 50, *seqg.*; defeats them in a pitched battle, 52, *seqg.*; treats for peace, 55; his proposals, 57; endeavours to surprise the Christians, 58; cuts off their communications with Damietta, 73, 78; makes a truce with them, 76, 79; sends presents to Frederic II., 175; restores to him the Holy Land, 188; releases the Christian captives, 193.  
 Mellitus, first bishop of London, i. 105; converts Sebert of Essex, *ib.*; is present at an ecclesiastical council in Italy, 110; expelled by the sons of Sebert, 114; withdraws with Justus into France, *ib.*; is recalled by Eadwald, 115; succeeds to the see of Canterbury, 120.  
 Mello, William de, taken prisoner, iii. 96; again captured, 132.  
 Melun, Giles viscount of, sent by prince Louis to the aid of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362; his death-bed confession of the ill-faith of Louis, 383.  
 Melun, Robert de, (bishop,) *v. Hereford.*  
 Menduc, prince of Persia, routs Baldwin I. and ravages the Holy Land, ii. 191.  
 Mercadeus, prince of Brabant, *v. Brabant.*  
 Mercher, son of earl Algar, elected earl of Northumbria, i. 509; flies to Scotland at the Conquest, ii. 5; taken prisoner in the Isle of Ely, 8.  
 Mercia, rise of the kingdom of, i. 88.  
 Mercres-burne, battle of, i. 39.  
 Merefín, son of Merewald and Eormenurga, his sanctity, i. 167.  
 Merewald of West Mercia, his children by Eormenurga, i. 167; he permits her to take the veil, 151.  
 Merlin Ambrosius, the boy without a father, discovered, i. 20; his conversation with Wyrtgeorne, 21; baffles the Magi, *ib.*; his prophecy, 22; portions of it said to have been fulfilled, 72, 105; ii. 255, 379, 443; iii. 3, 234; foretells the death of the king, i. 34; instructs Aurelius Ambrosius what monument to raise to his predecessors, 44; is sent to Ireland with Uther to bring away the stones of the 'Chorea Gigantum,' *ib.*  
 Merové, king of the Franks, i. 7.  
 Merwinna, abbess of Rumsey, i. 412.  
 [Meschines,] Ranulph de, earl of Chester, (an adherent of the empress Maud,) commands the van in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 228; compels Stephen to raise the siege, 235; surrenders the place, 236; is poisoned, 280.  
 [Meschines,] Ranulph de, earl of Chester, an adherent of the young king, made prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375.  
 [Meschines,] Ranulph de, earl of Chester and Lincoln, one of king John's sureties for making compensation to the clergy, iii. 283; adheres to him against the barons, 300; present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; besieges Montsorel, 14; raises the siege, 17; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; arrives in the Holy Land, 44; assists in covering the flight of the Christians at Damietta, 54; is favourable to the Sultan's terms, 58; returns home, 62; loses Fotheringay castle, 67; surrenders the custody of his castles to the king, 92, *seq.*; joins the earl of Cornwall against him, 143; prohibits his clerical tenants from paying tithes to the pope, 203; prevents the king from killing Hubert de Burgh, 205; appointed one of the commanders of the force left in Brittany, 217;

his doings in Anjou, 218 ; negotiates a truce, and returns to England, 224 ; expostulates with the king respecting a pecuniary aid, 233 ; prevails upon him to recall his order touching the seizure of Hubert de Burgh, 250 ; dies, 256.

Meulant, Robert earl of, revolts against Henry I., ii. 203 ; is taken prisoner, 204 ; is present in the battle of Lincoln, 228.

Meulant, Waleran earl of, makes peace with Geoffrey of Anjou, ii. 230.

Meulant, Roger de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

Milburga (S.), daughter of Merewald and Eormenburgha, i. 167.

Mildred, bishop of Worcester, i. 205 ; dies, 264.

Mildritha (S.), daughter of Merewald and Eormenburgha, i. 167.

Milgytha (S.), daughter of Merewald and Eormenburgha, i. 167.

Milred (or Tilstred, i. 386), bishop of Lindisfarne, 380 ; dies, 386.

Minorites, their rule, iii. 210.

Mirabeau, battle at, iii. 168.

Misci, Theobald de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Mizentius, an Armenian, made emperor by the army, and put to death by Constantine III., i. 161.

Modred, nephew of king Arthur, co-regent with the queen during Arthur's absence, i. 71 ; usurps the crown, and seduces the queen, 73 ; is assisted by the Saxons, *ib.* ; opposes Arthur's landing at Sandwich, 74 ; flies to Winchester, and thence into Cornwall, *ib.*, where he is slain, 75 ; rebellion and death of his sons, 76.

Mohun, William de, holds Dunster castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.

Moine, Eustace le, collects a fleet for the invasion of England by prince Louis, iii. 368 ; is defeated, iv. 28 ; is dragged from the hold of a ship, and put to death, 29, *seq.*

Monasteries, names of, destroyed by the Danes in England, i. 302, *seq.* ; general visitation of, iv. 258, *seq.*

Monci, Drogo de, a crusader, ii. 120.

Monfichet, Richard de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 356 ; taken prisoner, iv. 24.

Monmouth, John of, appointed a captain of his Poitevin mercenaries by Henry III., iv. 279 ; surprised and put to flight by the earl-marshal, 289.

Monmouth, battle of, iv. 281.

Monothelitæ, heresy of the, i. 121, 129, 140 ; condemned in the council of the Lateran, 149.

Montpelier, William de, a crusader, ii. 62, 77, 120.

Montagu, Cono de, a crusader, ii. 74.

Montagu, Lambert son of Cono de, a crusader, ii. 120.

Montagu, Peter de, master of the Temple, letters from, on the affairs of Palestine, iv. 72, 77.

Montagu, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 355.

Mont-Begon, Roger de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 355.

Monte, Godfrey de, a crusader, alain, ii. 88.

Monte, Adulph count de, (a crusader,) his vessel set on fire by the Turks, iv. 38 ; his scaling-apparatus, 39.

Monte Casino, the Benedictine monastery of, destroyed by the Lombards, i. 99.

Montevisto, J. de, one of prince Louis' ambassadors to Rome, iii. 372.

Mont-Ferrat, Conrad marquis of, his letter to Baldwin archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 436 ; present in the battle near Antioch, iii. 11 ; his station at the siege of Acre, 21 ; slain by the Assassins, 46.

Montfort, Robert de, witnesses a charter of Henry I., ii. 164.

Montfort, Hugh de, taken prisoner, ii. 204.

Montfort, Robert de, overcomes Henry de Essex in a trial by battle, ii. 296.

Montfort, Simon de, earl of Leicester, a leader in the crusade against the Albigenzes, iii. 267 ; made prince of the captured territory, 270 ; gains a victory over the Albigenzes, 273 ; slain, iv. 63.

Montfort, Simon de, claims the possessions of the earl of Thoulouse in the council of Bourges, iv. 119.

Montgomery, Roger de, conspires against Rufus, ii. 32 ; returns to his allegiance, 33.

Montgomery castle built, iv. 72 ; besieged by the Welch, 172.  
 Mont-Michel, Robert abbot of, the historian, ii. 287.  
 Montmorency, Matthew de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.  
 Mont-Royal, or Montregeau, Ansier de, confesses his treachery to the crusaders, iii. 23.  
 Montsorel besieged, iv. 14 ; siege raised, 17 ; the place abandoned by its garrison, 26.  
 Moravia, [Otho] duke of, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7.  
 Morchar and Eadwin (brothers) repulse Tosti from Northumbria, i. 513 ; Morchar is driven into York, 514 ; they fly to Scotland after the Conquest, ii. 2, 5 ; Eadwin joins the disaffected in Ely, 8.  
 Mortain, William earl of, is banished by Henry I., and harasses him in Normandy, ii. 175 ; is made prisoner at Tinchebrai, 182.  
 Mortain and Warren, William earl of, (called, in the text, natural son of king Stephen,) present in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 229 ; compounds with Henry II., 286.  
 Mortimer, Hugh de, rebels against Henry II., ii. 281.  
 Morville, Hugh de, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.  
 Mosepha, what, iv. 199.  
 Mowbray, Robert de, earl of Northumberland, conspires against William Rufus, ii. 32 ; endows Tynemouth priory, 39 ; absents himself from the court, 45 ; is taken prisoner at Tynemouth, 46.  
 Mowbray, Roger de, (in arms against Henry II.,) defeated by the royalists of Lincoln, ii. 375 ; makes his peace with the king, 380.  
 Mowbray, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; excommunicated, 355 ; taken prisoner, iv. 24.  
 Muchel, earl of Gainsborough, and father-in-law of king Aelfred, i. 300.  
 Mull, brother of Ceadwalla, killed (by fire, i. 187) in Kent, 182.  
 Multon, Thomas de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; taken prisoner, 335 ; excommunicated, 357 ; becomes a justice in eyre, iv. 94.  
 Mummolus, abbot of Fleury, sends to Monte Casino for the remains of SS. Benedict and Scholastica, i. 173.  
 Muntciun (? Mont-Sion), Odo de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 Muntini (? Montigny), Everard de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 Murdac, Henry, (archbishop,) v. York.  
 Muschamp, Geoffrey de, (bishop,) v. Coventry.

N.

Nanteuil, Philip de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.  
 Nanteuil, Andrew de, taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.  
 Naples, John cardinal of, one of the legates sent to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, ii. 314.  
 Narbonne, archbishops of :  
 — [Arnold Amaury], legate in the crusade against the Albigenses, iii. 267 ; summons several bishops and abbots to his aid, 272.  
 — N., joins other prelates in a letter from the Holy Land, iv. 146 ; is one of the leaders of the crusaders, 175.  
 Nataneleod, a British general, slain by Cerdic and Cynric, i. 57 and note.  
 Nazareth, N. archbishop of, joins other prelates in a letter from the Holy Land, iv. 146 ; is one of the leaders of the crusaders, 175.  
 Nesle, Drogo de, released from captivity at Constantinople, ii. 75.  
 Nesle, John de, a crusader, iii. 21.  
 Nevers, [Mahaut] count of, a leader in the crusade against the Albigenses, iii. 267 ; returns home, 270 ; besieges Windsor castle, 381 ; is suspected of having been bribed by king John, 382 ; goes to the Holy Land, but deserts at a period of danger, iv. 44.  
 Nevers, Guy de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 Neville, Alan de, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 314 ; absolved, *ib.* ; again excommunicated, 329.  
 Neville, Eustace de, sent by prince Louis to encourage the English barons, iii. 360 ; excommunicated, 362.

Neville, Hugh de, chief forester of king John, adheres to him against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; is present at Runnymede, 302; surrenders Marlborough castle to Louis, and does him homage, 371; appoints inspectors of the forests, iv. 103.

Neville, Ralph de, (bishop,) *v.* Chichester.

Newark, siege of, *iv.* 34.

Nice, siege of, *ii.* 81, *seqq.*

Nicephorus III. deposed, *ii.* 75.

Nicholas (S.), translation of, *ii.* 27.

Nicholas I., pope, *i.* 294; allows the translation of SS. Eusebius and Pontianus, 297; his letter respecting the churches of Tours and Dol, *iii.* 145.

Nicholas II., pope, *i.* 502.

Nigel (bishop), *v.* Ely.

Niger, Roger, (bishop,) *v.* London.

Nonant, Hugh de, (bishop,) *v.* Coventry.

[Norfolk], Ralph de Waler, earl of, forms a conspiracy against William I., *ii.* 14; invites the Danes and Welch, 15; flies the country, *ib.*

Norfolk, earl of, *v.* Bigod.

Norhale, William de, (bishop,) *v.* Worcester.

Normandy, laws for the church in, *iii.* 32, *seq.*

Northampton, siege of, *iii.* 299; council at, *iv.* 94.

Northampton, Savary archdeacon of, *v.* Bath.

Northumberland, Robert earl of, slain, *ii.* 6.

Northumbria, kingdom of, founded, *i.* 77; divided, on the death of Ida, into Deira and Bernicia, 81; re-united by Aethelfrith, 96.

Norton, Walter de, excommunicated, *iii.* 356.

Norwold, Hugh, (bishop,) *v.* Ely.

Norwich, church of, founded, and supplied with monks, *ii.* 80; the city plundered by the Flemings, 376.

Norwich, bishops of:

- William, *ii.* 27.
- Herbert Losinga, his simony and repentance, *ii.* 45; assists at the consecration of Thomas archbishop of York, 185; dies, 200.
- William, *ii.* 294.

Norwich, bishops of, continued.

- John (dean of Salisbury), consecrated, *ii.* 384; obtains a dispensation from joining the crusade, *iii.* 30; his quota towards the ransom of Richard I., 73.
- John de Gray, elected archbishop of Canterbury, *iii.* 185; his election annulled, 211; made justiciary of Ireland, 234; adheres to king John against the pope, 237; returns from Ireland with a force in aid of the king, 246; is a witness of his submission to the pope, 254; is sent to Rome respecting the interdict, 283; undertakes that John will make compensation to the clergy, 284; dies on his return, 292.—[He is subsequently stated (at p. 320) to have been sent to engage foreign mercenaries.]
- Pandulph, *v.* Pandulph.
- Thomas de Blundville, a clerk of the exchequer, consecrated, *iv.* 138.

Norwich, archdeacons of:

- Geoffrey, dies in prison, *iii.* 229.
- Geoffrey de Burgh, *v.* Ely.
- John, (a Florentine,) escapes to London from some English insurgents, *iv.* 231.

Norwich, Robert official of the church of, ordered to excommunicate the confederated barons by name, *iii.* 354.

Nothelm, the literary coadjutor of Beda, elected archbishop of Canterbury, *i.* 225; dies, 227.

Nottingham, William earl of, a commander in the battle of the Standard, *ii.* 222.

Noureddin, son of Zenghi, slays Raymond prince of Antioch, *ii.* 244; captures Bohemond II. and others, 313.

## O.

Ockley, battle of, *i.* 285.

Octa, son of Hengest, arrives in Britain, *i.* 13; flies to York after the battle of the Don, *i.* 42; surrenders himself to Ambrosius, 43; rises, with Eosa, against Uther, 53; they ravage the country between York and Scotland, *ib.*; are made prisoners in a night-attack, *ib.*; escape to Germany, return, and defeat the British general Loth, 57; are slain in the battle of S. Alban's, 59.

Octavian, antipope, ii. 288.  
 Odham castle, gallant defence of, iii. 371.  
 Odo, bishop of Wilton (or Ramsbury, i. 495), had been one of king Eadward's Danish mercenaries, 383 and note; is translated to Canterbury, 391; advises Eadmund to compromise with Anlaf, 395; crowns Eadred, 399, and Eadwy, 404; consecrates Dunstan bishop of Worcester, 406; divorces Eadwy and Algiva, *ib. seq.*; dies, 407.  
 Odo, bishop of Bayeux, and brother of the Conqueror, imprisoned for treason, ii. 20; confirms his nephew Robert in the duchy of Normandy, and comes to England, 31; forms a conspiracy against Rufus, *ib.*; is taken, 33, rescued, retaken, and forced to abjure the realm, 34.  
 Odoacer the Goth captures Rome, i. 39.  
 Offa of Mercia expels Beornraed from his throne, i. 234; is elected king, 235; his genealogy, *ib.*; quarrels with the Kentishmen, and erects Lichfield into an archbishopric, 237; subdues the Angles, 239; gains a victory over the men of Kent, 240; obtains the friendship of Charlemagne, 241; defeats Cyneulf of Wessex, 243; crowns his son Ecgfrith, 247; marries his daughters, *ib.* 249; seizes upon East-Anglia, on the murder of Aethelberht, 251; translates the body of S. Alban, 253; sets out for Rome to procure privileges for the monastery of that saint, 254; his acts and return, 255, *seqq.*; endows the abbey of S. Alban, 257; specification of his dominions, *ib.*; his death, 261; summary of his conquests, 235.  
 Offa of Essex is induced by Kyneswita to embrace a religious life, i. 199; visits Rome with Cœnraed, 203, where he receives the tonsure and dies, 199.  
 Offer, a Northumbrian noble, avenges the death of king Ecgfrith, i. 202.  
 Oidwald, son of Oswald, succeeds Oswin in Deira, i. 148.  
 Olaf, king of Norway, dethroned by Cnut, i. 468.  
 'Old Man of the Mountain,' the title explained, ii. 246; letter of, exculpatory of Richard I., iii. 74.  
 Oliver, natural son of king John, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.  
 Olympus, a blasphemer, consumed by lightning, i. 56.  
 Omer, S., *v. S. Omer.*  
 Orange, William bishop of, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Raymond of Thoulouse, 77; dies, 127.  
 Ordbriht, bishop of Selsey, i. 426.  
 Ordgar, earl of Devon, builds Tavistock abbey, i. 409; was father of Eadgar's second queen, 410; his death, 413.  
 Ordmar, duke, father of Eadgar's first queen, i. 410.  
 Orlévre, Geoffrey I., an English crusader, iii. 29.  
 Orkneys, Ralph bishop of the (ii. 222), his harangue before the battle of the Standard, 223.  
 Orleans, Fulcher of, a crusader, slain, ii. 69.  
 Orm, earl, father-in-law of king Anlaf, i. 395.  
 Osberht of Northumbria, i. 283, deposed, 298; joins his successor against the Danes, and falls at York, *ib.*  
 Osbern, a Norman adviser of Eadward III., flies to Scotland, i. 492.  
 Osbern, brother of king Sweyn, his invasion of England, and defeat, ii. 6.  
 Osburga, mother of Aelfred the Great, i. 284; her mode of inducing him to study, 320.  
 Osfrith, a son of Eadwin of Northumbria, slain in the battle of Hatfield, i. 132.  
 Osgod Glappa, Hardacnut struck with death at the bridal banquet of his daughter, i. 482.  
 Osketel, a Danish king, i. 326.  
 Osketel, archbishop of York, i. 403; dies, 414.  
 Osmund (bishop), *v. Salisbury.*  
 Osred, son of Alfrith, succeeds him in Northumbria, i. 199, *seqq.*; restores archbishop Wilfrid, 187; is slain in battle, 211.  
 Osred, son of Ealred of Northumbria, succeeds Alfwold, i. 247; is driven from his throne, and slain at Tynemouth, 248.

Ossred of Northumbria, his accession and death, i. 261.  
 Osric, cousin of king Eadwin, succeeds him in Deira, i. 133 ; his baptism and apostacy, *ib.* ; is slain by Cadwalllo, *ib.*  
 Osric, ruler of the territory of Worcester, i. 172.  
 Osric of Northumbria, i. 212, resigns his kingdom to Cœluiulf, 218.  
 Osric, earl of Dorset (and Hampton, i. 295), defeats the Danes, 283, 295.  
 Ossuna, Herrey de, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.  
 Oxford, a monk of Streneshalh, becomes bishop of Worcester, i. 172, 205.  
 Ostia, bishops of:  
 —— Alberic, papal legate, holds a council at London, and consecrates Theobald archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 225 ; acknowledges the empress Maud, 239.  
 —— Octavian, invites Richard I. to visit the pope, iii. 26.  
 Ostritha, sister of Ecgfrith of Northumbria, and wife of Aethelred of South Mercia, i. 167, 170 ; murdered by the Mercians, 189.  
 Osulf of Northumbria, son of Eadberht, murdered, i. 234.  
 Osulf, bishop of Wilton, (or Ramsbury, i. 495,) 391 and *note*.  
 Osulf, earl, his treachery to king Yric, i. 403.  
 Oswald, son of Aethelfrith, king of Northumbria, i. 134 ; sends to Scotland for Aidan, and appoints him bishop of Lindisfarne, *ib.* ; his piety in the battle of Hefensfeld, *ib.* ; becomes sponsor for Cynegilis, 135 ; anecdote of his charity, 139 ; is slain by Penda, 140 ; his translation, 374.  
 Oswald the Aetheling, his unsuccessful insurrection against Aethelhard of Wessex, i. 217.  
 Oswald (S.), bishop of Worcester, consecrated by Dunstan, i. 409 ; builds Ramsey abbey, *ib.* ; orders his clerks to become monks, and deprives the recusant, 413 ; is translated to York, 414 ; is buried in a church of his foundation at Worcester, 428 ; his body placed in a shrine, 435.  
 Owen, her devotion to the relics of S. Edmund, i. 314.  
 Oswin of Deira, son of king Osric, i. 141 ; his passion, 145 ; person and character, 146 ; burial, 147 ; discovery of his remains, 504 ; his sanctity tested, 506.  
 Oswini, earl, defeated by the Danes, i. 438.  
 Oswiu succeeds his brother Oswald in Bernicia, i. 141 ; persuades Sigebert II. to become a Christian, 142 ; sends an emissary to kill Oswin, 145 ; his country invaded by Penda, 152 ; his vow, *ib.* ; slays Penda, *ib.* ; gives Peada the kingdom of South Mercia, 154 ; his speech at the council of Streneshalh, 157, and decision, 158 ; his death and funeral, 161, *seq.* ; his pedigree, 162.  
 Oxford, battle of, i. 240.  
 Otho I. emperor, marries a sister of king Athelstan, i. 392.  
 Otho II. emperor, i. 414.  
 Otho III. emperor, i. 424.  
 Otho IV. of Germany, (son of Henry V. of Saxony, ii. 410,) crowned and married, iii. 124 ; his election confirmed, 142 ; visits king John, 210 ; is furnished by him with money, 225 ; consecrated emperor by the pope, 227 ; excommunicated, 232 ; assists John against the French, 287 ; commands the third division in the battle of Bovines, 289 ; repels his assailants, 291.  
 Otho, the pope's legate, arrives in England, iv. 107 ; intercedes for Faulkes de Breauté, *ib.* 117 ; takes proxy-money from the conventional churches, 108 ; his demands in the council at Westminster, 114, *seq.* ; prorogues the meeting, 116 ; recalled by the pope, 123.  
 Oxford, heretics branded in the council of, ii. 315 ; citizens of, expel the students, iii. 227 ; their penance, 274.  
 Oxford, archdeacons of:  
 —— Robert, *v.* Hereford.  
 —— Walter de Constantiis, *v.* Lincoln.  
 Oxford, John of, president of the council at Clarendon, ii. 298.  
 Oxford, earl of, *v.* Vere.

## P.

Paganel, or Painsnel, holds Ludlow castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.  
 Paganis, Hugh de, one of the founders of the order of Knights Templars, ii. 195.  
 Painsnel, Foulques and William, of Normandy, desert to Henry III., iv. 214.  
 Paling, brother-in-law of Sweyn, murdered, i. 445.  
 Palladius, his mission to the Scots, and death, i. 47.  
 Pallas, son of Evander, his body found, i. 475.  
 Pandulph, cardinal, his negotiation with king John, iii. 235; is sent to excite the French king against him, with secret instructions to compound with John, 242; urges him to yield, 246, *seq.*; receives his formal submission, 252, and homage, 254; recommends the king of France to abandon his intended invasion, 256; opposes the appeal of archbishop Langton at Rome, 279; is present with John at Runnymede, 302, and sent by him to Rome against the barons, 329; is ordered by the pope to enforce their excommunication, 336; jointly with the bishop of Winchester, he suspends archbishop Langton, 340; elected bishop of Norwich, iv. 69; his vision respecting Faulkes de Breaute, 137; dies, 138.  
 Pantheon at Rome consecrated as a Christian church, i. 110; stripped of its brazen tiles by Constantine, 160.  
 Papiro, John, cardinal legate, appoints four archbishops in Ireland, ii. 250.  
 Paris, Ferrius de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.  
 Paris, Robert de, a crusader, slain, ii. 88.  
 Pascentius, the third son of Wyrtgeorne, i. 11; history of, 51, *seq.*  
 Paschal I., pope, i. 272.  
 Paschal II., pope, ii. 166; his reply to the proctor of Henry I., etc., 172; his contention with the emperor Henry V., 190; his death, 194.  
 Paschal cycle, completion of the first, i. 84; of the second, ii. 13 and *note*; *v. also p. 18.*  
 Passalewe, Robert, clerk of Faulkes de Breaute, accompanies him in his exile, iv. 103; becomes deputy treasurer of Henry III., 264; has custody of the forfeited lands of Hubert de Burgh, 297; absconds on being called to an account by the king, 312, 314; makes fine, and is pardoned, 325.  
 Pateshulle, Martin de, a justice in eyre of Henry III., iv. 94.  
 Patric (S.), originally called Mannus, history of, i. 48; his purgatory, ii. 256, *seqq.*  
 Patric, William, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375.  
 Paul I., pope, i. 233, *seq.*  
 Paulinus consecrated archbishop of York by Justus, i. 124; accompanied Athelburga to the court of Eadwin, 125; converts the people of Lincoln, builds a church there, and consecrates Honorius as bishop, 128; upon the death of Eadwin, he carries the royal family and the sacred vessels back to Kent, 133; obtains the see of Rochester, *ib.*; his death, 142.  
 Pavia, William cardinal of, authorizes the marriage of prince Henry and princess Margaret, ii. 289; endeavours to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, 314.  
 Peada, son of Penda, made king of the Mercians by his father, i. 144; receives Alcfleda from Oswiu on condition of becoming a Christian, *ib.*; is baptized, and directs the propagation of the Gospel, *ib.*; on the death of his father, he receives South Mercia from Oswiu, 154; is murdered by his wife, *ib.*  
 Peccam, Robert, (bishop,) *v. Chester.*  
 Pecthelme bishop of Whiterne, i. 224.  
 Pechtwine, bishop of Whiterne, i. 236; *dies*, 242.  
 Pelagius I., pope, i. 79.  
 Pelagius II., pope, i. 86; reduces the number of prefices used in the mass, 87; sends Gregory, author of the 'Moralia in Job,' to Constantinople, *ib.*; was the first who died in the great inguinal plague, 94.  
 Pelagius, the legate, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 43; recommends an attack upon Damietta, 46; endeavours to rally the fugitives, 54; opposes the Sultan's terms, 58;

dedicates the principal mosque in Damietta, 60; urges an advance against the infidels, 73; is one of the hostages for the restoration of Damietta, 76.

Pelez, Raymond, a crusader, ii. 76.

Pellitus, an astrologer consulted by king Eadwin, i. 130, and assassinated by the nephew of Cadwallo, 131.

Pembroke, earl of, v. Marshel.

Penda, king of Mercia, i. 110; fights with Cyngils at Cirencester, 128; besieges Exeter, 131; is made prisoner by Cadwallo, 132; accompanies him into Northumbria, *ib.*; his sister married to Cadwallo, 166; he is sent by Cadwallo against Oswald, and is defeated by him, 134, *seq.*; slays him at Maresfeth, 140; expels his brother-in-law Cynewealh for repudiating his wife, 141; allows Christianity to be preached in Mercia, 144; invades Northumbria, and is slain by Oswiū, 152.

Pepin, king of the Franks, subdues Normandy, i. 185; orders the SS. Hewald to be buried at Cologne, 189; is reproved for adultery by bishop Lambert, 190.

Pepin, (le Bref,) king of the Franks, required by the pope to restore the relics of S. Benedict, i. 229; sends Remigius and three bishops to obtain them, *ib.*

Perche, Maurice bishop of, leaves Paris on account of a flood, iii. 97.

Perche, Rotrod II. count of, a crusader, ii. 62, 80, 120.

Perche, Robert (or Rotrod III.) count of, joins Louis VII. against Henry of Normandy, ii. 248; is sent by Philip II. to Richard I. respecting the crusade, iii. 12; dies before Acre, 36.

Perche, Thomas count of, one of the French commanders in the battle of Bovines, iii. 291; marches to the relief of Montsorel, iv. 15; reconnoitres the royal army near Lincoln, 21; is slain, 23.

Percy, Richard de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 365; assists in subduing Yorkshire, 379.

Pestilences, i. 73, 159, 180, 229, 425; iv. 45.

Peter the Hermit, his visit to Jerusa-

lem, ii. 63, *seq.*, and expedition, 66, *seq.*; joins the crusaders before Nice, 80; bears a message of defiance to Kerboga, 119; his reception on returning to Jerusalem, 144.

Peter of the Alpe, a crusader, ii. 90.

Peter, a priest among the crusaders, discovers the holy lance, ii. 116; his fiery ordeal, 129.

Peter of Pontefract, a hermit, imprisoned for his prophecy respecting king John, iii. 240; executed as a traitor, 255.

Peter Lombard, heresy of, ii. 401.

Phænomena reputed miraculous, i. 73, 80, 83, 224, 227, 229, 239, 242, 246, *seq.*, 259, 261, 276, 386; ii. 19, 43, 46, 157, 176, 182, 192; iii. 128, 165, 181; iv. 85, 144, *seq.*, 266, *seq.*

Philip I. of France forces the Conqueror to raise the siege of Dol, and assists his son Robert, ii. 16; his vulgar jest respecting William, 28; is bribed by Rufus to abandon Robert, 43; excommunicated for adultery, 58; his death, 184, 187.

Philip II. of France crowned, ii. 404; his convention with Henry II. of England, *ib.*; submits his realm to his disposition, 407; his marriage, 409; meets Henry at Rouen, 418; takes the cross, 426, *seq.*; quarrels with Henry, and seizes some of his castles, 428; is aided by Henry's son, Richard, 435; his successes in Normandy, 439; takes Tours, and imposes terms upon Henry, 442; demands the castle of Gisors, etc. from Richard I., iii. 2; his agreement with him, 16; sets out on the crusade, 25; sends to Richard for the loan of galleys, 26; conceives an enmity towards him at Messina, 31; joins the Christians before Acre, 41; leaves Palestine, 42; arrives at Paris, 54; invades Normandy, 79; marries a Danish princess, and divorces her, *ib.*; is driven from before Verneuil by Richard, 82; loses his baggage, 84; makes a truce with Richard, 85; is reproved by the pope for his divorce, 90; his treaty with Richard, etc., 93, *seq.*; driven from Paris by an overflowing of the Seine, 97; is compelled by the earl of Flanders to

come to terms, 122 ; defeated by Richard near Jumiéges, 130 ; procures the pope to interfere for the restoration of peace, 132, *seq.* ; undertakes the guardianship of prince Arthur, 138 ; knights him, and receives his homage, 141 ; his demands upon king John, *ib.*, and treaty with him, 146, *seq.* ; is visited by him at Paris, 166 ; espouses the cause of prince Arthur, 167 ; takes Arques, 169, and many places in Normandy, 171, *seq.* ; grants a truce to the Norman barons, 173 ; receives the submission of Normandy, etc., 180, *seq.* ; obtains the castle of Chinon, 183 ; knights his son Louis and an hundred nobles, 226 ; banishes the earl of Boulogne, and gives his possessions to his own son Philip, 236 ; is ordered by the pope to dethrone king John, 241 ; his preparations, 243 ; is directed by Pandulph to desist from his intended expedition, 256 ; invades Flanders, 257 ; loses his fleet, 258 ; evacuates Flanders, 259 ; encamps near the bridge of Bovines, 288 ; is unhorsed in the battle, 290, but gains the victory, 291 ; makes a truce with John, 292 ; takes hostages from the English barons for the safety of his son Louis, 360 ; his answer to the remonstrances of the legate Walo, 364, *seq.* ; directs his daughter-in-law Blanche to assist her husband's escape, iv. 28 ; dies, 86.

Philip, son of Louis VI., accidentally killed, ii. 210.

Philip, son of Philip II. of France, *v.* Boulogne.

Philip (bishop), *v.* Durham.

Philippicus, emperor, kills Justinian II. and his son Tiberius, i. 205, *seq.* ; banishes the patriarch of Constantinople, and introduces a heretic, 206 ; his heterodox letters rejected by the pope, *ib.* ; is overthrown by Anastasius and deprived of sight, 211.

Philippus Presbyter, a commentator on Job, dies, i. 12.

Phocas usurps the empire, and destroys Maurice and his family, i. 106 ; acknowledges the spiritual supremacy of Rome, 109 ; grants the Pantheon to Boniface IV., 110 ; is killed by order of Heraclius, 111.

Pierrepont, William de, his prophecy respecting the king of France, iv. 126.

Piletus, Raymond, a crusader, ii. 120 ; takes Thalamania, but is repulsed at Marra, 126.

Pinci, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Pipewell, synod of, iii. 9.

Pirannus made archbishop of York by king Arthur, i. 66.

Pisa, Henry cardinal of, authorizes the marriage of prince Henry and princess Margaret, ii. 289.

Pisa, [Ubald Lanfranc] archbishop of, a crusader, iii. 22.

Planes, Roger de, slain by the partisans of William bishop of Ely, iii. 51.

Plantagenet, *v.* Anjou.

Plegmund, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 354 ; assists Aelfred in his studies, 324 ; summons a council to appoint bishops, 371, and consecrates seven in one day, 372 ; his death, 379.

Plenting, second son of Ella, his arrival in Britain, i. 38.

Poitiers, Richard archdeacon of, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 314 ; elected bishop of Winchester, 370 ; carries news of the Flemish invasion to Henry II., 377 ; consecrated, 381 ; dies, 428.

Poitou, Roger count of, taken prisoner by Robert of Normandy, ii. 43.

Ponte, Reginald de, assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, iv. 54.

Ponthieu, Godwin count of, imprisons Harold as a spy, i. 501.

Pontibus, R. de, abbot of S. John in England, one of king John's commissioners to treat for peace with Philip II., iii. 293.

Poore, Herbert, (bishop,) *v.* Salisbury.

Popa, daughter of duke Berengar and wife of Rollo, i. 376 ; repudiated, 377 ; restored, *ib.*

Popo, a clerk, his religious controversy with the Danes, and fiery test, i. 412 ; is made a bishop, *ib.*

Poreta, Gilbert, his heresy condemned, ii. 197.

Port and his two sons settle on the coast of Britain, i. 55.

Porta, Gallis de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.  
 Portesmuth, origin of the name of, i. 55.  
 Porto, Conrad bishop of, and legate, his letter respecting the Albigenses, iv. 87.  
 Possessa, Guy de, a crusader, ii. 62; dies, 84.  
 Prester John, king of India, letter to him from the pope, ii. 408.  
 'Pridwen,' the name of king Arthur's shield, i. 64.  
 Principato, Richard and Ranulph del, crusaders, ii. 76.  
 Priscian the Grammian flourishes, i. 82.  
 Prosper of Aquitaine writes against Eutyches, i. 37.  
 Pudsey, Hugh de, (bishop,) v. Durham.  
 Puinter, Puintil, or Puintuna, Alexander de, excommunicated, iii. 50; confederates against king John, 297; again excommunicated, 356.  
 Purification of the Virgin, festival of, instituted, i. 73.  
 Puthric, bishop of Rochester, i. 270 and note.  
 Putta, bishop of Rochester, present in the council of Hertford, i. 162.  
 Puya, Everard de, a crusader, ii. 62, 101, 120.

## Q.

Quenburga, one of the sisters of Ine of Wessex, i. 216.  
 Quenci, Saher de, (earl of Winchester,) delivers the castle of Ruil to Philip II., and is imprisoned by him, iii. 172; is a witness of king John's submission to the pope, 254; becomes his surety that he will make restitution to the clergy, 283; joins the insurgent barons, 297; is excommunicated, 355; sent to offer the crown to Louis, 359; induces Louis to spare S. Alban's abbey, iv. 6; goes to the relief of his own castle of Montsorel, 15; reconnoitres the royal army near Lincoln, 20; is taken prisoner, 23; goes to the Holy Land, 44.  
 Quenci, R. de, (son of the preceding,) excommunicated, iii. 355.  
 Quendrida, wife of Offa of Mercia,

murders Aethelberht of East-Anglia, i. 250.  
 Quendrida, daughter of Cœnulf of Mercia, i. 263; murders her brother Céneelm, 273; her punishment, 274.

## R.

Rabbodus, duke of Frisia, anecdote respecting his baptism, i. 212.  
 Radegundis (S.), wife of Clotaire I., takes the veil, i. 80.  
 Ralph (bishop), v. Chichester, Orkneys, and Rochester.  
 Ramsbury or Wilton, bishops of, v. Aethelstan, Odo, Osuulf, Brithwold, Herman, Algar, Elstan, Sircius, Aelfric.  
 Ramsey, Aldwin abbot of, degraded, ii. 171; restored, 172.  
 Rancuna, Geoffrey de, a French crusader, ii. 242.  
 Ranulf, earl, (nephew of Edward III.) defeated by the Welch, i. 494.  
 Ranulf, chancellor of king Henry I., his character and death, ii. 202.  
 Ranulphus Teutonicus' appointed governor of Berkhamstead castle by king John, iii. 353.  
 Ravenna, Guibert bishop of, (anti-pope,) v. Guibert.  
 Ravenna (or Rancuna, note), Geoffrey de, his possessions wasted by Richard I., iii. 84.  
 Raymond, count of Thoulouse, assumes the cross, ii. 62; his march, 77; refuses an oath of fealty to Alexius, 78; joins the main army, 81; attacked by Solyman, 89; is sent with others to conduct the Genoese to the camp, 101; objects to giving Antioch to Bohemond, 107; is left in charge of the city during the great sortie, 120; takes Albara, 127; quarrels with Bohemond, 128; is accused of a religious imposture, 129; receives a bribe from the Turks, 130; his station before Jerusalem, 134; scales the walls, 142; leads a fresh army of crusaders from Constantinople, 173.  
 Raymond of Poitou marries a daughter of Bohemond II. and becomes prince of Antioch, ii. 213; slain by the Turks, 244.  
 Raymond, count of Tripoli, slain by the Assassins, ii. 245.

Raymond, count of Tripoli, taken prisoner by Noureddin, ii. 313; appointed administrator of the kingdom, and guardian of Baldwin V., 414, *seq.*; leads the army against Saladin, 422; defeated, 423; dies, 433.

Raymond, a monk of S. Alban's, one of the messengers of Richard I. to the pope, iii. 134.

Raymond, nephew of Hubert de Burgh, proposes marriage to the countess of Salisbury, iv. 113.

Reading, council at, iii. 187.

Reading, [Simon] abbot of, commissioned, with others, to excommunicate the barons in arms against king John, iii. 336.

Readulf of Northumbria slain by the Danes, i. 283.

Récarede, king of the Visigoths, renounces Arian opinions in the council of Toledo, and procures the conversion of his nation, i. 96.

Rees, prince of South Wales, does homage to Henry II. and to prince Henry, ii. 298.

Regberht, the pagan who killed Eorwald of East-Anglia, i. 129.

Reginald, son of Guthred, expelled Northumbria by king Eadmund, i. 396; becomes his godson, 397.

Reginald, brother of king Yric, murdered, i. 403.

Reginald, lord of Sidon, escapes from the battle of Tiberias, ii. 423; is accused of the murder of the marquis of Mont-Ferrat, iii. 74.

Reginald, a retainer of Faulkes de Breauté, slain in the battle of Lincoln, iv. 24.

Regnacarius killed by his kinsman Clovis I., i. 39.

Reinelm (bishop), *v.* Hereford.

Reiner, the commander of Reedwald's army, slain in the battle of the Idle, i. 116.

Reiner, an officer of the earl of ManDEVILLE, punishment of his sacrilege, ii. 235, *seq.*

Remigius, or Remi, archbishop of Rouen, sent to Fleury for the relics of S. Benedict, i. 229; his ill-success, 230.

Remigius (bishop), *v.* Dorchester.

Reodwald of East-Anglia (son of Tyillus, i. 86,) protects Eadwin on his expulsion from Deira, 96;

kills Aethelfrith of Northumbria in the battle of the Idle, 116; his death, 100 and *note*, 124.

Rheims, council of, ii. 197.

Rheims, archbishops of:

- Remigius or Remi, transfers his see to Laon, i. 65; consecrates Vedastus first bishop of Aras, 69; his death, 76.
- Ricobert, deposed by Charles of France, i. 214.
- Artaud, crowns Louis d'Outremer, i. 391.
- William, crowns Philip II., ii. 404; confers the cross upon Henry II., 426; is one of the mediators between him and Philip, 442.
- Henry, one of the commissioners to negotiate a truce with England, iv. 224.

Rhesus, a Welch prince, his head presented to Eadward III., i. 492.

RiburgismonTE (Ribemont, or Remiremont), Anselm de, a crusader, ii. 119.

Ricdritha, queen, dies, i. 246 and *note*.

Richard I. of Normandy, i. 397, retaliates on Saxon travellers the injurious treatment of his daughter by king Aethelred, 427; is reconciled to him by the pope, *ib.*; his death, 430.

Richard II. of Normandy, i. 430, gives an asylum to the family of Aethelred II., 448, 462; his death, 465.

Richard III. of Normandy, i. 465.

Richard, second son of the Conqueror, dies, ii. 25.

Richard, son of Henry I., drowned, ii. 201.

Richard I. of England (third son of Henry II. and Eleanor) born, ii. 287; joins the rebellion of his brother Henry, 369; seizes Saintonge, 376; is reconciled to his father, 382; takes the castle of Taillebourg, 406; refuses homage to his brother Henry, 410; assumes the cross, 426; again alienated from his father, 427; unites with Philip II. in harassing him, 435; does homage to Philip, 438; their joint successes in Normandy, 439; terms obtained for him from his father, 442, *seq.*; his conduct on viewing his father's corpse, 444; his first acts on his accession, iii. 1; orders the release of his mother,

and makes her regent, 2, *seq.*; his acts upon his arrival in England, 3; his coronation, 5, *seq.*; his bounty to the Cistercians, 8; his expedients for raising money for the crusade, 9; promises to accompany the king of France, 12; reconciles the archbishop of Canterbury and his monks, 13; receives the homage of the Scottish king, 14; passes into Normandy, *ib.*; his agreement with king Philip, 16; his letters patent to his chancellor, 24; appoints statutes and officers for the government of his fleet, *ib.*; meets Philip, 25; hires ships, 26; enters the Tiber, but refuses the pope's invitation, 27; his transactions with the king of Sicily, *ib.*; declares his nephew Arthur his heir, *ib.*; sum paid by him to be released from his engagement to Philip's sister, 28; his reception at Messina, etc., 31, *seq.*; conquers Cyprus, 37; espouses Berengaria, 38; takes a Turkish vessel, 40; joins the army before Acre, 41; his offers to Philip to induce him to remain, 43; takes all the places on the coast, 44; his letter to the archbishop of Rouen, 45; redeems the relics taken by Saladin, 47; his letters home respecting his chancellor, 49; takes Damum, and captures 7000 laden camels, 54, *seq.*; his conduct on discovering the duke of Burgundy's treachery, 56, *seq.*; consults a hermit, 58; raises the siege of Joppa, 59, *seq.*; gains a great victory, 61, *seq.*; makes a truce with Saladin, 64; leaves Palestine, 65; travels as a merchant, 66, *seq.*; is seized by the duke of Austria, 68, and sold to the emperor, 70; answers the accusations of the latter, 72; his ransom, 73; obtains the testimony of the Old Man of the Mountain, 74; is released, 80; crowned at Winchester, 82; pardons his brother John, and raises the siege of Verneuil, *ib.*; takes Loches, 83; expels the French from Touraine, 84; makes a truce with Philip, 85; orders tournaments in England, *ib.*; complains to the pope against the duke of Austria, 86; his treaty and subsequent

rupture with Philip, 93, *seq.*; quarrels with the archbishop of Rouen, 95; sends to Rome to state his case, 118; his convention with the archbishop, 119, *seq.*; burns St. Valery, 121; bribes the earl of Flanders, etc., *ib.*; his laws against fraud, 123; is reconciled to his brother Geoffrey, 128; defeats king Philip, 130; orders a thanksgiving, 132; is prevailed upon by the legate to make peace, 133, *seq.*; is mortally wounded, 135; his epitaph, 136; vision and legends respecting him, iv. 234, *seq.*; anecdotes of his piety, 238.

Richard, second son of king John, born, iii. 220; created earl of Cornwall and Poitou by his brother Henry, and sent into Gascony, iv. 100, *seq.*; routs the earl of La Marche, 102; returns to England, 141; his quarrel and reconciliation with his brother, *ib.*, *seq.*; marries the countess of Gloucester, 220; becomes a surety for Hubert de Burgh, 258; attends a council at Westminster, 270.

Richard (natural son of king John) puts to death Eustace le Moine, iv. 29, *seq.*

Richard, son of earl Ranulph, a crusader, ii. 76.

Richard (bishop), v. Canterbury, Coventry, Hereford, London, and Poitiers.

Riche, Edmund, canon of Salisbury, v. Canterbury.

Ricsi of Northumbria, i. 325, dies of a broken heart, 327.

Ricula, sister of Aethelberht of Kent, and mother of Sebert of Essex, i. 105.

Ridel, Geoffrey, (bishop.) v. Ely.

Ridel, Stephen, pays a hundred marks for his ransom, iii. 358.

Ritherius, bishop of Verona, writes against the Anthropomorphite, i. 402.

Rivaulex, Peter de, (son of Peter, bishop of Winchester, iv. 264,) appointed treasurer by Henry III. 244; receives the custody of the castles throughout England, 264; becomes surety for the king to the earl-marshal, 275; escapes from the battle of Grosmont, 278; joins in a scheme for the destruction of

the earl-marshall, 292 ; is dismissed by the king, 299 ; flies to Winchester cathedral, and resumes the tonsure, 312 ; answers before the king, etc., 313.

Rivers, Baldwin de, banished by king Stephen, ii. 219.

Rivers, Margaret de, wife of Faulkes de Breaute, sues for a divorce, iv. 98.

Robert, duke, (i. 376 and note,) becomes sponsor for Rollo, and changes his name to Robert, 377.

Robert I. of Normandy, v. Rollo.

Robert II. of Normandy, i. 466 ; his amour, 469 ; appoints guardians for his son, and goes to Jerusalem, *ib.*

Robert, eldest son of the Conqueror, ii. 6 ; is refused Normandy by his father, and joins the French king, 16, 25 ; wounds his father, 17 ; inherits Normandy, 29 ; his duchy invaded by Rufus, etc., 37 ; his second quarrel with him, 43 ; assumes the cross, 62 ; pawns Normandy, 79 ; joins the grand army, 81 ; his conduct in the battle of Dorylaeum, 87 ; takes Azena, 90 ; reconnoitres the passage of the Orontes, 91 ;feat performed by him before Antioch, 103 ; repulses an assault, 113 ; leads the third division in the great sortie, 120 ; marches upon Jerusalem, 129 ; is chosen king miraculously, 146 and note ; his bravery in the battle of Ascalon, 149 ; deposits the Turkish standard in the church of the Holy Sepulchre, 150 ; returns to Normandy, 165 ; his agreement with his brother Henry, 170 ; gives up his annuity, 172 ; his duchy invaded by Henry, 175 ; is taken prisoner, 181 ; his death and burial, 214.

Robert, archbishop of Canterbury, translated from London, i. 486 ; banished, and restored, 491.

Robert (bishop), v. Exeter and Hereford.

Roche, Fencard de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Rochemont, William de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Roches, Peter des, (bishop,) v. Winchester.

Roches, William des, withdraws prince Arthur from the tutelage of Philip II., and delivers him and the city of Le Mans to king John, iii. 142.

Rochester castle besieged, iii. 331 ; taken, 333, *seqq.*

Rochester, bishops of:

- [For those before the Conquest, v. Justus, Paulinus, Ithamar, Putta, Godmund or Gebmund, Tobias, Ealdulph, Dun, Beornraed, Puthric, Suithulf, Godwin.]
- Hernostus, consecrated, ii. 36.
- Gundulf, ii. 36, 54 ; sides with archbishop Anselm in his quarrel with Rufus, 48.
- Ralph, assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, ii. 185 ; is translated to Canterbury, 191 and note ; consecrated, 192 ; consecrates queen Adeliza, 201 ; dies, 202.
- Arnulph, dies, ii. 204.
- John, archdeacon of Canterbury, elected, ii. 205 ; dies, 220.
- Asceline, dies, ii. 237.
- Walter, archdeacon of Canterbury, consecrated, ii. 237 ; consecrates Bartholomew bishop of Exeter, 290 ; ordains Becket a priest, 292 ; is suspended by the pope, 358 ; dies, 410.
- Gilbert de Glanville, (archdeacon of Luxeuil,) consecrated, ii. 418 ; appointed with others to adjudicate respecting the bishop of Coventry, iii. 18 ; accompanies the chancellor in his flight, 52 ; appeals against the consecration of the bishop of Ely by the bishop of London, 174 ; dies, 281.
- Benedict, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302 ; dies, iv. 138.
- Henry de Sandfort, archdeacon of Canterbury, consecrated, iv. 141 ; sent to Rome to oppose the election of Walter de Heynesham, 171 ; consecrates Richard archbishop of Canterbury and two bishops, 204 ; his vision respecting Richard I., 234 ; is sent to make peace with the earl-marshall, 299 ; dies, 325.

Rockingham castle taken, iv. 65.

Roderick, king of Connacht, withdraws himself to avoid doing homage to Henry II., ii. 366.

Rodoam, prince of Aleppo, kills Bohemond II., ii. 211.

Rodolph, duke of Burgundy, chosen emperor by insurgents, ii. 19; defeated by Henry IV., 20, and slain, 21.

Rodune, William, deputy-marshal, dismissed from his office by Henry III., iv. 263.

Roger, son of [Robert] Guiscard of Apulia, ii. 27.

Roger, master of the Hospital at Jerusalem, accompanies the patriarch on his mission to England, ii. 415.

Roger, lord of the territory taken from the Albigenses, placed in the custody of Simon de Montfort, iii. 270.

Roger (bishops), v. York, Coventry, Salisbury, and Worcester.

Rollo (or Robert I., i. 377) a noble Dane, his failure in England, and dream, 364; goes to France, and becomes duke of Normandy, 365; his panic before Chartres, 374; takes Bayeux, and marries Popa, 376; plunders Paris and Evreux, ib.; makes peace, marries a French princess, and is baptized by the name of Robert, 377; his indecorous treatment of the king, ib.; on becoming a widower, he restores the repudiated Popa, ib.; his genealogy, ib.; his friendship with Aethelstan, 387 and note; dies, 391.

Romanus, pope, i. 366.

Romanus succeeds to the see of Rochester, i. 121.

Romanus, the legate, calls the council of Bourges, iv. 118; his demands on the part of the pope, 120, seq.; confesses that he had opposed them when at Rome, 123; proclaims a crusade against the earl of Thouars, 124; excommunicates him and his adherents, 129, 132; conceals the French king's death, 133; takes Avignon by treachery, 134; is directed to excite the French against the emperor, 168.

Romscot, its origin and nature, i. 216; S. Alban's monastery alone exempted from its payment, 258.

'Ron,' the name of king Arthur's spear, i. 64.

Roos, William de, his feudal service disputed between Henry II. and Becket, ii. 297.

Roos, Robert de, fined for the loss of a prisoner, iii. 96; confederates against king John, 297; excommunicated, 355; assists in subduing Yorkshire, 379.

Roos, William de, (son of Robert,) excommunicated, iii. 355; taken prisoner, iv. 24.

Ropeley, Robert de, attends king John to Runnymede, iii. 302; excommunicated, 356; assists Gilbert de Gant in reducing Lincolnshire, 379; is taken prisoner, iv. 24.

Rouen, archbishops of:

- Gildard, his death, i. 70.
- Romanus, famous for his sanctity and miracles, i. 123.
- Remigius, v. Remigius.
- Franco, baptizes Rollo, i. 377.
- William, holds a council at Lillebone, ii. 21.
- Geoffrey, present at the dedication of S. Alban's, ii. 193.
- Rotred, procures the reconciliation of Henry II. and Becket, ii. 355; crowns princess Margaret, 369.
- Walter de Constantis, v. Lincoln.

Rosen, John dean of, v. Worcester.

Roussillon, Gerard de, a crusader, ii. 62, 77, 120.

Roussillon, the count of, and his brothers, crusaders, ii. 76.

Roussillon, Peter de, a crusader, takes Rufa, etc., ii. 90.

Roussillon, Accald de, sent to Thoulouse to demand the Albigenses, iii. 271.

Rouwen, daughter of Hengest, arrives in Britain, i. 11; her marriage with Wyrtgeorne, ib.; poisons her stepson Wortemer, and procures the recall of her father, 17.

Rufus, Walter, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Rusci, Alan de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

'Rutupi portus,' the ancient name of Sandwich, i. 74.

S.

Sabinianus, pope, i. 108; his vision and death, 109.

Sables, Robert des, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24, 30.

Sackville, Nigel de, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 360.

Sagitta (*la Flèche*), Reginald de, a crusader, iii. 22.

S. Alban's, *v. Alban's*, S.

S. Asaph, *v. Asaph*, S.

S. Barbara, William de, dean of York, *v. Durham*.

S. David's, *v. David's*, S.

S. Denis, Robert de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

S. Edmund's, *v. Edmund's*, S.

S. Giles, count of, conspires to intercept Richard I. on his return from the Holy Land, iii. 66.

S. Hilary, Hascalph de, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375.

S. Omer, Godfrey de, one of the founders of the order of Knights Templars, ii. 195.

S. Omer, Hugh de, governor of Tiberias, comes to the aid of Baldwin I., ii. 177.

S. Omer's, a castellan of, sent over to the English barons by prince Louis, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.

S. Paul, Hugh count of, a crusader, ii. 62, 74, 87, 120.

S. Paul, Guy II. count of, one of the French commanders in the battle of Bovines, iii. 291.

S. Paul, Hugh V., count of, absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., iv. 136; confederates against the count of Champagne, 212.

S. Sabina, Thomas cardinal of, one of the examiners of Walter de Heynesham, iv. 185.

S. Victor, Hugh de, ii. 209.

Saintes, [Henry] archbishop of, sent to Toulouse to demand the Albigenses, iii. 271.

Saladin, sultan of Damascus, his conquests, ii. 414; prepares to avenge an insult to his mother, 421; his successes, 422; captures the king of Jerusalem and the holy cross, 423; takes Jerusalem, etc., 424; his answer to the emperor Frederic, 430; releases the king of Jerusalem, 432; retires from before Acre, 434; fights a battle near Antioch, iii. 11; his officers and their territories, 22, seq.; breaks his engagements with the Christians, 42; defeated near Assur, 45; sells relics to king Richard I., 47; bribes the duke of Burgundy, 56; raises the siege of Joppa, 59; rout of his army, 61, seq.; dies, 75.

Salisbury, bishops of:

- Osmund, dies, ii. 157.
- Roger, consecrated, ii. 183; grants land to Wimund the canon, 188; is present at the dedication of S. Alban's, 193; is deprived of his castles by king Stephen, 226; dies, 227.
- Jocelyn de Balliol, ii. 294; excommunicated by Becket, 314, 334; suspended by the pope, 358; dies, 412.
- Hubert Walter, *v. Walter*.
- Herbert Poore, (archdeacon of Canterbury, ii. 384), consecrated, iii. 83.
- Richard [Poore], dean, and afterwards bishop, *v. Chichester*.
- Robert de Bingham, canon of, elected, iv. 156; consecrated, 203.

Salisbury, Reginald archdeacon of, one of the embassy to Rome against Becket, ii. 336; elected bishop of Bath, 370; goes again to Rome, 375; dies shortly after his election to the see of Canterbury, iii. 54.

Salisbury, deans of:

- Robert, *v. Exeter*.
- John, *v. Norwich*.
- Eustace, *v. Ely*.

Salisbury, Edmund Riche canon of, *v. Canterbury*.

Salisbury, earls of, *v. Longespee*.

Salisbury, [Idonea] countess of, her conduct to a suitor for her hand, iv. 113.

Salop, Hugh earl of, slain by the Irish, ii. 128.

Salvianus, a priest of Marseilles, i. 36.

Samson, archbishop of York, i. 45 and note, 57; becomes subsequently archbishop of Dol, 82, iii. 144.

Samson (second of the name), archbishop of Dol, his sanctity and learning, i. 82.

Samson (bishop), *v. Worcester*.

Sancho VI. of Navarre, his dispute with the king of Castile, ii. 386.

Sancho I. of Portugal takes the town of Silves, ii. 440; hires eighty English crusaders, iii. 29.

Sandfort, Henry de, (bishop,) *v. Rochester*.

Sans-avoir, Walter, (the first crusader,) his expedition, ii. 65; he is slain by Solyman, 69.

Saphadin, brother of Saladin, iii. 22; sends reinforcements to Acre, 40;

murders his nephews, and seizes the empire, etc., 76, *seqq.*; dies, iv. 42.

Savary, P., nominated by Philip II. to treat for peace with king John, iii. 293.

Savary (bishop), *v.* Bath.

Saxony, Henry V. duke of, marries Matilda daughter of Henry II., ii. 312; sends an embassy to Henry, 387; is expelled by the emperor, 410; arrives in England with his family, 412; is restored, 418.

Saxony, Albert I. duke of, visits England, iv. 211.

Scholastica (S.), her body translated from Monte Casino to Le Mans, i. 175.

School, the English, at Rome, built, i. 215; is supported by an annual tribute called 'Romscof,' 216; is destroyed by fire, 272.

Scot, John le, succeeds to the earldom of Chester, iv. 256; meets Henry III. at Westminster, 270; deserts the earl-marshall, 271.

Scot, William le, a clerk of Durham, elected bishop by the monks, but opposed by Henry III., iv. 129; rejected by the pope, 156.

Scotland, *v.* names of the kings.

Scotus, *v.* Johannes, and Marianus.

Sea-fight in the Channel, iv. 28, *seq.*

Sebastian (S.), translation of his remains, i. 181.

Sebba and Sigheri jointly kings of Essex, i. 164.

Sebert of Essex converted, i. 105; his dominion, *ib.*; his death, 113.

Seckington, battle of, i. 233.

Segrave, Stephen de, appointed justiciary by Henry III., iv. 245; escapes from the battle of Gresmunt, 278; his conduct on behold-ing his town in flames, 297; dis-missed from his office, 299; takes refuge in St. Mary's, Leicester, 312; answers before the king, 314; makes fine, and is pardoned, 325.

Seinte More, *v.* Seymour.

Seloamir, king of the Abroditiæ (or Abodriti, a people of Germany), is expelled by Louis le Débonnaire, and takes refuge with the Danes, i. 272.

Selraed, son of Sigeberht the Good, succeeds Offa of Essex, i. 203 and note; his death, 226.

Selsey, bishops of, *v.* Eadberht, Colla, Guthard, Aelfred, Aethelgar, Ead-elme, Ordbrith, Ealmar, Aethelric, Grinketel, Hecca.

Sens, William archbishop of, prohibits the reconciliation of Henry II. and Becket without his know-ledge, ii. 333; is present at the same, 355; ordered to put down the heresy of Peter Lombard, 400.

Sensabolus, son of Accianus, delivers his fortress to Kerboga, ii. 111.

Seraph, son of Saphadin, engages in a war against the eastern Saracens, iv. 74.

Sergius I., pope, i. 181; baptizes Ceadwalla, and gives him the name of Peter, 183; orders Alfrith of Northumbria to reinstate archbishop Wilfrid, 186; discovers a great portion of the cross in the sacarium of St. Peter's, 188; sends Wilbord to Friesia, 189; his letter to abbot Ceolfrith, 221.

Sergius II. (or Pelagius), pope, i. 282.

Sergius III., pope, i. 371.

Sergius IV., pope, i. 438.

Sergius, an apostate monk, the in-structor of Mahomet, iv. 43.

Severinus, pope, i. 136.

Severus, bishop of Trèves, a disciple of Lupus, aids Germanus against the Pelagians, i. 9.

Severus, priest, *v.* Germanus.

Sexburga, daughter of Anna of East-Anglia and wife of Earconberht of Kent, i. 137.

Sexburga, wife of Ini of Wessex, i. 216.

Sexburga, widow of Cynewealh, con-tinues the government, but is ex-pelled by the nobles, i. 162.

Sezred and Siward, sons of Sebert of Essex, restore idolatry, i. 113; are refused the eucharist by Mellitus, *ib.*, whom they expel, 114; are slain by Cynegils and Cuichelm, *ib.* 124.

Sexwulf, bishop of Mercia and the Mid-Angles, founder of Medesham-stede, loses part of his diocese, i. 164.

Seymour, Hugh de, incites prince Henry against his father (Henry II.), ii. 367.

Shaftesbury built, *Pref.* xii.

Sherborne, bishops of, *v.* Aldhelm, Forther, Wilberht, Castan, Wiberht, Aethelstan, Siguelm, Aethelwald,

Eahlstan, Hamund, Aethelheah, Asser, Suuithelm, Aethelwald, Werstan, Aethelbald, Aelfred, Wlisi or Wlstan, Beorhtric, Elmar, Herman. Shrewsbury burned by Richard Marshal and Llewellyn, iv. 291. Sibylla, sister of Baldwin IV. of Jerusalem, widow of William marquis of Mont-Ferrat, and wife of Guy de Lusignan, ii. 414 ; her coronation, and conjugal fidelity, 420, *seq.* ; death, iii. 46. Sichelin, king of Norway, bequeaths his throne to his nephew Loth, i. 70. Sicily, William king of, his conquests, and reconciliation with the pope, ii. 284. Sicily, Tancred king of, satisfies the claims of Richard I., iii. 27 ; dies, 89. Sicily, Frederic king of, v. Frederic II., emperor. Sideman, abbot of Exeter, i. 412. Siferth, a Welch king, i. 415. Sifred of Kent, v. Withred. Sifred (bishop), v. Chichester. Sigan, the murderer of Alfwold of Northumbria, i. 247. Sigar, bishop of Wells, i. 424 ; dies, 430. Sigeberht the Little, son of Siward, succeeds to the throne of Essex, i. 124. Sigeberht II. of Essex, his baptism, i. 143 ; sends to Oswiil for instructors, *ib.* ; dies by violence, *ib.* Sigeberht of East-Anglia succeeds his brother Eorpwald, i. 135 ; becomes a monk, and makes Egric his successor, 136 ; is forcibly placed at their head by the East-Angles, and slain in battle by Penda, 148. Sigeberht of Weasex succeeds his kinsman Cuthred, i. 233 ; his tyrannical conduct, *ib.* ; his deposition and death, 234. Sigeberht, brother of Clovis IL, governs Austria, i. 141. Sigebert of Gemblours finishes his chronicle, ii. 157 and *note*, 166. Sigeferth, a Northumbrian earl, put to death by Eadric Streona, i. 451. Sighelm, bishop of Sherborne, slain by the Danes, i. 278. Sigheri, king of Essex, his death, i. 176. Sigfred, archbishop of Mayence, crowns Rodolph of Burgundy, ii. 19. Sigillo, or Seale, Robert de, (bishop,) v. London. Sihtric of Northumbria becomes a Christian, i. 385, and marries Eadgitha, sister of king Aethelstan, 369, 385 ; relapses, repudiates his wife, and dies miserably, 385, *seq.* Silverius, pope, i. 66. Silves, in Portugal, taken by some crusaders, ii. 440. Silvester II., (Gerbert,) legend of, i. 431. Silvester (called the third), pope, i. 484. Silvester (bishop), v. Worcester. Simon, earl, present in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 229 ; surrenders to the French king, 372. Simon (bishop), v. Worcester. Simon (abbot), v. Alban's, S. Simplicius, pope, i. 36. Siricius, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 427 ; advised the payment of Dane-geld, *ib.* ; his death, 437. Siricius, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495. Sisinnius, pope, i. 200. Siward, son of Sebert of Essex, v. Sexred. Siward, vicar of archbishop Eadsius, i. 483 ; his death, 486. Siward, earl of Northumbria, expels Macbeth of Scotland, i. 493 ; dies, *ib.* Siward, earl, taken prisoner by the Conqueror, ii. 8, *seq.* Siward, Richard, his apprehension ordered by Henry III., iv. 270 ; joins the confederated barons, 271 ; lies in wait for the foreign mercenaries, 282 ; wastes the possessions of the king's brother, and of his ministers, 290 ; burns Alcmundbury, 297 ; again ravages the lands of the ministers, 308 ; is reconciled to the king, 310. Siward, Thomas, taken prisoner by the royalists in the battle of Monmouth, iv. 282. Sledda, son of Earconwine, succeeds his father in Essex, i. 93 ; marries a daughter of Eormenric of Kent, 94. Soceinmi or Soteini, Gerard de, employed by king John against his barons, iii. 331 ; marches with him towards the north, 348.

Solomon, king of Britanny, i. 130.  
 Solomon, governor of Cilicia, captured by Noureddin, ii. 313.  
 Soliman, Sultan, destroys the army of Peter the Hermit and of Sans-avoir, ii. 69; marches to the relief of Nice, 82; is repulsed, 83; his wife and two sons taken prisoners, 85; is routed at Doryleum, 86; goes to the aid of Kerboga, 122.  
 Spain ravaged by the Moors, iii. 89.  
 Sprea, Thomas de, a crusader, ii. 63.  
 Stagno, William de, an attendant upon Richard I. in Germany, iii. 68.  
 Standard, battle of the, ii. 222.  
 Standford-Bridge, battle of, i. 514.  
 Stephen II., pope, i. 231.  
 Stephen III., pope, v. Adrian I.  
 Stephen IV., pope, i. 272.  
 Stephen VI., pope, i. 365.  
 Stephen VII., pope, i. 388.  
 Stephen VIII., pope, i. 392.  
 Stephen, (king,) son of Stephen count of Blois, does homage to the empress Maud, ii. 207; is crowned, 216; his alliance with David I., 218; rumour of his death, and its consequences, 219; his acts in Normandy, 220; besieges Bedford castle, 221; ravages Scotland, 222, 225; his conduct to the bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln, 226; banishes the bishop of Ely, 227; lays siege to Lincoln, *ib.*; is taken prisoner, 229; released, 230; put to flight at Winchester, 231, and *note*; takes Oxford castle, 232; captures William de Mandeville, 233; again besieges Lincoln, 235; takes Faringdon, 236; imprisons the earl of Chester, *ib.*; allows the monks of S. Alban's to elect an abbot, 249; rases the castle of Crowmarsh, 254; acknowledges Henry of Normandy as his heir, 255; his death and burial, 272.  
 Stephen, king of Hungary, protects the children of Eadmund Iron-side, i. 462 and *note*.  
 Stephen, the pope's nuncio, arrives in England to collect the tithes promised to the pope, iv. 198; his proceedings in the council at Westminster, 200, *seq.*, and grievous exaction of the tithes, 202.  
 Stigand, his simony, i. 476; becomes bishop of Elmham, 483; of Win-chester, 484; and archbishop of Canterbury, 492; is suspended, 503; flies to Scotland, ii. 7; is deposed, 8; he purchased the three sees, *ib.*  
 Stodham, William de, one of the knights entrusted with the defence of Belvoir castle, iii. 350.  
 Stonehenge, account of its origin, i. 44.  
 Storms, i. 266; ii. 215, 367; iii. 167, 210; iv. 82, 171, 208, 258, 266.  
 Streneshalh, council of, i. 157.  
 Stuph, a nephew of Cerdic, arrives in Britain, i. 60.  
 Stuteville, Nicholas de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355, 357.  
 Suabia, Philip duke of, his station before Acre, iii. 21; his election as king of Germany annulled, and himself excommunicated, 142; harasses Otho, 146.  
 Suabia, Henry duke of, sent by the emperor Otho to king John for money, iii. 225.  
 'Surda-valle,' Robert de, a crusader, ii. 76.  
 Sussex, rise of the kingdom of, i. 49; united to Wesssex, 94.  
 Sutton (Sutuna), Alexander de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 357.  
 Sweyn, king of Denmark, ravages the south of England, i. 429; his forbearance purchased by Aethelred II., *ib.*; his second invasion, and receipt of a further sum, 437; procures a settlement for his countrymen, and goes back to Denmark, 441; returns to England, to avenge their massacre, 445; leaves the fleet in charge of Cnut, and subjugates the north, 446; devastates the south, and orders all males to be slain, *ib.*; is checked at London, 447; plunders Wallingford and Bath, receives the submission of the nobles, and assumes the title of king of England, 447; his death, 449.  
 Sweyn, son of Cnut, i. 462; made king of Norway by his father, 472.  
 Sweyn, eldest son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489; is excepted from the amnesty granted to his family, and frozen to death on a pilgrimage, 491.

Sweyn, a Danish prince, his army destroyed by the Turks, ii. 95 and *note*.  
 Suiuthelm, bishop of Sherborne, carried king Aelfred's alma to St. Thomas in India, and brought back many precious stones, i. 336.  
 Suiuthelm, son of Sexbald, becomes king of Essex, i. 143; his baptism, *ib.*  
 Suiuthraed, king of Essex, i. 226 and *note*; expelled by Ecgberht of Westsex, 276.  
 Suiuthulf, bishop of Rochester, one of the guardians of the realm, i. 363.  
 Swithune (S.), bishop of Winchester, orders weekly prayers to be offered for king Aethelwulf and the other parties to the royal charter, i. 289; his miracle, 296; orders his body to be buried without the church, 297; his translation, 413.  
 Symmachus, history of, after his election to the papal see, i. 55, *seq.*  
 Symmachus the patrician, father-in-law of Boetius, and his fellow-labourer in his translations from the Greek, i. 55.  
 Syria invaded by the Romans, who kill 200,000 Saracens, i. 196.

## T.

Tabari, Hugh de, a crusader, iii. 21.  
 Tacinus, a minister of Alexius, receives the surrender of Nice, ii. 86; deserts the crusaders, 95.  
 Tadfrith, a bishop who died before the confirmation of his election, and had been a monk of Strensham, i. 172.  
 Talbot, William, holds Hereford castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.  
 Talbot, William, arrests Geoffrey archdeacon of Norwich, iii. 229.  
 Tancarville, William de, chamberlain of Henry I., captures the earl of Meulant and his associates, ii. 204; deserts Henry II. and goes over to the young king, 371.  
 Tancred, king of Sicily, *v.* Sicily.  
 Tancred, son of marquis William, joins Bohemond the crusader, ii. 76; takes Maunstra, etc., 90; makes a sally from Antioch, 113; rescues Bohemond, 122; pursues the fugi-

tives, 124; marches upon Jerusalem, 129; discovers the bribery of Raymond, 131; his station in the siege, 134; plunders the Temple, 142; receives the government of Tiberias and Caypha, 151; surrenders them, and governs Antioch, 168; takes Appamia and Laodicea, 178; obtains the government of Edessa, 180; dies, 190.  
 Tannin taken, iv. 60.  
 Tatwin, archbishop of Canterbury, receives his pall, and ordains two bishops, i. 219; dies, 224.  
 Taxes, *v.* Holy Land.  
 Templars, origin of the order of, i. 118; their history, ii. 195.  
 Thacaldin, brother of Saladin, mortally wounded, iii. 12.  
 Thacun, Hugh, sent by prince Louis to encourage the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.  
 Thadioceus, archbishop of York, flies from the Saxons into Wales, i. 90.  
 Thaneo, Peter de, a collector of taxes, iv. 253.  
 Theban legion, martyrdom of, *Pref.* xiv.  
 Thelesphorus, pope, directs 'Gloria in excelsis' to be used only on the festival of Christmas, i. 56.  
 Theobald, son of Theobald of Flanders, marries a daughter of Louis VII., ii. 221.  
 Theobald, abbot of Bec, *v.* Canterbury.  
 Theodebert, with Theodoric, succeeds his father Childebert, i. 100.  
 Theodin, one of the legates who absolve Henry II., ii. 368; prevails on him to allow elections to the vacant sees, 370.  
 Theodora, wife of the emperor Justinian, sent by him to pope Vigilius to procure the restoration of Anthimus, i. 78.  
 Theodore, pope, i. 136.  
 Theodore II., pope, i. 366.  
 Theodore made archbishop of Canterbury by pope Vitalianus, i. 160; degrades Cedda, and confirms the election of Wilfrid, *ib.*; calls a council at Hertford, 162; deposes Winfrid, and consecrates Sexwulf in his place, 164; makes Earconwald bishop of London, *ib.*; consecrates five bishops, 168; reconciles Ecgfrith of Northumbria and Ae-

thelred of Mercia, by paying the weregild of Aescwini, 170 ; his profession of faith in the council of Heathfield, 172 ; his death, 184, and epitaph, 185.

Theodore, bishop of Cyria, i. 35.

Theodore, his heresy condemned, i. 78.

Theodoric, king of the Goths, ravages Macedonia and Thessaly, and occupies Italy, i. 39 ; decides between Symmachus and Lawrence, 55 ; puts Boetius to death, 65.

Theodoric, king of Bernicia, length of his reign, i. 86.

Theodoric, with Theodebert, succeeds his father Childebert, i. 100.

Theodoric III. king of the Franks, i. 176.

Theodoric, abbot, becomes famous in France, i. 70.

Theodoric, a German duke, defeated in Flanders, ii. 209.

Theodoric, master of the Templars, escapes from the battle of Tiberias, ii. 423.

Theodosius (or Theodosius) III., emperor, his brief reign, i. 211.

Theodred, bishop of London, i. 365.

Theodred, a Saxon admiral, i. 428.

Theodulphus, abbot, becomes celebrated in France, i. 70.

Theodwald, king of Bernicia, i. 84.

Theoneus (archbishop), v. London.

Theoney, Ralph de, builds a monastery for the Cistercians, iv. 156 ; is appointed a captain of the Poitain mercenaries, 279.

Theoney, Roger de, and his brother, legend respecting, iv. 155.

Theophilus the apostate, i. 71.

Theophilus (bishop), v. Worcester.

Thetford, see of, removed to Norwich, ii. 45.

Thomas (archbishops), v. York.

Thomas, bishop of Dunwich, i. 144.

Thomas, a monk of Coventry, his conversation with pope Celestine, iii. 127.

‘ Thomas Ateranensis,’ (Acerra or Arras ?) count, regent of the empire in the absence of Frederic II., restores to the Turks the spoil taken from them by the Templars, iv. 167 ; his letter to the emperor, 182.

Thoras, prince of Armenia, taken prisoner by Noureddin, ii. 313.

Thoulose summoned to surrender its

Albigensian inhabitants, iii. 270, seq. ; besieged by the dauphin, iv. 62.

Thoulose, Bertrand count of, takes Bibum, and is made governor of Tripoli, ii. 187.

Thoulose, Raymond VI. count of, joins the Albigenses, iii. 272.

Thoulose, Raymond VII. count of, his proceedings in the council of Bourges with respect to his inheritance, iv. 119 ; harasses the besiegers of Avignon, 131 ; surprises the French army, 169 ; his cruelty to his prisoners, 170.

Thrum, the murderer of S. Aelfeah, i. 440.

Thunder in winter, rustic proverb respecting, iv. 279.

Thuner, the murderer of SS. Aethelberht and Aethelred, i. 149.

Tiberias, battle of, ii. 423.

Tiberius (emperor) stops a famine at Rome by importing Egyptian corn, i. 85 ; succeeds to the empire, ib. ; is blessed by God for his liberality, ib. ; dies mad, 88.

Tiberius, son of Justinian II., put to death by Philippicus, i. 206.

Tidferth, bishop of Dunwich, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.

Tilberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 244.

Tobias, bishop of Rochester, his proficiency in the learned tongues, i. 188 ; his death, 214.

Tocce (? Tacy), Iterius de, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.

Toledo, council of, i. 96.

Toledo, predictions by the astronomers of, respecting the recovery of the Holy Land, iv. 180 ; and previously regarding its loss, 194.

Tonher, a soldier murdered with king Oswin, i. 145.

Tosti, son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489 ; restored, 491 ; made earl of Northumbria, 494 ; visits Rome, 502 ; assists Harold against the Welch, 503 ; assaults him, 507 ; his horrid revenge, 508 ; is banished by both king and people, ib. ; takes refuge in Flanders, 509 ; makes a descent in the north, and is repulsed by Eadwin and Morchar, 513 ; joins Harold Harvagre, and drives Morchar into York, 514 ; is slain at Standford-Bridge, ib.

Totila, king of the Ostrogoths, persecutes S. Benet, i. 72; beheads Herulianus, bishop of Perugia, 76.

Totta, first bishop of Leicester, i. 225, 239.

Toul, Reginald count of, a crusader, ii. 74, 120.

Tours, archbishops of:  
— Gregory, i. 84, 99.  
— Bartholomew, consecrates Geoffrey archbishop of York, iii. 38.

Tours, G. archdeacon of, appointed to treat for peace with king John, iii. 293.

Tours, Stephen de, seneschal of Anjou, burns the city of Le Mans, ii. 439; surrenders the castles, etc., in his custody to Richard I., iii. 1.

Tours, Amfrid de, a crusader, iii. 22.

Tours and Dol, disputes between the churches of, iii. 143.

Tracy, William de, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.

Trehelbi, king of Bulgaria, assists Justinian II. to recover his throne, i. 200.

Trent, battle of the, i. 170.

Tresmes, Otho de, a crusader, iii. 21.

Trèves, William archbishop of, sends an embassy to Henry II., ii. 387.

Trie, Cedunal de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

Triers, Aim, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

Trumwine, a bishop among the Picts, i. 168.

Tuda, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 159.

Tuintune, William de, excommunicated, iii. 356.

Tunberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 168.

Tunberht (or Tunfrith, i. 387), bishop of Lichfield, 324, dies, 387.

Tunher, abbot of 'Ingelingum,' afterwards bishop of Lichfield, i. 154.

Turenne, — vicomte de, a crusader, iii. 21.

Turkel leads the flight at the battle of Ipawich, i. 438; is made earl of East-Anglia by Cnut, 460; is banished, 465, and put to death in Denmark, *ib.*

Turnham, Robert de, surrenders to king John the treasure and castles in his custody, iii. 137.

Turpin, Guy, abbot, appointed by Philip II. to treat for peace with king John, iii. 293.

Turstan (archbishop), v. York.

Turstin, abbot of Glastonbury, his cruelty, ii. 20.

Twenge, Robert de, leader (under the name of William Wither) of the insurrection against the Italian clergy, iv. 241; justifies his conduct before the king, and receives testimonials from him to the pope, 242.

Tyre taken by the Christians, ii. 204.

Tyre, William archbishop of, legate to the West respecting the crusade, ii. 426.

Tyrel, Walter, kills William Rufus accidentally, ii. 157.

Tytillus, son of Uffa, succeeds him in East-Anglia, i. 86.

U.

Uffa, king of East-Anglia, i. 84; his death, 86.

'Uffingas,' who so called, and why, i. 86.

Uffrea, a son of Eadwin of Northumbria, flies to Kent on his father's death, i. 133.

Ulecotes, Philip de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237; appointed one of the governors of the country north of the Tees, 352; defends his castle against the Scots, 379.

Ulf, a Swedish king, slain by earl Godwin, i. 466.

Ulf, bishop of Dorchester, i. 487; banished, 491.

Ulm, Henry d', taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.

Ultanus, a brother of S. Furseus, follows him into France, i. 142.

Unnust, king of the Picts, dies, i. 236.

Unwona, fourth bishop of Leicester, i. 239; present at the invention of S. Alban, *ib.* 252.

Urban II., pope, ii. 35; consecrates Ivo of Beauvais to the see of Chartres, 43; excommunicates Philip I., 58; his sermon on the crusades, *ib.*, and death, 166.

Urban III., pope, allows the archbishop of Canterbury to build a church, ii. 419; revokes his permission, 425; dies, 426.

Urban (bishop), v. Glamorgan, and Llandaff.

Usurer, death of an, iv. 206.

Uther-pendragon, third son of king Constantine, educated in part by Guithelinus, and partly in Britanny, *Pref.* xxiii.; arrives in Britain, i. 34; brings the stones of the 'Chorea Gigantum' from Ireland, 45; slays the Irish king Gilloman and Pascentius in a battle in Wales, 52; consults astrologers respecting a singular atmospheric phenomenon, *ib.*; is crowned at Winchester, 53; origin and signification of his name, *ib.*; holds a solemn festival at Easter, 54; becomes enamoured of Igerna, wife of duke Gorlois, *ib.*; consequences of this attachment, *ib.*; his reverses during his last illness, 57; causes himself to be carried to battle in a litter, 59; is poisoned by the Saxons and buried at Stonehenge, 61.

## V.

Valencel, Ralph de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Valentinus, pope, i. 275.

Valery (S.), his remains translated, iii. 121.

Vedastus (S.) consecrated first bishop of Arras, i. 69.

Vendolio, Clarenbald de, persecutes the German Jews, ii. 72; is released from captivity, 75.

Venedotia, the ancient name of North Wales, i. 91.

Venice, Michael doge of, blockades Tyre by sea, ii. 204.

Vere, Aubrey de, earl of Oxford, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.

Vere, Robert de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.

Vere, William de, (bishop,) *v.* Hereford.

Vescy, Eustace de, (son-in-law of king William of Scotland, iii. 383,) sent on a mission to Scotland, 137; flies thither from king John, 240; joins the confederated barons, 297; is excommunicated, 355, and slain, 383.

Victor II., pope, i. 493.

Victor III., pope, (known previously as Desiderius, abbot of Monte-Cassino,) ii. 22, 27.

Victorinus writes the Paschal cycle of 532 years, i. 22.

Vieuxpont, Ivo de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.

Vieuxpont, Robert de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; appointed one of the governors of Yorkshire, 353; is present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93.

Vigilius, pope, i. 67; educates and knights Gawaine, nephew of king Arthur, 70; is banished by Justinian for refusing to restore Anthymus, 77; his answer to the emperor, 78.

Vitalianus, pope, receives an embroidered pall from the emperor Constantans, i. 160; appoints Theodore to the see of Canterbury, *ib.*

Vitré, Andrew de, refuses to do homage to Henry III., iv. 210.

Vitriaco, Jacobus de, *v.* Acre.

Vivian, one of the legates sent to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, ii. 333.

Vortigern, *v.* Wyrtgeorne.

Vortimer, *v.* Worteiner.

Vortipore, successor of Conanus, obtains several victories over the Saxons, i. 86; his death, 87.

## W.

Wade, his rebellion against Eardulf of Northumbria, i. 265.

Walcher (bishop), *v.* Durham.

Waleran, the crusader, taken prisoner, ii. 202.

\* Walerannus Teutonicus' surrenders Berkhamptead castle to prince Louis, iv. 6; deprived of a manor by the earl of Cornwall, 141.

Wales occupied by the Britons, i. 89; impracticable character of the country, 91.

Walkein surrenders Dover castle to queen Matilda, ii. 222.

Walkein (bishop), *v.* Winchester.

Wallangardum (? Val du Gardon), Theobald de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.

Walo, a legate sent by the pope to

deter prince Louis from invading England, iii. 363 ; expostulates with him and with his father, 365 ; follows him to England, 369 ; excommunicates him and Simon Langton, 370 ; levies an ecclesiastical tax, and confiscates the benefices of the adherents of Louis, 379 ; present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1 ; accompanies the army to the relief of Lincoln, 18 ; again excommunicates Louis, and absolves the royal army, 19 ; assists in effecting a peace, 30 ; absolves Louis, 32 ; his conduct to the clerical adherents of the barons, 33 ; procures the election of Richard de Marsh to the see of Durham, 46 ; mediates between the king and the earl of Albemarle, 67.

Walter, archdeacon of Oxford, brings a British history from Brittany, i. 184 and *note*.

Walter, bishop of Hereford, i. 496 and *note* ; consecrated at Rome, i. 502.

Walter, Hubert, dean of York, elected archbishop, but expelled by the ministers of archbishop Geoffrey, iii. 2 ; receives the bishopric of Salisbury, 9 ; consecrated, 13 ; lands at Tyre, 30 ; executes the will of archbishop Baldwin, 34 ; elected archbishop of Canterbury, and made justiciary, 79, *seq.* ; appointed legate, 90 ; is ordered by the pope to promote the crusade, 91 ; procures laws to be enacted against fraud, 123 ; ejects the clerks from Coventry, and restores the monks, 127 ; consecrates two bishops, 128 ; discharged from the office of justiciary, 129 ; compelled to raze a church built by him at Lambeth, 134, *seq.* ; deputed by king John to receive the fealty of the English barons, 137 ; consecrates William bishop of London, and crowns John, 139 ; again crowns him, and queen Isabella, 155 ; assists at the funeral of Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 162 ; emulates the king's munificence, 165 ; his severity in collecting the ecclesiastical tax, 173 ; is taken ill, 174 ; prohibits John's expedition to Normandy, 182 ; dies, 183.

Walter, chamberlain of Philip II. of France, taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.

Walter, a preaching friar, celebrates mass in the suburbs of Jerusalem, iv. 197 ; excommunicates the emperor, 199.

Walter (bishops), *v. Coventry, and Rochester.*

Waltham, Ralph, canon of Chichester, made prior of, ii. 387.

Waltheof, earl, flies to Scotland, ii. 2, 5 ; joins the Danish invaders, 6 ; his prowess at York, 7 ; is imprisoned for conspiracy, 16, and beheaded, 16.

Walwyn, *v. Gawaine.*

Wandregisilus, or Wandrille, (S.) born, i. 84.

Warewast, William de, ransacks the baggage of archbishop Anselm, ii. 48 ; acts as proctor of Henry I. at the papal court, 172 ; interdicts the return of Anselm, 176.

Warneville, Ralph de, sacristan of Rouen and treasurer of York, made chancellor of England, ii. 370.

Warrene, William earl of, one of king John's sureties that he will observe his compact with the pope, iii. 249, and a witness of his submission, 254 ; adheres to him against the barons, 300 ; is present at Runnymede, 302 ; deserts to Louis, 369 ; makes his submission to Henry III., iv. 12 ; receives the wardship of the wife of Faulkes de Breaute, 99 ; protects de Breaute in his access to the coast, 103 ; joins the earl of Cornwall against the king, 143 ; becomes a surety for Hubert de Burgh, 258.

Warwick, Gimbreda, countess of, delivers her castle to Henry of Normandy, ii. 254.

Warwick, William earl of, confederates with the earl of Cornwall against Henry III., iv. 143.

Wascul, Gilbert de, delivers Gisors to Philip II., iii. 79.

Wastold, bishop of Hereford, i. 224.

Weiss, (or Wiche,) George count of, one of the captors of Alcaçar do Sal, iv. 34 ; assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, 54.

Wells, bishops of :  
 [For those before the Conquest, *v. Eadulf, Athelm, Wulfhelm, El-feh, Beorhthelm, Cynewald, Sigar, Alfwine, Duduc, Gisa.*]

Wells, John, bishop of, removes his see to Bath, ii. 42; dies, 202.  
 Wells, *v.* Bath.  
 Wells, Hugh archdeacon of, *v.* Lincoln.  
 Wells, Jocelyn of, (bishop,) *v.* Bath.  
 Wendene (or Wendover), Richard de, elected bishop of Rochester, but rejected by the archbishop, iv. 325.  
 Wenunwen, king of Wales, defeated, iii. 129.  
 Werburgh (S.), daughter of Wulferi of Mercia and Ermenhilda, her history, i. 166.  
 Wereberht, third bishop of Leicester, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238; dies, 239.  
 Wereberht, bishop of Leicester, one of the instructors of king Alfred, i. 324.  
 Weremund, bishop of Worcester, i. 205, 264.  
 Weremund, bishop of Dunwich, dies, i. 315.  
 Werstan, bishop of Crediton, his jurisdiction, i. 372.  
 Werstan, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 382.  
 Wessex, the kingdom of, founded, i. 50; receives the addition of Sussex, 94; increases in power on the death of Aethelbald of Mercia, 233; invaded by the Danes, 248; consort of the king of, not allowed to sit on the throne, or to bear the title of 'Queen,' 291.  
 Westminster, William abbot of, degraded, iii. 274.  
 Westminster, concilis at, iii. 32; iv. 114, 123, 200.  
 Westminster Hall, first court held in, ii. 156.  
 Westwood abbey founded, ii. 388.  
 Whiterne, bishops of, *v.* Pecthelm, Frithewold, Pechtwine, Aethelberht, Baldulf.  
 Wibba, son of Credda, succeeds his father in Mercia, i. 94; dies, 96.  
 Wiberht, bishop of Sherborne, accompanies archbishop Wilfrid to Rome, i. 272.  
 Wibert (S.), founder of the abbey of Gembloours, dies, i. 410.  
 Wicta, bishop of Lichfeld, i. 225.  
 Wiglaf of Mercia banished by Ecgberht of Wessex, i. 276; is restored on condition of paying tribute, 277.  
 Wihard, a noble sent by Ecgberht of Wessex to subdue Kent, i. 276.  
 Wihtgar, nephew of Cerdic, arrives in Britain, i. 60; dies prince of the Isle of Wight, 76; the place of his burial (Withgarus-berith) named after him, *ib.*  
 Wilberht, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 244 and *note*.  
 Wilbord leaves England with twelve companions, and goes to France, i. 183; his mission to Frisia, 189; is made bishop of Utrecht, *ib.*  
 Wilferth, bishop of Worcester, i. 384; dies, 388.  
 Wilfric (S.), life of, ii. 274, *seqq.*  
 Wilfrid (a monk of Streneahall, i. 172) receives the tonsure at Leyden, 156; is consecrated abbot of Ripon, *ib.*; his arguments in the council of Streneahall, 158; goes to France for consecration as archbishop of York, 159; is present at the council of Hertford, 162; expelled by Ecgfrith, 167; embarks for Rome, but is driven to Frisia, 168; converts the people there, *ib.*; clears himself at Rome, 169; returns to England, converts the South-Saxons, and sends a mission to the Isle of Wight, *ib.*; builds a monastery at Selsley, 204; is restored by Alfrid, 169; miracle performed by him, *ib.*; gives benediction to S. Etheldreda, 171; is accused to Alfrid, and again expelled, 186; is again declared innocent, *ib.*; his vision while in France, *ib.*; is restored by Osred, 187; dies, *ib.*, 206, and is buried at Ripon, 187.  
 Wilfrid, bishop of Worcester, i. 205, 224.  
 Wilfrid (the younger, i. 227), bishop of Beverley, 213, was archbishop of York at the death of Beda, 224; dies, 227.  
 Wilfrid, archbishop of Canterbury, his election and confirmation, i. 270; visits Rome, 272; his death, 277.  
 Willegod, first abbot of S. Alban's, i. 257.  
 William I. of Normandy, son of Rollo, i. 376, 391; assassinated, 397.  
 William the Conqueror, (II. of Normandy and I. of England,) his birth, i. 468; visits Eadward the Confessor, 487; releases Harold,

receives his assurance of future support, and promises him one of his daughters, 501; expostulates with him on the breach of his engagement, 515; prepares to invade England, 516; lands at Hastings, *ib.*; his generosity to Harold's spies, 517, and proposals to himself, 518; his conduct in the battle of Hastings, 520; grants Harold's body to his mother, 521; his coronation, ii. 1; carries his English hostages to Normandy, 2, 5; takes Exeter, burns York, and subdues the Scots, 4; avenges the death of the earl of Northumbria, 6; defeats the Danes and the English exiles, 7; receives the submission of Edgar Aetheling, *ib.*; subjects the churches to military service, *ib.*; captures the insurgents in the Isle of Ely, and invades Scotland, 9; conquers Maine, 13; defeats a conspiracy, 15; orders the widow of the Confessor to be buried with her husband, 16; makes peace with France, *ib.*; is wounded by his son Robert, 17; subdues Wales, 20; imprisons Odo, *ib.*; attends the council of Lillebone, 21; orders a general survey of England, 22; knights his son Henry, 23; his extortions and severity, *ib.*; builds Battle abbey, and St. Stephen's at Caen, 25; his family, *ib.*; character of his youth, 26; appoints three of his chaplains bishops, 27; burns the town of Mantes, 29; his last illness, testament, and death, *ib.*; his prophecy respecting his son Henry, 182.

William II. (Rufus), second son of the Conqueror, ii. 6; is wounded at Gerberai, 17; leaves his father's death-bed, and hastens to England, 30; his coronation, 31; conspiracy against him, *ib.*; his proceedings against the rebels, 33; and conduct to the clergy, 37; invades Normandy, and represses the Scottish irruptions, *ib.*; falls ill, and repents his conduct to the church, but relapses on his recovery, 41; extorts 500 pounds from the bishop of Lincoln, 42; assists Duncan of Scotland to obtain his throne, *ib.*; rebuilds Carlisle, *ib.*; his acts in Normandy, 43; returns to England, 44; sends his brother Henry

to Normandy, to continue the war, 45 and *note*; seizes Robert de Mowbray and his family, 46; ravages Wales, *ib.*; his extortionate demand upon archbishop Anselm, 47; confiscates his property, 49; his heavy taxation of the English, 128; his first court in Westminster Hall, 156; his expedition to Maine, *ib.*; gives the bishopric of Durham to Ralph Flambard, *ib.*; his death, *ib.*; portents which preceded it, 158, *seq.*; his character, 160.

William, king of Scotland, ravages the north of England, ii. 373; is taken prisoner, 379; terms of his release, 383; receives the earldom of Huntingdon, 418; does homage to Richard I., iii. 14; is present at his second coronation, 82; receives friendly assurances from king John, 137; is directed to meet him at Lincoln, 155; does him homage, 161; assists in carrying the corpse of Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 162; purchases a peace from king John, 226.

William, king of Sicily, *v.* Sicily.

William, bishop of London, i. 487; banished, 491.

William (bishops), *v.* York, Exeter, Norwich, and Worcester.

William the Carpenter, [viscount of Melun,] his cruelty to the German Jews, ii. 72; is released from captivity, 75; deserts the crusaders at Antioch, 113.

William, prince, son of Henry I. of England, receives the homage of the nobility, ii. 192; is drowned, 201.

William, son of Robert of Normandy, commands the van in the battle of Brenville, ii. 198; becomes count of Flanders, and puts to death the murderers of his predecessor, 207; defeats duke Theodoric, 209; dies, *ib.*

William, third son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Maud, born, ii. 220.

William, eldest son of Henry II., born, ii. 255.

William, brother of Tancred the crusader, slain, ii. 88.

William, son of Henry V. of Saxony, born, ii. 412.

William, an Englishman, builds a

chapel at Acre, and is made its prior, iii. 22.

Wilred, bishop of Elmham, i. 315.

Wilton, *v.* Ramsbury.

Wimbledon, battle of, i. 83.

Wimes, W. de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.

Wimund, archbishop of York, i. 277; dies, 288.

Wimund, founder of a house for regular canons at Oxford, ii. 188.

Wimund (bishop), *v.* Man.

Wina, bishop of Winchester, consecrates Cedda archbishop of York, i. 159; on his expulsion by Cynewulf, he purchases the see of London, 160.

Winchester (Kaerguent) built, *Prov.* xii.

Winchester, earl of, *v.* Quenci.

Winchester, bishops of:

[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Hilda, Wina, Daniel, Humphrey, Cynehard, Aethelhard, Herfrith, Eadmund, Swithun, Ealferth, Aethelwold, Humberht, Dunberht, Dunewulf or Bertulf, Athelm, Frithstan, Birstan, Aelfeah, Elfsi, Beorhelm, Aethelwold, Aethelgar, Aelfeah, Elfsius, Aethelwold, Alfsius or Leofsius, Stigand, Aelfwine.]

— Walkelin, ii. 44; his death, 128.

— William Giffard, receives investiture from Henry I., ii. 164; banished for refusing to be consecrated by the archbishop of York, 171; his reception at Rome, 172; consecrated, 183; assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, 185; consecrates William, archbishop of Canterbury, 204; dies, 209; erroneous entries respecting, at pp. 230, 232, 234.

— Henry, abbot of Glastonbury, consecrated, ii. 210; ordains Richard de Beaumeis a deacon, 225; acknowledges the empress Maud, 230; holds, as legate, a council at London, 232; receives a pall from Lucius II., 234; withdraws privily from England, 281; consecrates Becket archbishop of Canterbury, 292; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, 294; when dying, he reproaches Henry II. for his conduct to Becket, 363.

Winchester, bishops of, *continued.*

— Richard, *v.* Poitiers.

— Godfrey de Lucy, elected, iii. 9; consecrated, 13; dies, 180.

— Peter des Roches, (who had been a knight,) elected, iii. 181; adheres to king John against the pope, 237; appointed one of the guardians of the realm during the king's absence, 261; present in a council at S. Alban's, 262; undertakes that John will make compensation to the clergy, 283, *seq.*; attends him to Runnymede, 302; commanded to enforce the excommunication of the barons, 336; joins Pandulph in suspending archbishop Langton, 340; crowns Henry III., iv. 2; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; succeeds the earl of Pembroke as tutor of the king, 46; dismissed from the court, 139; goes to the crusade, 145; becomes one of the leaders, 175; besieged in his house by the emperor, 199; returns to England, 224; ordered to excommunicate the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241; complains against the supineness of the judiciary, 243; asserts the king's right to inquire into his accounts, 246; procures the dismissal of Henry's ministers, 263, *seq.*; defends the king's conduct, 265; invites foreign soldiery, 268; advises Henry to coerce the barons, 269; requests the custody of Devizes castle, 273; becomes the king's surety to the earl-marshall, 275; his answer to the remonstrances of the bishops, 276; escapes from the battle of Grosmont, 278; joins in sending letters to Ireland for the destruction of the earl-marshall, 292; is dismissed by king Henry, 299, and flies to his cathedral, 312; goes to Rome to conduct the pope's war against the citizens, 327.

Windsor castle besieged, iii. 380.

Winfred, bishop of Lichfield, i. 155; is present at the council of Hertford, 163; is deposed for disobedience, and returns to his monastery at Barrowe, 164.

Winter of 554, its severity, i. 79.

Wipped, a Saxon prince, gives name, by his death, to the battle of Wypeds-Fleet, i. 37.

Wither, William, *v. Twenge*, Robert de.  
 Withichindus, a duke of Saxony, baptized, i. 244.  
 Withred and Sifred (brothers), reign jointly in Kent, i. 185; build and endow the monastery of S. Martin, Canterbury, 186; Withred pays the weregild of Muli, 187; dies, 213.  
 Witred, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 386.  
 Wlfer, earl, defeated by the Danes, i. 438.  
 Wlfrafa, concubine of king Eadgar, i. 410.  
 Wlnoth, a minister of Aethelred II., falsely accused by Beorhtric, i. 438; escapes, and becomes a pirate, *ib.*  
 Wlsi (or Wlstan, i. 406), bishop of Sherborne, 396; made abbot of Westminster by Dunstan, 406.  
 Wlsius, archbishop of York, dies, i. 277.  
 Wlsius, bishop of Lichfield, i. 476.  
 Wlstan, archbishop of York, advises Eadmund to compromise with Anlaf, i. 395; imprisoned for killing some murderers at Thetford, 403; released, but removed to Dorchester, *ib.*  
 Wlstan, archbishop of York, translated from Worcester, i. 435; he had been abbot of Thorney, 462; his death, 467 and *note*.  
 Wlstan (S.), his parents, ii. 49; his education and austere exercises, 50; becomes prior, 51; is made bishop of Worcester, i. 502, ii. 51; an attempt made to degrade him for ignorance of the Norman tongue, 52, miraculously frustrated, 54; he repulses Roger de Montgomery from Worcester, 33; recovers his temporalities from the archbishop of York, 55, and is requested to aid him in his pastoral duties, 56; his death, and request to be buried with his episcopal ring, *ib.*  
 Woden, the Saxon Mercury, his descendants, i. 8; 'Wednesday' dedicated to him, *ib.*, 235, 346.  
 Wodenfeld, battle of, i. 375.  
 Wodnesburch, battle of, i. 211.  
 Worcester, bishops of:  
   [For those before the Conquest, *v. Ostford*, *Bosel*, *Ecgwini*, (also names at i. 205,) *Wilfrid*, *Deneberht*, *Mildred*, *Weremund*, *Eadberht*, *Alhun*, *Herefrith* or *Were-*

frith

— Ethelhun, *Wilferth*, *Cyne-wold*, *Dunstan*, *Oswald*, *Wlstan*, *Leofsius*, *Brithegus*, *Living*, *Aldred*, *Wlstan*.]  
 — Samson, ii. 99.  
 — Theophilus, ii. 192; dies, 204.  
 — Simon, ii. 205.  
 — Roger, dies, ii. 398.  
 — Baldwin (abbot of Ford) made bishop, ii. 409; translated to Canterbury, 412; receives his pall, with the office of legate in his own province, 418; obtains the pope's permission to build a church, 419; is prohibited from proceeding, 425; is one of the mediators between the kings of England and France, 435; letter to him from the Holy Land, 436; prohibits the marriage of prince John with Hawise, iii. 4; crowns Richard I., 5; claims the right of consecrating the archbishop of York, 9; consecrates the bishops of Winchester and Salisbury, 13; his convention with his monks, *ib.*; interdicts the lands of prince John, 15; his letter respecting the bishop of Coventry, 18; lands at Tyre, 30; dies, 34.  
 — William de Norhale, ii. 419.  
 — Robert, canon of Lincoln, and son of William seneschal of Normandy, consecrated, iii. 49.  
 — John, dean of Rouen, consecrated, iii. 95.  
 — Malger, one of those delegated by the pope to expostulate with king John, iii. 220; joins in imposing an interdict, and leaves the country, 222; ordered to excommunicate John, 228; dies abroad, 238.  
 — Walter de Gray, *v. Gray*.  
 — Silvester, present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1.  
 — William, consecrates Robert de Bingham bishop of Salisbury, iv. 203.  
 Wortemer, eldest son of Wyrtgeorne, chosen king on the deposition of his father, i. 13; defeats the Saxons in the battles of the Darent, 14, and Ailesford, *ib.* and *note*; kills Horn, and puts Hengest to flight, 15; is poisoned by his step-mother, and buried at London, 17.  
 Wrotham, William de, warden of the sea-ports, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.

Wulferth, king of Monmouth, subdued by Aethelstan, i. 386.

Wulfhelm, bishop of Wells, i. 390; translated to Canterbury, 385; dies, 391.

Wulfer, archbishop of York, i. 288; expelled, 324; restored, 325; dies, 361.

Wulferi succeeds his brother Peada in South Mercia, i. 154; rebels against Oswiu, *ib.*; defeats Cynewald, and takes the Isle of Wight, 155, *seq.*; conquers Athelwald of Sussex, and becomes his sponsor in baptism, 156; sells the see of London to bishop Wina, 160; is stripped of Lichfield by Ecgfrith, 168; his death, 166; his family, *ib.*

Wulfran, a Frisian bishop, i. 212.

Wulfward, earl, defeats the Danes at Southampton, i. 279.

Wulstan (S.) murdered by his kinsman Beorhtferth, i. 284; miracles at his tomb, *ib.*

Wulward, bishop of Hereford, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.

Wypeds-Fleot, battle of, i. 36.

Wyrtgeorne, consul of the Gewissi, crowns Constans with his own hands, *Pref.* xxiv.; persuades him to retain a Pictish body-guard, and induces them to murder him, *ib.*; his country invaded by the Picts and Scots, i. 5; sends for the Saxons, 6; gives Hengest lands in Lindsey, 10; disgusts his sons and nobility by marrying Hengest's daughter Rouwen, 11; his incest and excommunication, *ib.*; is supplanted by his son Wortemer, 13; on the death of his son, he recalls Hengest, 17; is seized by him, and compelled to abdicate, 18; departs into Wales, 19; consults the Magi, 20; discovers Merlin, *ib.*; his conversation with him, 21; his vision, 22; his death by fire, 35.

Y.

Yffa, father of Ella, first king of Deira, i. 81.

Yff, grandson of Eadwin of Northumbria, carried into Kent, i. 133.

York, archbishops of:  
[For those prior to the Conquest, *v.* Pirannus, Thadioceus,

Samson, Paulinus, Wilfrid, Ecgberht, Eanbald, Wlsius, Wimund, Wulfer, Wlstan, Oscketel, Oswald, Aldulf, Wlstan, Aelfric, Kinsius, Aldred.]

— Thomas, acknowledges the precedence of Canterbury, ii. 12; restores his possessions to bishop Wlstan, and requests his assistance, 55, *seq.*; prevents Remigius from dedicating his church at Lincoln, 40; claims the jurisdiction of that place, 42; objects to the style of archbishop Anselm, 44; his death, 166.

— Gerard, ii. 166; ordered by Henry I. to consecrate the bishops rejected by Anselm, 171; dies, 184.

— Thomas II., archbishop elect, interdicted by Anselm from exercising his functions until he had made canonical submission to Canterbury, ii. 184; consecrated, 185; dies, 191.

— Turstan, archbishop elect, disputes the precedence of Canterbury, ii. 191, 193; procures himself to be consecrated by the pope, 197; renews the dispute, 205; his claims rejected, 207; encourages the north-ern nobles to resist the Scots, 222; dies, 227.

— William, treasurer of the church of York, elected, ii. 227; degraded, and restored, 271; dies, 272.

— Henry Murdac, ii. 237; dies, 254.

— Roger (archdeacon of Canterbury), ii. 272; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, 294, and at the council of Tours, 298; crowns prince Henry, 354, and is suspended in consequence, 367; is restored, 366; his property confiscated at his death, 407.

— Geoffrey, *v.* Lincoln.

— Walter de Gray, *v.* Gray.

York, John canon of, (a native of Rome,) ordered by the pope to inquire respecting the insurrection against the Italian clergy, iv. 241.

York, William de S. Barbara, dean of, *v.* Durham.

York, James sheriff of, excommunicated for seizing the goods of archbishop Geoffrey, iii. 154.

Ypres, William de, an adherent of  
king Stephen, taken prisoner, ii.  
229. Z.

Yric of Northumbria raised to the  
throne by rebels, i. 402 ; is de-  
serted on the approach of Eadred,  
and murdered, *ib.*

Yric, or Egric, made earl of North-  
umbria by Cnut, i. 453, 460, and  
banished, 465.

Yvo (S.), invention of, i. 435.

Zacharias, pope, i. 227, sends to Pe-  
pin requesting the restoration of S.  
Benedict's relics, 229.

Zenghi, a Turk, takes Edessa, ii.  
233.

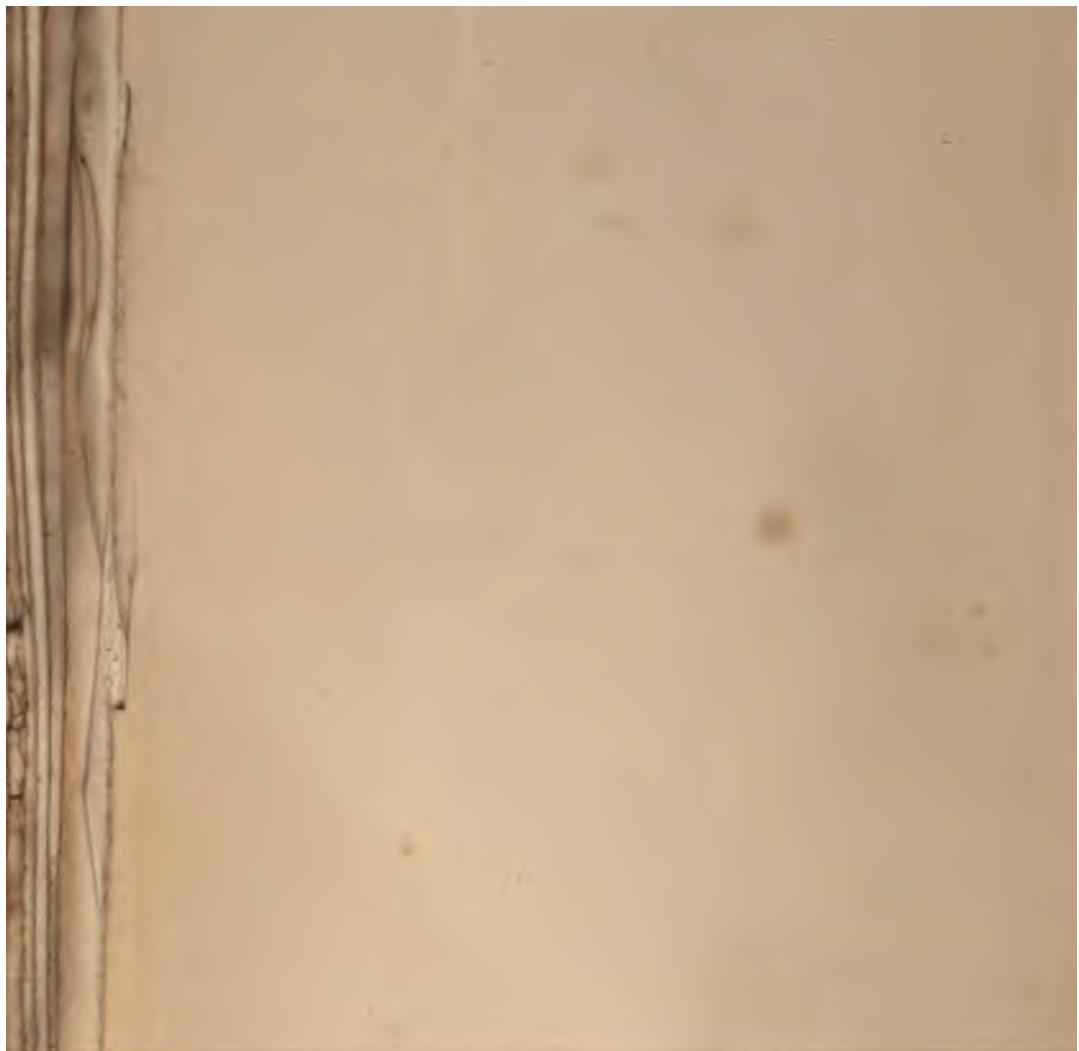
Zeno, the emperor, his cruelty, i.  
38.

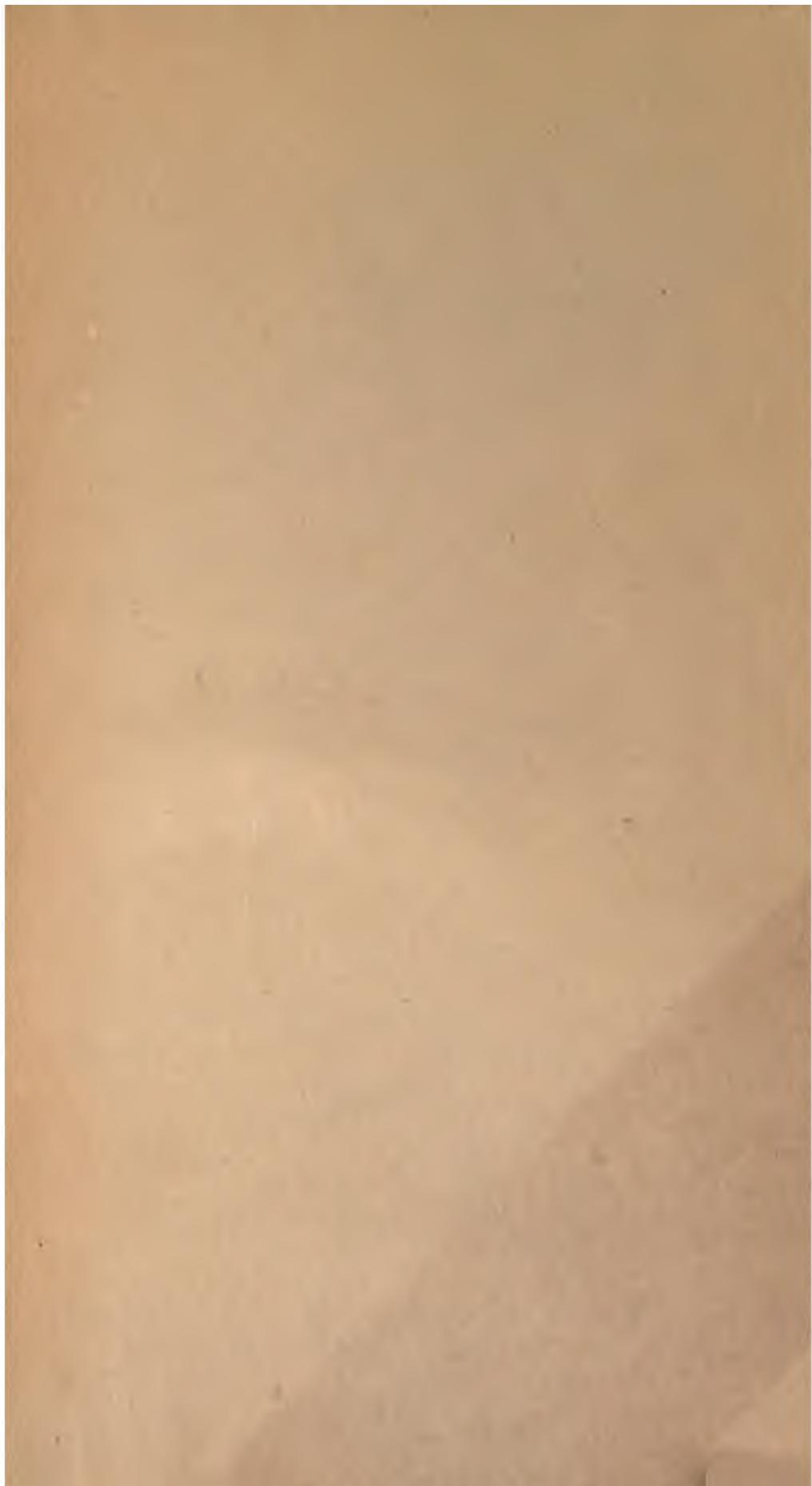
FINIS.

LONDON :  
Printed by S. & J. BENTLEY, WILSON, and FLEY,  
Bangor House, Shoe Lane.











UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN



3 9015 03958 9109

